

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

for Streets and Highways

2009 Edition





Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

2009
Edition

The Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) is approved by the Federal Highway Administrator as the National Standard in accordance with Title 23 U.S. Code, Sections 109(d), 114(a), 217, 315, and 402(a), 23 CFR 655, and 49 CFR 1.48(b)(8), 1.48(b)(33), and 1.48(c)(2).

Addresses for Publications Referenced in the MUTCD

American Automobile Association (AAA)
1000 AAA Drive
Heathrow, FL 32746
www.aaa.com
800-222-4357

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)
444 North Capitol Street, NW, Suite 249
Washington, DC 20001
www.transportation.org
202-624-5800

American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
1819 L Street, NW, 6th Floor
Washington, DC 20036
www.ansi.org
202-293-8020

American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA)
10003 Derekwood Lane, Suite 210
Lanham, MD 20706
www.arema.org
301-459-3200

Federal Highway Administration Report Center
Facsimile number: 814-239-2156
report.center@fhwa.dot.gov

Illuminating Engineering Society (IES)
120 Wall Street, Floor 17
New York, NY 10005
www.iesna.org
212-248-5000

Institute of Makers of Explosives
1120 19th Street, NW, Suite 310
Washington, DC 20036-3605
www.ime.org
202-429-9280

Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE)
1099 14th Street, NW, Suite 300 West
Washington, DC 20005-3438
www.ite.org
202-289-0222

International Organization for Standardization
1, ch. de la Voie-Creuse
Case Postale 56
CH-1211
Geneva 20, Switzerland
www.iso.ch
011-41-22-749-0111

International Safety Equipment Association (ISEA)
1901 North Moore Street, Suite 808
Arlington, VA 22209
www.safetysafetyequipment.org
703-525-1695

National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances (NCUTLO)
107 South West Street, Suite 110
Alexandria, VA 22314
www.ncutlo.org
800-807-5290

National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1752
Rosslyn, VA 22209
www.nema.org
703-841-3200

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, NW
Washington, DC 20210
www.osha.gov
800-321-6742

Transportation Research Board (TRB)
The National Academies
500 Fifth Street, NW
Washington, DC 20001
www.nas.edu/trb
202-334-3072

U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (The U.S. Access Board)
1331 F Street, NW, Suite 1000
Washington, DC 20004-1111
www.access-board.gov
202-272-0080

Acknowledgments

The Federal Highway Administration gratefully acknowledges the valuable assistance that it received from the National Committee on Uniform Traffic Control Devices and its more than 250 voluntary members in the development of this Manual.

MANUAL ON UNIFORM TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
INTRODUCTION	I-1
PART 1. GENERAL	
<u>CHAPTER 1A. GENERAL</u>	
Section 1A.01 Purpose of Traffic Control Devices.....	1
Section 1A.02 Principles of Traffic Control Devices.....	1
Section 1A.03 Design of Traffic Control Devices.....	1
Section 1A.04 Placement and Operation of Traffic Control Devices.....	2
Section 1A.05 Maintenance of Traffic Control Devices	2
Section 1A.06 Uniformity of Traffic Control Devices.....	2
Section 1A.07 Responsibility for Traffic Control Devices.....	2
Section 1A.08 Authority for Placement of Traffic Control Devices	3
Section 1A.09 Engineering Study and Engineering Judgment	4
Section 1A.10 Interpretations, Experimentations, Changes, and Interim Approvals	4
Section 1A.11 Relation to Other Publications	7
Section 1A.12 Color Code	10
Section 1A.13 Definitions of Headings, Words, and Phrases in this Manual	10
Section 1A.14 Meanings of Acronyms and Abbreviations in this Manual.....	23
Section 1A.15 Abbreviations Used on Traffic Control Devices.....	24
PART 2. SIGNS	
<u>CHAPTER 2A. GENERAL</u>	
Section 2A.01 Function and Purpose of Signs	27
Section 2A.02 Definitions	27
Section 2A.03 Standardization of Application	27
Section 2A.04 Excessive Use of Signs.....	27
Section 2A.05 Classification of Signs	28
Section 2A.06 Design of Signs	28
Section 2A.07 Retroreflectivity and Illumination.....	29
Section 2A.08 Maintaining Minimum Retroreflectivity.....	30
Section 2A.09 Shapes	32
Section 2A.10 Sign Colors.....	32
Section 2A.11 Dimensions.....	32
Section 2A.12 Symbols.....	34
Section 2A.13 Word Messages	35
Section 2A.14 Sign Borders.....	36
Section 2A.15 Enhanced Conspicuity for Standard Signs.....	36
Section 2A.16 Standardization of Location	37
Section 2A.17 Overhead Sign Installations	41
Section 2A.18 Mounting Height	42
Section 2A.19 Lateral Offset	43
Section 2A.20 Orientation	43
Section 2A.21 Posts and Mountings	44
Section 2A.22 Maintenance.....	44
Section 2A.23 Median Opening Treatments for Divided Highways with Wide Medians	44

CHAPTER 2B. REGULATORY SIGNS, BARRICADES, AND GATES

Section 2B.01	Application of Regulatory Signs	45
Section 2B.02	Design of Regulatory Signs.....	45
Section 2B.03	Size of Regulatory Signs	45
Section 2B.04	Right-of-Way at Intersections.....	49
Section 2B.05	STOP Sign (R1-1) and ALL WAY Plaque (R1-3P)	51
Section 2B.06	STOP Sign Applications.....	52
Section 2B.07	Multi-Way Stop Applications	52
Section 2B.08	YIELD Sign (R1-2)	53
Section 2B.09	YIELD Sign Applications	53
Section 2B.10	STOP Sign or YIELD Sign Placement.....	53
Section 2B.11	Yield Here To Pedestrians Signs and Stop Here For Pedestrians Signs (R1-5 Series)	54
Section 2B.12	In-Street and Overhead Pedestrian Crossing Signs (R1-6, R1-6a, R1-9, and R1-9a).....	55
Section 2B.13	Speed Limit Sign (R2-1)	56
Section 2B.14	Truck Speed Limit Plaque (R2-2P).....	58
Section 2B.15	Night Speed Limit Plaque (R2-3P).....	58
Section 2B.16	Minimum Speed Limit Plaque (R2-4P).....	59
Section 2B.17	Higher Fines Signs and Plaque (R2-6P, R2-10, and R2-11)	59
Section 2B.18	Movement Prohibition Signs (R3-1 through R3-4, R3-18, and R3-27).....	60
Section 2B.19	Intersection Lane Control Signs (R3-5 through R3-8).....	61
Section 2B.20	Mandatory Movement Lane Control Signs (R3-5, R3-5a, R3-7, and R3-20)	62
Section 2B.21	Optional Movement Lane Control Sign (R3-6).....	63
Section 2B.22	Advance Intersection Lane Control Signs (R3-8 Series).....	64
Section 2B.23	RIGHT (LEFT) LANE MUST EXIT Sign (R3-33)	64
Section 2B.24	Two-Way Left Turn Only Signs (R3-9a, R3-9b)	64
Section 2B.25	BEGIN and END Plaques (R3-9cP, R3-9dP).....	64
Section 2B.26	Reversible Lane Control Signs (R3-9e through R3-9i)	65
Section 2B.27	Jughandle Signs (R3-23, R3-24, R3-25, and R3-26 Series).....	67
Section 2B.28	DO NOT PASS Sign (R4-1)	72
Section 2B.29	PASS WITH CARE Sign (R4-2)	73
Section 2B.30	KEEP RIGHT EXCEPT TO PASS Sign (R4-16) and SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT Sign (R4-3).....	73
Section 2B.31	TRUCKS USE RIGHT LANE Sign (R4-5).....	73
Section 2B.32	Keep Right and Keep Left Signs (R4-7, R4-8).....	73
Section 2B.33	STAY IN LANE Sign (R4-9).....	74
Section 2B.34	RUNAWAY VEHICLES ONLY Sign (R4-10).....	74
Section 2B.35	Slow Vehicle Turn-Out Signs (R4-12, R4-13, and R4-14)	74
Section 2B.36	DO NOT DRIVE ON SHOULDER Sign (R4-17) and DO NOT PASS ON SHOULDER Sign (R4-18)	75
Section 2B.37	DO NOT ENTER Sign (R5-1)	75
Section 2B.38	WRONG WAY Sign (R5-1a).....	76
Section 2B.39	Selective Exclusion Signs	76
Section 2B.40	ONE WAY Signs (R6-1, R6-2).....	77
Section 2B.41	Wrong-Way Traffic Control at Interchange Ramps	79
Section 2B.42	Divided Highway Crossing Signs (R6-3, R6-3a)	82
Section 2B.43	Roundabout Directional Arrow Signs (R6-4, R6-4a, and R6-4b).....	84
Section 2B.44	Roundabout Circulation Plaque (R6-5P)	84
Section 2B.45	Examples of Roundabout Signing	84
Section 2B.46	Parking, Standing, and Stopping Signs (R7 and R8 Series)	88
Section 2B.47	Design of Parking, Standing, and Stopping Signs.....	89
Section 2B.48	Placement of Parking, Stopping, and Standing Signs	92
Section 2B.49	Emergency Restriction Signs (R8-4, R8-7, R8-8).....	92
Section 2B.50	WALK ON LEFT FACING TRAFFIC and No Hitchhiking Signs (R9-1, R9-4, R9-4a)	92

Section 2B.51	Pedestrian Crossing Signs (R9-2, R9-3).....	92
Section 2B.52	Traffic Signal Pedestrian and Bicycle Actuation Signs (R10-1 through R10-4, and R10-24 through R10-26)	94
Section 2B.53	Traffic Signal Signs (R10-5 through R10-30).....	95
Section 2B.54	No Turn on Red Signs (R10-11 Series, R10-17a, and R10-30)	95
Section 2B.55	Photo Enforced Signs and Plaques (R10-18, R10-19P, R10-19aP).....	97
Section 2B.56	Ramp Metering Signs (R10-28 and R10-29)	97
Section 2B.57	KEEP OFF MEDIAN Sign (R11-1)	97
Section 2B.58	ROAD CLOSED Sign (R11-2) and LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY Signs (R11-3 Series, R11-4) ...	98
Section 2B.59	Weight Limit Signs (R12-1 through R12-5)	98
Section 2B.60	Weigh Station Signs (R13 Series).....	99
Section 2B.61	TRUCK ROUTE Sign (R14-1).....	99
Section 2B.62	Hazardous Material Signs (R14-2, R14-3).....	99
Section 2B.63	National Network Signs (R14-4, R14-5)	100
Section 2B.64	Headlight Use Signs (R16-5 through R16-11)	100
Section 2B.65	FENDER BENDER Sign (R16-4)	101
Section 2B.66	Seat Belt Symbol	101
Section 2B.67	Barricades	101
Section 2B.68	Gates	101

CHAPTER 2C. WARNING SIGNS AND OBJECT MARKERS

Section 2C.01	Function of Warning Signs.....	103
Section 2C.02	Application of Warning Signs	103
Section 2C.03	Design of Warning Signs	103
Section 2C.04	Size of Warning Signs.....	103
Section 2C.05	Placement of Warning Signs	108
Section 2C.06	Horizontal Alignment Warning Signs.....	109
Section 2C.07	Horizontal Alignment Signs (W1-1 through W1-5, W1-11, W1-15)	110
Section 2C.08	Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P).....	112
Section 2C.09	Chevron Alignment Sign (W1-8)	112
Section 2C.10	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed Signs (W1-1a, W1-2a)	113
Section 2C.11	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection Signs (W1-10 Series)	113
Section 2C.12	One-Direction Large Arrow Sign (W1-6).....	113
Section 2C.13	Truck Rollover Warning Sign (W1-13).....	114
Section 2C.14	Advisory Exit and Ramp Speed Signs (W13-2 and W13-3).....	114
Section 2C.15	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Exit and Ramp Speed Signs (W13-6 and W13-7).....	115
Section 2C.16	Hill Signs (W7-1, W7-1a)	115
Section 2C.17	Truck Escape Ramp Signs (W7-4 Series)	115
Section 2C.18	HILL BLOCKS VIEW Sign (W7-6)	117
Section 2C.19	ROAD NARROWS Sign (W5-1).....	117
Section 2C.20	NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2).....	118
Section 2C.21	ONE LANE BRIDGE Sign (W5-3)	118
Section 2C.22	Divided Highway Sign (W6-1)	119
Section 2C.23	Divided Highway Ends Sign (W6-2).....	119
Section 2C.24	Freeway or Expressway Ends Signs (W19 Series).....	119
Section 2C.25	Double Arrow Sign (W12-1)	119
Section 2C.26	DEAD END/NO OUTLET Signs (W14-1, W14-1a, W14-2, W14-2a)	119
Section 2C.27	Low Clearance Signs (W12-2 and W12-2a)	120
Section 2C.28	BUMP and DIP Signs (W8-1, W8-2)	120
Section 2C.29	SPEED HUMP Sign (W17-1).....	120
Section 2C.30	PAVEMENT ENDS Sign (W8-3)	122
Section 2C.31	Shoulder Signs (W8-4, W8-9, W8-17, W8-23, and W8-25).....	122
Section 2C.32	Surface Condition Signs (W8-5, W8-7, W8-8, W8-11, W8-13, and W8-14).....	122

Section 2C.33	Warning Signs and Plaques for Motorcyclists (W8-15, W8-15P, and W8-16).....	123
Section 2C.34	NO CENTER LINE Sign (W8-12)	123
Section 2C.35	Weather Condition Signs (W8-18, W8-19, W8-21, and W8-22)	123
Section 2C.36	Advance Traffic Control Signs (W3-1, W3-2, W3-3, W3-4)	123
Section 2C.37	Advance Ramp Control Signal Signs (W3-7 and W3-8).....	124
Section 2C.38	Reduced Speed Limit Ahead Signs (W3-5, W3-5a).....	124
Section 2C.39	DRAW BRIDGE Sign (W3-6).....	125
Section 2C.40	Merge Signs (W4-1, W4-5).....	125
Section 2C.41	Added Lane Signs (W4-3, W4-6).....	126
Section 2C.42	Lane Ends Signs (W4-2, W9-1, W9-2).....	126
Section 2C.43	RIGHT (LEFT) LANE EXIT ONLY AHEAD Sign (W9-7).....	126
Section 2C.44	Two-Way Traffic Sign (W6-3)	127
Section 2C.45	NO PASSING ZONE Sign (W14-3).....	127
Section 2C.46	Intersection Warning Signs (W2-1 through W2-8).....	127
Section 2C.47	Two-Direction Large Arrow Sign (W1-7).....	128
Section 2C.48	Traffic Signal Signs (W25-1, W25-2).....	128
Section 2C.49	Vehicular Traffic Warning Signs (W8-6, W11-1, W11-5, W11-5a, W11-8, W11-10, W11-11, W11-12P, W11-14, W11-15, and W11-15a)	128
Section 2C.50	Non-Vehicular Warning Signs (W11-2, W11-3, W11-4, W11-6, W11-7, W11-9, and W11-16 through W11-22).....	130
Section 2C.51	Playground Sign (W15-1)	131
Section 2C.52	NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD Sign (W23-2).....	131
Section 2C.53	Use of Supplemental Warning Plaques	131
Section 2C.54	Design of Supplemental Warning Plaques	132
Section 2C.55	Distance Plaques (W16-2 Series, W16-3 Series, W16-4P, W7-3aP).....	132
Section 2C.56	Supplemental Arrow Plaques (W16-5P, W16-6P).....	132
Section 2C.57	Hill-Related Plaques (W7-2 Series, W7-3 Series)	133
Section 2C.58	Advance Street Name Plaque (W16-8P, W16-8aP).....	133
Section 2C.59	CROSS TRAFFIC DOES NOT STOP Plaque (W4-4P)	133
Section 2C.60	SHARE THE ROAD Plaque (W16-1P)	133
Section 2C.61	Photo Enforced Plaque (W16-10P).....	134
Section 2C.62	NEW Plaque (W16-15P)	134
Section 2C.63	Object Marker Design and Placement Height	134
Section 2C.64	Object Markers for Obstructions Within the Roadway	135
Section 2C.65	Object Markers for Obstructions Adjacent to the Roadway	135
Section 2C.66	Object Markers for Ends of Roadways.....	136

CHAPTER 2D. GUIDE SIGNS—CONVENTIONAL ROADS

Section 2D.01	Scope of Conventional Road Guide Sign Standards	137
Section 2D.02	Application.....	137
Section 2D.03	Color, Retroreflection, and Illumination	137
Section 2D.04	Size of Signs.....	137
Section 2D.05	Lettering Style.....	138
Section 2D.06	Size of Lettering.....	138
Section 2D.07	Amount of Legend	140
Section 2D.08	Arrows.....	140
Section 2D.09	Numbered Highway Systems	142
Section 2D.10	Route Signs and Auxiliary Signs	142
Section 2D.11	Design of Route Signs	143
Section 2D.12	Design of Route Sign Auxiliaries.....	144
Section 2D.13	Junction Auxiliary Sign (M2-1)	144
Section 2D.14	Combination Junction Sign (M2-2).....	145
Section 2D.15	Cardinal Direction Auxiliary Signs (M3-1 through M3-4)	145
Section 2D.16	Auxiliary Signs for Alternative Routes (M4 Series)	145

Section 2D.17	ALTERNATE Auxiliary Signs (M4-1, M4-1a).....	145
Section 2D.18	BY-PASS Auxiliary Sign (M4-2)	146
Section 2D.19	BUSINESS Auxiliary Sign (M4-3).....	146
Section 2D.20	TRUCK Auxiliary Sign (M4-4).....	146
Section 2D.21	TO Auxiliary Sign (M4-5).....	146
Section 2D.22	END Auxiliary Sign (M4-6).....	146
Section 2D.23	BEGIN Auxiliary Sign (M4-14).....	146
Section 2D.24	TEMPORARY Auxiliary Signs (M4-7, M4-7a).....	147
Section 2D.25	Temporary Detour and Auxiliary Signs.....	147
Section 2D.26	Advance Turn Arrow Auxiliary Signs (M5-1, M5-2, and M5-3).....	147
Section 2D.27	Lane Designation Auxiliary Signs (M5-4, M5-5, and M5-6).....	148
Section 2D.28	Directional Arrow Auxiliary Signs (M6 Series).....	148
Section 2D.29	Route Sign Assemblies.....	148
Section 2D.30	Junction Assembly	153
Section 2D.31	Advance Route Turn Assembly.....	153
Section 2D.32	Directional Assembly.....	153
Section 2D.33	Combination Lane-Use/Destination Overhead Guide Sign (D15-1).....	154
Section 2D.34	Confirming or Reassurance Assemblies	155
Section 2D.35	Trailblazer Assembly	155
Section 2D.36	Destination and Distance Signs.....	156
Section 2D.37	Destination Signs (D1 Series).....	156
Section 2D.38	Destination Signs at Circular Intersections	157
Section 2D.39	Destination Signs at Jughandles	158
Section 2D.40	Location of Destination Signs	158
Section 2D.41	Distance Signs (D2 Series).....	161
Section 2D.42	Location of Distance Signs	161
Section 2D.43	Street Name Signs (D3-1 or D3-1a).....	161
Section 2D.44	Advance Street Name Signs (D3-2)	163
Section 2D.45	Signing on Conventional Roads on Approaches to Interchanges	164
Section 2D.46	Freeway Entrance Signs (D13-3 and D13-3a).....	170
Section 2D.47	Parking Area Guide Sign (D4-1).....	171
Section 2D.48	PARK - RIDE Sign (D4-2)	171
Section 2D.49	Weigh Station Signing (D8 Series).....	172
Section 2D.50	Community Wayfinding Signs	172
Section 2D.51	Truck, Passing, or Climbing Lane Signs (D17-1 and D17-2).....	178
Section 2D.52	Slow Vehicle Turn-Out Sign (D17-7).....	178
Section 2D.53	Signing of Named Highways.....	179
Section 2D.54	Crossover Signs (D13-1 and D13-2)	179
Section 2D.55	National Scenic Byways Signs (D6-4, D6-4a).....	179

CHAPTER 2E. GUIDE SIGNS—FREEWAYS AND EXPRESSWAYS

Section 2E.01	Scope of Freeway and Expressway Guide Sign Standards.....	181
Section 2E.02	Freeway and Expressway Signing Principles	181
Section 2E.03	Guide Sign Classification	181
Section 2E.04	General.....	182
Section 2E.05	Color of Guide Signs.....	182
Section 2E.06	Retroreflection or Illumination.....	182
Section 2E.07	Characteristics of Urban Signing	182
Section 2E.08	Characteristics of Rural Signing	183
Section 2E.09	Signing of Named Highways.....	183
Section 2E.10	Amount of Legend on Guide Signs.....	183
Section 2E.11	Number of Signs at an Overhead Installation and Sign Spreading	183
Section 2E.12	Pull-Through Signs (E6-2, E6-2a).....	184
Section 2E.13	Designation of Destinations	184

Section 2E.14	Size and Style of Letters and Signs	185
Section 2E.15	Interline and Edge Spacing	185
Section 2E.16	Sign Borders.....	192
Section 2E.17	Abbreviations	192
Section 2E.18	Symbols.....	192
Section 2E.19	Arrows for Interchange Guide Signs.....	192
Section 2E.20	Signing for Option Lanes at Splits and Multi-Lane Exits	193
Section 2E.21	Design of Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for Option Lanes	193
Section 2E.22	Design of Freeway and Expressway Diagrammatic Guide Signs for Option Lanes	198
Section 2E.23	Signing for Intermediate and Minor Interchange Multi-Lane Exits with an Option Lane.....	203
Section 2E.24	Signing for Interchange Lane Drops	203
Section 2E.25	Overhead Sign Installations	206
Section 2E.26	Lateral Offset	210
Section 2E.27	Route Signs and Trailblazer Assemblies	210
Section 2E.28	Eisenhower Interstate System Signs (M1-10, M1-10a)	211
Section 2E.29	Signs for Intersections at Grade	211
Section 2E.30	Interchange Guide Signs	211
Section 2E.31	Interchange Exit Numbering	212
Section 2E.32	Interchange Classification	216
Section 2E.33	Advance Guide Signs	216
Section 2E.34	Next Exit Plaques	218
Section 2E.35	Other Supplemental Guide Signs	218
Section 2E.36	Exit Direction Signs	220
Section 2E.37	Exit Gore Signs (E5-1 Series)	222
Section 2E.38	Post-Interchange Signs	222
Section 2E.39	Post-Interchange Distance Signs	223
Section 2E.40	Interchange Sequence Signs.....	223
Section 2E.41	Community Interchanges Identification Signs	225
Section 2E.42	NEXT XX EXITS Sign	225
Section 2E.43	Signing by Type of Interchange	226
Section 2E.44	Freeway-to-Freeway Interchange	226
Section 2E.45	Cloverleaf Interchange	226
Section 2E.46	Cloverleaf Interchange with Collector-Distributor Roadways.....	230
Section 2E.47	Partial Cloverleaf Interchange.....	230
Section 2E.48	Diamond Interchange.....	230
Section 2E.49	Diamond Interchange in Urban Area.....	234
Section 2E.50	Closely-Spaced Interchanges.....	234
Section 2E.51	Minor Interchange.....	234
Section 2E.52	Signing on Conventional Road Approaches and Connecting Roadways.....	235
Section 2E.53	Wrong-Way Traffic Control at Interchange Ramps	235
Section 2E.54	Weigh Station Signing.....	236

CHAPTER 2F. TOLL ROAD SIGNS

Section 2F.01	Scope.....	237
Section 2F.02	Sizes of Toll Road Signs.....	237
Section 2F.03	Use of Purple Backgrounds and Underlay Panels with ETC Account Pictographs	238
Section 2F.04	Size of ETC Pictographs	238
Section 2F.05	Regulatory Signs for Toll Plazas	238
Section 2F.06	Pay Toll Advance Warning Sign (W9-6)	240
Section 2F.07	Pay Toll Advance Warning Plaque (W9-6P).....	241
Section 2F.08	Stop Ahead Pay Toll Warning Sign (W9-6a).....	242
Section 2F.09	Stop Ahead Pay Toll Warning Plaque (W9-6aP)	242
Section 2F.10	LAST EXIT BEFORE TOLL Warning Plaque (W16-16P)	242
Section 2F.11	TOLL Auxiliary Sign (M4-15)	242

Section 2F.12	Electronic Toll Collection (ETC) Account-Only Auxiliary Signs (M4-16 and M4-20).....	243
Section 2F.13	Toll Facility and Toll Plaza Guide Signs – General	243
Section 2F.14	Advance Signs for Conventional Toll Plazas.....	248
Section 2F.15	Advance Signs for Toll Plazas on Diverging Alignments from Open-Road ETC Account-Only Lanes	249
Section 2F.16	Toll Plaza Canopy Signs.....	252
Section 2F.17	Guide Signs for Entrances to ETC Account-Only Facilities	252
Section 2F.18	ETC Program Information Signs	252

CHAPTER 2G. PREFERENTIAL AND MANAGED LANE SIGNS

Section 2G.01	Scope.....	253
Section 2G.02	Sizes of Preferential and Managed Lane Signs	253
Section 2G.03	Regulatory Signs for Preferential Lanes – General.....	253
Section 2G.04	Preferential Lane Vehicle Occupancy Definition Regulatory Signs (R3-10 Series and R3-13 Series)	258
Section 2G.05	Preferential Lane Periods of Operation Regulatory Signs (R3-11 Series and R3-14 Series)...	259
Section 2G.06	Preferential Lane Advance Regulatory Signs (R3-12, R3-12e, R3-12f, R3-15, R3-15a, and R3-15d).....	263
Section 2G.07	Preferential Lane Ends Regulatory Signs (R3-12a, R3-12b, R3-12c, R3-12d, R3-12g, R3-12h, R3-15b, R3-15c, and R3-15e).....	263
Section 2G.08	Warning Signs on Median Barriers for Preferential Lanes	263
Section 2G.09	High-Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) Plaque (W16-11P)	264
Section 2G.10	Preferential Lane Guide Signs – General.....	265
Section 2G.11	Guide Signs for Initial Entry Points to Preferential Lanes.....	267
Section 2G.12	Guide Signs for Intermediate Entry Points to Preferential Lanes	268
Section 2G.13	Guide Signs for Egress from Preferential Lanes to General-Purpose Lanes	270
Section 2G.14	Guide Signs for Direct Entrances to Preferential Lanes from Another Highway	273
Section 2G.15	Guide Signs for Direct Exits from Preferential Lanes to Another Highway.....	273
Section 2G.16	Signs for Priced Managed Lanes – General.....	276
Section 2G.17	Regulatory Signs for Priced Managed Lanes.....	279
Section 2G.18	Guide Signs for Priced Managed Lanes.....	279

CHAPTER 2H. GENERAL INFORMATION SIGNS

Section 2H.01	Sizes of General Information Signs	292
Section 2H.02	General Information Signs (I Series).....	292
Section 2H.03	Traffic Signal Speed Sign (I1-1)	294
Section 2H.04	Miscellaneous Information Signs.....	294
Section 2H.05	Reference Location Signs (D10-1 through D10-3) and Intermediate Reference Location Signs (D10-1a through D10-3a)	294
Section 2H.06	Enhanced Reference Location Signs (D10-4, D10-5).....	296
Section 2H.07	Auto Tour Route Signs	297
Section 2H.08	Acknowledgment Signs.....	297

CHAPTER 2I. GENERAL SERVICE SIGNS

Section 2I.01	Sizes of General Service Signs.....	299
Section 2I.02	General Service Signs for Conventional Roads.....	300
Section 2I.03	General Service Signs for Freeways and Expressways	303
Section 2I.04	Interstate Oasis Signing.....	306
Section 2I.05	Rest Area and Other Roadside Area Signs.....	307
Section 2I.06	Brake Check Area Signs (D5-13 and D5-14)	308
Section 2I.07	Chain-Up Area Signs (D5-15 and D5-16)	308
Section 2I.08	Tourist Information and Welcome Center Signs	308
Section 2I.09	Radio Information Signing.....	310
Section 2I.10	TRAVEL INFO CALL 511 Signs (D12-5 and D12-5a).....	311
Section 2I.11	Carpool and Ridesharing Signing	311

CHAPTER 2J. SPECIFIC SERVICE SIGNS

Section 2J.01	Eligibility	312
Section 2J.02	Application	313
Section 2J.03	Logos and Logo Sign Panels	313
Section 2J.04	Number and Size of Signs and Logo Sign Panels	317
Section 2J.05	Size of Lettering	317
Section 2J.06	Signs at Interchanges	317
Section 2J.07	Single-Exit Interchanges	317
Section 2J.08	Double-Exit Interchanges	318
Section 2J.09	Specific Service Trailblazer Signs	318
Section 2J.10	Signs at Intersections	319
Section 2J.11	Signing Policy	319

CHAPTER 2K. TOURIST-ORIENTED DIRECTIONAL SIGNS

Section 2K.01	Purpose and Application	320
Section 2K.02	Design	320
Section 2K.03	Style and Size of Lettering	323
Section 2K.04	Arrangement and Size of Signs	323
Section 2K.05	Advance Signs	323
Section 2K.06	Sign Locations	324
Section 2K.07	State Policy	324

CHAPTER 2L. CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGNS

Section 2L.01	Description of Changeable Message Signs	325
Section 2L.02	Applications of Changeable Message Signs	325
Section 2L.03	Legibility and Visibility of Changeable Message Signs	326
Section 2L.04	Design Characteristics of Changeable Message Signs	326
Section 2L.05	Message Length and Units of Information	328
Section 2L.06	Installation of Permanent Changeable Message Signs	329

CHAPTER 2M. RECREATIONAL AND CULTURAL INTEREST AREA SIGNS

Section 2M.01	Scope	330
Section 2M.02	Application of Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Signs	330
Section 2M.03	Regulatory and Warning Signs	330
Section 2M.04	General Design Requirements for Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Guide Signs	330
Section 2M.05	Symbol Sign Sizes	332
Section 2M.06	Use of Educational Plaques	332
Section 2M.07	Use of Prohibitive Circle and Diagonal Slash for Non-Road Applications	332
Section 2M.08	Placement of Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs	332
Section 2M.09	Destination Guide Signs	333
Section 2M.10	Memorial or Dedication Signing	339

CHAPTER 2N. EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT SIGNING

Section 2N.01	Emergency Management	342
Section 2N.02	Design of Emergency Management Signs	342
Section 2N.03	Evacuation Route Signs (EM-1 and EM-1a)	342
Section 2N.04	AREA CLOSED Sign (EM-2)	344
Section 2N.05	TRAFFIC CONTROL POINT Sign (EM-3)	344
Section 2N.06	MAINTAIN TOP SAFE SPEED Sign (EM-4)	344
Section 2N.07	ROAD (AREA) USE PERMIT REQUIRED FOR THRU TRAFFIC Sign (EM-5)	345
Section 2N.08	Emergency Aid Center Signs (EM-6 Series)	345
Section 2N.09	Shelter Directional Signs (EM-7 Series)	346

PART 3. MARKINGS

CHAPTER 3A. GENERAL

Section 3A.01	Functions and Limitations.....	347
Section 3A.02	Standardization of Application	347
Section 3A.03	Maintaining Minimum Pavement Marking Retroreflectivity	347
Section 3A.04	Materials	347
Section 3A.05	Colors	348
Section 3A.06	Functions, Widths, and Patterns of Longitudinal Pavement Markings	348

CHAPTER 3B. PAVEMENT AND CURB MARKINGS

Section 3B.01	Yellow Center Line Pavement Markings and Warrants	349
Section 3B.02	No-Passing Zone Pavement Markings and Warrants	352
Section 3B.03	Other Yellow Longitudinal Pavement Markings	354
Section 3B.04	White Lane Line Pavement Markings and Warrants	356
Section 3B.05	Other White Longitudinal Pavement Markings	370
Section 3B.06	Edge Line Pavement Markings	371
Section 3B.07	Warrants for Use of Edge Lines	371
Section 3B.08	Extensions Through Intersections or Interchanges	371
Section 3B.09	Lane-Reduction Transition Markings	374
Section 3B.10	Approach Markings for Obstructions.....	376
Section 3B.11	Raised Pavement Markers – General	376
Section 3B.12	Raised Pavement Markers as Vehicle Positioning Guides with Other Longitudinal Markings	379
Section 3B.13	Raised Pavement Markers Supplementing Other Markings.....	379
Section 3B.14	Raised Pavement Markers Substituting for Pavement Markings.....	380
Section 3B.15	Transverse Markings	381
Section 3B.16	Stop and Yield Lines	381
Section 3B.17	Do Not Block Intersection Markings	382
Section 3B.18	Crosswalk Markings	383
Section 3B.19	Parking Space Markings	385
Section 3B.20	Pavement Word, Symbol, and Arrow Markings.....	387
Section 3B.21	Speed Measurement Markings.....	393
Section 3B.22	Speed Reduction Markings	393
Section 3B.23	Curb Markings	394
Section 3B.24	Chevron and Diagonal Crosshatch Markings.....	395
Section 3B.25	Speed Hump Markings	395
Section 3B.26	Advance Speed Hump Markings	395

CHAPTER 3C. ROUNDABOUT MARKINGS

Section 3C.01	General	399
Section 3C.02	White Lane Line Pavement Markings for Roundabouts	413
Section 3C.03	Edge Line Pavement Markings for Roundabout Circulatory Roadways	413
Section 3C.04	Yield Lines for Roundabouts.....	413
Section 3C.05	Crosswalk Markings at Roundabouts.....	413
Section 3C.06	Word, Symbol, and Arrow Pavement Markings for Roundabouts	413
Section 3C.07	Markings for Other Circular Intersections	414

CHAPTER 3D. MARKINGS FOR PREFERENTIAL LANES

Section 3D.01	Preferential Lane Word and Symbol Markings.....	415
Section 3D.02	Preferential Lane Longitudinal Markings for Motor Vehicles	416

CHAPTER 3E. MARKINGS FOR TOLL PLAZAS

Section 3E.01	Markings for Toll Plazas	423
---------------	--------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER 3F DELINEATORS

Section 3F.01	Delineators	424
Section 3F.02	Delineator Design	424
Section 3F.03	Delineator Application	424
Section 3F.04	Delineator Placement and Spacing.....	426

CHAPTER 3G COLORED PAVEMENTS

Section 3G.01	General	428
---------------	---------------	-----

CHAPTER 3H CHANNELIZING DEVICES USED FOR EMPHASIS OF PAVEMENT MARKING PATTERNS

Section 3H.01	Channelizing Devices	429
---------------	----------------------------	-----

CHAPTER 3I ISLANDS

Section 3I.01	General	430
Section 3I.02	Approach-End Treatment	430
Section 3I.03	Island Marking Application	430
Section 3I.04	Island Marking Colors	430
Section 3I.05	Island Delineation	431
Section 3I.06	Pedestrian Islands and Medians	431

CHAPTER 3J RUMBLE STRIP MARKINGS

Section 3J.01	Longitudinal Rumble Strip Markings	432
Section 3J.02	Transverse Rumble Strip Markings.....	432

PART 4 HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SIGNALS**CHAPTER 4A GENERAL**

Section 4A.01	Types	433
Section 4A.02	Definitions Relating to Highway Traffic Signals.....	433

CHAPTER 4B TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS—GENERAL

Section 4B.01	General	434
Section 4B.02	Basis of Installation or Removal of Traffic Control Signals.....	434
Section 4B.03	Advantages and Disadvantages of Traffic Control Signals	434
Section 4B.04	Alternatives to Traffic Control Signals.....	435
Section 4B.05	Adequate Roadway Capacity.....	435

CHAPTER 4C TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNAL NEEDS STUDIES

Section 4C.01	Studies and Factors for Justifying Traffic Control Signals.....	436
Section 4C.02	Warrant 1, Eight-Hour Vehicular Volume	437
Section 4C.03	Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume.....	439
Section 4C.04	Warrant 3, Peak Hour.....	439
Section 4C.05	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Volume	442
Section 4C.06	Warrant 5, School Crossing.....	442
Section 4C.07	Warrant 6, Coordinated Signal System	445
Section 4C.08	Warrant 7, Crash Experience.....	445
Section 4C.09	Warrant 8, Roadway Network	446
Section 4C.10	Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing	446

CHAPTER 4D TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNAL FEATURES

Section 4D.01	General	449
Section 4D.02	Responsibility for Operation and Maintenance.....	449
Section 4D.03	Provisions for Pedestrians	450
Section 4D.04	Meaning of Vehicular Signal Indications	450

Section 4D.05	Application of Steady Signal Indications	453
Section 4D.06	Signal Indications – Design, Illumination, Color, and Shape.....	456
Section 4D.07	Size of Vehicular Signal Indications	456
Section 4D.08	Positions of Signal Indications Within a Signal Face – General	457
Section 4D.09	Positions of Signal Indications Within a Vertical Signal Face	457
Section 4D.10	Positions of Signal Indications Within a Horizontal Signal Face.....	459
Section 4D.11	Number of Signal Faces on an Approach.....	459
Section 4D.12	Visibility, Aiming, and Shielding of Signal Faces	461
Section 4D.13	Lateral Positioning of Signal Faces.....	463
Section 4D.14	Longitudinal Positioning of Signal Faces.....	464
Section 4D.15	Mounting Height of Signal Faces	465
Section 4D.16	Lateral Offset (Clearance) of Signal Faces.....	465
Section 4D.17	Signal Indications for Left-Turn Movements – General	465
Section 4D.18	Signal Indications for Permissive Only Mode Left-Turn Movements	467
Section 4D.19	Signal Indications for Protected Only Mode Left-Turn Movements	469
Section 4D.20	Signal Indications for Protected/Permissive Mode Left-Turn Movements.....	471
Section 4D.21	Signal Indications for Right-Turn Movements – General	474
Section 4D.22	Signal Indications for Permissive Only Mode Right-Turn Movements	475
Section 4D.23	Signal Indications for Protected Only Mode Right-Turn Movements	478
Section 4D.24	Signal Indications for Protected/Permissive Mode Right-Turn Movements	480
Section 4D.25	Signal Indications for Approaches With Shared Left-Turn/Right-Turn Lanes and No Through Movement.....	484
Section 4D.26	Yellow Change and Red Clearance Intervals	485
Section 4D.27	Preemption and Priority Control of Traffic Control Signals	489
Section 4D.28	Flashing Operation of Traffic Control Signals – General	491
Section 4D.29	Flashing Operation – Transition Into Flashing Mode	491
Section 4D.30	Flashing Operation – Signal Indications During Flashing Mode	491
Section 4D.31	Flashing Operation – Transition Out of Flashing Mode	492
Section 4D.32	Temporary and Portable Traffic Control Signals	492
Section 4D.33	Lateral Offset of Signal Supports and Cabinets.....	493
Section 4D.34	Use of Signs at Signalized Locations.....	493
Section 4D.35	Use of Pavement Markings at Signalized Locations	494

CHAPTER 4E PEDESTRIAN CONTROL FEATURES

Section 4E.01	Pedestrian Signal Heads.....	495
Section 4E.02	Meaning of Pedestrian Signal Head Indications	495
Section 4E.03	Application of Pedestrian Signal Heads.....	495
Section 4E.04	Size, Design, and Illumination of Pedestrian Signal Head Indications.....	496
Section 4E.05	Location and Height of Pedestrian Signal Heads.....	497
Section 4E.06	Pedestrian Intervals and Signal Phases	497
Section 4E.07	Countdown Pedestrian Signals.....	499
Section 4E.08	Pedestrian Detectors	500
Section 4E.09	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – General	504
Section 4E.10	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Location	505
Section 4E.11	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Walk Indications.....	505
Section 4E.12	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Tactile Arrows and Locator Tones.....	507
Section 4E.13	Accessible Pedestrian Signals and Detectors – Extended Pushbutton Press Features	507

CHAPTER 4F PEDESTRIAN HYBRID BEACONS

Section 4F.01	Application of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons	509
Section 4F.02	Design of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons.....	509
Section 4F.03	Operation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons	511

CHAPTER 4G TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS AND HYBRID BEACONS FOR EMERGENCY-VEHICLE ACCESS

Section 4G.01	Application of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals and Hybrid Beacons	513
Section 4G.02	Design of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals	513
Section 4G.03	Operation of Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signals	513
Section 4G.04	Emergency-Vehicle Hybrid Beacons	514

CHAPTER 4H TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS FOR ONE-LANE, TWO-WAY FACILITIES

Section 4H.01	Application of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities	516
Section 4H.02	Design of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities.....	516
Section 4H.03	Operation of Traffic Control Signals for One-Lane, Two-Way Facilities.....	516

CHAPTER 4I TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS FOR FREEWAY ENTRANCE RAMPS

Section 4I.01	Application of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals.....	517
Section 4I.02	Design of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals	517
Section 4I.03	Operation of Freeway Entrance Ramp Control Signals	518

CHAPTER 4J TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR MOVABLE BRIDGES

Section 4J.01	Application of Traffic Control for Movable Bridges	519
Section 4J.02	Design and Location of Movable Bridge Signals and Gates	519
Section 4J.03	Operation of Movable Bridge Signals and Gates	521

CHAPTER 4K HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SIGNALS AT TOLL PLAZAS

Section 4K.01	Traffic Signals at Toll Plazas	522
Section 4K.02	Lane-Use Control Signals at or Near Toll Plazas	522
Section 4K.03	Warning Beacons at Toll Plazas	522

CHAPTER 4L FLASHING BEACONS

Section 4L.01	General Design and Operation of Flashing Beacons	523
Section 4L.02	Intersection Control Beacon.....	523
Section 4L.03	Warning Beacon.....	523
Section 4L.04	Speed Limit Sign Beacon.....	524
Section 4L.05	Stop Beacon	524

CHAPTER 4M LANE-USE CONTROL SIGNALS

Section 4M.01	Application of Lane-Use Control Signals	525
Section 4M.02	Meaning of Lane-Use Control Signal Indications.....	525
Section 4M.03	Design of Lane-Use Control Signals.....	526
Section 4M.04	Operation of Lane-Use Control Signals	527

CHAPTER 4N IN-ROADWAY LIGHTS

Section 4N.01	Application of In-Roadway Lights	528
Section 4N.02	In-Roadway Warning Lights at Crosswalks.....	528

PART 5 TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLUME ROADS

CHAPTER 5A GENERAL

Section 5A.01	Function	531
Section 5A.02	Application.....	531
Section 5A.03	Design	531
Section 5A.04	Placement	533

CHAPTER 5B REGULATORY SIGNS

Section 5B.01	Introduction.....	534
Section 5B.02	STOP and YIELD Signs (R1-1 and R1-2).....	534

Section 5B.03	Speed Limit Signs (R2 Series)	534
Section 5B.04	Traffic Movement and Prohibition Signs (R3, R4, R5, R6, R9, R10, R11, R12, R13, and R14 Series)	535
Section 5B.05	Parking Signs (R8 Series)	535
Section 5B.06	Other Regulatory Signs	535

CHAPTER 5C WARNING SIGNS

Section 5C.01	Introduction	536
Section 5C.02	Horizontal Alignment Signs (W1-1 through W1-8)	536
Section 5C.03	Intersection Warning Signs (W2-1 through W2-6)	537
Section 5C.04	Stop Ahead and Yield Ahead Signs (W3-1, W3-2)	537
Section 5C.05	NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2)	537
Section 5C.06	ONE LANE BRIDGE Sign (W5-3)	537
Section 5C.07	Hill Sign (W7-1)	537
Section 5C.08	PAVEMENT ENDS Sign (W8-3)	537
Section 5C.09	Vehicular Traffic Warning and Non-Vehicular Warning Signs (W11 Series and W8-6)	537
Section 5C.10	Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P)	539
Section 5C.11	DEAD END or NO OUTLET Signs (W14-1, W14-1a, W14-2, W14-2a)	539
Section 5C.12	NO TRAFFIC SIGNS Sign (W18-1)	539
Section 5C.13	Other Warning Signs	539
Section 5C.14	Object Markers and Barricades	539

CHAPTER 5D GUIDE SIGNS

Section 5D.01	Introduction	540
---------------	--------------------	-----

CHAPTER 5E MARKINGS

Section 5E.01	Introduction	541
Section 5E.02	Center Line Markings	541
Section 5E.03	Edge Line Markings	541
Section 5E.04	Delineators	541
Section 5E.05	Other Markings	541

CHAPTER 5F TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR HIGHWAY-RAIL GRADE CROSSINGS

Section 5F.01	Introduction	542
Section 5F.02	Grade Crossing (Crossbuck) Sign and Number of Tracks Plaque (R15-1, R15-2P)	542
Section 5F.03	Grade Crossing Advance Warning Signs (W10 Series)	542
Section 5F.04	STOP and YIELD Signs (R1-1, R1-2)	543
Section 5F.05	Pavement Markings	543
Section 5F.06	Other Traffic Control Devices	543

CHAPTER 5G TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONES

Section 5G.01	Introduction	544
Section 5G.02	Applications	544
Section 5G.03	Channelization Devices	544
Section 5G.04	Markings	545
Section 5G.05	Other Traffic Control Devices	545

CHAPTER 5H TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR SCHOOL AREAS

Section 5H.01	Introduction	546
---------------	--------------------	-----

PART 6 TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL

CHAPTER 6A GENERAL

Section 6A.01	General.....	547
---------------	--------------	-----

CHAPTER 6B FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES

Section 6B.01	Fundamental Principles of Temporary Traffic Control.....	549
---------------	--	-----

CHAPTER 6C TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ELEMENTS

Section 6C.01	Temporary Traffic Control Plans.....	551
Section 6C.02	Temporary Traffic Control Zones	552
Section 6C.03	Components of Temporary Traffic Control Zones	552
Section 6C.04	Advance Warning Area.....	552
Section 6C.05	Transition Area.....	554
Section 6C.06	Activity Area.....	554
Section 6C.07	Termination Area	555
Section 6C.08	Tapers.....	555
Section 6C.09	Detours and Diversions	558
Section 6C.10	One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	558
Section 6C.11	Flagger Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	558
Section 6C.12	Flag Transfer Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	558
Section 6C.13	Pilot Car Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	560
Section 6C.14	Temporary Traffic Control Signal Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	560
Section 6C.15	Stop or Yield Control Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control.....	560

CHAPTER 6D PEDESTRIAN AND WORKER SAFETY

Section 6D.01	Pedestrian Considerations	561
Section 6D.02	Accessibility Considerations	563
Section 6D.03	Worker Safety Considerations.....	564

CHAPTER 6E FLAGGER CONTROL

Section 6E.01	Qualifications for Flaggers.....	566
Section 6E.02	High-Visibility Safety Apparel.....	566
Section 6E.03	Hand-Signaling Devices.....	566
Section 6E.04	Automated Flagger Assistance Devices	567
Section 6E.05	STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Devices	569
Section 6E.06	Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Devices	571
Section 6E.07	Flagger Procedures	573
Section 6E.08	Flagger Stations.....	575

CHAPTER 6F TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONE DEVICES

Section 6F.01	Types of Devices	576
Section 6F.02	General Characteristics of Signs	576
Section 6F.03	Sign Placement.....	577
Section 6F.04	Sign Maintenance.....	583
Section 6F.05	Regulatory Sign Authority	583
Section 6F.06	Regulatory Sign Design	583
Section 6F.07	Regulatory Sign Applications	583
Section 6F.08	ROAD (STREET) CLOSED Sign (R11-2)	583
Section 6F.09	Local Traffic Only Signs (R11-3a, R11-4).....	585
Section 6F.10	Weight Limit Signs (R12-1, R12-2, R12-5)	585
Section 6F.11	STAY IN LANE Sign (R4-9).....	586
Section 6F.12	Work Zone and Higher Fines Signs and Plaques	586
Section 6F.13	PEDESTRIAN CROSSWALK Sign (R9-8).....	586
Section 6F.14	SIDEWALK CLOSED Signs (R9-9, R9-10, R9-11, R9-11a).....	586

Section 6F.15	Special Regulatory Signs	587
Section 6F.16	Warning Sign Function, Design, and Application.....	587
Section 6F.17	Position of Advance Warning Signs.....	587
Section 6F.18	ROAD (STREET) WORK Sign (W20-1).....	591
Section 6F.19	DETOUR Sign (W20-2)	591
Section 6F.20	ROAD (STREET) CLOSED Sign (W20-3)	591
Section 6F.21	ONE LANE ROAD Sign (W20-4)	591
Section 6F.22	Lane(s) Closed Signs (W20-5, W20-5a)	591
Section 6F.23	CENTER LANE CLOSED AHEAD Sign (W9-3).....	592
Section 6F.24	Lane Ends Sign (W4-2)	592
Section 6F.25	ON RAMP Plaque (W13-4P)	592
Section 6F.26	RAMP NARROWS Sign (W5-4)	592
Section 6F.27	SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD Sign (W23-1)	592
Section 6F.28	EXIT OPEN and EXIT CLOSED Signs (E5-2, E5-2a)	592
Section 6F.29	EXIT ONLY Sign (E5-3)	593
Section 6F.30	NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD Sign (W23-2)	593
Section 6F.31	Flagger Signs (W20-7, W20-7a)	593
Section 6F.32	Two-Way Traffic Sign (W6-3)	593
Section 6F.33	Workers Signs (W21-1, W21-1a)	593
Section 6F.34	FRESH OIL (TAR) Sign (W21-2)	593
Section 6F.35	ROAD MACHINERY AHEAD Sign (W21-3)	593
Section 6F.36	Motorized Traffic Signs (W8-6, W11-10).....	594
Section 6F.37	Shoulder Work Signs (W21-5, W21-5a, W21-5b)	594
Section 6F.38	SURVEY CREW Sign (W21-6)	594
Section 6F.39	UTILITY WORK Sign (W21-7)	594
Section 6F.40	Signs for Blasting Areas.....	594
Section 6F.41	BLASTING ZONE AHEAD Sign (W22-1).....	595
Section 6F.42	TURN OFF 2-WAY RADIO AND CELL PHONE Sign (W22-2)	595
Section 6F.43	END BLASTING ZONE Sign (W22-3)	595
Section 6F.44	Shoulder Signs and Plaque (W8-4, W8-9, W8-17, and W8-17P)	595
Section 6F.45	UNEVEN LANES Sign (W8-11)	595
Section 6F.46	STEEL PLATE AHEAD Sign (W8-24)	595
Section 6F.47	NO CENTER LINE Sign (W8-12)	595
Section 6F.48	Reverse Curve Signs (W1-4 Series)	596
Section 6F.49	Double Reverse Curve Signs (W24-1 Series)	596
Section 6F.50	Other Warning Signs.....	596
Section 6F.51	Special Warning Signs	596
Section 6F.52	Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P)	596
Section 6F.53	Supplementary Distance Plaque (W7-3aP)	597
Section 6F.54	Motorcycle Plaque (W8-15P)	597
Section 6F.55	Guide Signs	597
Section 6F.56	ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES Sign (G20-1)	597
Section 6F.57	END ROAD WORK Sign (G20-2).....	598
Section 6F.58	PILOT CAR FOLLOW ME Sign (G20-4).....	598
Section 6F.59	Detour Signs (M4-8, M4-8a, M4-8b, M4-9, M4-9a, M4-9b, M4-9c, and M4-10)	598
Section 6F.60	Portable Changeable Message Signs	598
Section 6F.61	Arrow Boards.....	601
Section 6F.62	High-Level Warning Devices (Flag Trees)	603
Section 6F.63	Channelizing Devices	604
Section 6F.64	Cones.....	606
Section 6F.65	Tubular Markers	606
Section 6F.66	Vertical Panels.....	607
Section 6F.67	Drums	607

Section 6F.68	Type 1, 2, or 3 Barricades	607
Section 6F.69	Direction Indicator Barricades.....	609
Section 6F.70	Temporary Traffic Barriers as Channelizing Devices.....	609
Section 6F.71	Longitudinal Channelizing Devices.....	609
Section 6F.72	Temporary Lane Separators	610
Section 6F.73	Other Channelizing Devices	610
Section 6F.74	Detectable Edging for Pedestrians	610
Section 6F.75	Temporary Raised Islands.....	611
Section 6F.76	Opposing Traffic Lane Divider and Sign (W6-4).....	611
Section 6F.77	Pavement Markings.....	612
Section 6F.78	Temporary Markings	612
Section 6F.79	Temporary Raised Pavement Markers	613
Section 6F.80	Delineators	613
Section 6F.81	Lighting Devices	614
Section 6F.82	Floodlights	614
Section 6F.83	Warning Lights	614
Section 6F.84	Temporary Traffic Control Signals.....	615
Section 6F.85	Temporary Traffic Barriers	616
Section 6F.86	Crash Cushions	617
Section 6F.87	Rumble Strips.....	618
Section 6F.88	Screens	618

CHAPTER 6G TYPE OF TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONE ACTIVITIES

Section 6G.01	Typical Applications.....	619
Section 6G.02	Work Duration.....	619
Section 6G.03	Location of Work	621
Section 6G.04	Modifications To Fulfill Special Needs.....	621
Section 6G.05	Work Affecting Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities.....	622
Section 6G.06	Work Outside of the Shoulder	622
Section 6G.07	Work on the Shoulder with No Encroachment.....	623
Section 6G.08	Work on the Shoulder with Minor Encroachment.....	624
Section 6G.09	Work Within the Median	624
Section 6G.10	Work Within the Traveled Way of a Two-Lane Highway	624
Section 6G.11	Work Within the Traveled Way of an Urban Street.....	625
Section 6G.12	Work Within the Traveled Way of a Multi-Lane, Non-Access Controlled Highway	625
Section 6G.13	Work Within the Traveled Way at an Intersection	626
Section 6G.14	Work Within the Traveled Way of a Freeway or Expressway	627
Section 6G.15	Two-Lane, Two-Way Traffic on One Roadway of a Normally Divided Highway.....	628
Section 6G.16	Crossovers	628
Section 6G.17	Interchanges	628
Section 6G.18	Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing.....	629
Section 6G.19	Temporary Traffic Control During Nighttime Hours.....	629

CHAPTER 6H TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Section 6H.01	Typical Applications.....	631
---------------	---------------------------	-----

CHAPTER 6I CONTROL OF TRAFFIC THROUGH TRAFFIC INCIDENT MANAGEMENT AREAS

Section 6I.01	General.....	726
Section 6I.02	Major Traffic Incidents.....	727
Section 6I.03	Intermediate Traffic Incidents.....	728
Section 6I.04	Minor Traffic Incidents	728
Section 6I.05	Use of Emergency-Vehicle Lighting.....	729

PART 7 TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR SCHOOL AREAS

CHAPTER 7A GENERAL

Section 7A.01	Need for Standards.....	731
Section 7A.02	School Routes and Established School Crossings	731
Section 7A.03	School Crossing Control Criteria	731
Section 7A.04	Scope.....	732

CHAPTER 7B SIGNS

Section 7B.01	Size of School Signs.....	733
Section 7B.02	Illumination and Reflectorization.....	734
Section 7B.03	Position of Signs.....	734
Section 7B.04	Height of Signs.....	734
Section 7B.05	Installation of Signs.....	734
Section 7B.06	Lettering.....	734
Section 7B.07	Sign Color for School Warning Signs	734
Section 7B.08	School Sign (S1-1) and Plaques	734
Section 7B.09	School Zone Sign (S1-1) and Plaques (S4-3P, S4-7P) and END SCHOOL ZONE Sign (S5-2).....	736
Section 7B.10	Higher Fines Zone Signs (R2-10, R2-11) and Plaques	736
Section 7B.11	School Advance Crossing Assembly.....	736
Section 7B.12	School Crossing Assembly.....	741
Section 7B.13	School Bus Stop Ahead Sign (S3-1).....	742
Section 7B.14	SCHOOL BUS TURN AHEAD Sign (S3-2).....	742
Section 7B.15	School Speed Limit Assembly (S4-1P, S4-2P, S4-3P, S4-4P, S4-6P, S5-1) and END SCHOOL SPEED LIMIT Sign (S5-3).....	742
Section 7B.16	Reduced School Speed Limit Ahead Sign (S4-5, S4-5a).....	743
Section 7B.17	Parking and Stopping Signs (R7 and R8 Series).....	743

CHAPTER 7C MARKINGS

Section 7C.01	Functions and Limitations.....	744
Section 7C.02	Crosswalk Markings	744
Section 7C.03	Pavement Word, Symbol, and Arrow Markings.....	744

CHAPTER 7D CROSSING SUPERVISION

Section 7D.01	Types of Crossing Supervision.....	745
Section 7D.02	Adult Crossing Guards.....	745
Section 7D.03	Qualifications of Adult Crossing Guards	745
Section 7D.04	Uniform of Adult Crossing Guards.....	745
Section 7D.05	Operating Procedures for Adult Crossing Guards	745

PART 8 TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR RAILROAD AND LIGHT RAIL TRANSIT GRADE CROSSINGS

CHAPTER 8A GENERAL

Section 8A.01	Introduction.....	747
Section 8A.02	Use of Standard Devices, Systems, and Practices at Highway-Rail Grade Crossings	747
Section 8A.03	Use of Standard Devices, Systems, and Practices at Highway-LRT Grade Crossings.....	748
Section 8A.04	Uniform Provisions	749
Section 8A.05	Grade Crossing Elimination.....	749
Section 8A.06	Illumination at Grade Crossings	750
Section 8A.07	Quiet Zone Treatments at Highway-Rail Grade Crossings	750
Section 8A.08	Temporary Traffic Control Zones	750

CHAPTER 8B SIGNS AND MARKINGS

Section 8B.01	Purpose	751
Section 8B.02	Sizes of Grade Crossing Signs	751
Section 8B.03	Grade Crossing (Crossbuck) Sign (R15-1) and Number of Tracks Plaque (R15-2P) at Active and Passive Grade Crossings	751
Section 8B.04	Crossbuck Assemblies with YIELD or STOP Signs at Passive Grade Crossings.....	754
Section 8B.05	Use of STOP (R1-1) or YIELD (R1-2) Signs without Crossbuck Signs at Highway-LRT Grade Crossings	758
Section 8B.06	Grade Crossing Advance Warning Signs (W10 Series)	758
Section 8B.07	EXEMPT Grade Crossing Plaques (R15-3P, W10-1aP).....	759
Section 8B.08	Turn Restrictions During Preemption	760
Section 8B.09	DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS Sign (R8-8).....	760
Section 8B.10	TRACKS OUT OF SERVICE Sign (R8-9).....	760
Section 8B.11	STOP HERE WHEN FLASHING Signs (R8-10, R8-10a)	761
Section 8B.12	STOP HERE ON RED Signs (R10-6, R10-6a).....	761
Section 8B.13	Light Rail Transit Only Lane Signs (R15-4 Series)	761
Section 8B.14	Do Not Pass Light Rail Transit Signs (R15-5, R15-5a)	761
Section 8B.15	No Motor Vehicles On Tracks Signs (R15-6, R15-6a).....	762
Section 8B.16	Divided Highway with Light Rail Transit Crossing Signs (R15-7 Series).....	762
Section 8B.17	LOOK Sign (R15-8).....	762
Section 8B.18	Emergency Notification Sign (I-13).....	762
Section 8B.19	Light Rail Transit Approaching-Activated Blank-Out Warning Sign (W10-7).....	763
Section 8B.20	TRAINS MAY EXCEED 80 MPH Sign (W10-8)	763
Section 8B.21	NO TRAIN HORN Sign or Plaque (W10-9, W10-9P)	763
Section 8B.22	NO GATES OR LIGHTS Plaque (W10-13P)	763
Section 8B.23	Low Ground Clearance Grade Crossing Sign (W10-5)	763
Section 8B.24	Storage Space Signs (W10-11, W10-11a, W10-11b).....	764
Section 8B.25	Skewed Crossing Sign (W10-12).....	764
Section 8B.26	Light Rail Transit Station Sign (I-12).....	764
Section 8B.27	Pavement Markings.....	764
Section 8B.28	Stop and Yield Lines.....	766
Section 8B.29	Dynamic Envelope Markings.....	767

CHAPTER 8C FLASHING-LIGHT SIGNALS, GATES, AND TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS

Section 8C.01	Introduction.....	769
Section 8C.02	Flashing-Light Signals	769
Section 8C.03	Flashing-Light Signals at Highway-LRT Grade Crossings	772
Section 8C.04	Automatic Gates.....	772
Section 8C.05	Use of Automatic Gates at LRT Grade Crossings.....	773
Section 8C.06	Four-Quadrant Gate Systems	773
Section 8C.07	Wayside Horn Systems.....	775
Section 8C.08	Rail Traffic Detection.....	775
Section 8C.09	Traffic Control Signals at or Near Highway-Rail Grade Crossings	776
Section 8C.10	Traffic Control Signals at or Near Highway-LRT Grade Crossings.....	777
Section 8C.11	Use of Traffic Control Signals for Control of LRT Vehicles at Grade Crossings.....	778
Section 8C.12	Grade Crossings Within or In Close Proximity to Circular Intersections.....	780
Section 8C.13	Pedestrian and Bicycle Signals and Crossings at LRT Grade Crossings.....	780

CHAPTER 8D PATHWAY GRADE CROSSINGS

Section 8D.01	Purpose	786
Section 8D.02	Use of Standard Devices, Systems, and Practices.....	786
Section 8D.03	Pathway Grade Crossing Signs and Markings	786
Section 8D.04	Stop Lines, Edge Lines, and Detectable Warnings	786
Section 8D.05	Passive Devices for Pathway Grade Crossings.....	787
Section 8D.06	Active Traffic Control Systems for Pathway Grade Crossings	788

PART 9 TRAFFIC CONTROL FOR BICYCLE FACILITIES

CHAPTER 9A GENERAL

Section 9A.01	Requirements for Bicyclist Traffic Control Devices.....	789
Section 9A.02	Scope.....	789
Section 9A.03	Definitions Relating to Bicycles	789
Section 9A.04	Maintenance.....	789
Section 9A.05	Relation to Other Documents.....	789
Section 9A.06	Placement Authority.....	789
Section 9A.07	Meaning of Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support.....	789
Section 9A.08	Colors.....	789

CHAPTER 9B SIGNS

Section 9B.01	Application and Placement of Signs.....	790
Section 9B.02	Design of Bicycle Signs.....	790
Section 9B.03	STOP and YIELD Signs (R1-1, R1-2).....	792
Section 9B.04	Bike Lane Signs and Plaques (R3-17, R3-17aP, R3-17bP).....	794
Section 9B.05	BEGIN RIGHT TURN LANE YIELD TO BIKES Sign (R4-4).....	794
Section 9B.06	Bicycles May Use Full Lane Sign (R4-11).....	794
Section 9B.07	Bicycle WRONG WAY Sign and RIDE WITH TRAFFIC Plaque (R5-1b, R9-3cP).....	794
Section 9B.08	NO MOTOR VEHICLES Sign (R5-3).....	795
Section 9B.09	Selective Exclusion Signs.....	795
Section 9B.10	No Parking Bike Lane Signs (R7-9, R7-9a).....	795
Section 9B.11	Bicycle Regulatory Signs (R9-5, R9-6, R10-4, R10-24, R10-25, and R10-26).....	795
Section 9B.12	Shared-Use Path Restriction Sign (R9-7).....	795
Section 9B.13	Bicycle Signal Actuation Sign (R10-22).....	796
Section 9B.14	Other Regulatory Signs.....	796
Section 9B.15	Turn or Curve Warning Signs (W1 Series).....	796
Section 9B.16	Intersection Warning Signs (W2 Series).....	796
Section 9B.17	Bicycle Surface Condition Warning Sign (W8-10).....	796
Section 9B.18	Bicycle Warning and Combined Bicycle/Pedestrian Signs (W11-1 and W11-15).....	796
Section 9B.19	Other Bicycle Warning Signs.....	798
Section 9B.20	Bicycle Guide Signs (D1-1b, D1-1c, D1-2b, D1-2c, D1-3b, D1-3c, D11-1, D11-1c).....	798
Section 9B.21	Bicycle Route Signs (M1-8, M1-8a, M1-9).....	800
Section 9B.22	Bicycle Route Sign Auxiliary Plaques.....	802
Section 9B.23	Bicycle Parking Area Sign (D4-3).....	804
Section 9B.24	Reference Location Signs (D10-1 through D10-3) and Intermediate Reference Location Signs (D10-1a through D10-3a).....	804
Section 9B.25	Mode-Specific Guide Signs for Shared-Use Paths (D11-1a, D11-2, D11-3, D11-4).....	805
Section 9B.26	Object Markers.....	805

CHAPTER 9C MARKINGS

Section 9C.01	Functions of Markings.....	806
Section 9C.02	General Principles.....	806
Section 9C.03	Marking Patterns and Colors on Shared-Use Paths.....	806
Section 9C.04	Markings For Bicycle Lanes.....	806
Section 9C.05	Bicycle Detector Symbol.....	810
Section 9C.06	Pavement Markings for Obstructions.....	810
Section 9C.07	Shared Lane Marking.....	810

CHAPTER 9D SIGNALS

Section 9D.01	Application.....	816
Section 9D.02	Signal Operations for Bicycles.....	816

APPENDIX A1. CONGRESSIONAL LEGISLATION	A1-1
APPENDIX A2. METRIC CONVERSIONS	A2-1

FIGURES

	<u>Page</u>
Figure 1A-1	Process for Requesting and Conducting Experimentations for New Traffic Control Devices ... 5
Figure 1A-2	Process for Incorporating New Traffic Control Devices into the MUTCD 8
Figure 2A-1	Examples of Enhanced Conspicuity for Signs 37
Figure 2A-2	Examples of Heights and Lateral Locations of Sign Installations 38
Figure 2A-3	Examples of Locations for Some Typical Signs at Intersections..... 39
Figure 2A-4	Relative Locations of Regulatory, Warning, and Guide Signs on an Intersection Approach... 40
Figure 2B-1	STOP and YIELD Signs and Plaques 51
Figure 2B-2	Unsignalized Pedestrian Crosswalk Signs 55
Figure 2B-3	Speed Limit and Photo Enforcement Signs and Plaques..... 57
Figure 2B-4	Movement Prohibition and Lane Control Signs and Plaques 60
Figure 2B-5	Intersection Lane Control Sign Arrow Options for Roundabouts 62
Figure 2B-6	Center and Reversible Lane Control Signs and Plaques..... 65
Figure 2B-7	Location of Reversible Two-Way Left-Turn Signs..... 66
Figure 2B-8	Jughandle Regulatory Signs 68
Figure 2B-9	Examples of Applications of Jughandle Regulatory and Guide Signing..... 69
Figure 2B-10	Passing, Keep Right, and Slow Traffic Signs 72
Figure 2B-11	Selective Exclusion Signs 75
Figure 2B-12	Locations of Wrong-Way Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths of 30 Feet or Wider 76
Figure 2B-13	ONE WAY and Divided Highway Crossing Signs 78
Figure 2B-14	Locations of ONE WAY Signs..... 79
Figure 2B-15	ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths of 30 Feet or Wider 80
Figure 2B-16	ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths Narrower Than 30 Feet 81
Figure 2B-17	ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths Narrower Than 30 Feet and Separated Left-Turn Lanes 82
Figure 2B-18	Example of Application of Regulatory Signing and Pavement Markings at an Exit Ramp Termination to Deter Wrong-Way Entry 83
Figure 2B-19	Example of Application of Regulatory Signing and Pavement Markings at an Entrance Ramp Terminal Where the Design Does Not Clearly Indicate the Direction of Flow 83
Figure 2B-20	Roundabout Signs and Plaques 84
Figure 2B-21	Example of Regulatory and Warning Signs for a Mini-Roundabout 85
Figure 2B-22	Example of Regulatory and Warning Signs for a One-Lane Roundabout 86
Figure 2B-23	Example of Regulatory and Warning Signs for a Two-Lane Roundabout with Consecutive Double Lefts 87
Figure 2B-24	Parking and Standing Signs and Plaques (R7 Series) 88
Figure 2B-25	Parking and Stopping Signs and Plaques (R8 Series) 90
Figure 2B-26	Pedestrian Signs and Plaques 93
Figure 2B-27	Traffic Signal Signs and Plaques 96
Figure 2B-28	Ramp Metering Signs..... 97
Figure 2B-29	Road Closed and Weight Limit Signs 98
Figure 2B-30	Truck Signs 99
Figure 2B-31	Headlight Use Signs 100
Figure 2B-32	Other Regulatory Signs and Symbols 101
Figure 2C-1	Horizontal Alignment Signs and Plaques 109
Figure 2C-2	Example of Warning Signs for a Turn..... 111
Figure 2C-3	Example of Advisory Speed Signing for an Exit Ramp..... 116
Figure 2C-4	Vertical Grade Signs and Plaques 117
Figure 2C-5	Miscellaneous Warning Signs..... 118

Figure 2C-6	Roadway and Weather Condition and Advance Traffic Control Signs and Plaques.....	121
Figure 2C-7	Reduced Speed Limit Ahead Signs.....	124
Figure 2C-8	Merging and Passing Signs and Plaques	125
Figure 2C-9	Intersection Warning Signs and Plaques	127
Figure 2C-10	Vehicular Traffic Warning Signs and Plaques.....	129
Figure 2C-11	Non-Vehicular Warning Signs.....	130
Figure 2C-12	Supplemental Warning Plaques.....	132
Figure 2C-13	Object Markers.....	135
Figure 2D-1	Examples of Color-Coded Destination Guide Signs	138
Figure 2D-2	Arrows for Use on Guide Signs.....	141
Figure 2D-3	Route Signs	143
Figure 2D-4	Route Sign Auxiliaries	145
Figure 2D-5	Advance Turn and Directional Arrow Auxiliary Signs	147
Figure 2D-6	Illustration of Directional Assemblies and Other Route Signs (for One Direction of Travel Only).....	149
Figure 2D-7	Destination and Distance Signs.....	155
Figure 2D-8	Destination Signs for Roundabouts.....	158
Figure 2D-9	Examples of Guide Signs for Roundabouts.....	159
Figure 2D-10	Street Name and Parking Signs.....	162
Figure 2D-11	Example of Interchange Crossroad Signing for a One-Lane Approach	165
Figure 2D-12	Example of Minor Interchange Crossroad Signing	166
Figure 2D-13	Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Diamond Interchange	167
Figure 2D-14	Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Partial Cloverleaf Interchange	168
Figure 2D-15	Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Cloverleaf Interchange.....	169
Figure 2D-16	Example of Crossroad Signing for an Entrance Ramp with a Nearby Frontage Road.....	170
Figure 2D-17	Example of Weigh Station Signing	173
Figure 2D-18	Examples of Community Wayfinding Guide Signs.....	174
Figure 2D-19	Example of a Community Wayfinding Guide Sign System Showing Direction from a Freeway or Expressway	175
Figure 2D-20	Example of a Color-Coded Community Wayfinding Guide Sign System.....	176
Figure 2D-21	Crossover, Truck Lane, and Slow Vehicle Signs	178
Figure 2D-22	Examples of Use of the National Scenic Byways Sign	180
Figure 2E-1	Example of Guide Sign Spreading	184
Figure 2E-2	Pull-Through Signs	184
Figure 2E-3	Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Sign for a Multi-Lane Exit with an Option Lane	194
Figure 2E-4	Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane	195
Figure 2E-5	Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane (Through Lanes Curve to the Left)	196
Figure 2E-6	Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Split with an Option Lane	197
Figure 2E-7	Diagrammatic Guide Sign for a Multi-Lane Exit with an Option Lane.....	199
Figure 2E-8	Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane	200
Figure 2E-9	Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane (Through Lanes Curve to the Left).....	201
Figure 2E-10	Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Split with an Option Lane	202
Figure 2E-11	Example of Signing for a Two-Lane Intermediate or Minor Interchange Exit with an Option Lane and a Dropped Lane.....	204
Figure 2E-12	Example of Signing for a Two-Lane Intermediate or Minor Interchange Exit with Option and Auxiliary Lanes.....	205
Figure 2E-13	EXIT ONLY and LEFT Sign Panels.....	206
Figure 2E-14	Guide Signs for a Split with Dedicated Lanes.....	207
Figure 2E-15	Guide Signs for a Single-Lane Exit to the Left with a Dropped Lane	208
Figure 2E-16	Guide Signs for a Single-Lane Exit to the Right with a Dropped Lane	209
Figure 2E-17	Interstate, Off-Interstate, and U.S. Route Signs	210

Figure 2E-18	Eisenhower Interstate System Signs.....	211
Figure 2E-19	Example of Interchange Numbering for Mainline and Circumferential Routes	213
Figure 2E-20	Example of Interchange Numbering for Mainline, Loop, and Spur Routes.....	214
Figure 2E-21	Example of Interchange Numbering for Overlapping Routes	215
Figure 2E-22	Examples of Interchange Advance Guide Signs, Exit Number Plaques, and LEFT Plaque ...	217
Figure 2E-23	Next Exit Plaques	218
Figure 2E-24	Supplemental Guide Sign for a Multi-Exit Interchange	219
Figure 2E-25	Supplemental Guide Sign for a Park – Ride Facility.....	219
Figure 2E-26	Examples of Interchange Exit Direction Signs	220
Figure 2E-27	Interchange Exit Direction Sign with an Advisory Speed Panel.....	221
Figure 2E-28	Exit Gore Signs	222
Figure 2E-29	Post-Interchange Distance Sign.....	223
Figure 2E-30	Example of Using an Interchange Sequence Sign for Closely-Spaced Interchanges	224
Figure 2E-31	Interchange Sequence Sign	225
Figure 2E-32	Community Interchanges Identification Sign.....	225
Figure 2E-33	NEXT EXITS Sign.....	225
Figure 2E-34	Examples of Guide Signs for a Freeway-to-Freeway Interchange.....	227
Figure 2E-35	Examples of Guide Signs for a Full Cloverleaf Interchange	229
Figure 2E-36	Examples of Guide Signs for a Full Cloverleaf Interchange with Collector-Distributor Roadways	231
Figure 2E-37	Examples of Guide Signs for a Partial Cloverleaf Interchange	232
Figure 2E-38	Examples of Guide Signs for a Diamond Interchange	233
Figure 2E-39	Examples of Guide Signs for a Diamond Interchange in an Urban Area.....	235
Figure 2E-40	Examples of Guide Signs for a Minor Interchange	236
Figure 2F-1	Examples of ETC Account Pictographs and Use of Purple Backgrounds and Underlay Panels	239
Figure 2F-2	Toll Plaza Regulatory Signs and Plaques	240
Figure 2F-3	Toll Plaza Warning Signs and Plaques.....	241
Figure 2F-4	ETC Account-Only Auxiliary Signs for Use in Route Sign Assemblies	243
Figure 2F-5	Examples of Guide Signs for Entrances to Toll Highways or Ramps	245
Figure 2F-6	Examples of Guide Signs for the Entrance to a Toll Highway on which Tolls are Collected Electronically Only.....	246
Figure 2F-7	Examples of Guide Signs for Alternative Toll and Non-Toll Ramp Connections to a Non-Toll Highway	247
Figure 2F-8	Examples of Conventional Toll Plaza Advance Signs.....	248
Figure 2F-9	Examples of Toll Plaza Canopy Signs.....	248
Figure 2F-10	Examples of Mainline Toll Plaza Approach and Canopy Signing	250
Figure 2F-11	Examples of Guide Signs for a Mainline Toll Plaza on a Diverging Alignment from Open-Road ETC Lanes	251
Figure 2G-1	Preferential Lane Regulatory Signs and Plaques	255
Figure 2G-2	Example of Signing for an Added Continuous-Access Contiguous or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	261
Figure 2G-3	Example of Signing for a General-Purpose Lane that Becomes a Continuous-Access Contiguous or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	262
Figure 2G-4	Examples of Warning Signs and Plaques Applicable Only to Preferential Lanes.....	264
Figure 2G-5	Example of an Overhead Advance Guide Sign for a Preferential Lane Entrance	267
Figure 2G-6	Examples of Overhead or Post-Mounted Preferential Lane Entrance Direction Signs	267
Figure 2G-7	Entrance Gore Signs for Barrier-Separated Preferential Lanes.....	268
Figure 2G-8	Example of Signing for an Entrance to Access-Restricted HOV Lanes	269
Figure 2G-9	Example of Signing for an Intermediate Entry to a Barrier- or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	271
Figure 2G-10	Example of Signing for the Intermediate Entry to, Egress from, and End of Access- Restricted HOV Lanes	272

Figure 2G-11	Examples of Barrier-Mounted Guide Signs for an Intermediate Egress from Preferential Lanes	273
Figure 2G-12	Examples of Guide Signs for an Intermediate Egress from a Barrier- or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	274
Figure 2G-13	Example of Signing for a Direct Entrance Ramp to an HOV Lane from a Park-and-Ride Facility and a Local Street	275
Figure 2G-14	Exit Gore Sign for a Direct Exit from a Preferential Lane.....	276
Figure 2G-15	Examples of Guide Signs for Direct HOV Lane Entrance and Exit Ramps	277
Figure 2G-16	Examples of Guide Signs for a Direct Access Ramp between HOV Lanes on Separate Freeways.....	278
Figure 2G-17	Regulatory Signs for Managed Lanes	280
Figure 2G-18	Examples of Guide Signs for Entrances to Priced Managed Lanes	281
Figure 2G-19	Example of an Exit Destinations Sign for a Managed Lane	282
Figure 2G-20	Example of a Comparative Travel Time Information Sign for Preferential or Managed Lanes	282
Figure 2G-21	Example of Signing for the Entrance to an Access-Restricted Priced Managed Lane	283
Figure 2G-22	Example of Signing for the Entrance to an Access-Restricted Priced Managed Lane Where a General-Purpose Lane Becomes the Managed Lane.....	284
Figure 2G-23	Example of Signing for an Intermediate Entry to a Barrier- or Buffer-Separated Priced Managed Lane.....	285
Figure 2G-24	Example of Signing for the Intermediate Entry to, Egress from, and End of Access-Restricted Priced Managed Lanes.....	286
Figure 2G-25	Examples of Guide Signs for an Intermediate Egress from a Barrier- or Buffer-Separated HOV Lane	287
Figure 2G-26	Examples of Guide Signs for Direct Managed Lane Entrance and Exit Ramps	288
Figure 2G-27	Examples of Guide Signs for a Direct Access Ramp between Managed Lanes on Separate Freeways.....	289
Figure 2G-28	Examples of Guide Signs for a Direct Entrance Ramp to a Priced Managed Lane and Trailblazing to a Nearby Entrance to the General-Purpose Lanes.....	290
Figure 2G-29	Examples of Guide Signs for Separate Entrance Ramps to General-Purpose and Priced Managed Lanes from the Same Crossroad	291
Figure 2H-1	General Information and Miscellaneous Information Signs	293
Figure 2H-2	Reference Location Signs.....	295
Figure 2H-3	Intermediate Reference Location Signs	295
Figure 2H-4	Enhanced Reference Location Signs.....	296
Figure 2H-5	Examples of Acknowledgment Sign Designs.....	298
Figure 2I-1	General Service Signs and Plaques.....	301
Figure 2I-2	Example of Next Services Plaque	302
Figure 2I-3	Examples of General Service Signs with and without Exit Numbering.....	304
Figure 2I-4	Examples of Interstate Oasis Signs and Plaques	306
Figure 2I-5	Rest Area and Other Roadside Area Signs.....	307
Figure 2I-6	Brake Check Area and Chain-Up Area Signs.....	308
Figure 2I-7	Examples of Tourist Information and Welcome Center Signs	309
Figure 2I-8	Radio, Telephone, and Carpool Information Signs	310
Figure 2J-1	Examples of Specific Service Signs	314
Figure 2J-2	Examples of Specific Service Sign Locations	315
Figure 2J-3	Examples of Supplemental Messages on Logo Sign Panels.....	316
Figure 2J-4	Examples of RV Access Supplemental Messages on Logo Sign Panels	316
Figure 2J-5	Examples of Specific Service Trailblazer Signs.....	319
Figure 2K-1	Examples of Tourist-Oriented Directional Signs	321
Figure 2K-2	Examples of Intersection Approach Signs and Advance Signs for Tourist-Oriented Directional Signs.....	322
Figure 2M-1	Examples of Use of Arrows, Educational Plaques, and Prohibitory Slashes	333

Figure 2M-2	Examples of Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Guide Signs	334
Figure 2M-3	Arrangement, Height, and Lateral Position of Signs Located Within Recreational and Cultural Interest Areas	335
Figure 2M-4	Examples of Symbol and Destination Guide Signing Layout	336
Figure 2M-5	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for General Applications	337
Figure 2M-6	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Accommodations	338
Figure 2M-7	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Services.....	338
Figure 2M-8	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Land Recreation.....	339
Figure 2M-9	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Water Recreation	340
Figure 2M-10	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbol Signs for Winter Recreation.....	341
Figure 2N-1	Emergency Management Signs	343
Figure 3B-1	Examples of Two-Lane, Two-Way Marking Applications	350
Figure 3B-2	Examples of Four-or-More Lane, Two-Way Marking Applications.....	351
Figure 3B-3	Examples of Three-Lane, Two-Way Marking Applications.....	352
Figure 3B-4	Method of Locating and Determining the Limits of No-Passing Zones at Curves	353
Figure 3B-5	Example of Application of Three-Lane, Two-Way Marking for Changing Direction of the Center Lane	355
Figure 3B-6	Example of Reversible Lane Marking Application	356
Figure 3B-7	Example of Two-Way Left-Turn Lane Marking Applications.....	357
Figure 3B-8	Examples of Dotted Line and Channelizing Line Applications for Exit Ramp Markings....	358
Figure 3B-9	Examples of Dotted Line and Channelizing Line Applications for Entrance Ramp Markings	360
Figure 3B-10	Examples of Applications of Freeway and Expressway Lane-Drop Markings	363
Figure 3B-11	Examples of Applications of Conventional Road Lane-Drop Markings.....	368
Figure 3B-12	Example of Solid Double White Lines Used to Prohibit Lane Changing	370
Figure 3B-13	Examples of Line Extensions through Intersections	372
Figure 3B-14	Examples of Applications of Lane-Reduction Transition Markings	375
Figure 3B-15	Examples of Applications of Markings for Obstructions in the Roadway	377
Figure 3B-16	Recommended Yield Line Layouts	382
Figure 3B-17	Examples of Yield Lines at Unsignalized Midblock Crosswalks.....	383
Figure 3B-18	Do Not Block Intersection Markings	384
Figure 3B-19	Examples of Crosswalk Markings.....	384
Figure 3B-20	Example of Crosswalk Markings for an Exclusive Pedestrian Phase that Permits Diagonal Crossing	385
Figure 3B-21	Examples of Parking Space Markings	386
Figure 3B-22	International Symbol of Accessibility Parking Space Marking	387
Figure 3B-23	Example of Elongated Letters for Word Pavement Markings.....	387
Figure 3B-24	Examples of Standard Arrows for Pavement Markings	388
Figure 3B-25	Examples of Elongated Route Shields for Pavement Markings	390
Figure 3B-26	Yield Ahead Triangle Symbols	391
Figure 3B-27	Examples of Lane-Use Control Word and Arrow Pavement Markings	392
Figure 3B-28	Example of the Application of Speed Reduction Markings.....	394
Figure 3B-29	Pavement Markings for Speed Humps without Crosswalks.....	396
Figure 3B-30	Pavement Markings for Speed Tables or Speed Humps with Crosswalks	397
Figure 3B-31	Advance Warning Markings for Speed Humps	398
Figure 3C-1	Example of Markings for Approach and Circulatory Roadways at a Roundabout	399
Figure 3C-2	Lane-Use Arrow Pavement Marking Options for Roundabout Approaches.....	400
Figure 3C-3	Example of Markings for a One-Lane Roundabout.....	400
Figure 3C-4	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with One- and Two-Lane Approaches...	401
Figure 3C-5	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with One-Lane Exits.....	403
Figure 3C-6	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with Two-Lane Exits.....	404
Figure 3C-7	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with a Double Left Turn	405
Figure 3C-8	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with a Double Right Turn	406
Figure 3C-9	Example of Markings for a Two-Lane Roundabout with Consecutive Double Lefts.....	407

Figure 3C-10	Example of Markings for a Three-Lane Roundabout with Two- and Three-Lane Approaches.....	408
Figure 3C-11	Example of Markings for a Three-Lane Roundabout with Three-Lane Approaches	409
Figure 3C-12	Example of Markings for a Three-Lane Roundabout with Two-Lane Exits.....	410
Figure 3C-13	Example of Markings for Two Linked Roundabouts	411
Figure 3C-14	Example of Markings for a Diamond Interchange with Two Circular-Shaped Roundabout Ramp Terminals.....	412
Figure 3D-1	Markings for Barrier-Separated Preferential Lanes	418
Figure 3D-2	Markings for Buffer-Separated Preferential Lanes	418
Figure 3D-3	Markings for Contiguous Preferential Lanes	420
Figure 3D-4	Markings for Counter-Flow Preferential Lanes on Divided Highways	422
Figure 3F-1	Examples of Delineator Placement	425
Figure 3J-1	Examples of Longitudinal Rumble Strip Markings	432
Figure 4C-1	Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume.....	440
Figure 4C-2	Warrant 2, Four-Hour Vehicular Volume (70% Factor)	440
Figure 4C-3	Warrant 3, Peak Hour.....	441
Figure 4C-4	Warrant 3, Peak Hour (70% Factor).....	441
Figure 4C-5	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Four-Hour Volume.....	443
Figure 4C-6	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Four-Hour Volume (70% Factor).....	443
Figure 4C-7	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Peak Hour.....	444
Figure 4C-8	Warrant 4, Pedestrian Peak Hour (70% Factor)	444
Figure 4C-9	Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing (One Approach Lane at the Track Crossing)	447
Figure 4C-10	Warrant 9, Intersection Near a Grade Crossing (Two or More Approach Lanes at the Track Crossing)	447
Figure 4D-1	Example of U-Turn Signal Face	456
Figure 4D-2	Typical Arrangements of Signal Sections in Signal Faces That Do Not Control Turning Movements	458
Figure 4D-3	Recommended Vehicular Signal Faces for Approaches with Posted, Statutory, or 85 th -Percentile Speed of 45 mph or Higher	460
Figure 4D-4	Lateral and Longitudinal Location of Primary Signal Faces.....	463
Figure 4D-5	Maximum Mounting Height of Signal Faces Located Between 40 Feet and 53 Feet from Stop Line	465
Figure 4D-6	Typical Position and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Permissive Only Mode Left Turns.....	467
Figure 4D-7	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Permissive Only Mode Left Turns	468
Figure 4D-8	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Red Arrow for Permissive Only Mode and Protected/Permissive Mode Left Turns.....	469
Figure 4D-9	Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Left Turns.....	470
Figure 4D-10	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Left Turns.....	471
Figure 4D-11	Typical Position and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected/Permissive Mode Left Turns	472
Figure 4D-12	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Protected/Permissive Mode and Protected Only Mode Left Turns	473
Figure 4D-13	Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Permissive Only Mode Right Turns	476
Figure 4D-14	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Permissive Only Mode Right Turns.....	477
Figure 4D-15	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Red Arrow for Permissive Only Mode and Protected/Permissive Mode Right Turns	478

Figure 4D-16	Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Right Turns	479
Figure 4D-17	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces for Protected Only Mode Right Turns.....	480
Figure 4D-18	Typical Positions and Arrangements of Shared Signal Faces for Protected/Permissive Mode Right Turns	481
Figure 4D-19	Typical Position and Arrangements of Separate Signal Faces with Flashing Yellow Arrow for Protected/Permissive Mode and Protected Only Mode Right Turns	482
Figure 4D-20	Signal Indications for Approaches with a Shared Left-Turn/Right-Turn Lane and No Through Movement.....	486
Figure 4E-1	Typical Pedestrian Signal Indications	496
Figure 4E-2	Pedestrian Intervals.....	498
Figure 4E-3	Pushbutton Location Area.....	501
Figure 4E-4	Typical Pushbutton Locations	502
Figure 4F-1	Guidelines for the Installation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons on Low-Speed Roadways.....	510
Figure 4F-2	Guidelines for the Installation of Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons on High-Speed Roadways.....	510
Figure 4F-3	Sequence for a Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon	511
Figure 4G-1	Sequence for an Emergency-Vehicle Hybrid Beacon	515
Figure 4M-1	Left-Turn Lane-Use Control Signals	526
Figure 5B-1	Regulatory Signs on Low-Volume Roads.....	534
Figure 5B-2	Parking Signs and Plaques on Low-Volume Roads.....	535
Figure 5C-1	Horizontal Alignment and Intersection Warning Signs and Plaques and Object Markers on Low-Volume Roads.....	536
Figure 5C-2	Other Warning Signs and Plaques on Low-Volume Roads	538
Figure 5F-1	Highway-Rail Grade Crossing Signs and Plaques for Low-Volume Roads.....	542
Figure 5G-1	Temporary Traffic Control Signs and Plaques on Low-Volume Roads	545
Figure 6C-1	Component Parts of a Temporary Traffic Control Zone	553
Figure 6C-2	Types of Tapers and Buffer Spaces	556
Figure 6C-3	Example of a One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Taper.....	559
Figure 6E-1	Example of the Use of a STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD).....	570
Figure 6E-2	Example of the Use of a Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD)..	572
Figure 6E-3	Use of Hand-Signaling Devices by Flaggers.....	574
Figure 6F-1	Height and Lateral Location of Signs—Typical Installations.....	581
Figure 6F-2	Methods of Mounting Signs Other Than on Posts	582
Figure 6F-3	Regulatory Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones.....	584
Figure 6F-4	Warning Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones.....	588
Figure 6F-5	Exit Open and Closed and Detour Signs.....	592
Figure 6F-6	Advance Warning Arrow Board Display Specifications	602
Figure 6F-7	Channelizing Devices	605
Figure 6H-1	Work Beyond the Shoulder (TA-1).....	635
Figure 6H-2	Blasting Zone (TA-2)	637
Figure 6H-3	Work on the Shoulders (TA-3)	639
Figure 6H-4	Short-Duration or Mobile Operation on a Shoulder (TA-4).....	641
Figure 6H-5	Shoulder Closure on a Freeway (TA-5).....	643
Figure 6H-6	Shoulder Work with Minor Encroachment (TA-6)	645
Figure 6H-7	Road Closure with a Diversion (TA-7).....	647
Figure 6H-8	Road Closure with an Off-Site Detour (TA-8)	649
Figure 6H-9	Overlapping Routes with a Detour (TA-9)	651
Figure 6H-10	Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers (TA-10)	653
Figure 6H-11	Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-11).....	655
Figure 6H-12	Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Traffic Control Signals (TA-12).....	657
Figure 6H-13	Temporary Road Closure (TA-13).....	659
Figure 6H-14	Haul Road Crossing (TA-14)	661
Figure 6H-15	Work in the Center of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-15)	663

Figure 6H-16	Surveying Along the Center Line of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-16).....	665
Figure 6H-17	Mobile Operations on a Two-Lane Road (TA-17).....	667
Figure 6H-18	Lane Closure on a Minor Street (TA-18).....	669
Figure 6H-19	Detour for One Travel Direction (TA-19).....	671
Figure 6H-20	Detour for a Closed Street (TA-20).....	673
Figure 6H-21	Lane Closure on the Near Side of an Intersection (TA-21).....	675
Figure 6H-22	Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-22).....	677
Figure 6H-23	Left-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-23).....	679
Figure 6H-24	Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-24).....	681
Figure 6H-25	Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection (TA-25).....	683
Figure 6H-26	Closure in the Center of an Intersection (TA-26).....	685
Figure 6H-27	Closure at the Side of an Intersection (TA-27).....	687
Figure 6H-28	Sidewalk Detour or Diversion (TA-28).....	689
Figure 6H-29	Crosswalk Closures and Pedestrian Detours (TA-29).....	691
Figure 6H-30	Interior Lane Closure on a Multi-Lane Street (TA-30).....	693
Figure 6H-31	Lane Closures on a Street with Uneven Directional Volumes (TA-31).....	695
Figure 6H-32	Half Road Closure on a Multi-Lane, High-Speed Highway (TA-32).....	697
Figure 6H-33	Stationary Lane Closure on a Divided Highway (TA-33).....	699
Figure 6H-34	Lane Closure with a Temporary Traffic Barrier (TA-34).....	701
Figure 6H-35	Mobile Operation on a Multi-Lane Road (TA-35).....	703
Figure 6H-36	Lane Shift on a Freeway (TA-36).....	705
Figure 6H-37	Double Lane Closure on a Freeway (TA-37).....	707
Figure 6H-38	Interior Lane Closure on a Freeway (TA-38).....	709
Figure 6H-39	Median Crossover on a Freeway (TA-39).....	711
Figure 6H-40	Median Crossover for an Entrance Ramp (TA-40).....	713
Figure 6H-41	Median Crossover for an Exit Ramp (TA-41).....	715
Figure 6H-42	Work in the Vicinity of an Exit Ramp (TA-42).....	717
Figure 6H-43	Partial Exit Ramp Closure (TA-43).....	719
Figure 6H-44	Work in the Vicinity of an Entrance Ramp (TA-44).....	721
Figure 6H-45	Temporary Reversible Lane Using Movable Barriers (TA-45).....	723
Figure 6H-46	Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing (TA-46).....	725
Figure 6I-1	Examples of Traffic Incident Management Area Signs.....	727
Figure 7A-1	Example of School Route Plan Map.....	732
Figure 7B-1	School Area Signs.....	735
Figure 7B-2	Example of Signing for a Higher Fines School Zone without a School Crossing.....	737
Figure 7B-3	Example of Signing for a Higher Fines School Zone with a School Speed Limit.....	738
Figure 7B-4	Example of Signing for a School Crossing Outside of a School Zone.....	739
Figure 7B-5	Example of Signing for a School Zone with a School Speed Limit and a School Crossing ..	740
Figure 7B-6	In-Street Signs in School Areas.....	741
Figure 7C-1	Two-Lane Pavement Marking of “SCHOOL”.....	744
Figure 8B-1	Regulatory Signs and Plaques for Grade Crossings.....	753
Figure 8B-2	Crossbuck Assembly with a YIELD or STOP Sign on the Crossbuck Sign Support.....	754
Figure 8B-3	Crossbuck Assembly with a YIELD or STOP Sign on a Separate Sign Support.....	755
Figure 8B-4	Warning Signs and Plaques for Grade Crossings.....	759
Figure 8B-5	Example of an Emergency Notification Sign.....	762
Figure 8B-6	Example of Placement of Warning Signs and Pavement Markings at Grade Crossings.....	765
Figure 8B-7	Grade Crossing Pavement Markings.....	766
Figure 8B-8	Example of Dynamic Envelope Pavement Markings at Grade Crossings.....	767
Figure 8B-9	Examples of Light Rail Transit Vehicle Dynamic Envelope Markings for Mixed-Use Alignments.....	768
Figure 8C-1	Composite Drawing of Active Traffic Control Devices for Grade Crossings Showing Clearances.....	770
Figure 8C-2	Example of Location Plan for Flashing-Light Signals and Four-Quadrant Gates.....	774
Figure 8C-3	Light Rail Transit Signals.....	779

Figure 8C-4	Example of Flashing-Light Signal Assembly for Pedestrian Crossings	781
Figure 8C-5	Example of a Shared Pedestrian/Roadway Gate	782
Figure 8C-6	Example of a Separate Pedestrian Gate	782
Figure 8C-7	Examples of Placement of Pedestrian Gates	783
Figure 8C-8	Example of Swing Gates	784
Figure 8C-9	Example of Pedestrian Barriers at an Offset Grade Crossing	784
Figure 8C-10	Examples of Pedestrian Barrier Installation at an Offset Non-Intersection Grade Crossing...	785
Figure 8D-1	Example of Signing and Markings for a Pathway Grade Crossing	787
Figure 9B-1	Sign Placement on Shared-Use Paths	790
Figure 9B-2	Regulatory Signs and Plaques for Bicycle Facilities	793
Figure 9B-3	Warning Signs and Plaques and Object Markers for Bicycle Facilities	797
Figure 9B-4	Guide Signs and Plaques for Bicycle Facilities	799
Figure 9B-5	Example of Signing for the Beginning and End of a Designated Bicycle Route on a Shared-Use Path	801
Figure 9B-6	Example of Bicycle Guide Signing	802
Figure 9B-7	Examples of Signing and Markings for a Shared-Use Path Crossing	803
Figure 9B-8	Example of Mode-Specific Guide Signing on a Shared-Use Path	805
Figure 9C-1	Example of Intersection Pavement Markings—Designated Bicycle Lane with Left-Turn Area, Heavy Turn Volumes, Parking, One-Way Traffic, or Divided Highway.....	807
Figure 9C-2	Examples of Center Line Markings for Shared-Use Paths.....	808
Figure 9C-3	Word, Symbol, and Arrow Pavement Markings for Bicycle Lanes.....	809
Figure 9C-4	Example of Bicycle Lane Treatment at a Right Turn Only Lane	811
Figure 9C-5	Example of Bicycle Lane Treatment at Parking Lane into a Right Turn Only Lane	812
Figure 9C-6	Example of Pavement Markings for Bicycle Lanes on a Two-Way Street.....	813
Figure 9C-7	Bicycle Detector Pavement Marking.....	814
Figure 9C-8	Examples of Obstruction Pavement Markings	815
Figure 9C-9	Shared Lane Marking	815

TABLES

Page

Table I-1	Evolution of the MUTCD.....	I-2
Table I-2	Target Compliance Dates Established by the FHWA	I-4
Table 1A-1	Acceptable Abbreviations	24
Table 1A-2	Abbreviations that Shall be Used Only on Portable Changeable Message Signs.....	25
Table 1A-3	Unacceptable Abbreviations.....	26
Table 2A-1	Illumination of Sign Elements.....	29
Table 2A-2	Retroreflection of Sign Elements.....	29
Table 2A-3	Minimum Maintained Retroreflectivity Levels.....	31
Table 2A-4	Use of Sign Shapes.....	32
Table 2A-5	Common Uses of Sign Colors	33
Table 2B-1	Regulatory Sign and Plaque Sizes.....	46
Table 2B-2	Meanings of Symbols and Legends on Reversible Lane Control Signs	65
Table 2C-1	Categories of Warning Signs and Plaques.....	104
Table 2C-2	Warning Sign and Plaque Sizes.....	105
Table 2C-3	Minimum Size of Supplemental Warning Plaques	107
Table 2C-4	Guidelines for Advance Placement of Warning Signs	108
Table 2C-5	Horizontal Alignment Sign Selection	110
Table 2C-6	Approximate Spacing of Chevron Alignment Signs on Horizontal Curves.....	113
Table 2D-1	Conventional Road Guide Sign Sizes.....	139
Table 2D-2	Recommended Minimum Letter Heights on Street Name Signs	163
Table 2E-1	Freeway or Expressway Guide Sign and Plaque Sizes	186

Table 2E-2	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Expressway Guide Signs According to Interchange Classification	188
Table 2E-3	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Expressway Guide Signs According to Sign Type..	189
Table 2E-4	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Freeway Guide Signs According to Interchange Classification	190
Table 2E-5	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Freeway Guide Signs According to Sign Type	191
Table 2F-1	Toll Facility Sign and Plaque Minimum Sizes	237
Table 2G-1	Managed and Preferential Lanes Sign and Plaque Minimum Sizes.....	254
Table 2H-1	General Information Sign Sizes	292
Table 2I-1	General Service Sign and Plaque Sizes.....	299
Table 2J-1	Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Specific Service Signs According to Sign Type.....	316
Table 2L-1	Example of Units of Information	328
Table 2M-1	Category Chart for Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Symbols.....	331
Table 2N-1	Emergency Management Sign Sizes	343
Table 3B-1	Minimum Passing Sight Distances for No-Passing Zone Markings	352
Table 3D-1	Standard Edge Line and Lane Line Markings for Preferential Lanes.....	417
Table 3F-1	Approximate Spacing for Delineators on Horizontal Curves	427
Table 4C-1	Warrant 1, Eight-Hour Vehicular Volume	438
Table 4C-2	Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Daily Frequency of Rail Traffic.....	448
Table 4C-3	Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Percentage of High-Occupancy Buses.....	448
Table 4C-4	Warrant 9, Adjustment Factor for Percentage of Tractor-Trailer Trucks	448
Table 4D-1	Recommended Minimum Number of Primary Signal Faces for Through Traffic on Approaches with Posted, Statutory, or 85 th -Percentile Speed of 45 mph or Higher	461
Table 4D-2	Minimum Sight Distance for Signal Visibility.....	461
Table 5A-1	Sign and Plaque Sizes on Low-Volume Roads	532
Table 6C-1	Recommended Advance Warning Sign Minimum Spacing.....	554
Table 6C-2	Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed.....	555
Table 6C-3	Taper Length Criteria for Temporary Traffic Control Zones	557
Table 6C-4	Formulas for Determining Taper Length	557
Table 6E-1	Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed.....	575
Table 6F-1	Temporary Traffic Control Zone Sign and Plaque Sizes	578
Table 6H-1	Index to Typical Applications	632
Table 6H-2	Meaning of Symbols on Typical Application Diagrams	633
Table 6H-3	Meaning of Letter Codes on Typical Application Diagrams	633
Table 6H-4	Formulas for Determining Taper Length	633
Table 7B-1	School Area Sign and Plaque Sizes.....	733
Table 8B-1	Grade Crossing Sign and Plaque Minimum Sizes	752
Table 9B-1	Bicycle Facility Sign and Plaque Minimum Sizes	791
Table A2-1	Conversion of Inches to Millimeters	A2-1
Table A2-2	Conversion of Feet to Meters	A2-1
Table A2-3	Conversion of Miles to Kilometers	A2-1
Table A2-4	Conversion of Miles per Hour to Kilometers/Hour	A2-1

MANUAL ON UNIFORM TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES INTRODUCTION

Standard:

- 01 **Traffic control devices shall be defined as all signs, signals, markings, and other devices used to regulate, warn, or guide traffic, placed on, over, or adjacent to a street, highway, pedestrian facility, bikeway, or private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13) by authority of a public agency or official having jurisdiction, or, in the case of a private road, by authority of the private owner or private official having jurisdiction.**
- 02 **The Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) is incorporated by reference in 23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Part 655, Subpart F and shall be recognized as the national standard for all traffic control devices installed on any street, highway, bikeway, or private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13) in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 109(d) and 402(a). The policies and procedures of the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) to obtain basic uniformity of traffic control devices shall be as described in 23 CFR 655, Subpart F.**
- 03 **In accordance with 23 CFR 655.603(a), for the purposes of applicability of the MUTCD:**
- A. **Toll roads under the jurisdiction of public agencies or authorities or public-private partnerships shall be considered to be public highways;**
 - B. **Private roads open to public travel shall be as defined in Section 1A.13; and**
 - C. **Parking areas, including the driving aisles within those parking areas, that are either publicly or privately owned shall not be considered to be “open to public travel” for purposes of MUTCD applicability.**
- 04 **Any traffic control device design or application provision contained in this Manual shall be considered to be in the public domain. Traffic control devices contained in this Manual shall not be protected by a patent, trademark, or copyright, except for the Interstate Shield and any items owned by FHWA.**

Support:

- 05 Pictographs, as defined in Section 1A.13, are embedded in traffic control devices but the pictographs themselves are not considered traffic control devices for the purposes of Paragraph 4.
- 06 The need for uniform standards was recognized long ago. The American Association of State Highway Officials (AASHO), now known as the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), published a manual for rural highways in 1927, and the National Conference on Street and Highway Safety (NCSHS) published a manual for urban streets in 1930. In the early years, the necessity for unification of the standards applicable to the different classes of road and street systems was obvious. To meet this need, a joint committee of AASHO and NCSHS developed and published the original edition of this Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) in 1935. That committee, now called the National Committee on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (NCUTCD), though changed from time to time in name, organization, and personnel, has been in continuous existence and has contributed to periodic revisions of this Manual. The FHWA has administered the MUTCD since the 1971 edition. The FHWA and its predecessor organizations have participated in the development and publishing of the previous editions. There were nine previous editions of the MUTCD, and several of those editions were revised one or more times. Table I-1 traces the evolution of the MUTCD, including the two manuals developed by AASHO and NCSHS.

Standard:

- 07 **The U.S. Secretary of Transportation, under authority granted by the Highway Safety Act of 1966, decreed that traffic control devices on all streets and highways open to public travel in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 109(d) and 402(a) in each State shall be in substantial conformance with the Standards issued or endorsed by the FHWA.**

Support:

- 08 The “Uniform Vehicle Code (UVC)” is one of the publications referenced in the MUTCD. The UVC contains a model set of motor vehicle codes and traffic laws for use throughout the United States.

Guidance:

- 09 *The States should adopt Section 15-116 of the UVC, which states that, “No person shall install or maintain in any area of private property used by the public any sign, signal, marking, or other device intended to regulate, warn, or guide traffic unless it conforms with the State manual and specifications adopted under Section 15-104.”*

Table I-1. Evolution of the MUTCD

Year	Name	Month / Year Revised
1927	Manual and Specifications for the Manufacture, Display, and Erection of U.S. Standard Road Markers and Signs (for rural roads)	4/29, 12/31
1930	Manual on Street Traffic Signs, Signals, and Markings (for urban streets)	No revisions
1935	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways (MUTCD)	2/39
1942	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways — War Emergency Edition	No revisions
1948	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	9/54
1961	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	No revisions
1971	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	11/71, 4/72, 3/73, 10/73, 6/74, 6/75, 9/76, 12/77
1978	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	12/79, 12/83, 9/84, 3/86
1988	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	1/90, 3/92, 9/93, 11/94, 12/96, 6/98, 1/00
2000	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways — Millennium Edition	7/02
2003	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	11/04, 12/07
2009	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways	

Support:

10 The Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support material described in this edition of the MUTCD provide the transportation professional with the information needed to make appropriate decisions regarding the use of traffic control devices on streets, highways, bikeways, and private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13).

11 Throughout this Manual the headings Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support are used to classify the nature of the text that follows. Figures and tables, including the notes contained therein, supplement the text and might constitute a Standard, Guidance, Option, or Support. The user needs to refer to the appropriate text to classify the nature of the figure, table, or note contained therein.

Standard:

12 **When used in this Manual, the text headings of Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support shall be as defined in Paragraph 1 of Section 1A.13.**

Support:

13 Throughout this Manual all dimensions and distances are provided in English units. Appendix A2 contains tables for converting each of the English unit numerical values that are used in this Manual to the equivalent Metric (International System of Units) values.

Guidance:

14 *If Metric units are to be used in laying out distances or determining sizes of devices, such units should be specified on plan drawings and made known to those responsible for designing, installing, or maintaining traffic control devices.*

15 *Except when a specific numeral is required or recommended by the text of a Section of this Manual, numerals displayed on the images of devices in the figures that specify quantities such as times, distances, speed limits, and weights should be regarded as examples only. When installing any of these devices, the numerals should be appropriately altered to fit the specific situation.*

Support:

16 The following information will be useful when reference is being made to a specific portion of text in this Manual.

17 There are nine Parts in this Manual and each Part is comprised of one or more Chapters. Each Chapter is comprised of one or more Sections. Parts are given a numerical identification, such as Part 2 – Signs. Chapters are identified by the Part number and a letter, such as Chapter 2B – Regulatory Signs, Barricades, and Gates. Sections are identified by the Chapter number and letter followed by a decimal point and a number, such as Section 2B.03 – Size of Regulatory Signs.

18 Each Section is comprised of one or more paragraphs. The paragraphs are indented and are identified by a number. Paragraphs are counted from the beginning of each Section without regard to the intervening text headings (Standard, Guidance, Option, or Support). Some paragraphs have lettered or numbered items. As an example of how to cite this Manual, the phrase “Not less than 40 feet beyond the stop line” that appears in Section 4D.14 of this Manual would be referenced in writing as “Section 4D.14, P1, A.1,” and would be verbally referenced as “Item A.1 of Paragraph 1 of Section 4D.14.”

Standard:

- 19 **In accordance with 23 CFR 655.603(b)(3), States or other Federal agencies that have their own MUTCDs or Supplements shall revise these MUTCDs or Supplements to be in substantial conformance with changes to the National MUTCD within 2 years of the effective date of the Final Rule for the changes. Substantial conformance of such State or other Federal agency MUTCDs or Supplements shall be as defined in 23 CFR 655.603(b)(1).**
- 20 **After the effective date of a new edition of the MUTCD or a revision thereto, or after the adoption thereof by the State, whichever occurs later, new or reconstructed devices installed shall be in compliance with the new edition or revision.**
- 21 **In cases involving Federal-aid projects for new highway or bikeway construction or reconstruction, the traffic control devices installed (temporary or permanent) shall be in conformance with the most recent edition of the National MUTCD before that highway is opened or re-opened to the public for unrestricted travel [23 CFR 655.603(d)(2) and (d)(3)].**
- 22 **Unless a particular device is no longer serviceable, non-compliant devices on existing highways and bikeways shall be brought into compliance with the current edition of the National MUTCD as part of the systematic upgrading of substandard traffic control devices (and installation of new required traffic control devices) required pursuant to the Highway Safety Program, 23 U.S.C. §402(a). The FHWA has the authority to establish other target compliance dates for implementation of particular changes to the MUTCD [23 CFR 655.603(d)(1)]. These target compliance dates established by the FHWA shall be as shown in Table I-2.**
- 23 **Except as provided in Paragraph 24, when a non-compliant traffic control device is being replaced or refurbished because it is damaged, missing, or no longer serviceable for any reason, it shall be replaced with a compliant device.**
- Option:
- 24 A damaged, missing, or otherwise non-serviceable device that is non-compliant may be replaced in kind if engineering judgment indicates that:
- A. One compliant device in the midst of a series of adjacent non-compliant devices would be confusing to road users; and/or
 - B. The schedule for replacement of the whole series of non-compliant devices will result in achieving timely compliance with the MUTCD.

Table I-2. Target Compliance Dates Established by the FHWA (Sheet 1 of 3)

2009 MUTCD Section Number(s)	2009 MUTCD Section Title	Specific Provision	Compliance Date
2A.08	Minimum Retroreflectivity Levels	Implementation and continued use of an assessment or management method that is designed to maintain traffic sign retroreflectivity at or above the established minimum levels	January 22, 2012 (c)
2A.08	Minimum Retroreflectivity Levels	Replacement of regulatory, warning, and post-mounted guide (except street name) signs that are identified using the assessment or management method as failing to meet the established minimum levels	January 22, 2015 (c)
2A.08	Minimum Retroreflectivity Levels	Replacement of street name signs and overhead guide signs that are identified using the assessment or management method as failing to meet the established minimum levels.	January 22, 2018 (c)
2A.19	Lateral Offset	Crashworthiness of sign supports on roads with posted speed limit of 50 mph or higher	January 17, 2013 (a)
2B.03	Size of Regulatory Signs	Increased sign sizes and other 2003 MUTCD revisions to Table 2B-1 (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.09	YIELD Sign Applications	Changes in YIELD sign application criteria from the 1988 MUTCD to the 2003 MUTCD (*)	January 17, 2011 (a)
2B.10	STOP Sign or YIELD Sign Placement	Signs mounted on the back of STOP or YIELD signs should not obscure shape of STOP sign, with exception for DO NOT ENTER signs (2003 MUTCD Sections 2B.06 and 2B.10) (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.11	Yield Here To Pedestrians Signs and Stop Here For Pedestrians Signs (R1-5 Series)	New Section 2B.11 in the 2003 MUTCD (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.13	Speed Limit Sign (R2-1)	Color of changeable message legend of YOUR SPEED legend	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.26	Reversible Lane Control Signs (R3-9e through R3-9i)	Removal of the R3-9c and R3-9e signs that had been included in the 2000 MUTCD (2003 MUTCD Section 2B.25)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2B.40	ONE WAY Signs (R6-1, R6-2)	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for the number and locations of ONE WAY signs	December 31, 2019
2B.55	Photo Enforced Signs and Plaques (R10-18, R10-19P, R10-19aP)	New signs (2003 MUTCD Section 2B.46) (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.04	Size of Warning Signs	New sizes in the 2003 MUTCD for the W1 Series arrow signs, the W12-2a low clearance signs, the W7 Series runaway truck signs, and the W10-1 advance grade crossing sign (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.06 thru 2C.14	Horizontal Alignment Warning Signs	Revised requirements in the 2009 MUTCD regarding the use of various horizontal alignment signs	December 31, 2019
2C.13	Truck Rollover Warning Sign (W1-13)	New W1-13 sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.11)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.20	NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2)	Elimination of symbol sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.16)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.30	PAVEMENT ENDS Sign (W8-3)	Removal of symbol sign (2000 MUTCD Section 2C.23)	January 17, 2011 (a)
2C.38	Reduced Speed Limit Ahead Signs (W3-5, W3-5a)	Removal of R2-5 Series Reduced Speed Ahead signs and use of W3-5 or W3-5a warning signs instead (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.30)	December 22, 2018 (b)
2C.40	Merge Signs (W4-1, W4-5)	New Entering Roadway Merge sign (W4-5) (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.31)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.41	Added Lane Signs (W4-3, W4-6)	New Entering Roadway Added Lane sign (W4-6) (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.32)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.42	Lane Ends Signs (W4-2, W9-1, W9-2)	New design of W4-2 sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.33)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.46	Intersection Warning Signs (W2-1 through W2-8)	New design of Circular Intersection (W2-6) sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.37)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.49	Vehicular Traffic Warning Signs	New symbol signs W11-1, W11-5, W11-5a, W11-6, W11-11, and W11-14 (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.40)	December 22, 2013 (b)

Table I-2. Target Compliance Dates Established by the FHWA (Sheet 2 of 3)

2009 MUTCD Section Number(s)	2009 MUTCD Section Title	Specific Provision	Compliance Date
2C.50	Non-Vehicular Warning Signs	Elimination of crosswalk lines from crossing signs and use of diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) supplemental plaque if at the crossing (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.41)	January 17, 2011 (a)(b)
2C.61	PHOTO ENFORCED Plaque (W16-10P)	New plaque (2003 MUTCD Section 2C.53) (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2C.63	Object Marker Design and Placement Height	Width of stripes on Type 3 striped marker (2003 MUTCD Section 3C.01)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2D.43	Street Name Signs (D3-1 or D3-1a)	6-inch letter height for lettering on post-mounted Street Name signs (except on multi-lane streets with speed limits greater than 40 mph) (2000 MUTCD Section 2D.38)	January 9, 2012 (a)
2D.43	Street Name Signs (D3-1 or D3-1a)	8-inch letter height on post-mounted signs on multi-lane streets with speed limits greater than 40 mph and 12-inch letter height on overhead signs (2003 MUTCD Section 2D.38)	December 22, 2018 (b)
2D.44	Advance Street Name Signs (D3-2)	Requirements of new Section 2D.39 in the 2003 MUTCD	December 22, 2018 (b)
2D.45	Signing on Conventional Roads on Approaches to Interchanges	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for multi-lane approaches to interchanges to have guide signs to identify which direction of turn is to be made for access to each direction of the freeway or expressway	December 31, 2019
2E.31, 2E.33, and 2E.36	Plaques for Left-Hand Exits	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD to use E1-5aP and E1-5bP plaques for left-hand exits	December 31, 2014
2G.01 through 2G.07	Regulatory Signs for Preferential Lanes	Requirements for regulatory signs for preferential lanes (2003 MUTCD Sections 2B.26 through 2B.28) (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2G.11 through 2G.15	Preferential Lane Guide Signs	New Section 2E.59 in the 2003 MUTCD (*)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2H.02, 2H.03	Reference Location Signs, Intermediate Reference Location Signs, and Enhanced Reference Location Signs	Location and spacing of Reference Location signs and design of Intermediate Reference Location signs (2003 MUTCD Sections 2D.46 and 2E.54)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2I.07	Radio Information Signing	New Channel 9 Monitored (D12-3) sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2D.45)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2I.08	TRAVEL INFO CALL 511 Signs (D12-5 and D12-5a)	New TRAVEL INFO CALL 511 Sign (D12-5) (2003 MUTCD Section 2D.45)	December 22, 2013 (b)
2J.05	Size of Lettering	Minimum height of letters and numerals on Specific Service signs (2000 MUTCD Section 2F.05)	January 17, 2011 (a)
2N.03	Evacuation Route Signs (EM-1 and EM-1a)	New design and size of EM-1 sign (2003 MUTCD Section 2I.03)	December 22, 2018 (b)
3B.04, 3B.05	White Longitudinal Pavement Markings	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for dotted lane lines for dropped lanes and for acceleration, deceleration, and auxiliary lanes	December 31, 2016 or resurfacing, whichever occurs first
3B.18	Crosswalk Markings	Gap between transverse lines of a crosswalk (2003 MUTCD Section 3B.17)	December 22, 2013 (b)
4D.01	General	Location of signalized midblock crosswalks	December 22, 2013 (b)
4D.26	Yellow Change and Red Clearance Intervals	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD that durations of yellow change and red clearance intervals shall be determined using engineering practices	December 31, 2014, or when timing adjustments are made to the individual intersection and/or corridor, whichever occurs first
4D.31	Flashing Operation—Transition Out of Flashing Mode	Duration of steady red clearance interval in change from red-red flashing mode to steady (stop-and-go) mode (2003 MUTCD Section 4D.12)	December 22, 2013 (b)
4E.06	Pedestrian Intervals and Signal Phases	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD that the pedestrian change interval shall not extend into the red clearance interval and shall be followed by a buffer interval of at least 3 seconds	December 31, 2014, or when timing adjustments are made to the individual intersection and/or corridor, whichever occurs first
4E.07	Countdown Pedestrian Signals	Pedestrian countdown hardware requirements	December 22, 2013 (b)

Table I-2. Target Compliance Dates Established by the FHWA (Sheet 3 of 3)

2009 MUTCD Section Number(s)	2009 MUTCD Section Title	Specific Provision	Compliance Date
5C.05	NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2)	Elimination of symbol sign	December 22, 2013 (b)
6D.03	Worker Safety Considerations	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD that all workers within the right-of-way shall wear high-visibility apparel	December 31, 2011
6E.02	High-Visibility Safety Apparel	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD that all flaggers within the right-of-way shall wear high-visibility apparel	December 31, 2011
7B.11	School Advance Crossing Assembly	Use of AHEAD (W16-9P) plaque or distance plaque (W16-2P or W16-2aP) (2000 MUTCD Section 7B.08)	January 17, 2011 (a)
7B.12	School Crossing Assembly	Elimination of crosswalk lines from crossing signs and use of diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) supplemental plaque (2000 MUTCD Sections 7B.08 and 7B.09)	January 17, 2011 (a)
7B.16	Reduced School Speed Limit Ahead Sign (S4-5, S4-5a)	Removal of R2-5 Series Reduced Speed Ahead signs and use of S4-5 or S4-5a warning signs instead (2003 MUTCD Section 7B.12)	December 22, 2018 (b)
7D.04	Uniform of Adult Crossing Guards	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for high-visibility apparel for adult crossing guards	December 31, 2011
8B.03	Grade Crossing (Crossbuck) Sign (R15-1) and Number of Tracks Plaque (R15-2P) at Active and Passive Grade Crossings	Retroreflective strip on crossbuck support (2000 MUTCD Section 8B.02) (*)	January 17, 2011 (a)
8B.04	Crossbuck Assemblies with YIELD or STOP Signs at Passive Grade Crossings	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for the use of STOP or YIELD signs with Crossbuck signs at passive grade crossings	December 31, 2019
8B.19 and 8C.02 through 8C.05	LRT Approaching-Activated Blank-Out Warning Sign, Flashing Light Signals, and Automatic Gates	Automatic gates, flashing-light signals, and blank-out signs at highway-LRT crossings per Part 10 of the 2000 MUTCD (*)	January 17, 2011 (a)
8C.09	Traffic Control Signals at or Near Highway-Rail Grade Crossings	Pre-signals (2003 MUTCD Section 8D.07)	December 22, 2013 (b)
8C.12	Grade Crossings Within or In Close Proximity to Circular Intersections	New requirement in the 2009 MUTCD for study of grade crossings near roundabouts	December 31, 2014
9B.18	Bicycle Warning and Combined Bicycle/Pedestrian Signs (W11-1 and W11-15)	Elimination of crosswalk lines from crossing signs and use of diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) supplemental plaque if at the crossing (2000 MUTCD Section 9B.15)	January 17, 2011 (a)

Notes: Unless otherwise noted, dates are as established in the Final Rule for the 2009 MUTCD.

- (a) Date established in the Final Rule for the 2000 MUTCD
- (b) Date established in the Final Rule for the 2003 MUTCD
- (c) Date established in the Final Rule for Revision 2 of the 2003 MUTCD
- (*) Provisions may have been revised in the 2009 MUTCD

PART 1

GENERAL

CHAPTER 1A. GENERAL

Section 1A.01 Purpose of Traffic Control Devices

Support:

- 01 The purpose of traffic control devices, as well as the principles for their use, is to promote highway safety and efficiency by providing for the orderly movement of all road users on streets, highways, bikeways, and private roads open to public travel throughout the Nation.
- 02 Traffic control devices notify road users of regulations and provide warning and guidance needed for the uniform and efficient operation of all elements of the traffic stream in a manner intended to minimize the occurrences of crashes.

Standard:

- 03 **Traffic control devices or their supports shall not bear any advertising message or any other message that is not related to traffic control.**

Support:

- 04 Tourist-oriented directional signs and Specific Service signs are not considered advertising; rather, they are classified as motorist service signs.

Section 1A.02 Principles of Traffic Control Devices

Support:

- 01 This Manual contains the basic principles that govern the design and use of traffic control devices for all streets, highways, bikeways, and private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13) regardless of type or class or the public agency, official, or owner having jurisdiction. This Manual's text specifies the restriction on the use of a device if it is intended for limited application or for a specific system. It is important that these principles be given primary consideration in the selection and application of each device.

Guidance:

- 02 *To be effective, a traffic control device should meet five basic requirements:*
- A. *Fulfill a need;*
 - B. *Command attention;*
 - C. *Convey a clear, simple meaning;*
 - D. *Command respect from road users; and*
 - E. *Give adequate time for proper response.*
- 03 *Design, placement, operation, maintenance, and uniformity are aspects that should be carefully considered in order to maximize the ability of a traffic control device to meet the five requirements listed in the previous paragraph. Vehicle speed should be carefully considered as an element that governs the design, operation, placement, and location of various traffic control devices.*

Support:

- 04 The definition of the word "speed" varies depending on its use. The definitions of specific speed terms are contained in Section 1A.13.

Guidance:

- 05 *The actions required of road users to obey regulatory devices should be specified by State statute, or in cases not covered by State statute, by local ordinance or resolution. Such statutes, ordinances, and resolutions should be consistent with the "Uniform Vehicle Code" (see Section 1A.11).*
- 06 *The proper use of traffic control devices should provide the reasonable and prudent road user with the information necessary to efficiently and lawfully use the streets, highways, pedestrian facilities, and bikeways.*

Support:

- 07 Uniformity of the meaning of traffic control devices is vital to their effectiveness. The meanings ascribed to devices in this Manual are in general accord with the publications mentioned in Section 1A.11.

Section 1A.03 Design of Traffic Control Devices

Guidance:

- 01 *Devices should be designed so that features such as size, shape, color, composition, lighting or retroreflection, and contrast are combined to draw attention to the devices; that size, shape, color, and simplicity of message combine to produce a clear meaning; that legibility and size combine with placement to permit adequate time for response; and that uniformity, size, legibility, and reasonableness of the message combine to command respect.*
- 02 *Aspects of a device's standard design should be modified only if there is a demonstrated need.*

Support:

- 03 An example of modifying a device's design would be to modify the Combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection (W1-10) sign to show intersecting side roads on both sides rather than on just one side of the major road within the curve.

Option:

- 04 With the exception of symbols and colors, minor modifications in the specific design elements of a device may be made provided the essential appearance characteristics are preserved.

Section 1A.04 Placement and Operation of Traffic Control Devices

Guidance:

- 01 *Placement of a traffic control device should be within the road user's view so that adequate visibility is provided. To aid in conveying the proper meaning, the traffic control device should be appropriately positioned with respect to the location, object, or situation to which it applies. The location and legibility of the traffic control device should be such that a road user has adequate time to make the proper response in both day and night conditions.*
- 02 *Traffic control devices should be placed and operated in a uniform and consistent manner.*
- 03 *Unnecessary traffic control devices should be removed. The fact that a device is in good physical condition should not be a basis for deferring needed removal or change.*

Section 1A.05 Maintenance of Traffic Control Devices

Guidance:

- 01 *Functional maintenance of traffic control devices should be used to determine if certain devices need to be changed to meet current traffic conditions.*
- 02 *Physical maintenance of traffic control devices should be performed to retain the legibility and visibility of the device, and to retain the proper functioning of the device.*

Support:

- 03 Clean, legible, properly mounted devices in good working condition command the respect of road users.

Section 1A.06 Uniformity of Traffic Control Devices

Support:

- 01 Uniformity of devices simplifies the task of the road user because it aids in recognition and understanding, thereby reducing perception/reaction time. Uniformity assists road users, law enforcement officers, and traffic courts by giving everyone the same interpretation. Uniformity assists public highway officials through efficiency in manufacture, installation, maintenance, and administration. Uniformity means treating similar situations in a similar way. The use of uniform traffic control devices does not, in itself, constitute uniformity. A standard device used where it is not appropriate is as objectionable as a non-standard device; in fact, this might be worse, because such misuse might result in disrespect at those locations where the device is needed and appropriate.

Section 1A.07 Responsibility for Traffic Control Devices

Standard:

- 01 **The responsibility for the design, placement, operation, maintenance, and uniformity of traffic control devices shall rest with the public agency or the official having jurisdiction, or, in the case of private roads open to public travel, with the private owner or private official having jurisdiction. 23 CFR 655.603 adopts the MUTCD as the national standard for all traffic control devices installed on any street, highway, bikeway, or private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13). When a State or other Federal agency manual or supplement is required, that manual or supplement shall be in substantial conformance with the National MUTCD.**
- 02 **23 CFR 655.603 also states that traffic control devices on all streets, highways, bikeways, and private roads open to public travel in each State shall be in substantial conformance with standards issued or endorsed by the Federal Highway Administrator.**

Support:

- 03 The Introduction of this Manual contains information regarding the meaning of substantial conformance and the applicability of the MUTCD to private roads open to public travel.
- 04 The "Uniform Vehicle Code" (see Section 1A.11) has the following provision in Section 15-104 for the adoption of a uniform manual:

“(a) The [State Highway Agency] shall adopt a manual and specification for a uniform system of traffic control devices consistent with the provisions of this code for use upon highways within this State. Such uniform system shall correlate with and so far as possible conform to the system set forth in the most recent edition of the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, and other standards issued or endorsed by the Federal Highway Administrator.”

“(b) The Manual adopted pursuant to subsection (a) shall have the force and effect of law.”

05 All States have officially adopted the National MUTCD either in its entirety, with supplemental provisions, or as a separate published document.

Guidance:

06 *These individual State manuals or supplements should be reviewed for specific provisions relating to that State.*

Support:

07 The National MUTCD has also been adopted by the National Park Service, the U.S. Forest Service, the U.S. Military Command, the Bureau of Indian Affairs, the Bureau of Land Management, and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Guidance:

08 *States should adopt Section 15-116 of the “Uniform Vehicle Code,” which states that, “No person shall install or maintain in any area of private property used by the public any sign, signal, marking, or other device intended to regulate, warn, or guide traffic unless it conforms with the State manual and specifications adopted under Section 15-104.”*

Section 1A.08 Authority for Placement of Traffic Control Devices

Standard:

01 **Traffic control devices, advertisements, announcements, and other signs or messages within the highway right-of-way shall be placed only as authorized by a public authority or the official having jurisdiction, or, in the case of private roads open to public travel, by the private owner or private official having jurisdiction, for the purpose of regulating, warning, or guiding traffic.**

02 **When the public agency or the official having jurisdiction over a street or highway or, in the case of private roads open to public travel, the private owner or private official having jurisdiction, has granted proper authority, others such as contractors and public utility companies shall be permitted to install temporary traffic control devices in temporary traffic control zones. Such traffic control devices shall conform with the Standards of this Manual.**

03 **All regulatory traffic control devices shall be supported by laws, ordinances, or regulations.**

Support:

04 Provisions of this Manual are based upon the concept that effective traffic control depends upon both appropriate application of the devices and reasonable enforcement of the regulations.

05 Although some highway design features, such as curbs, median barriers, guardrails, speed humps or tables, and textured pavement, have a significant impact on traffic operations and safety, they are not considered to be traffic control devices and provisions regarding their design and use are generally not included in this Manual.

06 Certain types of signs and other devices that do not have any traffic control purpose are sometimes placed within the highway right-of-way by or with the permission of the public agency or the official having jurisdiction over the street or highway. Most of these signs and other devices are not intended for use by road users in general, and their message is only important to individuals who have been instructed in their meanings. These signs and other devices are not considered to be traffic control devices and provisions regarding their design and use are not included in this Manual. Among these signs and other devices are the following:

- A. Devices whose purpose is to assist highway maintenance personnel. Examples include markers to guide snowplow operators, devices that identify culvert and drop inlet locations, and devices that precisely identify highway locations for maintenance or mowing purposes.
- B. Devices whose purpose is to assist fire or law enforcement personnel. Examples include markers that identify fire hydrant locations, signs that identify fire or water district boundaries, speed measurement pavement markings, small indicator lights to assist in enforcement of red light violations, and photo enforcement systems.
- C. Devices whose purpose is to assist utility company personnel and highway contractors, such as markers that identify underground utility locations.
- D. Signs posting local non-traffic ordinances.
- E. Signs giving civic organization meeting information.

Standard:

- 07 **Signs and other devices that do not have any traffic control purpose that are placed within the highway right-of-way shall not be located where they will interfere with, or detract from, traffic control devices.**

Guidance:

- 08 *Any unauthorized traffic control device or other sign or message placed on the highway right-of-way by a private organization or individual constitutes a public nuisance and should be removed. All unofficial or non-essential traffic control devices, signs, or messages should be removed.*

Section 1A.09 Engineering Study and Engineering Judgment**Support:**

- 01 Definitions of an engineering study and engineering judgment are contained in Section 1A.13.

Standard:

- 02 **This Manual describes the application of traffic control devices, but shall not be a legal requirement for their installation.**

Guidance:

- 03 *Early in the processes of location and design of roads and streets, engineers should coordinate such location and design with the design and placement of the traffic control devices to be used with such roads and streets.*
- 04 *Jurisdictions, or owners of private roads open to public travel, with responsibility for traffic control that do not have engineers on their staffs who are trained and/or experienced in traffic control devices should seek engineering assistance from others, such as the State transportation agency, their county, a nearby large city, or a traffic engineering consultant.*

Support:

- 05 As part of the Federal-aid Program, each State is required to have a Local Technology Assistance Program (LTAP) and to provide technical assistance to local highway agencies. Requisite technical training in the application of the principles of the MUTCD is available from the State's Local Technology Assistance Program for needed engineering guidance and assistance.

Section 1A.10 Interpretations, Experimentations, Changes, and Interim Approvals**Standard:**

- 01 **Design, application, and placement of traffic control devices other than those adopted in this Manual shall be prohibited unless the provisions of this Section are followed.**

Support:

- 02 Continuing advances in technology will produce changes in the highway, vehicle, and road user proficiency; therefore, portions of the system of traffic control devices in this Manual will require updating. In addition, unique situations often arise for device applications that might require interpretation or clarification of this Manual. It is important to have a procedure for recognizing these developments and for introducing new ideas and modifications into the system.

Standard:

- 03 **Except as provided in Paragraph 4, requests for any interpretation, permission to experiment, interim approval, or change shall be submitted electronically to the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), Office of Transportation Operations, MUTCD team, at the following e-mail address: MUTCDofficialrequest@dot.gov.**

Option:

- 04 If electronic submittal is not possible, requests for interpretations, permission to experiment, interim approvals, or changes may instead be mailed to the Office of Transportation Operations, HOTO-1, Federal Highway Administration, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590.

Support:

- 05 Communications regarding other MUTCD matters that are not related to official requests will receive quicker attention if they are submitted electronically to the MUTCD Team Leader or to the appropriate individual MUTCD team member. Their e-mail addresses are available through the links contained on the "Who's Who" page on the MUTCD website at <http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/team.htm>.
- 06 An interpretation includes a consideration of the application and operation of standard traffic control devices, official meanings of standard traffic control devices, or the variations from standard device designs.

Guidance:

07 *Requests for an interpretation of this Manual should contain the following information:*

- A. A concise statement of the interpretation being sought;*
- B. A description of the condition that provoked the need for an interpretation;*
- C. Any illustration that would be helpful to understand the request; and*
- D. Any supporting research data that is pertinent to the item to be interpreted.*

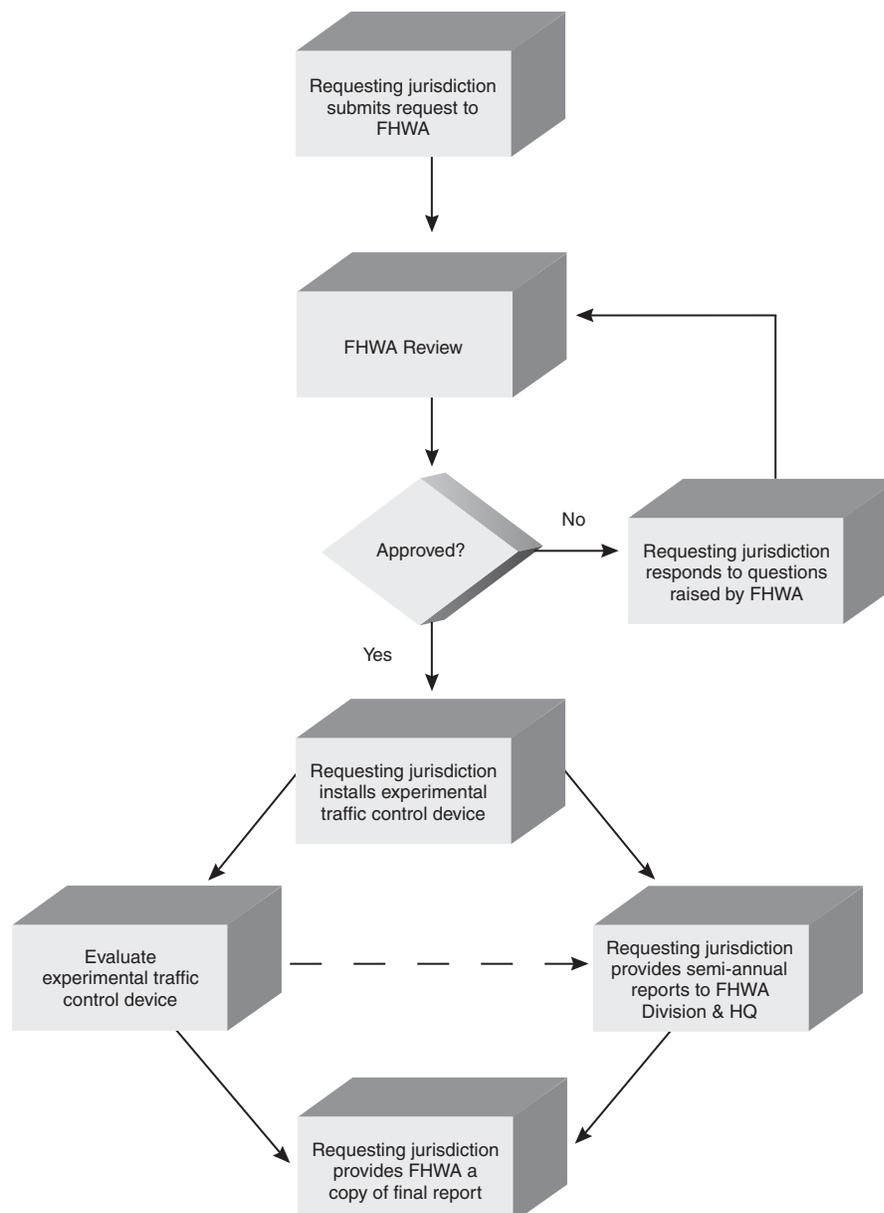
Support:

08 Requests to experiment include consideration of field deployment for the purpose of testing or evaluating a new traffic control device, its application or manner of use, or a provision not specifically described in this Manual.

09 A request for permission to experiment will be considered only when submitted by the public agency or toll facility operator responsible for the operation of the road or street on which the experiment is to take place. For a private road open to public travel, the request will be considered only if it is submitted by the private owner or private official having jurisdiction.

10 A diagram indicating the process for experimenting with traffic control devices is shown in Figure 1A-1.

Figure 1A-1. Process for Requesting and Conducting Experimentations for New Traffic Control Devices



Guidance:

- 11 *The request for permission to experiment should contain the following:*
- A. *A statement indicating the nature of the problem.*
 - B. *A description of the proposed change to the traffic control device or application of the traffic control device, how it was developed, the manner in which it deviates from the standard, and how it is expected to be an improvement over existing standards.*
 - C. *Any illustration that would be helpful to understand the traffic control device or use of the traffic control device.*
 - D. *Any supporting data explaining how the traffic control device was developed, if it has been tried, in what ways it was found to be adequate or inadequate, and how this choice of device or application was derived.*
 - E. *A legally binding statement certifying that the concept of the traffic control device is not protected by a patent or copyright. (An example of a traffic control device concept would be countdown pedestrian signals in general. Ordinarily an entire general concept would not be patented or copyrighted, but if it were it would not be acceptable for experimentation unless the patent or copyright owner signs a waiver of rights acceptable to the FHWA. An example of a patented or copyrighted specific device within the general concept of countdown pedestrian signals would be a manufacturer's design for its specific brand of countdown signal, including the design details of the housing or electronics that are unique to that manufacturer's product. As long as the general concept is not patented or copyrighted, it is acceptable for experimentation to incorporate the use of one or more patented devices of one or several manufacturers.)*
 - F. *The time period and location(s) of the experiment.*
 - G. *A detailed research or evaluation plan that must provide for close monitoring of the experimentation, especially in the early stages of its field implementation. The evaluation plan should include before and after studies as well as quantitative data describing the performance of the experimental device.*
 - H. *An agreement to restore the site of the experiment to a condition that complies with the provisions of this Manual within 3 months following the end of the time period of the experiment. This agreement must also provide that the agency sponsoring the experimentation will terminate the experimentation at any time that it determines significant safety concerns are directly or indirectly attributable to the experimentation. The FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations has the right to terminate approval of the experimentation at any time if there is an indication of safety concerns. If, as a result of the experimentation, a request is made that this Manual be changed to include the device or application being experimented with, the device or application will be permitted to remain in place until an official rulemaking action has occurred.*
 - I. *An agreement to provide semi-annual progress reports for the duration of the experimentation, and an agreement to provide a copy of the final results of the experimentation to the FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations within 3 months following completion of the experimentation. The FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations has the right to terminate approval of the experimentation if reports are not provided in accordance with this schedule.*

Support:

- 12 A change includes consideration of a new device to replace a present standard device, an additional device to be added to the list of standard devices, or a revision to a traffic control device application or placement criteria.

Guidance:

- 13 *Requests for a change to this Manual should contain the following information:*
- A. *A statement indicating what change is proposed;*
 - B. *Any illustration that would be helpful to understand the request; and*
 - C. *Any supporting research data that is pertinent to the item to be reviewed.*

Support:

- 14 Interim approval allows interim use, pending official rulemaking, of a new traffic control device, a revision to the application or manner of use of an existing traffic control device, or a provision not specifically described in this Manual. The FHWA issues an Interim Approval by official memorandum signed by the Associate Administrator for Operations and posts this memorandum on the MUTCD website. the issuance by FHWA of an interim approval will typically result in the traffic control device or application being placed into the next scheduled rulemaking process for revisions to this Manual.

- 15 Interim approval is considered based on the results of successful experimentation, results of analytical or laboratory studies, and/or review of non-U.S. experience with a traffic control device or application. Interim approval considerations include an assessment of relative risks, benefits, costs, impacts, and other factors.

- 16 Interim approval allows for optional use of a traffic control device or application and does not create a new mandate or recommendation for use. Interim approval includes conditions that jurisdictions agree to comply with in order to use the traffic control device or application until an official rulemaking action has occurred.

Standard:

- 17 **A jurisdiction, toll facility operator, or owner of a private road open to public travel that desires to use a traffic control device for which FHWA has issued an interim approval shall request permission from FHWA.**

Guidance:

- 18 *The request for permission to place a traffic control device under an interim approval should contain the following:*
- A. *A description of where the device will be used, such as a list of specific locations or highway segments or types of situations, or a statement of the intent to use the device jurisdiction-wide;*
 - B. *An agreement to abide by the specific conditions for use of the device as contained in the FHWA's interim approval document;*
 - C. *An agreement to maintain and continually update a list of locations where the device has been installed; and*
 - D. *An agreement to:*
 1. *Restore the site(s) of the interim approval to a condition that complies with the provisions in this Manual within 3 months following the issuance of a Final Rule on this traffic control device; and*
 2. *Terminate use of the device or application installed under the interim approval at any time that it determines significant safety concerns are directly or indirectly attributable to the device or application. The FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations has the right to terminate the interim approval at any time if there is an indication of safety concerns.*

Option:

- 19 A State may submit a request for the use of a device under interim approval for all jurisdictions in that State, as long as the request contains the information listed in Paragraph 18.

Guidance:

- 20 *A local jurisdiction, toll facility operator, or owner of a private road open to public travel using a traffic control device or application under an interim approval that was granted by FHWA either directly or on a statewide basis based on the State's request should inform the State of the locations of such use.*
- 21 *A local jurisdiction, toll facility operator, or owner of a private road open to public travel that is requesting permission to experiment or permission to use a device or application under an interim approval should first check for any State laws and/or directives covering the application of the MUTCD provisions that might exist in their State.*

Option:

- 22 A device or application installed under an interim approval may remain in place, under the conditions established in the interim approval, until an official rulemaking action has occurred.

Support:

- 23 A diagram indicating the process for incorporating new traffic control devices into this Manual is shown in Figure 1A-2.
- 24 For additional information concerning interpretations, experimentation, changes, or interim approvals, visit the MUTCD website at <http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov>.

Section 1A.11 Relation to Other Publications

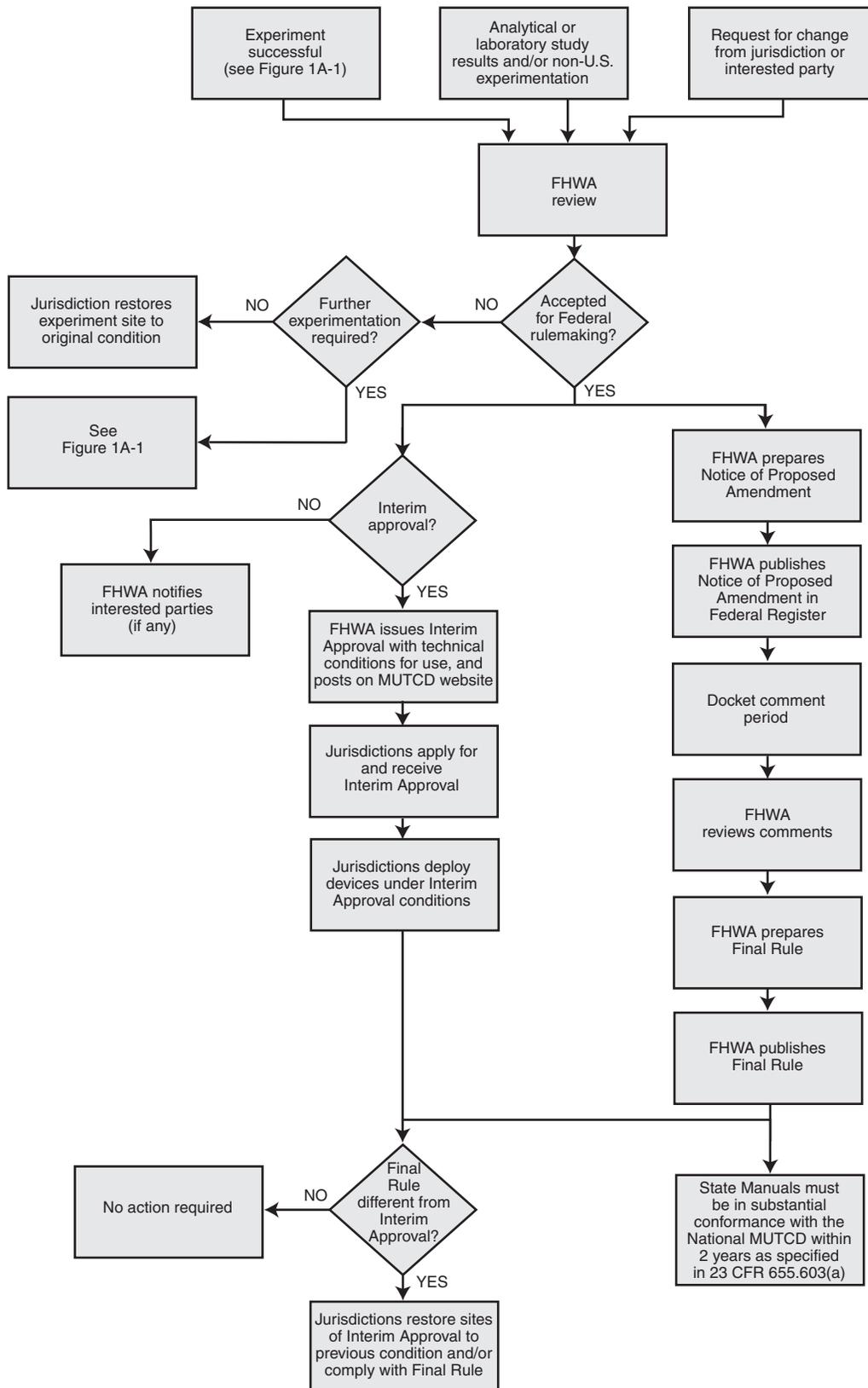
Standard:

- 01 **To the extent that they are incorporated by specific reference, the latest editions of the following publications, or those editions specifically noted, shall be a part of this Manual: “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (FHWA); and “Color Specifications for Retroreflective Sign and Pavement Marking Materials” (appendix to subpart F of Part 655 of Title 23 of the Code of Federal Regulations).**

Support:

- 02 The “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book includes standard alphabets and symbols and arrows for signs and pavement markings.
- 03 For information about the publications mentioned in Paragraph 1, visit the Federal Highway Administration's MUTCD website at <http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov>, or write to the FHWA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, HOTO, Washington, DC 20590.

Figure 1A-2. Process for Incorporating New Traffic Control Devices into the MUTCD



04 Other publications that are useful sources of information with respect to the use of this Manual are listed in this paragraph. See Page i of this Manual for ordering information for the following publications (later editions might also be available as useful sources of information):

1. "AAA School Safety Patrol Operations Manual," 2006 Edition (American Automobile Association—AAA)
2. "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets," 2004 Edition (American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials—AASHTO)
3. "Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities," 1999 Edition (AASHTO)
4. "Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities," 2004 Edition (AASHTO)
5. "Guide to Metric Conversion," 1993 Edition (AASHTO)
6. "Guidelines for the Selection of Supplemental Guide Signs for Traffic Generators Adjacent to Freeways," 4th Edition/Guide Signs, Part II: Guidelines for Airport Guide Signing/Guide Signs, Part III: List of Control Cities for Use in Guide Signs on Interstate Highways," Item Code: GSGLC-4, 2001 Edition (AASHTO)
7. "Roadside Design Guide," 2006 Edition (AASHTO)
8. "Standard Specifications for Movable Highway Bridges," 1988 Edition (AASHTO)
9. "Traffic Engineering Metric Conversion Folders—Addendum to the Guide to Metric Conversion," 1993 Edition (AASHTO)
10. "2009 AREMA Communications & Signals Manual," (American Railway Engineering & Maintenance-of-Way Association—AREMA)
11. "Changeable Message Sign Operation and Messaging Handbook (FHWA-OP-03-070)," 2004 Edition (Federal Highway Administration—FHWA)
12. "Designing Sidewalks and Trails for Access—Part 2—Best Practices Design Guide (FHWA-EP-01-027)," 2001 Edition (FHWA)
13. "Federal-Aid Highway Program Guidance on High Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) Lanes," 2001 (FHWA)
14. "Maintaining Traffic Sign Retroreflectivity," 2007 Edition (FHWA)
15. "Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook—Revised Second Edition (FHWA-SA-07-010)," 2007 Edition (FHWA)
16. "Ramp Management and Control Handbook (FHWA-HOP-06-001)," 2006 Edition (FHWA)
17. "Roundabouts-An Informational Guide (FHWA-RD-00-067)," 2000 Edition (FHWA)
18. "Signal Timing Manual (FHWA-HOP-08-024)," 2008 Edition (FHWA)
19. "Signalized Intersections: an Informational Guide (FHWA-HRT-04-091)," 2004 Edition (FHWA)
20. "Travel Better, Travel Longer: A Pocket Guide to Improving Traffic Control and Mobility for Our Older Population (FHWA-OP-03-098)," 2003 Edition (FHWA)
21. "Practice for Roadway Lighting," RP-8, 2001 (Illuminating Engineering Society—IES)
22. "Safety Guide for the Prevention of Radio Frequency Radiation Hazards in the Use of Commercial Electric Detonators (Blasting Caps)," Safety Library Publication No. 20, July 2001 Edition (Institute of Makers of Explosives)
23. "American National Standard for High-Visibility Public Safety Vests," (ANSI/ISEA 207-2006), 2006 Edition (International Safety Equipment Association—ISEA)
24. "American National Standard for High-Visibility Safety Apparel and Headwear," (ANSI/ISEA 107-2004), 2004 Edition (ISEA)
25. "Manual of Traffic Signal Design," 1998 Edition (Institute of Transportation Engineers—ITE)
26. "Manual of Transportation Engineering Studies," 1994 Edition (ITE)
27. "Pedestrian Traffic Control Signal Indications," Part 1—1985 Edition; Part 2 (LED Pedestrian Traffic Signal Modules)—2004 Edition (ITE)
28. "Preemption of Traffic Signals Near Railroad Crossings," 2006 Edition (ITE)
29. "Purchase Specification for Flashing and Steady Burn Warning Lights," 1981 Edition (ITE)
30. "Traffic Control Devices Handbook," 2001 Edition (ITE)
31. "Traffic Detector Handbook," 1991 Edition (ITE)
32. "Traffic Engineering Handbook," 2009 Edition (ITE)
33. "Traffic Signal Lamps," 1980 Edition (ITE)
34. "Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads," Part 1—1985 Edition; Part 2 (LED Circular Signal Supplement)—2005 Edition; Part 3 (LED Vehicular Arrow Traffic Signal Supplement)—2004 Edition (ITE)
35. "Uniform Vehicle Code (UVC) and Model Traffic Ordinance," 2000 Edition (National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances—NCUTLO)
36. "NEMA Standards Publication TS 4-2005 Hardware Standards for Dynamic Message Signs (DMS) With NTCIP Requirements," 2005 Edition (National Electrical Manufacturers Association—NEMA)
37. "Occupational Safety and Health Administration Regulations (Standards - 29 CFR), General Safety and Health Provisions - 1926.20," amended June 30, 1993 (Occupational Safety and Health Administration—OSHA)
38. "Accessible Pedestrian Signals—A Guide to Best Practices (NCHRP Web-Only Document 117A)," 2008 Edition (Transportation Research Board—TRB)

39. "Guidelines for Accessible Pedestrian Signals (NCHRP Web-Only Document 117B)," 2008 Edition (TRB)
40. "Highway Capacity Manual," 2000 Edition (TRB)
41. "Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features," (NCHRP Report 350), 1993 Edition (TRB)
42. "The Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," July 1998 Edition (The U.S. Access Board)

Section 1A.12 Color Code

Support:

- 01 The following color code establishes general meanings for 11 colors of a total of 13 colors that have been identified as being appropriate for use in conveying traffic control information. tolerance limits for each color are contained in 23 CFR Part 655, Appendix to Subpart F and are available at the Federal Highway Administration's MUTCD website at <http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov> or by writing to the FHWA, Office of Safety Research and Development (HRD-T-301), 6300 Georgetown Pike, McLean, VA 22101.
- 02 The two colors for which general meanings have not yet been assigned are being reserved for future applications that will be determined only by FHWA after consultation with the States, the engineering community, and the general public. The meanings described in this Section are of a general nature. More specific assignments of colors are given in the individual Parts of this Manual relating to each class of devices.

Standard:

- 03 **The general meaning of the 13 colors shall be as follows:**
 - A. **Black—regulation**
 - B. **Blue—road user services guidance, tourist information, and evacuation route**
 - C. **Brown—recreational and cultural interest area guidance**
 - D. **Coral—unassigned**
 - E. **Fluorescent Pink—incident management**
 - F. **Fluorescent Yellow-Green—pedestrian warning, bicycle warning, playground warning, school bus and school warning**
 - G. **Green—indicated movements permitted, direction guidance**
 - H. **Light Blue—unassigned**
 - I. **Orange—temporary traffic control**
 - J. **Purple—lanes restricted to use only by vehicles with registered electronic toll collection (ETC) accounts**
 - K. **Red—stop or prohibition**
 - L. **White—regulation**
 - M. **Yellow—warning**

Section 1A.13 Definitions of Headings, Words, and Phrases in this Manual

Standard:

- 01 **When used in this Manual, the text headings of Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support shall be defined as follows:**
 - A. **Standard—a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a traffic control device. All Standard statements are labeled, and the text appears in bold type. The verb "shall" is typically used. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Options. Standard statements shall not be modified or compromised based on engineering judgment or engineering study.**
 - B. **Guidance—a statement of recommended, but not mandatory, practice in typical situations, with deviations allowed if engineering judgment or engineering study indicates the deviation to be appropriate. All Guidance statements are labeled, and the text appears in unbold type. The verb "should" is typically used. The verbs "shall" and "may" are not used in Guidance statements. Guidance statements are sometimes modified by Options.**
 - C. **Option—a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Option statements sometime contain allowable modifications to a Standard or Guidance statement. All Option statements are labeled, and the text appears in unbold type. The verb "may" is typically used. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Option statements.**
 - D. **Support—an informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. Support statements are labeled, and the text appears in unbold type. The verbs "shall," "should," and "may" are not used in Support statements.**

- 02 Unless otherwise defined in this Section, or in other Parts of this Manual, words or phrases shall have the meaning(s) as defined in the most recent editions of the “Uniform Vehicle Code,” “AASHTO Transportation Glossary (Highway Definitions),” and other publications mentioned in Section 1A.11.
- 03 The following words and phrases, when used in this Manual, shall have the following meanings:
1. **Accessible Pedestrian Signal**—a device that communicates information about pedestrian signal timing in non-visual format such as audible tones, speech messages, and/or vibrating surfaces.
 2. **Accessible Pedestrian Signal Detector**—a device designated to assist the pedestrian who has visual or physical disabilities in activating the pedestrian phase.
 3. **Active Grade Crossing Warning System**—the flashing-light signals, with or without warning gates, together with the necessary control equipment used to inform road users of the approach or presence of rail traffic at grade crossings.
 4. **Actuated Operation**—a type of traffic control signal operation in which some or all signal phases are operated on the basis of actuation.
 5. **Actuation**—initiation of a change in or extension of a traffic signal phase through the operation of any type of detector.
 6. **Advance Preemption**—the notification of approaching rail traffic that is forwarded to the highway traffic signal controller unit or assembly by the railroad or light rail transit equipment in advance of the activation of the railroad or light rail transit warning devices.
 7. **Advance Preemption Time**—the period of time that is the difference between the required maximum highway traffic signal preemption time and the activation of the railroad or light rail transit warning devices.
 8. **Advisory Speed**—a recommended speed for all vehicles operating on a section of highway and based on the highway design, operating characteristics, and conditions.
 9. **Alley**—a street or highway intended to provide access to the rear or side of lots or buildings in urban areas and not intended for the purpose of through vehicular traffic.
 10. **Altered Speed Zone**—a speed limit, other than a statutory speed limit, that is based upon an engineering study.
 11. **Approach**—all lanes of traffic moving toward an intersection or a midblock location from one direction, including any adjacent parking lane(s).
 12. **Arterial Highway (Street)**—a general term denoting a highway primarily used by through traffic, usually on a continuous route or a highway designated as part of an arterial system.
 13. **Attended Lane (Manual Lane)**—a toll lane adjacent to a toll booth occupied by a human toll collector who makes change, issues receipts, and perform other toll-related functions. Attended lanes at toll plazas typically require vehicles to stop to pay the toll.
 14. **Automatic Lane**—see Exact Change Lane.
 15. **Average Annual Daily Traffic (AADT)**—the total volume of traffic passing a point or segment of a highway facility in both directions for one year divided by the number of days in the year. Normally, periodic daily traffic volumes are adjusted for hours of the day counted, days of the week, and seasons of the year to arrive at average annual daily traffic.
 16. **Average Daily Traffic (ADT)**—the average 24 hour volume, being the total volume during a stated period divided by the number of days in that period. Normally, this would be periodic daily traffic volumes over several days, not adjusted for days of the week or seasons of the year.
 17. **Average Day**—a day representing traffic volumes normally and repeatedly found at a location, typically a weekday when volumes are influenced by employment or a weekend day when volumes are influenced by entertainment or recreation.
 18. **Backplate**—see Signal Backplate.
 19. **Barrier-Separated Lane**—a preferential lane or other special purpose lane that is separated from the adjacent general-purpose lane(s) by a physical barrier.
 20. **Beacon**—a highway traffic signal with one or more signal sections that operates in a flashing mode.
 21. **Bicycle**—a pedal-powered vehicle upon which the human operator sits.
 22. **Bicycle Facilities**—a general term denoting improvements and provisions that accommodate or encourage bicycling, including parking and storage facilities, and shared roadways not specifically defined for bicycle use.
 23. **Bicycle Lane**—a portion of a roadway that has been designated for preferential or exclusive use by bicyclists by pavement markings and, if used, signs.
 24. **Bikeway**—a generic term for any road, street, path, or way that in some manner is specifically designated for bicycle travel, regardless of whether such facilities are designated for the exclusive use of bicycles or are to be shared with other transportation modes.

25. **Buffer-Separated Lane**—a preferential lane or other special purpose lane that is separated from the adjacent general-purpose lane(s) by a pattern of standard longitudinal pavement markings that is wider than a normal or wide lane line marking. The buffer area might include rumble strips, textured pavement, or channelizing devices such as tubular markers or traversable curbs, but does not include a physical barrier.
26. **Cantilevered Signal Structure**—a structure, also referred to as a mast arm, that is rigidly attached to a vertical pole and is used to provide overhead support of highway traffic signal faces or grade crossing signal units.
27. **Center Line Markings**—the yellow pavement marking line(s) that delineates the separation of traffic lanes that have opposite directions of travel on a roadway. These markings need not be at the geometrical center of the pavement.
28. **Changeable Message Sign**—a sign that is capable of displaying more than one message (one of which might be a “blank” display), changeable manually, by remote control, or by automatic control. Electronic-display changeable message signs are referred to as Dynamic Message Signs in the National Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) Architecture and are referred to as Variable Message Signs in the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) standards publication.
29. **Channelizing Line Markings**—a wide or double solid white line used to form islands where traffic in the same direction of travel is permitted on both sides of the island.
30. **Circular Intersection**—an intersection that has an island, generally circular in design, located in the center of the intersection where traffic passes to the right of the island. Circular intersections include roundabouts, rotaries, and traffic circles.
31. **Circulatory Roadway**—the roadway within a circular intersection on which traffic travels in a counterclockwise direction around an island in the center of the circular intersection.
32. **Clear Storage Distance**—when used in Part 8, the distance available for vehicle storage measured between 6 feet from the rail nearest the intersection to the intersection stop line or the normal stopping point on the highway. At skewed grade crossings and intersections, the 6-foot distance shall be measured perpendicular to the nearest rail either along the center line or edge line of the highway, as appropriate, to obtain the shorter distance. Where exit gates are used, the distance available for vehicle storage is measured from the point where the rear of the vehicle would be clear of the exit gate arm. In cases where the exit gate arm is parallel to the track(s) and is not perpendicular to the highway, the distance is measured either along the center line or edge line of the highway, as appropriate, to obtain the shorter distance.
33. **Clear Zone**—the total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, that is available for an errant driver to stop or regain control of a vehicle. This area might consist of a shoulder, a recoverable slope, and/or a non-recoverable, traversable slope with a clear run-out area at its toe.
34. **Collector Highway**—a term denoting a highway that in rural areas connects small towns and local highways to arterial highways, and in urban areas provides land access and traffic circulation within residential, commercial, and business areas and connects local highways to the arterial highways.
35. **Concurrent Flow Preferential Lane**—a preferential lane that is operated in the same direction as the adjacent mixed flow lanes, separated from the adjacent general-purpose freeway lanes by a standard lane stripe, painted buffer, or barrier.
36. **Conflict Monitor**—a device used to detect and respond to improper or conflicting signal indications and improper operating voltages in a traffic controller assembly.
37. **Constant Warning Time Detection**—a means of detecting rail traffic that provides relatively uniform warning time for the approach of trains or light rail transit traffic that are not accelerating or decelerating after being detected.
38. **Contiguous Lane**—a lane, preferential or otherwise, that is separated from the adjacent lane(s) only by a normal or wide lane line marking.
39. **Controller Assembly**—a complete electrical device mounted in a cabinet for controlling the operation of a highway traffic signal.
40. **Controller Unit**—that part of a controller assembly that is devoted to the selection and timing of the display of signal indications.
41. **Conventional Road**—a street or highway other than a low-volume road (as defined in Section 5A.01), expressway, or freeway.
42. **Counter-Flow Lane**—a lane operating in a direction opposite to the normal flow of traffic designated for peak direction of travel during at least a portion of the day. Counter-flow lanes are usually separated from the off-peak direction lanes by tubular markers or other flexible channelizing devices, temporary lane separators, or movable or permanent barrier.

43. **Crashworthy**—a characteristic of a roadside appurtenance that has been successfully crash tested in accordance with a national standard such as the National Cooperative Highway Research Program Report 350, “Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features.”
44. **Crosswalk**—(a) that part of a roadway at an intersection included within the connections of the lateral lines of the sidewalks on opposite sides of the highway measured from the curbs or in the absence of curbs, from the edges of the traversable roadway, and in the absence of a sidewalk on one side of the roadway, the part of a roadway included within the extension of the lateral lines of the sidewalk at right angles to the center line; (b) any portion of a roadway at an intersection or elsewhere distinctly indicated as a pedestrian crossing by pavement marking lines on the surface, which might be supplemented by contrasting pavement texture, style, or color.
45. **Crosswalk Lines**—white pavement marking lines that identify a crosswalk.
46. **Cycle Length**—the time required for one complete sequence of signal indications.
47. **Dark Mode**—the lack of all signal indications at a signalized location. (The dark mode is most commonly associated with power failures, ramp meters, hybrid beacons, beacons, and some movable bridge signals.)
48. **Delineator**—a retroreflective device mounted on the roadway surface or at the side of the roadway in a series to indicate the alignment of the roadway, especially at night or in adverse weather.
49. **Design Vehicle**—the longest vehicle permitted by statute of the road authority (State or other) on that roadway.
50. **Designated Bicycle Route**—a system of bikeways designated by the jurisdiction having authority with appropriate directional and informational route signs, with or without specific bicycle route numbers.
51. **Detectable**—having a continuous edge within 6 inches of the surface so that pedestrians who have visual disabilities can sense its presence and receive usable guidance information.
52. **Detector**—a device used for determining the presence or passage of vehicles or pedestrians.
53. **Downstream**—a term that refers to a location that is encountered by traffic subsequent to an upstream location as it flows in an “upstream to downstream” direction. For example, “the downstream end of a lane line separating the turn lane from a through lane on the approach to an intersection” is the end of the lane line that is closest to the intersection.
54. **Dropped Lane**—a through lane that becomes a mandatory turn lane on a conventional roadway, or a through lane that becomes a mandatory exit lane on a freeway or expressway. The end of an acceleration lane and reductions in the number of through lanes that do not involve a mandatory turn or exit are not considered dropped lanes.
55. **Dual-Arrow Signal Section**—a type of signal section designed to include both a yellow arrow and a green arrow.
56. **Dynamic Envelope**—the clearance required for light rail transit traffic or a train and its cargo overhang due to any combination of loading, lateral motion, or suspension failure (see Figure 8B-8).
57. **Dynamic Exit Gate Operating Mode**—a mode of operation where the exit gate operation is based on the presence of vehicles within the minimum track clearance distance.
58. **Edge Line Markings**—white or yellow pavement marking lines that delineate the right or left edge(s) of a traveled way.
59. **Electronic Toll Collection (ETC)**—a system for automated collection of tolls from moving or stopped vehicles through wireless technologies such as radio-frequency communication or optical scanning. ETC systems are classified as one of the following: (1) systems that require users to have registered toll accounts, with the use of equipment inside or on the exterior of vehicles, such as a transponder or barcode decal, that communicates with or is detected by roadside or overhead receiving equipment, or with the use of license plate optical scanning, to automatically deduct the toll from the registered user account, or (2) systems that do not require users to have registered toll accounts because vehicle license plates are optically scanned and invoices for the toll amount are sent through postal mail to the address of the vehicle owner.
60. **Electronic Toll Collection (ETC) Account-Only Lane**—a non-attended toll lane that is restricted to use only by vehicles with a registered toll payment account.
61. **Emergency-Vehicle Hybrid Beacon**—a special type of hybrid beacon used to warn and control traffic at an unsignalized location to assist authorized emergency vehicles in entering or crossing a street or highway.
62. **Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signal**—a special traffic control signal that assigns the right-of-way to an authorized emergency vehicle.
63. **End-of-Roadway Marker**—a device used to warn and alert road users of the end of a roadway in other than temporary traffic control zones.

64. **Engineering Judgment**—the evaluation of available pertinent information, and the application of appropriate principles, provisions, and practices as contained in this Manual and other sources, for the purpose of deciding upon the applicability, design, operation, or installation of a traffic control device. Engineering judgment shall be exercised by an engineer, or by an individual working under the supervision of an engineer, through the application of procedures and criteria established by the engineer. Documentation of engineering judgment is not required.
65. **Engineering Study**—the comprehensive analysis and evaluation of available pertinent information, and the application of appropriate principles, provisions, and practices as contained in this Manual and other sources, for the purpose of deciding upon the applicability, design, operation, or installation of a traffic control device. An engineering study shall be performed by an engineer, or by an individual working under the supervision of an engineer, through the application of procedures and criteria established by the engineer. An engineering study shall be documented.
66. **Entrance Gate**—an automatic gate that can be lowered across the lanes approaching a grade crossing to block road users from entering the grade crossing.
67. **Exact Change Lane (Automatic Lane)**—a non-attended toll lane that has a receptacle into which road users deposit coins totaling the exact amount of the toll. Exact Change lanes at toll plazas typically require vehicles to stop to pay the toll.
68. **Exit Gate**—an automatic gate that can be lowered across the lanes departing a grade crossing to block road users from entering the grade crossing by driving in the opposing traffic lanes.
69. **Exit Gate Clearance Time**—for Four-Quadrant Gate systems at grade crossings, the amount of time provided to delay the descent of the exit gate arm(s) after entrance gate arm(s) begin to descend.
70. **Exit Gate Operating Mode**—for Four-Quadrant Gate systems at grade crossings, the mode of control used to govern the operation of the exit gate arms.
71. **Expressway**—a divided highway with partial control of access.
72. **Flagger**—a person who actively controls the flow of vehicular traffic into and/or through a temporary traffic control zone using hand-signaling devices or an Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD).
73. **Flasher**—a device used to turn highway traffic signal indications on and off at a repetitive rate of approximately once per second.
74. **Flashing**—an operation in which a light source, such as a traffic signal indication, is turned on and off repetitively.
75. **Flashing-Light Signals**—a warning device consisting of two red signal indications arranged horizontally that are activated to flash alternately when rail traffic is approaching or present at a grade crossing.
76. **Flashing Mode**—a mode of operation in which at least one traffic signal indication in each vehicular signal face of a highway traffic signal is turned on and off repetitively.
77. **Freeway**—a divided highway with full control of access.
78. **Full-Actuated Operation**—a type of traffic control signal operation in which all signal phases function on the basis of actuation.
79. **Gate**—an automatically-operated or manually-operated traffic control device that is used to physically obstruct road users such that they are discouraged from proceeding past a particular point on a roadway or pathway, or such that they are discouraged from entering a particular grade crossing, ramp, lane, roadway, or facility.
80. **Grade Crossing**—the general area where a highway and a railroad and/or light rail transit route cross at the same level, within which are included the tracks, highway, and traffic control devices for traffic traversing that area.
81. **Guide Sign**—a sign that shows route designations, destinations, directions, distances, services, points of interest, or other geographical, recreational, or cultural information.
82. **High-Occupancy Vehicle (HOV)**—a motor vehicle carrying at least two or more persons, including carpools, vanpools, and buses.
83. **Highway**—a general term for denoting a public way for purposes of vehicular travel, including the entire area within the right-of-way.
84. **Highway-Light Rail Transit Grade Crossing**—the general area where a highway and a light rail transit route cross at the same level, within which are included the light rail transit tracks, highway, and traffic control devices for traffic traversing that area.
85. **Highway-Rail Grade Crossing**—the general area where a highway and a railroad cross at the same level, within which are included the railroad tracks, highway, and traffic control devices for highway traffic traversing that area.

86. **Highway Traffic Signal**—a power-operated traffic control device by which traffic is warned or directed to take some specific action. These devices do not include power-operated signs, steadily-illuminated pavement markers, warning lights (see Section 6F.83), or steady burning electric lamps.
87. **HOV Lane**—any preferential lane designated for exclusive use by high-occupancy vehicles for all or part of a day—including a designated lane on a freeway, other highway, street, or independent roadway on a separate right-of-way.
88. **Hybrid Beacon**—a special type of beacon that is intentionally placed in a dark mode (no indications displayed) between periods of operation and, when operated, displays both steady and flashing traffic control signal indications.
89. **Inherently Low Emission Vehicle (ILEV)**—any kind of vehicle that, because of inherent properties of the fuel system design, will not have significant evaporative emissions, even if its evaporative emission control system has failed.
90. **In-Roadway Lights**—a special type of highway traffic signal installed in the roadway surface to warn road users that they are approaching a condition on or adjacent to the roadway that might not be readily apparent and might require the road users to slow down and/or come to a stop.
91. **Interchange**—a system of interconnecting roadways providing for traffic movement between two or more highways that do not intersect at grade.
92. **Interconnection**—when used in Part 8, the electrical connection between the railroad or light rail transit active warning system and the highway traffic signal controller assembly for the purpose of preemption.
93. **Intermediate Interchange**—an interchange with an urban or rural route that is not a major or minor interchange as defined in this Section.
94. **Intersection**—intersection is defined as follows:
 - (a) The area embraced within the prolongation or connection of the lateral curb lines, or if none, the lateral boundary lines of the roadways of two highways that join one another at, or approximately at, right angles, or the area within which vehicles traveling on different highways that join at any other angle might come into conflict.
 - (b) The junction of an alley or driveway with a roadway or highway shall not constitute an intersection, unless the roadway or highway at said junction is controlled by a traffic control device.
 - (c) If a highway includes two roadways that are 30 feet or more apart (see definition of Median), then every crossing of each roadway of such divided highway by an intersecting highway shall be a separate intersection.
 - (d) If both intersecting highways include two roadways that are 30 feet or more apart, then every crossing of any two roadways of such highways shall be a separate intersection.
 - (e) At a location controlled by a traffic control signal, regardless of the distance between the separate intersections as defined in (c) and (d) above:
 - (1) If a stop line, yield line, or crosswalk has not been designated on the roadway (within the median) between the separate intersections, the two intersections and the roadway (median) between them shall be considered as one intersection;
 - (2) Where a stop line, yield line, or crosswalk is designated on the roadway on the intersection approach, the area within the crosswalk and/or beyond the designated stop line or yield line shall be part of the intersection; and
 - (3) Where a crosswalk is designated on a roadway on the departure from the intersection, the intersection shall include the area extending to the far side of such crosswalk.
95. **Intersection Control Beacon**—a beacon used only at an intersection to control two or more directions of travel.
96. **Interval**—the part of a signal cycle during which signal indications do not change.
97. **Interval Sequence**—the order of appearance of signal indications during successive intervals of a signal cycle.
98. **Island**—a defined area between traffic lanes for control of vehicular movements, for toll collection, or for pedestrian refuge. It includes all end protection and approach treatments. Within an intersection area, a median or an outer separation is considered to be an island.
99. **Lane Drop**—see **Dropped Lane**.
100. **Lane Line Markings**—white pavement marking lines that delineate the separation of traffic lanes that have the same direction of travel on a roadway.
101. **Lane-Use Control Signal**—a signal face displaying indications to permit or prohibit the use of specific lanes of a roadway or to indicate the impending prohibition of such use.

102. **Legend**—see Sign Legend.
103. **Lens**—see Signal Lens.
104. **Light Rail Transit Traffic (Light Rail Transit Equipment)**—every device in, upon, or by which any person or property can be transported on light rail transit tracks, including single-unit light rail transit cars (such as streetcars and trolleys) and assemblies of multiple light rail transit cars coupled together.
105. **Locomotive Horn**—an air horn, steam whistle, or similar audible warning device (see 49 CFR Part 229.129) mounted on a locomotive or control cab car. The terms “locomotive horn,” “train whistle,” “locomotive whistle,” and “train horn” are used interchangeably in the railroad industry.
106. **Logo**—a distinctive emblem or trademark that identifies a commercial business and/or the product or service offered by the business.
107. **Longitudinal Markings**—pavement markings that are generally placed parallel and adjacent to the flow of traffic such as lane lines, center lines, edge lines, channelizing lines, and others.
108. **Louver**—see Signal Louver.
109. **Major Interchange**—an interchange with another freeway or expressway, or an interchange with a high-volume multi-lane highway, principal urban arterial, or major rural route where the interchanging traffic is heavy or includes many road users unfamiliar with the area.
110. **Major Street**—the street normally carrying the higher volume of vehicular traffic.
111. **Malfunction Management Unit**—same as Conflict Monitor.
112. **Managed Lane**—a highway lane or set of lanes, or a highway facility, for which variable operational strategies such as direction of travel, tolling, pricing, and/or vehicle type or occupancy requirements are implemented and managed in real-time in response to changing conditions. Managed lanes are typically buffer- or barrier-separated lanes parallel to the general-purpose lanes of a highway in which access is restricted to designated locations. There are also some highways on which all lanes are managed.
113. **Manual Lane**—see Attended Lane.
114. **Maximum Highway Traffic Signal Preemption Time**—the maximum amount of time needed following initiation of the preemption sequence for the highway traffic signals to complete the timing of the right-of-way transfer time, queue clearance time, and separation time.
115. **Median**—the area between two roadways of a divided highway measured from edge of traveled way to edge of traveled way. The median excludes turn lanes. The median width might be different between intersections, interchanges, and at opposite approaches of the same intersection.
116. **Minimum Track Clearance Distance**—for standard two-quadrant warning devices, the minimum track clearance distance is the length along a highway at one or more railroad or light rail transit tracks, measured from the highway stop line, warning device, or 12 feet perpendicular to the track center line, to 6 feet beyond the track(s) measured perpendicular to the far rail, along the center line or edge line of the highway, as appropriate, to obtain the longer distance. For Four-Quadrant Gate systems, the minimum track clearance distance is the length along a highway at one or more railroad or light rail transit tracks, measured either from the highway stop line or entrance warning device, to the point where the rear of the vehicle would be clear of the exit gate arm. In cases where the exit gate arm is parallel to the track(s) and is not perpendicular to the highway, the distance is measured either along the center line or edge line of the highway, as appropriate, to obtain the longer distance.
117. **Minimum Warning Time**—when used in Part 8, the least amount of time active warning devices shall operate prior to the arrival of rail traffic at a grade crossing.
118. **Minor Interchange**—an interchange where traffic is local and very light, such as interchanges with land service access roads. Where the sum of the exit volumes is estimated to be lower than 100 vehicles per day in the design year, the interchange is classified as local.
119. **Minor Street**—the street normally carrying the lower volume of vehicular traffic.
120. **Movable Bridge Resistance Gate**—a type of traffic gate, which is located downstream of the movable bridge warning gate, that provides a physical deterrent to vehicle and/or pedestrian traffic when placed in the appropriate position.
121. **Movable Bridge Signal**—a highway traffic signal installed at a movable bridge to notify traffic to stop during periods when the roadway is closed to allow the bridge to open.
122. **Movable Bridge Warning Gate**—a type of traffic gate designed to warn, but not primarily to block, vehicle and/or pedestrian traffic when placed in the appropriate position.
123. **Multi-Lane**—more than one lane moving in the same direction. A multi-lane street, highway, or roadway has a basic cross-section comprised of two or more through lanes in one or both directions. A multi-lane approach has two or more lanes moving toward the intersection, including turning lanes.

124. **Neutral Area**—the paved area between the channelizing lines separating an entrance or exit ramp or a channelized turn lane or channelized entering lane from the adjacent through lane(s).
125. **Object Marker**—a device used to mark obstructions within or adjacent to the roadway.
126. **Occupancy Requirement**—any restriction that regulates the use of a facility or one or more lanes of a facility for any period of the day based on a specified number of persons in a vehicle.
127. **Occupant**—a person driving or riding in a car, truck, bus, or other vehicle.
128. **Open-Road ETC Lane**—a non-attended lane that is designed to allow toll payments to be electronically collected from vehicles traveling at normal highway speeds. Open-Road ETC lanes are typically physically separated from the toll plaza, often following the alignment of the mainline lanes, with toll plaza lanes for cash toll payments being on a different alignment after diverging from the mainline lanes or a subset thereof.
129. **Open-Road Tolling**—a system designed to allow electronic toll collection (ETC) from vehicles traveling at normal highway speeds. Open-Road Tolling might be used on toll roads or toll facilities in conjunction with toll plazas. Open-Road Tolling is also typically used on managed lanes and on toll facilities that only accept payment by ETC.
130. **Open-Road Tolling Point**—the location along an Open-Road ETC lane at which roadside or overhead detection and receiving equipment are placed and vehicles are electronically assessed a toll.
131. **Opposing Traffic**—vehicles that are traveling in the opposite direction. At an intersection, vehicles entering from an approach that is approximately straight ahead would be considered to be opposing traffic, but vehicles entering from approaches on the left or right would not be considered to be opposing traffic.
132. **Overhead Sign**—a sign that is placed such that a portion or the entirety of the sign or its support is directly above the roadway or shoulder such that vehicles travel below it. Typical installations include signs placed on cantilever arms that extend over the roadway or shoulder, on sign support structures that span the entire width of the pavement, on mast arms or span wires that also support traffic control signals, and on highway bridges that cross over the roadway.
133. **Parking Area**—a parking lot or parking garage that is separated from a roadway. Parallel or angle parking spaces along a roadway are not considered a parking area.
134. **Passive Grade Crossing**—a grade crossing where none of the automatic traffic control devices associated with an Active Grade Crossing Warning System are present and at which the traffic control devices consist entirely of signs and/or markings.
135. **Pathway**—a general term denoting a public way for purposes of travel by authorized users outside the traveled way and physically separated from the roadway by an open space or barrier and either within the highway right-of-way or within an independent alignment. Pathways include shared-use paths, but do not include sidewalks.
136. **Pathway Grade Crossing**—the general area where a pathway and railroad or light rail transit tracks cross at the same level, within which are included the tracks, pathway, and traffic control devices for pathway traffic traversing that area.
137. **Paved**—a bituminous surface treatment, mixed bituminous concrete, or Portland cement concrete roadway surface that has both a structural (weight bearing) and a sealing purpose for the roadway.
138. **Pedestrian**—a person on foot, in a wheelchair, on skates, or on a skateboard.
139. **Pedestrian Change Interval**—an interval during which the flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication is displayed.
140. **Pedestrian Clearance Time**—the time provided for a pedestrian crossing in a crosswalk, after leaving the curb or shoulder, to travel to the far side of the traveled way or to a median.
141. **Pedestrian Facilities**—a general term denoting improvements and provisions made to accommodate or encourage walking.
142. **Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon**— a special type of hybrid beacon used to warn and control traffic at an unsignalized location to assist pedestrians in crossing a street or highway at a marked crosswalk.
143. **Pedestrian Signal Head**—a signal head, which contains the symbols WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) and UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK), that is installed to direct pedestrian traffic at a traffic control signal.
144. **Permissive Mode**—a mode of traffic control signal operation in which left or right turns are permitted to be made after yielding to pedestrians, if any, and/or opposing traffic, if any. When a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication is displayed, both left and right turns are permitted unless otherwise prohibited by another traffic control device. When a flashing YELLOW ARROW or flashing RED ARROW signal indication is displayed, the turn indicated by the arrow is permitted.

145. **Physical Gore**—a longitudinal point where a physical barrier or the lack of a paved surface inhibits road users from crossing from a ramp or channelized turn lane or channelized entering lane to the adjacent through lane(s) or vice versa.
146. **Pictograph**—a pictorial representation used to identify a governmental jurisdiction, an area of jurisdiction, a governmental agency, a military base or branch of service, a governmental-approved university or college, a toll payment system, or a government-approved institution.
147. **Plaque**—a traffic control device intended to communicate specific information to road users through a word, symbol, or arrow legend that is placed immediately adjacent to a sign to supplement the message on the sign. The difference between a plaque and a sign is that a plaque cannot be used alone. The designation for a plaque includes a “P” suffix.
148. **Platoon**—a group of vehicles or pedestrians traveling together as a group, either voluntarily or involuntarily, because of traffic signal controls, geometrics, or other factors.
149. **Portable Traffic Control Signal**—a temporary traffic control signal that is designed so that it can be easily transported and reused at different locations.
150. **Post-Mounted Sign**—a sign that is placed to the side of the roadway such that no portion of the sign or its support is directly above the roadway or shoulder.
151. **Posted Speed Limit**—a speed limit determined by law or regulation and displayed on Speed Limit signs.
152. **Preemption**—the transfer of normal operation of a traffic control signal to a special control mode of operation.
153. **Preferential Lane**—a highway lane reserved for the exclusive use of one or more specific types of vehicles or vehicles with at least a specific number of occupants.
154. **Pre-Signal**—traffic control signal faces that control traffic approaching a grade crossing in conjunction with the traffic control signal faces that control traffic approaching a highway-highway intersection beyond the tracks. Supplemental near-side traffic control signal faces for the highway-highway intersection are not considered pre-signals. Pre-signals are typically used where the clear storage distance is insufficient to store one or more design vehicles.
155. **Pretimed Operation**—a type of traffic control signal operation in which none of the signal phases function on the basis of actuation.
156. **Primary Signal Face**—one of the required or recommended minimum number of signal faces for a given approach or separate turning movement, but not including near-side signal faces required as a result of the far-side signal faces exceeding the maximum distance from the stop line.
157. **Principal Legend**—place names, street names, and route numbers placed on guide signs.
158. **Priority Control**—a means by which the assignment of right-of-way is obtained or modified.
159. **Private Road Open to Public Travel**—private toll roads and roads (including any adjacent sidewalks that generally run parallel to the road) within shopping centers, airports, sports arenas, and other similar business and/or recreation facilities that are privately owned, but where the public is allowed to travel without access restrictions. Roads within private gated properties (except for gated toll roads) where access is restricted at all times, parking areas, driving aisles within parking areas, and private grade crossings shall not be included in this definition.
160. **Protected Mode**—a mode of traffic control signal operation in which left or right turns are permitted to be made when a left or right GREEN ARROW signal indication is displayed.
161. **Public Road**—any road, street, or similar facility under the jurisdiction of and maintained by a public agency and open to public travel.
162. **Pushbutton**—a button to activate a device or signal timing for pedestrians, bicyclists, or other road users.
163. **Pushbutton Information Message**—a recorded message that can be actuated by pressing a pushbutton when the walk interval is not timing and that provides the name of the street that the crosswalk associated with that particular pushbutton crosses and can also provide other information about the intersection signalization or geometry.
164. **Pushbutton Locator Tone**—a repeating sound that informs approaching pedestrians that a pushbutton exists to actuate pedestrian timing or receive additional information and that enables pedestrians who have visual disabilities to locate the pushbutton.
165. **Queue Clearance Time**—when used in Part 8, the time required for the design vehicle of maximum length stopped just inside the minimum track clearance distance to start up and move through and clear the entire minimum track clearance distance. If pre-signals are present, this time shall be long enough to allow the vehicle to move through the intersection, or to clear the tracks if there is sufficient clear storage distance. If a Four-Quadrant Gate system is present, this time shall be long enough to permit the exit gate arm to lower after the design vehicle is clear of the minimum track clearance distance.

166. **Quiet Zone**—a segment of a rail line, with one or a number of consecutive public highway-rail grade crossings at which locomotive horns are not routinely sounded per 49 CFR Part 222.
167. **Rail Traffic**—every device in, upon, or by which any person or property can be transported on rails or tracks and to which all other traffic must yield the right-of-way by law at grade crossings, including trains, one or more locomotives coupled (with or without cars), other railroad equipment, and light rail transit operating in exclusive or semi-exclusive alignments. Light rail transit operating in a mixed-use alignment, to which other traffic is not required to yield the right-of-way by law, is a vehicle and is not considered to be rail traffic.
168. **Raised Pavement Marker**—a device mounted on or in a road surface that has a height generally not exceeding approximately 1 inch above the road surface for a permanent marker, or not exceeding approximately 2 inches above the road surface for a temporary flexible marker, and that is intended to be used as a positioning guide and/or to supplement or substitute for pavement markings.
169. **Ramp Control Signal**—a highway traffic signal installed to control the flow of traffic onto a freeway at an entrance ramp or at a freeway-to-freeway ramp connection.
170. **Ramp Meter**—see Ramp Control Signal.
171. **Red Clearance Interval**—an interval that follows a yellow change interval and precedes the next conflicting green interval.
172. **Regulatory Sign**—a sign that gives notice to road users of traffic laws or regulations.
173. **Retroreflectivity**—a property of a surface that allows a large portion of the light coming from a point source to be returned directly back to a point near its origin.
174. **Right-of-Way [Assignment]**—the permitting of vehicles and/or pedestrians to proceed in a lawful manner in preference to other vehicles or pedestrians by the display of a sign or signal indications.
175. **Right-of-Way Transfer Time**—when used in Part 8, the maximum amount of time needed for the worst case condition, prior to display of the track clearance green interval. This includes any railroad or light rail transit or highway traffic signal control equipment time to react to a preemption call, and any traffic control signal green, pedestrian walk and clearance, yellow change, and red clearance intervals for conflicting traffic.
176. **Road**—see Roadway.
177. **Road User**—a vehicle operator, bicyclist, or pedestrian, including persons with disabilities, within the highway or on a private road open to public travel.
178. **Roadway**—that portion of a highway improved, designed, or ordinarily used for vehicular travel and parking lanes, but exclusive of the sidewalk, berm, or shoulder even though such sidewalk, berm, or shoulder is used by persons riding bicycles or other human-powered vehicles. In the event a highway includes two or more separate roadways, the term roadway as used in this Manual shall refer to any such roadway separately, but not to all such roadways collectively.
179. **Roadway Network**—a geographical arrangement of intersecting roadways.
180. **Roundabout**—a circular intersection with yield control at entry, which permits a vehicle on the circulatory roadway to proceed, and with deflection of the approaching vehicle counter-clockwise around a central island.
181. **Rumble Strip**—a series of intermittent, narrow, transverse areas of rough-textured, slightly raised, or depressed road surface that extend across the travel lane to alert road users to unusual traffic conditions or are located along the shoulder, along the roadway center line, or within islands formed by pavement markings to alert road users that they are leaving the travel lanes.
182. **Rural Highway**—a type of roadway normally characterized by lower volumes, higher speeds, fewer turning conflicts, and less conflict with pedestrians.
183. **Safe-Positioned**—the positioning of emergency vehicles at an incident in a manner that attempts to protect both the responders performing their duties and road users traveling through the incident scene, while minimizing, to the extent practical, disruption of the adjacent traffic flow.
184. **School**—a public or private educational institution recognized by the State education authority for one or more grades K through 12 or as otherwise defined by the State.
185. **School Zone**—a designated roadway segment approaching, adjacent to, and beyond school buildings or grounds, or along which school related activities occur.
186. **Semi-Actuated Operation**—a type of traffic control signal operation in which at least one, but not all, signal phases function on the basis of actuation.
187. **Separate Turn Signal Face**—a signal face that exclusively controls a turn movement and that displays signal indications that are applicable only to the turn movement.
188. **Separation Time**—the component of maximum highway traffic signal preemption time during which the minimum track clearance distance is clear of vehicular traffic prior to the arrival of rail traffic.

189. **Shared Roadway**—a roadway that is officially designated and marked as a bicycle route, but which is open to motor vehicle travel and upon which no bicycle lane is designated.
190. **Shared Turn Signal Face**—a signal face, for controlling both a turn movement and the adjacent through movement, that always displays the same color of circular signal indication that the adjacent through signal face or faces display.
191. **Shared-Use Path**—a bikeway outside the traveled way and physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic by an open space or barrier and either within the highway right-of-way or within an independent alignment. Shared-use paths are also used by pedestrians (including skaters, users of manual and motorized wheelchairs, and joggers) and other authorized motorized and non-motorized users.
192. **Sidewalk**—that portion of a street between the curb line, or the lateral line of a roadway, and the adjacent property line or on easements of private property that is paved or improved and intended for use by pedestrians.
193. **Sign**—any traffic control device that is intended to communicate specific information to road users through a word, symbol, and/or arrow legend. Signs do not include highway traffic signals, pavement markings, delineators, or channelization devices.
194. **Sign Assembly**—a group of signs, located on the same support(s), that supplement one another in conveying information to road users.
195. **Sign Illumination**—either internal or external lighting that shows similar color by day or night. Street or highway lighting shall not be considered as meeting this definition.
196. **Sign Legend**—all word messages, logos, pictographs, and symbol and arrow designs that are intended to convey specific meanings. The border, if any, on a sign is not considered to be a part of the legend.
197. **Sign Panel**—a separate panel or piece of material containing a word, symbol, and/or arrow legend that is affixed to the face of a sign.
198. **Signal Backplate**—a thin strip of material that extends outward from and parallel to a signal face on all sides of a signal housing to provide a background for improved visibility of the signal indications.
199. **Signal Coordination**—the establishment of timed relationships between adjacent traffic control signals.
200. **Signal Face**—an assembly of one or more signal sections that is provided for controlling one or more traffic movements on a single approach.
201. **Signal Head**—an assembly of one or more signal faces that is provided for controlling traffic movements on one or more approaches.
202. **Signal Housing**—that part of a signal section that protects the light source and other required components.
203. **Signal Indication**—the illumination of a signal lens or equivalent device.
204. **Signal Lens**—that part of the signal section that redirects the light coming directly from the light source and its reflector, if any.
205. **Signal Louver**—a device that can be mounted inside a signal visor to restrict visibility of a signal indication from the side or to limit the visibility of the signal indication to a certain lane or lanes, or to a certain distance from the stop line.
206. **Signal Phase**—the right-of-way, yellow change, and red clearance intervals in a cycle that are assigned to an independent traffic movement or combination of movements.
207. **Signal Section**—the assembly of a signal housing, signal lens, if any, and light source with necessary components to be used for displaying one signal indication.
208. **Signal System**—two or more traffic control signals operating in signal coordination.
209. **Signal Timing**—the amount of time allocated for the display of a signal indication.
210. **Signal Visor**—that part of a signal section that directs the signal indication specifically to approaching traffic and reduces the effect of direct external light entering the signal lens.
211. **Signing**—individual signs or a group of signs, not necessarily on the same support(s), that supplement one another in conveying information to road users.
212. **Simultaneous Preemption**—notification of approaching rail traffic is forwarded to the highway traffic signal controller unit or assembly and railroad or light rail transit active warning devices at the same time.
213. **Special Purpose Road**—a low-volume, low-speed road that serves recreational areas or resource development activities.

- 214. Speed**—speed is defined based on the following classifications:
- (a) **Average Speed**—the summation of the instantaneous or spot-measured speeds at a specific location of vehicles divided by the number of vehicles observed.
 - (b) **Design Speed**—a selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of a roadway.
 - (c) **85th-Percentile Speed**—the speed at or below which 85 percent of the motor vehicles travel.
 - (d) **Operating Speed**—a speed at which a typical vehicle or the overall traffic operates. Operating speed might be defined with speed values such as the average, pace, or 85th-percentile speeds.
 - (e) **Pace**—the 10 mph speed range representing the speeds of the largest percentage of vehicles in the traffic stream.
- 215. Speed Limit**—the maximum (or minimum) speed applicable to a section of highway as established by law or regulation.
- 216. Speed Limit Sign Beacon**—a beacon used to supplement a SPEED LIMIT sign.
- 217. Speed Measurement Markings**—a white transverse pavement marking placed on the roadway to assist the enforcement of speed regulations.
- 218. Speed Zone**—a section of highway with a speed limit that is established by law or regulation, but which might be different from a legislatively specified statutory speed limit.
- 219. Splitter Island**—a median island used to separate opposing directions of traffic entering and exiting a roundabout.
- 220. Station Crossing**—a pathway grade crossing that is associated with a station platform.
- 221. Statutory Speed Limit**—a speed limit established by legislative action that typically is applicable for a particular class of highways with specified design, functional, jurisdictional and/or location characteristics and that is not necessarily displayed on Speed Limit signs.
- 222. Steady (Steady Mode)**—the continuous display of a signal indication for the duration of an interval, signal phase, or consecutive signal phases.
- 223. Stop Beacon**—a beacon used to supplement a STOP sign, a DO NOT ENTER sign, or a WRONG WAY sign.
- 224. Stop Line**—a solid white pavement marking line extending across approach lanes to indicate the point at which a stop is intended or required to be made.
- 225. Street**—see Highway.
- 226. Supplemental Signal Face**—a signal face that is not a primary signal face but which is provided for a given approach or separate turning movement to enhance visibility or conspicuity.
- 227. Symbol**—the approved design of a pictorial representation of a specific traffic control message for signs, pavement markings, traffic control signals, or other traffic control devices, as shown in the MUTCD.
- 228. Temporary Traffic Control Signal**—a traffic control signal that is installed for a limited time period.
- 229. Temporary Traffic Control Zone**—an area of a highway where road user conditions are changed because of a work zone or incident by the use of temporary traffic control devices, flaggers, uniformed law enforcement officers, or other authorized personnel.
- 230. Theoretical Gore**—a longitudinal point at the upstream end of a neutral area at an exit ramp or channelized turn lane where the channelizing lines that separate the ramp or channelized turn lane from the adjacent through lane(s) begin to diverge, or a longitudinal point at the downstream end of a neutral area at an entrance ramp or channelized entering lane where the channelizing lines that separate the ramp or channelized entering lane from the adjacent through lane(s) intersect each other.
- 231. Timed Exit Gate Operating Mode**—a mode of operation where the exit gate descent at a grade crossing is based on a predetermined time interval.
- 232. Toll Booth**—a shelter where a toll attendant is stationed to collect tolls or issue toll tickets. A toll booth is located adjacent to a toll lane and is typically set on a toll island.
- 233. Toll Island**—a raised island on which a toll booth or other toll collection and related equipment are located.
- 234. Toll Lane**—an individual lane located within a toll plaza in which a toll payment is collected or, for toll-ticket systems, a toll ticket is issued.
- 235. Toll Plaza**—the location at which tolls are collected consisting of a grouping of toll booths, toll islands, toll lanes, and, typically, a canopy. Toll plazas might be located on highway mainlines or on interchange ramps. A mainline toll plaza is sometimes referred to as a barrier toll plaza because it interrupts the traffic flow.

236. **Toll-Ticket System**—a system in which the user of a toll road receives a ticket from a machine or toll booth attendant upon entering a toll system. The ticket denotes the user’s point of entry and, upon exiting the toll system, the user surrenders the ticket and is charged a toll based on the distance traveled between the points of entry and exit.
237. **Traffic**—pedestrians, bicyclists, ridden or herded animals, vehicles, streetcars, and other conveyances either singularly or together while using for purposes of travel any highway or private road open to public travel.
238. **Traffic Control Device**—a sign, signal, marking, or other device used to regulate, warn, or guide traffic, placed on, over, or adjacent to a street, highway, private road open to public travel, pedestrian facility, or shared-use path by authority of a public agency or official having jurisdiction, or, in the case of a private road open to public travel, by authority of the private owner or private official having jurisdiction.
239. **Traffic Control Signal (Traffic Signal)**—any highway traffic signal by which traffic is alternately directed to stop and permitted to proceed.
240. **Train**—one or more locomotives coupled, with or without cars, that operates on rails or tracks and to which all other traffic must yield the right-of-way by law at highway-rail grade crossings.
241. **Transverse Markings**—pavement markings that are generally placed perpendicular and across the flow of traffic such as shoulder markings; word, symbol, and arrow markings; stop lines; crosswalk lines; speed measurement markings; parking space markings; and others.
242. **Traveled Way**—the portion of the roadway for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of the shoulders, berms, sidewalks, and parking lanes.
243. **Turn Bay**—a lane for the exclusive use of turning vehicles that is formed on the approach to the location where the turn is to be made. In most cases where turn bays are provided, drivers who desire to turn must move out of a through lane into the newly formed turn bay in order to turn. A through lane that becomes a turn lane is considered to be a dropped lane rather than a turn bay.
244. **Upstream**—a term that refers to a location that is encountered by traffic prior to a downstream location as it flows in an “upstream to downstream” direction. For example, “the upstream end of a lane line separating the turn lane from a through lane on the approach to an intersection” is the end of the line that is furthest from the intersection.
245. **Urban Street**—a type of street normally characterized by relatively low speeds, wide ranges of traffic volumes, narrower lanes, frequent intersections and driveways, significant pedestrian traffic, and more businesses and houses.
246. **Vehicle**—every device in, upon, or by which any person or property can be transported or drawn upon a highway, except trains and light rail transit operating in exclusive or semi-exclusive alignments. Light rail transit equipment operating in a mixed-use alignment, to which other traffic is not required to yield the right-of-way by law, is a vehicle.
247. **Vibrotactile Pedestrian Device**—an accessible pedestrian signal feature that communicates, by touch, information about pedestrian timing using a vibrating surface.
248. **Visibility-Limited Signal Face or Visibility-Limited Signal Section**—a type of signal face or signal section designed (or shielded, hooded, or louvered) to restrict the visibility of a signal indication from the side, to a certain lane or lanes, or to a certain distance from the stop line.
249. **Walk Interval**—an interval during which the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication is displayed.
250. **Warning Beacon**—a beacon used only to supplement an appropriate warning or regulatory sign or marker.
251. **Warning Light**—a portable, powered, yellow, lens-directed, enclosed light that is used in a temporary traffic control zone in either a steady burn or a flashing mode.
252. **Warning Sign**—a sign that gives notice to road users of a situation that might not be readily apparent.
253. **Warrant**—a warrant describes a threshold condition based upon average or normal conditions that, if found to be satisfied as part of an engineering study, shall result in analysis of other traffic conditions or factors to determine whether a traffic control device or other improvement is justified. Warrants are not a substitute for engineering judgment. The fact that a warrant for a particular traffic control device is met is not conclusive justification for the installation of the device.
254. **Wayside Equipment**—the signals, switches, and/or control devices for railroad or light rail transit operations housed within one or more enclosures located along the railroad or light rail transit right-of-way and/or on railroad or light rail transit property.
255. **Wayside Horn System**—a stationary horn (or series of horns) located at a grade crossing that is used in conjunction with train-activated or light rail transit-activated warning systems to provide audible warning of approaching rail traffic to road users on the highway or pathway approaches to a grade crossing, either as a supplement or alternative to the sounding of a locomotive horn.

- 256. **Worker**—a person on foot whose duties place him or her within the right-of-way of a street, highway, or pathway, such as street, highway, or pathway construction and maintenance forces, survey crews, utility crews, responders to incidents within the street, highway, or pathway right-of-way, and law enforcement personnel when directing traffic, investigating crashes, and handling lane closures, obstructed roadways, and disasters within the right-of-way of a street, highway, or pathway.
- 257. **Wrong-Way Arrow**—a slender, elongated, white pavement marking arrow placed upstream from the ramp terminus to indicate the correct direction of traffic flow. Wrong-way arrows are intended primarily to warn wrong-way road users that they are going in the wrong direction.
- 258. **Yellow Change Interval**—the first interval following the green or flashing arrow interval during which the steady yellow signal indication is displayed.
- 259. **Yield Line**—a row of solid white isosceles triangles pointing toward approaching vehicles extending across approach lanes to indicate the point at which the yield is intended or required to be made.

Section 1A.14 Meanings of Acronyms and Abbreviations in this Manual

Standard:

01 The following acronyms and abbreviations, when used in this Manual, shall have the following meanings:

- 1. **AADT**—annual average daily traffic
- 2. **AASHTO**—American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
- 3. **ADA**—Americans with Disabilities Act
- 4. **ADAAG**—Americans with Disabilities Accessibility Guidelines
- 5. **ADT**—average daily traffic
- 6. **AFAD**—Automated Flagger Assistance Device
- 7. **ANSI**—American National Standards Institute
- 8. **CFR**—Code of Federal Regulations
- 9. **CMS**—changeable message sign
- 10. **dba**—A-weighted decibels
- 11. **EPA**—Environmental Protection Agency
- 12. **ETC**—electronic toll collection
- 13. **EV**—electric vehicle
- 14. **FHWA**—Federal Highway Administration
- 15. **FRA**—Federal Railroad Administration
- 16. **FTA**—Federal Transit Administration
- 17. **HOT**—high occupancy tolls
- 18. **HOTM**—FHWA’s Office of Transportation Management
- 19. **HOTO**—FHWA’s Office of Transportation Operations
- 20. **HOV**—high-occupancy vehicle
- 21. **ILEV**—inherently low emission vehicle
- 22. **ISEA**—International Safety Equipment Association
- 23. **ITE**—Institute of Transportation Engineers
- 24. **ITS**—intelligent transportation systems
- 25. **LED**—light emitting diode
- 26. **LP**—liquid petroleum
- 27. **MPH or mph**—miles per hour
- 28. **MUTCD**—Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices
- 29. **NCHRP**—National Cooperative Highway Research Program
- 30. **ORT**—open-road tolling
- 31. **PCMS**—portable changeable message sign
- 32. **PRT**—perception-response time
- 33. **RPM**—raised pavement marker
- 34. **RRPM**—raised retroreflective pavement marker
- 35. **RV**—recreational vehicle
- 36. **TDD**—telecommunication devices for the deaf
- 37. **TRB**—Transportation Research Board
- 38. **TTC**—temporary traffic control
- 39. **U.S.**—United States
- 40. **U.S.C.**—United States Code
- 41. **USDOT**—United States Department of Transportation
- 42. **UVC**—Uniform Vehicle Code
- 43. **VPH or vph**—vehicles per hour

Section 1A.15 Abbreviations Used on Traffic Control Devices

Standard:

01 When the word messages shown in Table 1A-1 need to be abbreviated in connection with traffic control devices, the abbreviations shown in Table 1A-1 shall be used.

02 When the word messages shown in Table 1A-2 need to be abbreviated on a portable changeable message sign, the abbreviations shown in Table 1A-2 shall be used. Unless indicated by an asterisk, these abbreviations shall only be used on portable changeable message signs.

Guidance:

03 The abbreviations for the words listed in Table 1A-2 that also show a prompt word should not be used on a portable changeable message sign unless the prompt word shown in Table 1A-2 either precedes or follows the abbreviation, as applicable.

Standard:

04 The abbreviations shown in Table 1A-3 shall not be used in connection with traffic control devices because of their potential to be misinterpreted by road users.

Guidance:

05 If multiple abbreviations are permitted in Table 1A-1 or 1A-2, the same abbreviation should be used throughout a single jurisdiction.

06 Except as otherwise provided in Table 1A-1 or 1A-2 or unless necessary to avoid confusion, periods, commas, apostrophes, question marks, ampersands, and other punctuation marks or characters that are not letters or numerals should not be used in any abbreviation.

Table 1A-1. Acceptable Abbreviations

Word Message	Standard Abbreviation	Word Message	Standard Abbreviation	Word Message	Standard Abbreviation
Afternoon / Evening	PM	Highway	HWY*	Pounds	LBS
Alternate	ALT	Hospital	HOSP	Road	RD*
AM Radio	AM	Hour(s)	HR, HRS	Saint	ST
Avenue	AVE, AV	Information	INFO	Saturday	SAT
Bicycle	BIKE	Inherently Low Emission Vehicle	ILEV	South	S
Boulevard	BLVD*	International	INTL	State, county, or other non-US or non-Interstate numbered route	(See Table 1A-2)
Bridge	(See Table 1A-2)	Interstate	(See Table 1A-2)	Street	ST*
CB Radio	CB	Junction / Intersection	JCT	Sunday	SUN
Center (as part of a place name)	CTR	Lane	(See Table 1A-2)	Telephone	PHONE
Circle	CIR*	Liquid Propane Gas	LP-GAS	Temporary	TEMP
Civil Defense	CD	Maximum	MAX	Terrace	TER*
Compressed Natural Gas	CNG	Mile(s)	MI	Thursday	THURS
Court	CT*	Miles Per Hour	MPH	Thruway	THWY*
Crossing (other than highway-rail)	X-ING	Minimum	MIN	Tons of Weight	T
Drive	DR*	Minute(s)	MIN	Trail	TR*
East	E	Monday	MON	Tuesday	TUES
Electric Vehicle	EV	Morning / Late Night	AM	Turnpike	TPK*
Expressway	EXPWY*	Mount	MT	Two-Way Intersection	2-WAY
Feet	FT	Mountain	MTN	US Numbered Route	US
FM Radio	FM	National	NATL	Wednesday	WED
Freeway	FRWY, FWY*	North	N	West	W
Friday	FRI	Parkway	PKWY*		
Hazardous Material	HAZMAT	Pedestrian	PED		
High Occupancy Vehicle	HOV	Place	PL*		

*This abbreviation shall not be used for any application other than the name of a roadway.

**Table 1A-2. Abbreviations That Shall be Used Only
on Portable Changeable Message Signs**

Word Message	Standard Abbreviation	Prompt Word That Should Precede the Abbreviation	Prompt Word That Should Follow the Abbreviation
Access	ACCS	—	Road
Ahead	AHD	Fog	—
Blocked	BLKD	Lane	—
Bridge	BR*	[Name]	—
Cannot	CANT	—	—
Center	CNTR	—	Lane
Chemical	CHEM	—	Spill
Condition	COND	Traffic	—
Congested	CONG	Traffic	—
Construction	CONST	—	Ahead
Crossing	XING	—	—
Do Not	DONT	—	—
Downtown	DWNTN	—	Traffic
Eastbound	E-BND	—	—
Emergency	EMER	—	—
Entrance, Enter	ENT	—	—
Exit	EX	Next	—
Express	EXP	—	Lane
Frontage	FRNTG	—	Road
Hazardous	HAZ	—	Driving
Highway-Rail Grade Crossing	RR XING	—	—
Interstate	I-*	—	[Number]
It Is	ITS	—	—
Lane	LN	[Roadway Name]*, Right, Left, Center	—
Left	LFT	—	—
Local	LOC	—	Traffic
Lower	LWR	—	Level
Maintenance	MAINT	—	—
Major	MAJ	—	Accident
Minor	MNR	—	Accident
Normal	NORM	—	—
Northbound	N-BND	—	—
Oversized	OVRSZ	—	Load
Parking	PKING	—	—
Pavement	PVMT	Wet	—
Prepare	PREP	—	To Stop
Quality	QLTY	Air	—
Right	RT	Keep, Next	—
Right	RT	—	Lane
Roadwork	RDWK	—	Ahead, [Distance]
Route	RT, RTE	Best	—
Service	SERV	—	—
Shoulder	SHLDR	—	—
Slippery	SLIP	—	—
Southbound	S-BND	—	—
Speed	SPD	—	—
State, county, or other non-US or non-Interstate numbered route	[Route Abbreviation determined by highway agency]**	—	[Number]
Tires With Lugs	LUGS	—	—
Traffic	TRAF	—	—
Travelers	TRVLR	—	—
Two-Wheeled Vehicles	CYCLES	—	—
Upper	UPR	—	Level
Vehicle(s)	VEH, VEHS	—	—
Warning	WARN	—	—
Westbound	W-BND	—	—
Will Not	WONT	—	—

* This abbreviation, when accompanied by the prompt word, may be used on traffic control devices other than portable changeable message signs.

** A space and no dash shall be placed between the abbreviation and the number of the route.

Table 1A-3. Unacceptable Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Intended Word	Common Misinterpretation
ACC	Accident	Access (Road)
CLRS	Clears	Colors
DLY	Delay	Daily
FDR	Feeder	Federal
L	Left	Lane (Merge)
LT	Light (Traffic)	Left
PARK	Parking	Park
POLL	Pollution (Index)	Poll
RED	Reduce	Red
STAD	Stadium	Standard
WRNG	Warning	Wrong

PART 2

SIGNS

CHAPTER 2A. GENERAL

Section 2A.01 Function and Purpose of Signs

Support:

- 01 This Manual contains Standards, Guidance, and Options for the signing of all types of highways, and private roads open to public travel. The functions of signs are to provide regulations, warnings, and guidance information for road users. Words, symbols, and arrows are used to convey the messages. Signs are not typically used to confirm rules of the road.
- 02 Detailed sign requirements are located in the following Chapters of Part 2:
- Chapter 2B — Regulatory Signs, Barricades, and Gates
 - Chapter 2C — Warning Signs and Object Markers
 - Chapter 2D — Guide Signs for Conventional Roads
 - Chapter 2E — Guide Signs for Freeways and Expressways
 - Chapter 2F — Toll Road Signs
 - Chapter 2G — Preferential and Managed Lane Signs
 - Chapter 2H — General Information Signs
 - Chapter 2I — General Service Signs
 - Chapter 2J — Specific Service (Logo) Signs
 - Chapter 2K — Tourist-Oriented Directional Signs
 - Chapter 2L — Changeable Message Signs
 - Chapter 2M — Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Signs
 - Chapter 2N — Emergency Management Signs

Standard:

- 03 **Because the requirements and standards for signs depend on the particular type of highway upon which they are to be used, the definitions for freeway, expressway, conventional road, and special purpose road given in Section 1A.13 shall apply in Part 2.**

Section 2A.02 Definitions

Support:

- 01 Definitions and acronyms that are applicable to signs are given in Sections 1A.13 and 1A.14.

Section 2A.03 Standardization of Application

Support:

- 01 It is recognized that urban traffic conditions differ from those in rural environments, and in many instances signs are applied and located differently. Where pertinent and practical, this Manual sets forth separate recommendations for urban and rural conditions.

Guidance:

- 02 *Signs should be used only where justified by engineering judgment or studies, as provided in Section 1A.09.*
- 03 *Results from traffic engineering studies of physical and traffic factors should indicate the locations where signs are deemed necessary or desirable.*
- 04 *Roadway geometric design and sign application should be coordinated so that signing can be effectively placed to give the road user any necessary regulatory, warning, guidance, and other information.*

Standard:

- 05 **Each standard sign shall be displayed only for the specific purpose as prescribed in this Manual. Determination of the particular signs to be applied to a specific condition shall be made in accordance with the provisions set forth in Part 2. Before any new highway, private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13), detour, or temporary route is opened to public travel, all necessary signs shall be in place. Signs required by road conditions or restrictions shall be removed when those conditions cease to exist or the restrictions are withdrawn.**

Section 2A.04 Excessive Use of Signs

Guidance:

- 01 *Regulatory and warning signs should be used conservatively because these signs, if used to excess, tend to lose their effectiveness. If used, route signs and directional guide signs should be used frequently because their use promotes efficient operations by keeping road users informed of their location.*

Section 2A.05 Classification of Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Signs shall be defined by their function as follows:**
- A. **Regulatory signs give notice of traffic laws or regulations.**
 - B. **Warning signs give notice of a situation that might not be readily apparent.**
 - C. **Guide signs show route designations, destinations, directions, distances, services, points of interest, and other geographical, recreational, or cultural information.**

Support:

- 02 Object markers are defined in Section 2C.63.

Section 2A.06 Design of Signs

Support:

- 01 This Manual shows many typical standard signs and object markers approved for use on streets, highways, bikeways, and pedestrian crossings.
- 02 In the specifications for individual signs and object markers, the general appearance of the legend, color, and size are shown in the accompanying tables and illustrations, and are not always detailed in the text.
- 03 Detailed drawings of standard signs, object markers, alphabets, symbols, and arrows (see Figure 2D-2) are shown in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book. Section 1A.11 contains information regarding how to obtain this publication.
- 04 The basic requirements of a sign are that it be legible to those for whom it is intended and that it be understandable in time to permit a proper response. Desirable attributes include:
- A. High visibility by day and night; and
 - B. High legibility (adequately sized letters, symbols, or arrows, and a short legend for quick comprehension by a road user approaching a sign).
- 05 Standardized colors and shapes are specified so that the several classes of traffic signs can be promptly recognized. Simplicity and uniformity in design, position, and application are important.

Standard:

- 06 **The term legend shall include all word messages and symbol and arrow designs that are intended to convey specific meanings.**
- 07 **Uniformity in design shall include shape, color, dimensions, legends, borders, and illumination or retroreflectivity.**
- 08 **Standardization of these designs does not preclude further improvement by minor changes in the proportion or orientation of symbols, width of borders, or layout of word messages, but all shapes and colors shall be as indicated.**
- 09 **All symbols shall be unmistakably similar to, or mirror images of, the adopted symbol signs, all of which are shown in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11). Symbols and colors shall not be modified unless otherwise provided in this Manual. All symbols and colors for signs not shown in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book shall follow the procedures for experimentation and change described in Section 1A.10.**

Option:

- 10 Although the standard design of symbol signs cannot be modified, the orientation of the symbol may be changed to better reflect the direction of travel, if appropriate.

Standard:

- 11 **Where a standard word message is applicable, the wording shall be as provided in this Manual.**
- 12 **In situations where word messages are required other than those provided in this Manual, the signs shall be of the same shape and color as standard signs of the same functional type.**

Option:

- 13 State and local highway agencies may develop special word message signs in situations where roadway conditions make it necessary to provide road users with additional regulatory, warning, or guidance information, such as when road users need to be notified of special regulations or warned about a situation that might not be readily apparent. Unlike colors that have not been assigned or symbols that have not been approved for signs, new word message signs may be used without the need for experimentation.

Standard:

14 **Except as provided in Paragraph 16 and except for the Carpool Information (D12-2) sign (see Section 2I.11), Internet addresses and e-mail addresses, including domain names and uniform resource locators (URL), shall not be displayed on any sign, supplemental plaque, sign panel (including logo sign panels on Specific Service signs), or changeable message sign.**

Guidance:

15 *Unless otherwise provided in this Manual for a specific sign, and except as provided in Paragraph 16, telephone numbers of more than four characters should not be displayed on any sign, supplemental plaque, sign panel (including logo sign panels on Specific Service signs), or changeable message sign.*

Option:

16 Internet addresses, e-mail addresses, or telephone numbers with more than four characters may be displayed on signs, supplemental plaques, sign panels, and changeable message signs that are intended for viewing only by pedestrians, bicyclists, occupants of parked vehicles, or drivers of vehicles on low-speed roadways where engineering judgment indicates that an area is available for drivers to stop out of the traffic flow to read the message.

Standard:

17 **Pictographs (see definition in Section 1A.13) shall not be displayed on signs except as specifically provided in this Manual. Pictographs shall be simple, dignified, and devoid of any advertising. When used to represent a political jurisdiction (such as a State, county, or municipal corporation) the pictograph shall be the official designation adopted by the jurisdiction. When used to represent a college or university, the pictograph shall be the official seal adopted by the institution. Pictorial representations of university or college programs shall not be permitted to be displayed on a sign.**

Section 2A.07 Retroreflectivity and Illumination

Support:

01 There are many materials currently available for retroreflection and various methods currently available for the illumination of signs and object markers. New materials and methods continue to emerge. New materials and methods can be used as long as the signs and object markers meet the standard requirements for color, both by day and by night.

Standard:

02 **Regulatory, warning, and guide signs and object markers shall be retroreflective (see Section 2A.08) or illuminated to show the same shape and similar color by both day and night, unless otherwise provided in the text discussion in this Manual for a particular sign or group of signs.**

03 **The requirements for sign illumination shall not be considered to be satisfied by street or highway lighting.**

Option:

04 Sign elements may be illuminated by the means shown in Table 2A-1.

05 Retroreflection of sign elements may be accomplished by the means shown in Table 2A-2.

06 Light Emitting Diode (LED) units may be used individually within the legend or symbol of a sign and in the border of a sign, except for changeable message signs, to improve the conspicuity, increase the legibility of sign legends and borders, or provide a changeable message.

Table 2A-1. Illumination of Sign Elements	
Means of Illumination	Sign Element to be Illuminated
Light behind the sign face	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Symbol or word message • Background • Symbol, word message, and background (through a translucent material)
Attached or independently mounted light source designed to direct essentially uniform illumination onto the sign face	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entire sign face
Light emitting diodes (LEDs)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Symbol or word message • Portions of the sign border
Other devices, or treatments that highlight the sign shape, color, or message: Luminous tubing Fiber optics Incandescent light bulbs Luminescent panels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Symbol or word message • Entire sign face

Table 2A-2. Retroreflection of Sign Elements	
Means of Retroreflection	Sign Element
Reflector "buttons" or similar units	Symbol Word message Border
A material that has a smooth, sealed outer surface over a microstructure that reflects light	Symbol Word message Border Background

Standard:

- 07 **Except as provided in Paragraphs 11 and 12, neither individual LEDs nor groups of LEDs shall be placed within the background area of a sign.**
- 08 **If used, the LEDs shall have a maximum diameter of 1/4 inch and shall be the following colors based on the type of sign:**
- A. **White or red, if used with STOP or YIELD signs.**
 - B. **White, if used with regulatory signs other than STOP or YIELD signs.**
 - C. **White or yellow, if used with warning signs.**
 - D. **White, if used with guide signs.**
 - E. **White, yellow, or orange, if used with temporary traffic control signs.**
 - F. **White or yellow, if used with school area signs.**
- 09 **If flashed, all LED units shall flash simultaneously at a rate of more than 50 and less than 60 times per minute.**
- 10 **The uniformity of the sign design shall be maintained without any decrease in visibility, legibility, or driver comprehension during either daytime or nighttime conditions.**
- Option:
- 11 For STOP and YIELD signs, LEDs may be placed within the border or within one border width within the background of the sign.
- 12 For STOP/SLOW paddles (see Section 6E.03) used by flaggers and the STOP paddles (see Section 7D.05) used by adult crossing guards, individual LEDs or groups of LEDs may be used.
- Support:
- 13 Other methods of enhancing the conspicuity of standard signs are described in Section 2A.15.
- 14 Information regarding the use of retroreflective material on the sign support is contained in Section 2A.21.

Section 2A.08 Maintaining Minimum Retroreflectivity

Support:

- 01 Retroreflectivity is one of several factors associated with maintaining nighttime sign visibility (see Section 2A.22).

Standard:

- 02 **Public agencies or officials having jurisdiction shall use an assessment or management method that is designed to maintain sign retroreflectivity at or above the minimum levels in Table 2A-3.**

Support:

- 03 Compliance with the Standard in Paragraph 2 is achieved by having a method in place and using the method to maintain the minimum levels established in Table 2A-3. Provided that an assessment or management method is being used, an agency or official having jurisdiction would be in compliance with the Standard in Paragraph 2 even if there are some individual signs that do not meet the minimum retroreflectivity levels at a particular point in time.

Guidance:

- 04 *Except for those signs specifically identified in Paragraph 6, one or more of the following assessment or management methods should be used to maintain sign retroreflectivity:*
- A. *Visual Nighttime Inspection—The retroreflectivity of an existing sign is assessed by a trained sign inspector conducting a visual inspection from a moving vehicle during nighttime conditions. Signs that are visually identified by the inspector to have retroreflectivity below the minimum levels should be replaced.*
 - B. *Measured Sign Retroreflectivity—Sign retroreflectivity is measured using a retroreflectometer. Signs with retroreflectivity below the minimum levels should be replaced.*
 - C. *Expected Sign Life—When signs are installed, the installation date is labeled or recorded so that the age of a sign is known. The age of the sign is compared to the expected sign life. The expected sign life is based on the experience of sign retroreflectivity degradation in a geographic area compared to the minimum levels. Signs older than the expected life should be replaced.*
 - D. *Blanket Replacement—All signs in an area/corridor, or of a given type, should be replaced at specified intervals. This eliminates the need to assess retroreflectivity or track the life of individual signs. The replacement interval is based on the expected sign life, compared to the minimum levels, for the shortest-life material used on the affected signs.*

Table 2A-3. Minimum Maintained Retroreflectivity Levels¹

Sign Color	Sheeting Type (ASTM D4956-04)				Additional Criteria
	Beaded Sheeting		Prismatic Sheeting		
	I	II	III	III, IV, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X	
White on Green	W*; G ≥ 7	W*; G ≥ 15	W*; G ≥ 25	W ≥ 250; G ≥ 25	Overhead
	W*; G ≥ 7	W ≥ 120; G ≥ 15			Post-mounted
Black on Yellow or Black on Orange	Y*; O*	Y ≥ 50; O ≥ 50			2
	Y*; O*	Y ≥ 75; O ≥ 75			3
White on Red	W ≥ 35; R ≥ 7			4	
Black on White	W ≥ 50			–	
¹ The minimum maintained retroreflectivity levels shown in this table are in units of cd/lx/m ² measured at an observation angle of 0.2° and an entrance angle of -4.0°.					
² For text and fine symbol signs measuring at least 48 inches and for all sizes of bold symbol signs					
³ For text and fine symbol signs measuring less than 48 inches					
⁴ Minimum sign contrast ratio ≥ 3:1 (white retroreflectivity ÷ red retroreflectivity)					
* This sheeting type shall not be used for this color for this application.					
Bold Symbol Signs					
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • W1-1,2 – Turn and Curve • W1-3,4 – Reverse Turn and Curve • W1-5 – Winding Road • W1-6,7 – Large Arrow • W1-8 – Chevron • W1-10 – Intersection in Curve • W1-11 – Hairpin Curve • W1-15 – 270 Degree Loop • W2-1 – Cross Road • W2-2,3 – Side Road • W2-4,5 – T and Y Intersection • W2-6 – Circular Intersection • W2-7,8 – Double Side Roads 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • W3-1 – Stop Ahead • W3-2 – Yield Ahead • W3-3 – Signal Ahead • W4-1 – Merge • W4-2 – Lane Ends • W4-3 – Added Lane • W4-5 – Entering Roadway Merge • W4-6 – Entering Roadway Added Lane • W6-1,2 – Divided Highway Begins and Ends • W6-3 – Two-Way Traffic • W10-1,2,3,4,11,12 – Grade Crossing Advance Warning 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • W11-2 – Pedestrian Crossing • W11-3,4,16-22 – Large Animals • W11-5 – Farm Equipment • W11-6 – Snowmobile Crossing • W11-7 – Equestrian Crossing • W11-8 – Fire Station • W11-10 – Truck Crossing • W12-1 – Double Arrow • W16-5P,6P,7P – Pointing Arrow Plaques • W20-7 – Flagger • W21-1 – Worker 	
Fine Symbol Signs (symbol signs not listed as bold symbol signs)					
Special Cases					
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • W3-1 – Stop Ahead: Red retroreflectivity ≥ 7 • W3-2 – Yield Ahead: Red retroreflectivity ≥ 7; White retroreflectivity ≥ 35 • W3-3 – Signal Ahead: Red retroreflectivity ≥ 7; Green retroreflectivity ≥ 7 • W3-5 – Speed Reduction: White retroreflectivity ≥ 50 • For non-diamond shaped signs, such as W14-3 (No Passing Zone), W4-4P (Cross Traffic Does Not Stop), or W13-1P,2,3,6,7 (Speed Advisory Plaques), use the largest sign dimension to determine the proper minimum retroreflectivity level. 					

E. *Control Signs*—Replacement of signs in the field is based on the performance of a sample of control signs. The control signs might be a small sample located in a maintenance yard or a sample of signs in the field. The control signs are monitored to determine the end of retroreflective life for the associated signs. All field signs represented by the control sample should be replaced before the retroreflectivity levels of the control sample reach the minimum levels.

F. *Other Methods*—Other methods developed based on engineering studies can be used.

Support:

05 Additional information about these methods is contained in the 2007 Edition of FHWA’s “Maintaining Traffic Sign Retroreflectivity” (see Section 1A.11).

Option:

06 Highway agencies may exclude the following signs from the retroreflectivity maintenance guidelines described in this Section:

- A. Parking, Standing, and Stopping signs (R7 and R8 series)
- B. Walking/Hitchhiking/Crossing signs (R9 series, R10-1 through R10-4b)
- C. Acknowledgment signs
- D. All signs with blue or brown backgrounds
- E. Bikeway signs that are intended for exclusive use by bicyclists or pedestrians

Section 2A.09 Shapes

Standard:

- 01 Particular shapes, as shown in Table 2A-4, shall be used exclusively for specific signs or series of signs, unless otherwise provided in the text discussion in this Manual for a particular sign or class of signs.

Section 2A.10 Sign Colors

Standard:

- 01 The colors to be used on standard signs and their specific use on these signs shall be as provided in the applicable Sections of this Manual. The color coordinates and values shall be as described in 23 CFR, Part 655, Subpart F, Appendix.

Support:

- 02 As a quick reference, common uses of sign colors are shown in Table 2A-5. Color schemes on specific signs are shown in the illustrations located in each appropriate Chapter.
- 03 Whenever white is specified in this Manual or in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11) as a color, it is understood to include silver-colored retroreflective coatings or elements that reflect white light.
- 04 The colors coral and light blue are being reserved for uses that will be determined in the future by the Federal Highway Administration.
- 05 Information regarding color coding of destinations on guide signs, including community wayfinding signs, is contained in Chapter 2D.

Option:

- 06 The approved fluorescent version of the standard red, yellow, green, or orange color may be used as an alternative to the corresponding standard color.

Section 2A.11 Dimensions

Support:

- 01 The “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11) prescribes design details for up to five different sizes depending on the type of traffic facility, including bikeways. Smaller sizes are designed to be used on bikeways and some other off-road applications. Larger sizes are designed for use on freeways and expressways, and can also be used to enhance road user safety and convenience on other facilities, especially on multi-lane divided highways and on undivided highways having five or more lanes of traffic and/or high speeds. The intermediate sizes are designed to be used on other highway types.

Standard:

- 02 The sign dimensions prescribed in the sign size tables in the various Parts and Chapters in this Manual and in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11) shall be used unless engineering judgment determines that other sizes are appropriate. Except as provided in Paragraph 3, where engineering judgment determines that sizes smaller than the prescribed dimensions are appropriate for use, the sign dimensions shall not be less than the minimum dimensions specified in this Manual. The sizes shown in the Minimum columns that are smaller than the sizes shown in the Conventional Road columns in the various sign size tables in this Manual shall only be used on low-speed roadways, alleys, and private roads open to public travel where the reduced legend size would be adequate for the regulation or warning or where physical conditions preclude the use of larger sizes.

Table 2A-4. Use of Sign Shapes

Shape	Signs
Octagon	Stop*
Equilateral Triangle (1 point down)	Yield*
Circle	Grade Crossing Advance Warning*
Pennant Shape/Isosceles Triangle (longer axis horizontal)	No Passing*
Pentagon (pointed up)	School Advance Warning Sign (squared bottom corners)* County Route Sign (tapered bottom corners)*
Crossbuck (two rectangles in an “X” configuration)	Grade Crossing*
Diamond	Warning Series
Rectangle (including square)	Regulatory Series Guide Series** Warning Series
Trapezoid	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Series National Forest Route Sign

* This sign shall be exclusively the shape shown.

** Guide series includes general service, specific service, tourist-oriented directional, general information, recreational and cultural interest area, and emergency management signs.

Table 2A-5. Common Uses of Sign Colors

Type of Sign	Legend									Background									
	Black	Green	Red	White	Yellow	Orange	Fluorescent Yellow-Green	Fluorescent Pink	Black	Blue	Brown	Green	Orange*	Red*	White	Yellow*	Purple	Fluorescent Yellow-Green	Fluorescent Pink
Regulatory	X		X	X					X					X	X				
Prohibitive			X	X										X	X				
Permissive		X													X				
Warning	X															X			
Pedestrian	X															X		X	
Bicycle	X															X		X	
Guide				X							X								
Interstate Route				X						X				X					
State Route	X														X				
U.S. Route	X														X				
County Route					X					X									
Forest Route				X							X								
Street Name				X								X							
Destination				X								X							
Reference Location				X								X							
Information				X						X		X							
Evacuation Route				X						X									
Road User Service				X						X									
Recreational				X							X	X							
Temporary Traffic Control	X												X						
Incident Management	X												X						X
School	X																		X
ETC-Account Only	X																X****		
Changeable Message Signs																			
Regulatory			X***	X						X									
Warning					X					X									
Temporary Traffic Control					X	X				X									
Guide				X						X		X**							
Motorist Services				X						X	X**								
Incident Management					X			X		X									
School, Pedestrian, Bicycle					X		X			X									

* Fluorescent versions of these background colors may also be used.

** These alternative background colors would be provided by blue or green lighted pixels such that the entire CMS would be lighted, not just the legend.

*** Red is used only for the circle and slash or other red elements of a similar static regulatory sign.

**** The use of the color purple on signs is restricted per the provisions of Paragraph 1 of Section 2F.03.

Option:

- 03 For alleys with restrictive physical conditions and vehicle usage that limits installation of the Minimum size sign (or the Conventional Road size sign if no Minimum size is shown), both the sign height and the sign width may be decreased by up to 6 inches.

Guidance:

- 04 *The sizes shown in the Freeway and Expressway columns in the various sign size tables in this Manual should be used on freeways and expressways, and for other higher-speed applications based upon engineering judgment, to provide larger signs for increased visibility and recognition.*
- 05 *The sizes shown in the Oversized columns in the various sign size tables in this Manual size should be used for those special applications where speed, volume, or other factors result in conditions where increased emphasis, improved recognition, or increased legibility is needed, as determined by engineering judgment or study.*
- 06 *Increases above the prescribed sizes should be used where greater legibility or emphasis is needed. If signs larger than the prescribed sizes are used, the overall sign dimensions should be increased in 6-inch increments.*

Standard:

- 07 **Where engineering judgment determines that sizes that are different than the prescribed dimensions are appropriate for use, standard shapes and colors shall be used and standard proportions shall be retained as much as practical.**

Guidance:

- 08 *When supplemental plaques are installed with larger sized signs, a corresponding increase in the size of the plaque and its legend should also be made. The resulting plaque size should be approximately in the same relative proportion to the larger sized sign as the conventional sized plaque is to the conventional sized sign.*

Section 2A.12 Symbols**Standard:**

- 01 **Symbol designs shall in all cases be unmistakably similar to those shown in this Manual and in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).**

Support:

- 02 New symbol designs are adopted by the Federal Highway Administration based on research evaluations to determine road user comprehension, sign conspicuity, and sign legibility.
- 03 Sometimes a change from word messages to symbols requires significant time for public education and transition. Therefore, this Manual sometimes includes the practice of using educational plaques to accompany new symbol signs.

Guidance:

- 04 *New warning or regulatory symbol signs not readily recognizable by the public should be accompanied by an educational plaque.*

Option:

- 05 Educational plaques may be left in place as long as they are in serviceable condition.
- 06 State and/or local highway agencies may conduct research studies to determine road user comprehension, sign conspicuity, and sign legibility.

Guidance:

- 07 *Although most standard symbols are oriented facing left, mirror images of these symbols should be used where the reverse orientation might better convey to road users a direction of movement.*

Standard:

- 08 **A symbol used for a given category of signs (regulatory, warning, or guide) shall not be used for a different category of signs, except as specifically authorized in this Manual.**
- 09 **Except as provided in Paragraph 11, a recreational and cultural interest area symbol (see Chapter 2M) shall not be used on streets or highways outside of recreational and cultural interest areas.**
- 10 **A recreational and cultural interest area guide sign symbol (see Chapter 2M) shall not be used on any regulatory or warning sign on any street, road, or highway.**

Option:

- 11 A recreational and cultural interest area guide sign symbol (see Section 2M.04) may be used on a highway guide sign outside of a recreational and cultural interest area to supplement a comparable word message for which there is no approved symbol for that message in Chapters 2B through 2I or 2N.

Support:

- 12 Section 2M.07 contains provisions for the use of recreational and cultural interest area symbols to indicate prohibited activities or items in non-road applications.

Section 2A.13 Word Messages

Standard:

- 01 **Except as provided in Section 2A.06, all word messages shall use standard wording and letters as shown in this Manual and in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).**

Guidance:

- 02 *Word messages should be as brief as possible and the lettering should be large enough to provide the necessary legibility distance. A minimum specific ratio of 1 inch of letter height per 30 feet of legibility distance should be used.*
- 03 *Abbreviations (see Section 1A.15) should be kept to a minimum.*
- 04 *Word messages should not contain periods, apostrophes, question marks, ampersands, or other punctuation or characters that are not letters, numerals, or hyphens unless necessary to avoid confusion.*
- 05 *The solidus (slanted line or forward slash) is intended to be used for fractions only and should not be used to separate words on the same line of legend. Instead, a hyphen should be used for this purpose, such as “TRUCKS - BUSES.”*

Standard:

- 06 **Fractions shall be displayed with the numerator and denominator diagonally arranged about the solidus (slanted line or forward slash). The overall height of the fraction is measured from the top of the numerator to the bottom of the denominator, each of which is vertically aligned with the upper and lower ends of the solidus. The overall height of the fraction shall be determined by the height of the numerals within the fraction, and shall be 1.5 times the height of an individual numeral within the fraction.**

Support:

- 07 The “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11) contains details regarding the layouts of fractions on signs.

Guidance:

- 08 *When initials are used to represent an abbreviation for separate words (such as “U S” for a United States route), the initials should be separated by a space of between 1/2 and 3/4 of the letter height of the initials.*
- 09 *When an Interstate route is displayed in text form instead of using the route shield, a hyphen should be used for clarity, such as “I-50.”*

Standard:

- 10 **All sign lettering shall be in upper-case letters as provided in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11), unless otherwise provided in this Manual for a particular sign or type of message.**
- 11 **The sign lettering for names of places, streets, and highways shall be composed of a combination of lower-case letters with initial upper-case letters.**

Support:

- 12 Letter height is expressed in terms of the height of an upper-case letter. For mixed-case legends (those composed of an initial upper-case letter followed by lower-case letters), the height of the lower-case letters is derived from the specified height of the initial upper-case letter based on a prescribed ratio. Letter heights for mixed-case legends might be expressed in terms of both the upper- and lower-case letters, or in terms of the initial upper-case letter alone. When the height of a lower-case letter is specified or determined from the prescribed ratio, the reference is to the nominal loop height of the letter. The term loop height refers to the portion of a lower-case letter that excludes any ascending or descending stems or tails of the letter, such as with the letters “d” or “q.” The nominal loop height is equal to the actual height of a non-rounded lower-case letter whose form does not include ascending or descending stems or tails, such as the letter “x.” The rounded portions of a lower-case letter extend slightly above and below the baselines projected from the top and bottom of such a non-rounded letter so that the appearance of a uniform letter height within a word is achieved. The actual loop height of a rounded lower-case letter is slightly greater than the nominal loop height and this additional height is excluded from the expression of the lower-case letter height.

Standard:

- 13 **When a mixed-case legend is used, the height of the lower-case letters shall be 3/4 of the height of the initial upper-case letter.**

- 14 **The unique letter forms for each of the Standard Alphabet series shall not be stretched, compressed, warped, or otherwise manipulated.**

Support:

- 15 Section 2D.04 contains information regarding the acceptable methods of modifying the length of a word for a given letter height and series.

Section 2A.14 Sign Borders

Standard:

- 01 **Unless otherwise provided, each sign illustrated in this Manual shall have a border of the same color as the legend, at or just inside the edge.**

- 02 **The corners of all sign borders shall be rounded, except for STOP signs.**

Guidance:

- 03 *A dark border on a light background should be set in from the edge, while a light border on a dark background should extend to the edge of the sign. A border for 30-inch signs with a light background should be from 1/2 to 3/4 inch in width, 1/2 inch from the edge. For similar signs with a light border, a width of 1 inch should be used. For other sizes, the border width should be of similar proportions, but should not exceed the stroke-width of the major lettering of the sign. On signs exceeding 72 x 120 inches in size, the border should be 2 inches wide, or on larger signs, 3 inches wide. Except for STOP signs and as otherwise provided in Section 2E.16, the corners of the sign should be rounded to a radius that is concentric with that of the border.*

Section 2A.15 Enhanced Conspicuity for Standard Signs

Option:

- 01 Based upon engineering judgment, where the improvement of the conspicuity of a standard regulatory, warning, or guide sign is desired, any of the following methods may be used, as appropriate, to enhance the sign's conspicuity (see Figure 2A-1):

- A. Increasing the size of a standard regulatory, warning, or guide sign.
- B. Doubling-up of a standard regulatory, warning, or guide sign by adding a second identical sign on the left-hand side of the roadway.
- C. Adding a solid yellow or fluorescent yellow rectangular "header panel" above a standard regulatory sign, with the width of the panel corresponding to the width of the standard regulatory sign. A legend of "NOTICE," "STATE LAW," or other appropriate text may be added in black letters within the header panel for a period of time determined by engineering judgment.
- D. Adding a NEW plaque (see Section 2C.62) above a new standard regulatory or warning sign, for a period of time determined by engineering judgment, to call attention to the new sign.
- E. Adding one or more red or orange flags (cloth or retroreflective sheeting) above a standard regulatory or warning sign, with the flags oriented so as to be at 45 degrees to the vertical.
- F. Adding a solid yellow, a solid fluorescent yellow, or a diagonally striped black and yellow (or black and fluorescent yellow) strip of retroreflective sheeting at least 3 inches wide around the perimeter of a standard warning sign. This may be accomplished by affixing the standard warning sign on a background that is 6 inches larger than the size of the standard warning sign.
- G. Adding a warning beacon (see Section 4L.03) to a standard regulatory (other than a STOP or a Speed Limit sign), warning, or guide sign.
- H. Adding a speed limit sign beacon (see Section 4L.04) to a standard Speed Limit sign.
- I. Adding a stop beacon (see Section 4L.05) to a STOP sign.
- J. Adding light emitting diode (LED) units within the symbol or legend of a sign or border of a standard regulatory, warning, or guide sign, as provided in Section 2A.07.
- K. Adding a strip of retroreflective material to the sign support in compliance with the provisions of Section 2A.21.
- L. Using other methods that are specifically allowed for certain signs as described elsewhere in this Manual.

Support:

- 02 Sign conspicuity improvements can also be achieved by removing non-essential and illegal signs from the right-of-way (see Section 1A.08), and by relocating signs to provide better spacing.

Standard:

- 03 **The NEW plaque (see Section 2C.62) shall not be used alone.**

- 04 **Strobe lights shall not be used to enhance the conspicuity of highway signs.**

Figure 2A-1. Examples of Enhanced Conspicuity for Signs

A – W16-15P plaque above a regulatory or warning sign if the regulation or condition is new



B – Red or orange flags above a regulatory, warning, or guide sign



C – W16-18P plaque above a regulatory sign



D – Solid yellow, solid fluorescent yellow, or diagonally striped black and yellow (or black and fluorescent yellow) strip of retroreflective sheeting around a warning sign



E – Vertical retroreflective strip on sign support



F – Supplemental beacon



Section 2A.16 Standardization of Location

Support:

- 01 Standardization of position cannot always be attained in practice. Examples of heights and lateral locations of signs for typical installations are illustrated in Figure 2A-2, and examples of locations for some typical signs at intersections are illustrated in Figures 2A-3 and 2A-4.
- 02 Examples of advance signing on an intersection approach are illustrated in Figure 2A-4. Chapters 2B, 2C, and 2D contain provisions regarding the application of regulatory, warning, and guide signs, respectively.

Standard:

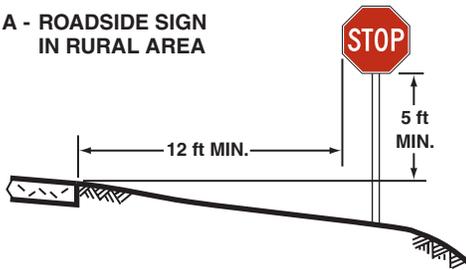
- 03 **Signs requiring separate decisions by the road user shall be spaced sufficiently far apart for the appropriate decisions to be made. One of the factors considered when determining the appropriate spacing shall be the posted or 85th-percentile speed.**

Guidance:

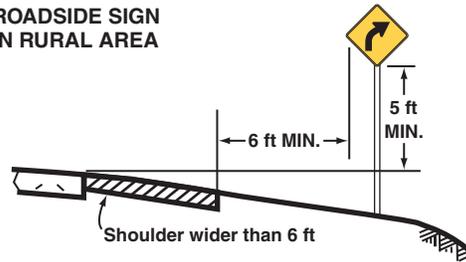
- 04 *Signs should be located on the right-hand side of the roadway where they are easily recognized and understood by road users. Signs in other locations should be considered only as supplementary to signs in the normal locations, except as otherwise provided in this Manual.*
- 05 *Signs should be individually installed on separate posts or mountings except where:*
- A. *One sign supplements another;*
 - B. *Route or directional signs are grouped to clarify information to motorists;*

Figure 2A-2. Examples of Heights and Lateral Locations of Sign Installations

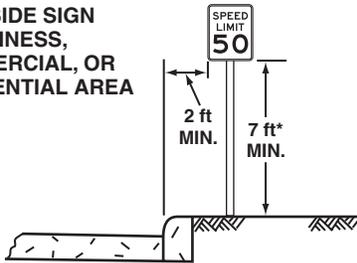
A - ROADSIDE SIGN IN RURAL AREA



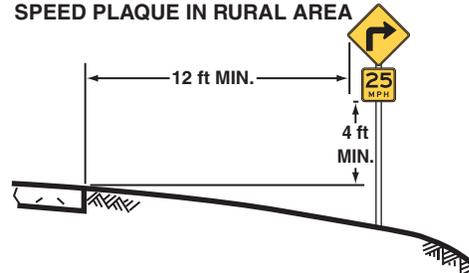
B - ROADSIDE SIGN IN RURAL AREA



C - ROADSIDE SIGN IN BUSINESS, COMMERCIAL, OR RESIDENTIAL AREA

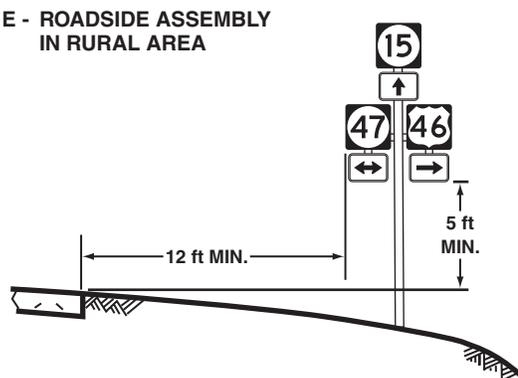


D - WARNING SIGN WITH ADVISORY SPEED PLAQUE IN RURAL AREA

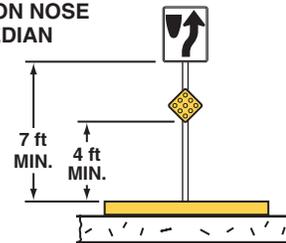


*Where parking or pedestrian movements are likely to occur

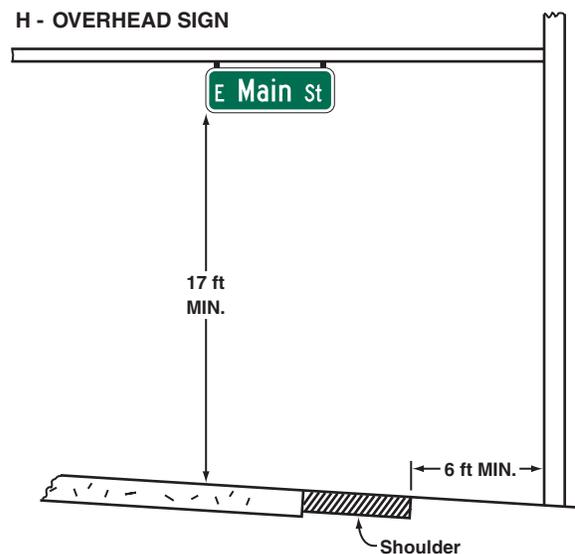
E - ROADSIDE ASSEMBLY IN RURAL AREA



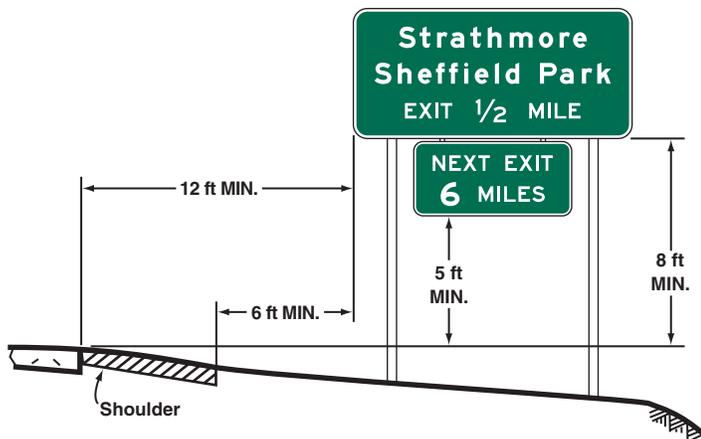
F - SIGN ON NOSE OF MEDIAN



H - OVERHEAD SIGN



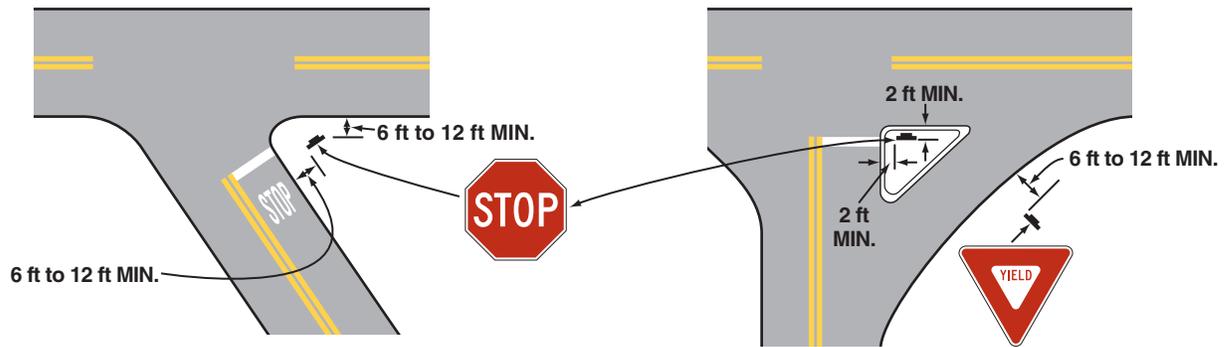
G - FREEWAY OR EXPRESSWAY SIGN WITH SECONDARY SIGN



Note:

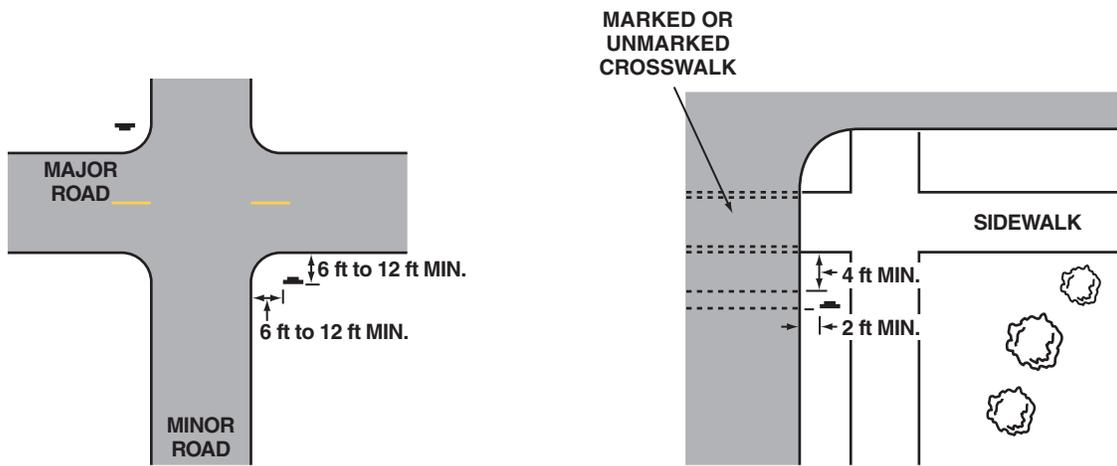
See Section 2A.19 for reduced lateral offset distances that may be used in areas where lateral offsets are limited, and in business, commercial, or residential areas where sidewalk width is limited or where existing poles are close to the curb.

Figure 2A-3. Examples of Locations for Some Typical Signs at Intersections



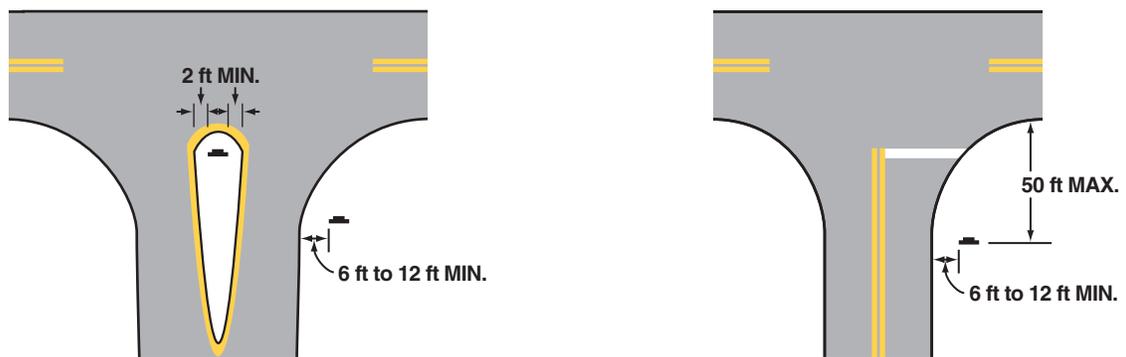
A - ACUTE ANGLE INTERSECTION

B - CHANNELIZED INTERSECTION



C - MINOR CROSSROAD

D - URBAN INTERSECTION

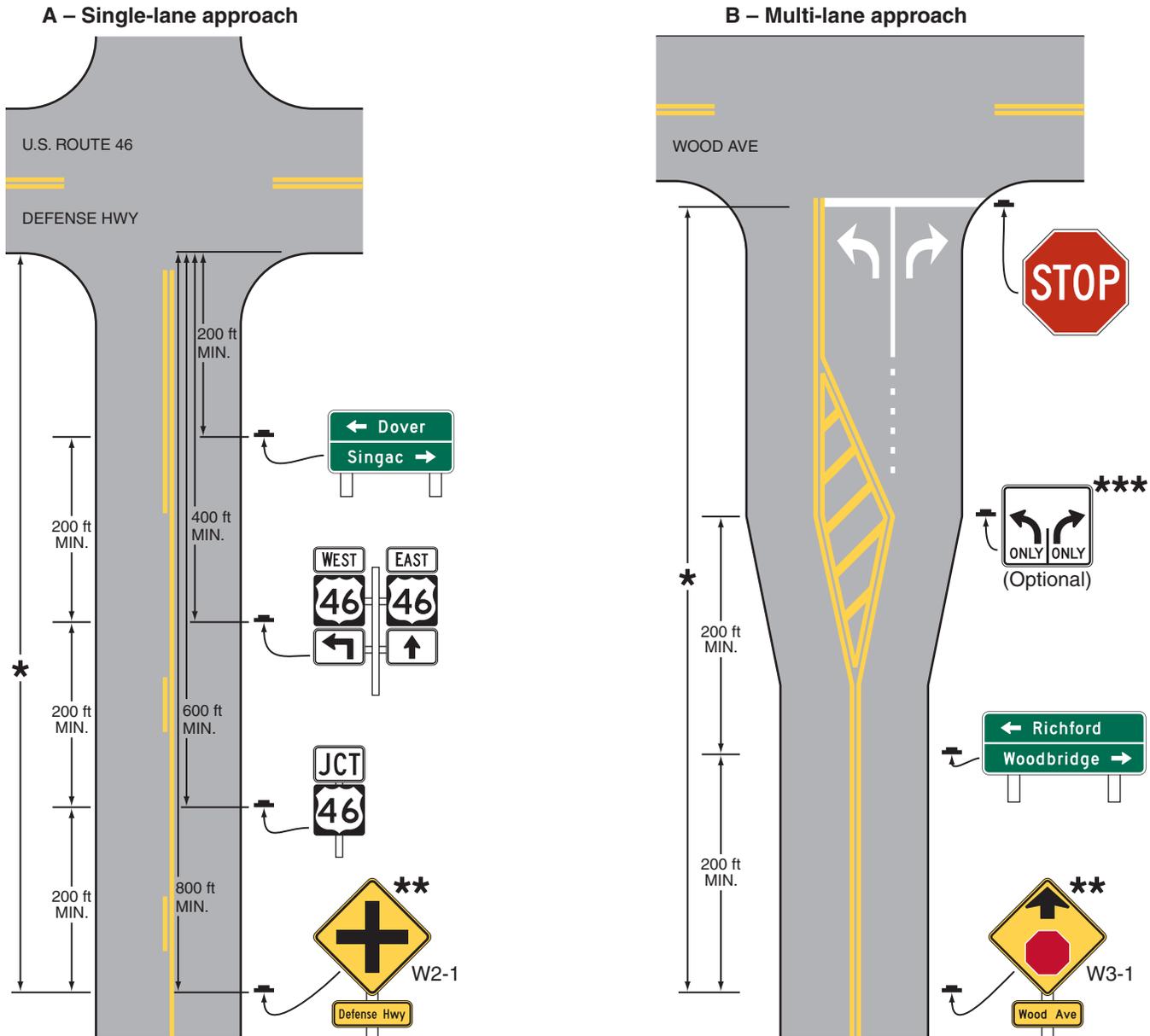


E - DIVISIONAL ISLAND

F - WIDE THROAT INTERSECTION

Note: Lateral offset is a minimum of 6 feet measured from the edge of the shoulder, or 12 feet measured from the edge of the traveled way. See Section 2A.19 for lower minimums that may be used in urban areas, or where lateral offset space is limited.

Figure 2A-4. Relative Locations of Regulatory, Warning, and Guide Signs on an Intersection Approach



Note: See Chapter 2D for information on guide signs and Part 3 for information on pavement markings

- * See Table 2C-4 for the recommended minimum distance
- ** See Section 2C.46 for the application of the W2-1 sign and Section 2C.36 for the application of the W3-1 sign
- *** See Section 2B.22 for the application of Intersection Lane Control signs

- C. Regulatory signs that do not conflict with each other are grouped, such as Turn Prohibition signs posted with ONE WAY signs or a parking regulation sign posted with a Speed Limit sign; or
- D. Street Name signs are posted with a STOP or YIELD sign.

06 Signs should be located so that they:

- A. Are outside the clear zone unless placed on a breakaway or yielding support (see Section 2A.19),
- B. Optimize nighttime visibility,
- C. Minimize the effects of mud splatter and debris,
- D. Do not obscure each other,
- E. Do not obscure the sight distance to approaching vehicles on the major street for drivers who are stopped on minor-street approaches, and
- F. Are not hidden from view.

Support:

- 07 The clear zone is the total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, available for use by errant vehicles. The width of the clear zone is dependent upon traffic volumes, speeds, and roadside geometry. Additional information can be found in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Guidance:

- 08 *With the increase in traffic volumes and the desire to provide road users regulatory, warning, and guidance information, an order of priority for sign installation should be established.*

Support:

- 09 An order of priority is especially critical where space is limited for sign installation and there is a demand for several different types of signs. Overloading road users with too much information is not desirable.

Guidance:

- 10 *Because regulatory and warning information is more critical to the road user than guidance information, regulatory and warning signing whose location is critical should be displayed rather than guide signing in cases where conflicts occur. Community wayfinding and acknowledgment guide signs should have a lower priority as to placement than other guide signs. Information of a less critical nature should be moved to less critical locations or omitted.*

Option:

- 11 Under some circumstances, such as on curves to the right, signs may be placed on median islands or on the left-hand side of the road. A supplementary sign located on the left-hand side of the roadway may be used on a multi-lane road where traffic in a lane to the right might obstruct the view to the right.

Guidance:

- 12 *In urban areas where crosswalks exist, signs should not be placed within 4 feet in advance of the crosswalk (see Drawing D in Figure 2A-3).*

Section 2A.17 Overhead Sign Installations*Guidance:*

- 01 *Overhead signs should be used on freeways and expressways, at locations where some degree of lane-use control is desirable, and at locations where space is not available at the roadside.*

Support:

- 02 The operational requirements of the present highway system are such that overhead signs have value at many locations. The factors to be considered for the installation of overhead sign displays are not definable in specific numerical terms.

Option:

- 03 The following conditions (not in priority order) may be considered in an engineering study to determine if overhead signs would be beneficial:
- A. Traffic volume at or near capacity,
 - B. Complex interchange design,
 - C. Three or more lanes in each direction,
 - D. Restricted sight distance,
 - E. Closely-spaced interchanges,
 - F. Multi-lane exits,
 - G. Large percentage of trucks,
 - H. Street lighting background,
 - I. High-speed traffic,
 - J. Consistency of sign message location through a series of interchanges,
 - K. Insufficient space for post-mounted signs,
 - L. Junction of two freeways, and
 - M. Left exit ramps.

- 04 Over-crossing structures may be used to support overhead signs.

Support:

- 05 Under some circumstances, the use of over-crossing structures as sign supports might be the only practical solution that will provide adequate viewing distance. The use of such structures as sign supports might eliminate the need for the foundations and sign supports along the roadside.

Section 2A.18 Mounting Height

Standard:

- 01 **The provisions of this Section shall apply unless specifically stated otherwise for a particular sign or object marker elsewhere in this Manual.**

Support:

- 02 The mounting height requirements for object markers are provided in Chapter 2C.
- 03 In addition to the provisions of this Section, information affecting the minimum mounting height of signs as a function of crash performance can be found in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

- 04 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement, of signs installed at the side of the road in rural areas shall be 5 feet (see Figure 2A-2).**

- 05 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the top of the curb, or in the absence of curb, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the traveled way, of signs installed at the side of the road in business, commercial, or residential areas where parking or pedestrian movements are likely to occur, or where the view of the sign might be obstructed, shall be 7 feet (see Figure 2A-2).**

Option:

- 06 The height to the bottom of a secondary sign mounted below another sign may be 1 foot less than the height specified in Paragraphs 4 and 5.

Standard:

- 07 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the sidewalk, of signs installed above sidewalks shall be 7 feet.**

- 08 **If the bottom of a secondary sign that is mounted below another sign is mounted lower than 7 feet above a pedestrian sidewalk or pathway (see Section 6D.02), the secondary sign shall not project more than 4 inches into the pedestrian facility.**

Option:

- 09 Signs that are placed 30 feet or more from the edge of the traveled way may be installed with a minimum height of 5 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement.

Standard:

- 10 **Directional signs on freeways and expressways shall be installed with a minimum height of 7 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement. All route signs, warning signs, and regulatory signs on freeways and expressways shall be installed with a minimum height of 7 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement. If a secondary sign is mounted below another sign on a freeway or expressway, the major sign shall be installed with a minimum height of 8 feet and the secondary sign shall be installed with a minimum height of 5 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement.**

- 11 **Where large signs having an area exceeding 50 square feet are installed on multiple breakaway posts, the clearance from the ground to the bottom of the sign shall be at least 7 feet.**

Option:

- 12 A route sign assembly consisting of a route sign and auxiliary signs (see Section 2D.31) may be treated as a single sign for the purposes of this Section.

- 13 The mounting height may be adjusted when supports are located near the edge of the right-of-way on a steep backslope in order to avoid the sometimes less desirable alternative of placing the sign closer to the roadway.

Standard:

- 14 **Overhead signs shall provide a vertical clearance of not less than 17 feet to the sign, light fixture, or sign bridge over the entire width of the pavement and shoulders except where the structure on which the overhead signs are to be mounted or other structures along the roadway near the sign structure have a lesser vertical clearance.**

Option:

- 15 If the vertical clearance of other structures along the roadway near the sign structure is less than 16 feet, the vertical clearance to an overhead sign structure or support may be as low as 1 foot higher than the vertical clearance of the other structures in order to improve the visibility of the overhead signs.

16 In special cases it may be necessary to reduce the clearance to overhead signs because of substandard dimensions in tunnels and other major structures such as double-deck bridges.

Support:

17 Figure 2A-2 illustrates some examples of the mounting height requirements contained in this Section.

Section 2A.19 Lateral Offset

Standard:

01 **For overhead sign supports, the minimum lateral offset from the edge of the shoulder (or if no shoulder exists, from the edge of the pavement) to the near edge of overhead sign supports (cantilever or sign bridges) shall be 6 feet. Overhead sign supports shall have a barrier or crash cushion to shield them if they are within the clear zone.**

02 **Post-mounted sign and object marker supports shall be crashworthy (breakaway, yielding, or shielded with a longitudinal barrier or crash cushion) if within the clear zone.**

Guidance:

03 *For post-mounted signs, the minimum lateral offset should be 12 feet from the edge of the traveled way. If a shoulder wider than 6 feet exists, the minimum lateral offset for post-mounted signs should be 6 feet from the edge of the shoulder.*

Support:

04 The minimum lateral offset requirements for object markers are provided in Chapter 2C.

05 The minimum lateral offset is intended to keep trucks and cars that use the shoulders from striking the signs or supports.

Guidance:

06 *All supports should be located as far as practical from the edge of the shoulder. Advantage should be taken to place signs behind existing roadside barriers, on over-crossing structures, or other locations that minimize the exposure of the traffic to sign supports.*

Option:

07 Where permitted, signs may be placed on existing supports used for other purposes, such as highway traffic signal supports, highway lighting supports, and utility poles.

Standard:

08 **If signs are placed on existing supports, they shall meet other placement criteria contained in this Manual.**

Option:

09 Lesser lateral offsets may be used on connecting roadways or ramps at interchanges, but not less than 6 feet from the edge of the traveled way.

10 On conventional roads in areas where it is impractical to locate a sign with the lateral offset prescribed by this Section, a lateral offset of at least 2 feet may be used.

11 A lateral offset of at least 1 foot from the face of the curb may be used in business, commercial or residential areas where sidewalk width is limited or where existing poles are close to the curb.

Guidance:

12 *Overhead sign supports and post-mounted sign and object marker supports should not intrude into the usable width of a sidewalk or other pedestrian facility.*

Support:

13 Figures 2A-2 and 2A-3 illustrate some examples of the lateral offset requirements contained in this Section.

Section 2A.20 Orientation

Guidance:

01 *Unless otherwise provided in this Manual, signs should be vertically mounted at right angles to the direction of, and facing, the traffic that they are intended to serve.*

02 *Where mirror reflection from the sign face is encountered to such a degree as to reduce legibility, the sign should be turned slightly away from the road. Signs that are placed 30 feet or more from the pavement edge should be turned toward the road. On curved alignments, the angle of placement should be determined by the direction of approaching traffic rather than by the roadway edge at the point where the sign is located.*

Option:

- 03 On grades, sign faces may be tilted forward or back from the vertical position to improve the viewing angle.

Section 2A.21 Posts and Mountings

Standard:

- 01 **Sign posts, foundations, and mountings shall be so constructed as to hold signs in a proper and permanent position, and to resist swaying in the wind or displacement by vandalism.**

Support:

- 02 The latest edition of AASHTO's "Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals" contains additional information regarding posts and mounting (see Page i for AASHTO's address).

Option:

- 03 Where engineering judgment indicates a need to draw attention to the sign during nighttime conditions, a strip of retroreflective material may be used on regulatory and warning sign supports.

Standard:

- 04 **If a strip of retroreflective material is used on the sign support, it shall be at least 2 inches in width, it shall be placed for the full length of the support from the sign to within 2 feet above the edge of the roadway, and its color shall match the background color of the sign, except that the color of the strip for the YIELD and DO NOT ENTER signs shall be red.**

Section 2A.22 Maintenance

Guidance:

- 01 *Maintenance activities should consider proper position, cleanliness, legibility, and daytime and nighttime visibility (see Section 2A.09). Damaged or deteriorated signs, gates, or object markers should be replaced.*
- 02 *To assure adequate maintenance, a schedule for inspecting (both day and night), cleaning, and replacing signs, gates, and object markers should be established. Employees of highway, law enforcement, and other public agencies whose duties require that they travel on the roadways should be encouraged to report any damaged, deteriorated, or obscured signs, gates, or object markers at the first opportunity.*
- 03 *Steps should be taken to see that weeds, trees, shrubbery, and construction, maintenance, and utility materials and equipment do not obscure the face of any sign or object marker.*
- 04 *A regular schedule of replacement of lighting elements for illuminated signs should be maintained.*

Section 2A.23 Median Opening Treatments for Divided Highways with Wide Medians

Guidance:

- 01 *Where divided highways are separated by median widths at the median opening itself of 30 feet or more, median openings should be signed as two separate intersections.*

CHAPTER 2B. REGULATORY SIGNS, BARRICADES, AND GATES

Section 2B.01 Application of Regulatory Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Regulatory signs shall be used to inform road users of selected traffic laws or regulations and indicate the applicability of the legal requirements.**
- 02 **Regulatory signs shall be installed at or near where the regulations apply. The signs shall clearly indicate the requirements imposed by the regulations and shall be designed and installed to provide adequate visibility and legibility in order to obtain compliance.**
- 03 **Regulatory signs shall be retroreflective or illuminated (see Section 2A.07) to show the same shape and similar color by both day and night, unless specifically stated otherwise in the text discussion in this Manual for a particular sign or group of signs.**
- 04 **The requirements for sign illumination shall not be considered to be satisfied by street or highway lighting.**

Support:

- 05 Section 1A.09 contains information regarding the assistance that is available to jurisdictions that do not have engineers on their staffs who are trained and/or experienced in traffic control devices.

Section 2B.02 Design of Regulatory Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Regulatory signs shall be rectangular unless specifically designated otherwise. Regulatory signs shall be designed in accordance with the sizes, shapes, colors, and legends contained in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).**

Option:

- 02 Regulatory word message signs other than those classified and specified in this Manual and the “Standard Highways Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11) may be developed to aid the enforcement of other laws or regulations.
- 03 Except for symbols on regulatory signs, minor modifications may be made to the design provided that the essential appearance characteristics are met.

Support:

- 04 The use of educational plaques to supplement symbol signs is described in Section 2A.12.

Guidance:

- 05 *Changeable message signs displaying a regulatory message incorporating a prohibitory message that includes a red circle and slash on a static sign should display a red symbol that approximates the same red circle and slash as closely as possible.*

Section 2B.03 Size of Regulatory Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Except as provided in Section 2A.11, the sizes for regulatory signs shall be as shown in Table 2B-1.**

Support:

- 02 Section 2A.11 contains information regarding the applicability of the various columns in Table 2B-1.

Standard:

- 03 **Except as provided in Paragraphs 4 and 5, the minimum sizes for regulatory signs facing traffic on multi-lane conventional roads shall be as shown in the Multi-lane column of Table 2B-1.**

Option:

- 04 Where the posted speed limit is 35 mph or less on a multi-lane highway or street, other than for a STOP sign, the minimum size shown in the Single Lane column in Table 2B-1 may be used.
- 05 Where a regulatory sign, other than a STOP sign, is placed on the left-hand side of a multi-lane roadway in addition to the installation of the same regulatory sign on the right-hand side or the roadway, the size shown in the Single Lane column in Table 2B-1 may be used for both the sign on the right-hand side and the sign on the left-hand side of the roadway.

Standard:

- 06 **A minimum size of 36 x 36 inches shall be used for STOP signs that face multi-lane approaches.**

Table 2B-1. Regulatory Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 1 of 4)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road		Expressway	Freeway	Minimum	Oversized
			Single Lane	Multi-Lane				
Stop	R1-1	2B.05	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	30 x 30*	48 x 48
Yield	R1-2	2B.08	36x36x36*	48x48x48	48x48x48	60x60x60	30x30x30*	—
To Oncoming Traffic (plaque)	R1-2aP	2B.10	24 x 18	24 x 18	36 x 30	48 x 36	24 x 18	—
All Way (plaque)	R1-3P	2B.05	18 x 6	18 x 6	—	—	—	30 x 12
Yield Here to Peds	R1-5	2B.11	—	36 x 36	—	—	—	36 x 36
Yield Here to Pedestrians	R1-5a	2B.11	—	36 x 48	—	—	—	36 x 48
Stop Here for Peds	R1-5b	2B.11	—	36 x 36	—	—	—	36 x 36
Stop Here for Pedestrians	R1-5c	2B.11	—	36 x 48	—	—	—	36 x 48
In-Street Ped Crossing	R1-6,6a	2B.12	12 x 36	12 x 36	—	—	—	—
Overhead Ped Crossing	R1-9,9a	2B.12	90 x 24	90 x 24	—	—	—	—
Except Right Turn (plaque)	R1-10P	2B.05	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
Speed Limit	R2-1	2B.13	24 x 30*	30 x 36	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24*	30 x 36
Truck Speed Limit (plaque)	R2-2P	2B.14	24 x 24	24 x 24	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	36 x 36
Night Speed Limit (plaque)	R2-3P	2B.15	24 x 24	24 x 24	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	36 x 36
Minimum Speed Limit (plaque)	R2-4P	2B.16	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
Combined Speed Limit	R2-4a	2B.16	24 x 48	24 x 48	36 x 72	48 x 96	—	36 x 72
Unless Otherwise Posted (plaque)	R2-5P	2B.13	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
Citywide (plaque)	R2-5aP	2B.13	24 x 6	24 x 6	—	—	—	—
Neighborhood (plaque)	R2-5bP	2B.13	24 x 6	24 x 6	—	—	—	—
Residential (plaque)	R2-5cP	2B.13	24 x 6	24 x 6	—	—	—	—
Fines Higher (plaque)	R2-6P	2B.17	24 x 18	24 x 18	36 x 24	48 x 36	—	36 x 24
Fines Double (plaque)	R2-6aP	2B.17	24 x 18	24 x 18	36 x 24	48 x 36	—	36 x 24
\$XX Fine (plaque)	R2-6bP	2B.17	24 x 18	24 x 18	36 x 24	48 x 36	—	36 x 24
Begin Higher Fines Zone	R2-10	2B.17	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
End Higher Fines Zone	R2-11	2B.17	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
Movement Prohibition	R3-1,2,3,4,18,27	2B.18	24 x 24*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	—	48 x 48
Mandatory Movement Lane Control	R3-5,5a	2B.20	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
Left Lane (plaque)	R3-5bP	2B.20	30 x 12	30 x 12	—	—	—	—
HOV 2+ (plaque)	R3-5cP	2B.20	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	—	—	—
Taxi Lane (plaque)	R3-5dP	2B.20	30 x 12	30 x 12	—	—	—	—
Center Lane (plaque)	R3-5eP	2B.20	30 x 12	30 x 12	—	—	—	—
Right Lane (plaque)	R3-5fP	2B.20	30 x 12	30 x 12	—	—	—	—
Bus Lane (plaque)	R3-5gP	2B.20	30 x 12	30 x 12	—	—	—	—
Optional Movement Lane Control	R3-6	2B.21	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
Right (Left) Lane Must Turn Right (Left)	R3-7	2B.20	30 x 30*	36 x 36	—	—	—	—
Advance Intersection Lane Control	R3-8,8a,8b	2B.22	Varies x 30	Varies x 30	—	—	—	Varies x 36
Two-Way Left Turn Only (overhead)	R3-9a	2B.24	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
Two-Way Left Turn Only (post-mounted)	R3-9b	2B.24	24 x 36	24 x 36	—	—	—	36 x 48
BEGIN	R3-9cP	2B.25	30 x 12	30 x 12	—	—	—	—
END	R3-9dP	2B.25	30 x 12	30 x 12	—	—	—	—
Reversible Lane Control (symbol)	R3-9e	2B.26	108 x 48	108 x 48	—	—	—	—
Reversible Lane Control (post-mounted)	R3-9f	2B.26	30 x 42*	36 x 54	—	—	—	—
Advance Reversible Lane Control Transition Signing	R3-9g,9h	2B.26	108 x 36	108 x 36	—	—	—	—
End Reverse Lane	R3-9i	2B.26	108 x 48	108 x 48	—	—	—	—
Begin Right (Left) Turn Lane	R3-20	2B.20	24 x 36	24 x 36	—	—	—	—
All Turns (U Turn) from Right Lane	R3-23,23a	2B.27	60 x 36	60 x 36	—	—	—	—
All Turns (U Turn) with arrow	R3-24,24b,25,25b,26a	2B.27	72 x 18	72 x 18	—	—	—	—
U and Left Turns with arrow	R3-24a,25a,26	2B.27	60 x 24	60 x 24	—	—	—	—
Right Lane Must Exit	R3-33	2B.23	—	—	78 x 36	78 x 36	—	—

Table 2B-1. Regulatory Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 2 of 4)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road		Expressway	Freeway	Minimum	Oversized
			Single Lane	Multi-Lane				
Do Not Pass	R4-1	2B.28	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Pass With Care	R4-2	2B.29	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Slower Traffic Keep Right	R4-3	2B.30	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Trucks Use Right Lane	R4-5	2B.31	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
Keep Right	R4-7,7a,7b	2B.32	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Narrow Keep Right	R4-7c	2B.32	18 x 30	18 x 30	—	—	—	—
Keep Left	R4-8,8a,8b	2B.32	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Narrow Keep Left	R4-8c	2B.32	18 x 30	18 x 30	—	—	—	—
Stay in Lane	R4-9	2B.33	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Runaway Vehicles Only	R4-10	2B.34	48 x 48	48 x 48	—	—	—	—
Slow Vehicles with XX or More Following Vehicles Must Use Turn-Out	R4-12	2B.35	42 x 24	42 x 24	—	—	—	—
Slow Vehicles Must Use Turn-Out Ahead	R4-13	2B.35	42 x 24	42 x 24	—	—	—	—
Slow Vehicles Must Turn Out	R4-14	2B.35	30 x 42	30 x 42	—	—	—	—
Keep Right Except to Pass	R4-16	2B.30	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Do Not Drive on Shoulder	R4-17	2B.36	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Do Not Pass on Shoulder	R4-18	2B.36	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24	36 x 48
Do Not Enter	R5-1	2B.37	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	36 x 36
Wrong Way	R5-1a	2B.38	36 x 24*	42 x 30	36 x 24*	42 x 30	30 x 18*	42 x 30
No Trucks	R5-2,2a	2B.39	24 x 24	24 x 24	30 x 30	36 x 36	—	36 x 36
No Motor Vehicles	R5-3	2B.39	24 x 24	24 x 24	—	—	24 x 24	—
No Commercial Vehicles	R5-4	2B.39	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	36 x 48	—	—
No Vehicles with Lugs	R5-5	2B.39	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	—
No Bicycles	R5-6	2B.39	24 x 24	24 x 24	30 x 30	36 x 36	24 x 24	48 x 48
No Non-Motorized Traffic	R5-7	2B.39	30 x 24	30 x 24	42 x 24	48 x 30	—	42 x 24
No Motor-Driven Cycles	R5-8	2B.39	30 x 24	30 x 24	42 x 24	48 x 30	—	42 x 24
No Pedestrians, Bicycles, Motor-Driven Cycles	R5-10a	2B.39	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
No Pedestrians or Bicycles	R5-10b	2B.39	30 x 18	30 x 18	—	—	—	—
No Pedestrians	R5-10c	2B.39	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	—	—	—
Authorized Vehicles Only	R5-11	2B.39	30 x 24	30 x 24	—	—	—	—
One Way	R6-1	2B.40	36 x 12*	54 x 18	54 x 18	54 x 18	—	54 x 18
One Way	R6-2	2B.40	24 x 30*	30 x 36	36 x 48	48 x 60	18 x 24*	36 x 48
Divided Highway Crossing	R6-3,3a	2B.42	30 x 24	30 x 24	36 x 30	—	—	36 x 30
Roundabout Directional (2 chevrons)	R6-4	2B.43	30 x 24	30 x 24	—	—	—	—
Roundabout Directional (3 chevrons)	R6-4a	2B.43	48 x 24	48 x 24	—	—	—	—
Roundabout Directional (4 chevrons)	R6-4b	2B.43	60 x 24	60 x 24	—	—	—	—
Roundabout Circulation (plaque)	R6-5P	2B.44	30 x 30	30 x 30	—	—	—	—
BEGIN ONE WAY	R6-6	2B.40	24 x 30	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
END ONE WAY	R6-7	2B.40	24 x 30	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
Parking Restrictions	R7-1, 2,2a,3,4,5,6,7,8, 21,21a,22,23, 23a,107,108	2B.46	12 x 18	12 x 18	—	—	—	—
Van Accessible (plaque)	R7-8P	2B.46	18 x 9	18 x 9	—	—	—	—
Fee Station	R7-20	2B.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
No Parking (with transit logo)	R7-107a	2B.46	12 x 30	12 x 30	—	—	—	—
No Parking/Restricted Parking (combined sign)	R7-200	2B.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
No Parking/Restricted Parking (combined sign)	R7-200a	2B.46	12 x 30	12 x 30	—	—	—	—
Tow Away Zone (plaque)	R7-201P,201aP	2B.46	12 x 6	12 x 6	—	—	—	—
This Side of Sign (plaque)	R7-202P	2B.46	12 x 6	12 x 6	—	—	—	—

Table 2B-1. Regulatory Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 3 of 4)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road		Expressway	Freeway	Minimum	Oversized
			Single Lane	Multi-Lane				
Emergency Snow Route	R7-203	2B.46	18 x 24	18 x 24	—	—	—	24 x 30
No Parking on Pavement	R8-1	2B.46	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
No Parking Except on Shoulder	R8-2	2B.46	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
No Parking (symbol)	R8-3	2B.46	24 x 24*	30 x 30	36 x 36	48 x 48	12 x 12*	36 x 36
No Parking	R8-3a	2B.46	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 36	48 x 48	18 x 24	36 x 36
Except Sundays and Holidays (plaque)	R8-3bP	2B.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	12 x 9	30 x 24
On Pavement (plaque)	R8-3cP	2B.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	12 x 9	30 x 24
On Bridge (plaque)	R8-3dP	2B.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	12 x 9	30 x 24
On Tracks (plaque)	R8-3eP	2B.46	12 x 9	12 x 9	—	—	—	30 x 24
Except on Shoulder (plaque)	R8-3fP	2B.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	12 x 9	30 x 24
Loading Zone (plaque)	R8-3gP	2B.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	12 x 9	30 x 24
Times of Day (plaque)	R8-3hP	2B.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	12 x 9	30 x 24
Emergency Parking Only	R8-4	2B.49	30 x 24	30 x 24	30 x 24	48 x 36	—	48 x 36
No Stopping on Pavement	R8-5	2B.46	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
No Stopping Except on Shoulder	R8-6	2B.46	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
Emergency Stopping Only	R8-7	2B.49	30 x 24	30 x 24	48 x 36	48 x 36	—	48 x 36
Walk on Left Facing Traffic	R9-1	2B.50	18 x 24	18 x 24	—	—	—	—
Cross Only at Crosswalks	R9-2	2B.51	12 x 18	12 x 18	—	—	—	—
No Pedestrian Crossing (symbol)	R9-3	2B.51	18 x 18	18 x 18	24 x 24	30 x 30	—	30 x 30
No Pedestrian Crossing	R9-3a	2B.51	12 x 18	12 x 18	—	—	—	—
Use Crosswalk (plaque)	R9-3bP	2B.51	18 x 12	18 x 12	—	—	—	—
No Hitchhiking (symbol)	R9-4	2B.50	18 x 18	18 x 18	—	—	—	24 x 24
No Hitchhiking	R9-4a	2B.50	18 x 24	18 x 24	—	—	12 x 18	—
No Skaters	R9-13	2B.39	18 x 18	18 x 18	24 x 24	30 x 30	—	30 x 30
No Equestrians	R9-14	2B.39	18 x 18	18 x 18	24 x 24	30 x 30	—	30 x 30
Cross Only On Green	R10-1	2B.52	12 x 18	12 x 18	—	—	—	—
Pedestrian Signs and Plaques	R10-2, 3,3b,3c,3d,4	2B.52	9 x 12	9 x 12	—	—	—	—
Pedestrian Signs	R10-3a,3e,3f, 3g,3h,3i,4a	2B.52	9 x 15	9 x 15	—	—	—	—
Left on Green Arrow Only	R10-5	2B.53	30 x 36	30 x 36	48 x 60	—	24 x 30	48 x 60
Stop Here on Red	R10-6	2B.53	24 x 36	24 x 36	—	—	—	36 x 48
Stop Here on Red	R10-6a	2B.53	24 x 30	24 x 30	—	—	—	36 x 42
Do Not Block Intersection	R10-7	2B.53	24 x 30	24 x 30	—	—	—	—
Use Lane with Green Arrow	R10-8	2B.53	36 x 42	36 x 42	36 x 42	—	—	60 x 72
Left (Right) Turn Signal	R10-10	2B.53	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
No Turn on Red	R10-11	2B.54	24 x 30*	36 x 48	—	—	—	36 x 48
No Turn on Red	R10-11a	2B.54	30 x 36*	36 x 48	—	—	—	—
No Turn on Red	R10-11b	2B.54	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	—	—	—
No Turn on Red Except From Right Lane	R10-11c	2B.54	30 x 42	30 x 42	—	—	—	—
No Turn on Red From This Lane	R10-11d	2B.54	30 x 42	30 x 42	—	—	—	—
Left Turn Yield on Green	R10-12	2B.53	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
Emergency Signal	R10-13	2B.53	42 x 30	42 x 30	—	—	—	—
Emergency Signal - Stop on Flashing Red	R10-14	2B.53	36 x 42	36 x 42	—	—	—	—
Emergency Signal - Stop on Flashing Red (overhead)	R10-14a	2B.53	60 x 24	60 x 24	—	—	—	—
Turning Vehicles Yield to Peds	R10-15	2B.53	30 x 30	30 x 30	—	—	—	—
U-Turn Yield to Right Turn	R10-16	2B.53	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
Right on Red Arrow After Stop	R10-17a	2B.54	36 x 48	36 x 48	—	—	—	—
Traffic Laws Photo Enforced	R10-18	2B.55	36 x 24	36 x 24	48 x 30	54 x 36	—	54 x 36
Photo Enforced (symbol plaque)	R10-19P	2B.55	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18	48 x 24	—	48 x 24
Photo Enforced (plaque)	R10-19aP	2B.55	24 x 18	24 x 18	36 x 30	48 x 36	—	48 x 36
MON—FRI (and times) (3 lines) (plaque)	R10-20aP	2B.53	24 x 24	24 x 24	—	—	—	—

Table 2B-1. Regulatory Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 4 of 4)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road		Expressway	Freeway	Minimum	Oversized
			Single Lane	Multi-Lane				
SUNDAY (and times) (2 lines) (plaque)	R10-20aP	2B.53	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
Crosswalk, Stop on Red	R10-23	2B.53	24 x 30	24 x 30	—	—	—	—
Push Button To Turn On Warning Lights	R10-25	2B.52	9 x 12	9 x 12	—	—	—	—
Left Turn Yield on Flashing Red Arrow After Stop	R10-27	2B.53	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
XX Vehicles Per Green	R10-28	2B.56	24 x 30	24 x 30	—	—	—	—
XX Vehicles Per Green Each Lane	R10-29	2B.56	36 x 24	36 x 24	—	—	—	—
Right Turn on Red Must Yield to U-Turn	R10-30	2B.54	30 x 36	30 x 36	—	—	—	—
At Signal (plaque)	R10-31P	2B.53	24 x 9	24 x 9	—	—	—	—
Push Button for 2 Seconds for Extra Crossing Time	R10-32P	2B.52	9 x 12	9 x 12	—	—	—	—
Keep Off Median	R11-1	2B.57	24 x 30	24 x 30	—	—	—	—
Road Closed	R11-2	2B.58	48 x 30	48 x 30	—	—	—	—
Road Closed - Local Traffic Only	R11-3a,3b,4	2B.58	60 x 30	60 x 30	—	—	—	—
Weight Limit	R12-1,2	2B.59	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	—	—	36 x 48
Weight Limit	R12-3	2B.59	24 x 36	24 x 36	—	—	—	—
Weight Limit	R12-4	2B.59	36 x 24	36 x 24	—	—	—	—
Weight Limit	R12-5	2B.59	24 x 36	24 x 36	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	—
Weigh Station	R13-1	2B.60	72 x 54	72 x 54	96 x 72	120 x 90	—	—
Truck Route	R14-1	2B.61	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
Hazardous Material	R14-2,3	2B.62	24 x 24	24 x 24	30 x 30	36 x 36	—	42 x 42
National Network	R14-4,5	2B.63	30 x 30	30 x 30	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	42 x 42
Fender Bender Move Vehicles	R16-4	2B.65	36 x 24	36 x 24	48 x 36	60 x 48	—	48 x 36
Lights On When Using Wipers or Raining	R16-5,6	2B.64	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	48 x 60	—	36 x 48
Turn On Headlights Next XX Miles	R16-7	2B.64	48 x 15	48 x 15	72 x 24	96 x 30	—	72 x 24
Turn On, Check Headlights	R16-8,9	2B.64	30 x 15	30 x 15	48 x 24	60 x 30	—	48 x 24
Begin, End Daytime Headlight Section	R16-10,11	2B.64	48 x 15	48 x 15	72 x 24	96 x 30	—	72 x 24

* See Table 9B-1 for minimum size required for signs on bicycle facilities

Notes: 1. Larger signs may be used when appropriate
2. Dimensions in inches are shown as width x height

- 07 **Where side roads intersect a multi-lane street or highway that has a speed limit of 45 mph or higher, the minimum size of the STOP signs facing the side road approaches, even if the side road only has one approach lane, shall be 36 x 36 inches.**
- 08 **Where side roads intersect a multi-lane street or highway that has a speed limit of 40 MPH or lower, the minimum size of the STOP signs facing the side road approaches shall be as shown in the Single Lane or Multi-lane columns of Table 2B-1 based on the number of approach lanes on the side street approach.**
- Guidance:*
- 09 *The minimum sizes for regulatory signs facing traffic on exit and entrance ramps should be as shown in the column of Table 2B-1 that corresponds to the mainline roadway classification (Expressway or Freeway). If a minimum size is not provided in the Freeway column, the minimum size in the Expressway column should be used. If a minimum size is not provided in the Freeway or Expressway Column, the size in the Oversized column should be used.*

Section 2B.04 Right-of-Way at Intersections

Support:

- 01 State or local laws written in accordance with the “Uniform Vehicle Code” (see Section 1A.11) establish the right-of-way rule at intersections having no regulatory traffic control signs such that the driver of a vehicle approaching an intersection must yield the right-of-way to any vehicle or pedestrian already in the intersection.

When two vehicles approach an intersection from different streets or highways at approximately the same time, the right-of-way rule requires the driver of the vehicle on the left to yield the right-of-way to the vehicle on the right. The right-of-way can be modified at through streets or highways by placing YIELD (R1-2) signs (see Sections 2B.08 and 2B.09) or STOP (R1-1) signs (see Sections 2B.05 through 2B.07) on one or more approaches.

Guidance:

- 02 *Engineering judgment should be used to establish intersection control. The following factors should be considered:*
- A. *Vehicular, bicycle, and pedestrian traffic volumes on all approaches;*
 - B. *Number and angle of approaches;*
 - C. *Approach speeds;*
 - D. *Sight distance available on each approach; and*
 - E. *Reported crash experience.*
- 03 *YIELD or STOP signs should be used at an intersection if one or more of the following conditions exist:*
- A. *An intersection of a less important road with a main road where application of the normal right-of-way rule would not be expected to provide reasonable compliance with the law;*
 - B. *A street entering a designated through highway or street; and/or*
 - C. *An unsignalized intersection in a signalized area.*
- 04 *In addition, the use of YIELD or STOP signs should be considered at the intersection of two minor streets or local roads where the intersection has more than three approaches and where one or more of the following conditions exist:*
- A. *The combined vehicular, bicycle, and pedestrian volume entering the intersection from all approaches averages more than 2,000 units per day;*
 - B. *The ability to see conflicting traffic on an approach is not sufficient to allow a road user to stop or yield in compliance with the normal right-of-way rule if such stopping or yielding is necessary; and/or*
 - C. *Crash records indicate that five or more crashes that involve the failure to yield the right-of-way at the intersection under the normal right-of-way rule have been reported within a 3-year period, or that three or more such crashes have been reported within a 2-year period.*
- 05 *YIELD or STOP signs should not be used for speed control.*

Support:

- 06 Section 2B.07 contains provisions regarding the application of multi-way STOP control at an intersection.

Guidance:

- 07 *Once the decision has been made to control an intersection, the decision regarding the appropriate roadway to control should be based on engineering judgment. In most cases, the roadway carrying the lowest volume of traffic should be controlled.*
- 08 *A YIELD or STOP sign should not be installed on the higher volume roadway unless justified by an engineering study.*

Support:

- 09 The following are considerations that might influence the decision regarding the appropriate roadway upon which to install a YIELD or STOP sign where two roadways with relatively equal volumes and/or characteristics intersect:
- A. *Controlling the direction that conflicts the most with established pedestrian crossing activity or school walking routes;*
 - B. *Controlling the direction that has obscured vision, dips, or bumps that already require drivers to use lower operating speeds; and*
 - C. *Controlling the direction that has the best sight distance from a controlled position to observe conflicting traffic.*

Standard:

- 10 **Because the potential for conflicting commands could create driver confusion, YIELD or STOP signs shall not be used in conjunction with any traffic control signal operation, except in the following cases:**
- A. If the signal indication for an approach is a flashing red at all times;**
 - B. If a minor street or driveway is located within or adjacent to the area controlled by the traffic control signal, but does not require separate traffic signal control because an extremely low potential for conflict exists; or**
 - C. If a channelized turn lane is separated from the adjacent travel lanes by an island and the channelized turn lane is not controlled by a traffic control signal.**

- 11 **Except as provided in Section 2B.09, STOP signs and YIELD signs shall not be installed on different approaches to the same unsignalized intersection if those approaches conflict with or oppose each other.**
- 12 **Portable or part-time STOP or YIELD signs shall not be used except for emergency and temporary traffic control zone purposes.**
- 13 **A portable or part-time (folding) STOP sign that is manually placed into view and manually removed from view shall not be used during a power outage to control a signalized approach unless the maintaining agency establishes that the signal indication that will first be displayed to that approach upon restoration of power is a flashing red signal indication and that the portable STOP sign will be manually removed from view prior to stop-and-go operation of the traffic control signal.**
- Option:
- 14 A portable or part-time (folding) STOP sign that is electrically or mechanically operated such that it only displays the STOP message during a power outage and ceases to display the STOP message upon restoration of power may be used during a power outage to control a signalized approach.
- Support:
- 15 Section 9B.03 contains provisions regarding the assignment of priority at a shared-use path/roadway intersection.

Section 2B.05 STOP Sign (R1-1) and ALL WAY Plaque (R1-3P)

Standard:

- 01 **When it is determined that a full stop is always required on an approach to an intersection, a STOP (R1-1) sign (see Figure 2B-1) shall be used.**
- 02 **The STOP sign shall be an octagon with a white legend and border on a red background.**
- 03 **Secondary legends shall not be used on STOP sign faces.**
- 04 **At intersections where all approaches are controlled by STOP signs (see Section 2B.07), an ALL WAY supplemental plaque (R1-3P) shall be mounted below each STOP sign. The ALL WAY plaque (see Figure 2B-1) shall have a white legend and border on a red background.**
- 05 **The ALL WAY plaque shall only be used if all intersection approaches are controlled by STOP signs.**
- 06 **Supplemental plaques with legends such as 2-WAY, 3-WAY, 4-WAY, or other numbers of ways shall not be used with STOP signs.**

Support:

- 07 The use of the CROSS TRAFFIC DOES NOT STOP (W4-4P) plaque (and other plaques with variations of this word message) is described in Section 2C.59.

Guidance:

- 08 *Plaques with the appropriate alternative messages of TRAFFIC FROM LEFT (RIGHT) DOES NOT STOP (W4-4aP) or ONCOMING TRAFFIC DOES NOT STOP (W4-4bP) should be used at intersections where STOP signs control all but one approach to the intersection, unless the only non-stopped approach is from a one-way street.*

Option:

- 09 An EXCEPT RIGHT TURN (R1-10P) plaque (see Figure 2B-1) may be mounted below the STOP sign if an engineering study determines that a special combination of geometry and traffic volumes is present that makes it possible for right-turning traffic on the approach to be permitted to enter the intersection without stopping.

Support:

- 10 The design and application of Stop Beacons are described in Section 4L.05.

Figure 2B-1. STOP and YIELD Signs and Plaques



Section 2B.06 STOP Sign Applications

Guidance:

- 01 *At intersections where a full stop is not necessary at all times, consideration should first be given to using less restrictive measures such as YIELD signs (see Sections 2B.08 and 2B.09).*
- 02 *The use of STOP signs on the minor-street approaches should be considered if engineering judgment indicates that a stop is always required because of one or more of the following conditions:*
- A. *The vehicular traffic volumes on the through street or highway exceed 6,000 vehicles per day;*
 - B. *A restricted view exists that requires road users to stop in order to adequately observe conflicting traffic on the through street or highway; and/or*
 - C. *Crash records indicate that three or more crashes that are susceptible to correction by the installation of a STOP sign have been reported within a 12-month period, or that five or more such crashes have been reported within a 2-year period. Such crashes include right-angle collisions involving road users on the minor-street approach failing to yield the right-of-way to traffic on the through street or highway.*

Support:

- 03 *The use of STOP signs at grade crossings is described in Sections 8B.04 and 8B.05.*

Section 2B.07 Multi-Way Stop Applications

Support:

- 01 *Multi-way stop control can be useful as a safety measure at intersections if certain traffic conditions exist. Safety concerns associated with multi-way stops include pedestrians, bicyclists, and all road users expecting other road users to stop. Multi-way stop control is used where the volume of traffic on the intersecting roads is approximately equal.*
- 02 *The restrictions on the use of STOP signs described in Section 2B.04 also apply to multi-way stop applications.*

Guidance:

- 03 *The decision to install multi-way stop control should be based on an engineering study.*
- 04 *The following criteria should be considered in the engineering study for a multi-way STOP sign installation:*
- A. *Where traffic control signals are justified, the multi-way stop is an interim measure that can be installed quickly to control traffic while arrangements are being made for the installation of the traffic control signal.*
 - B. *Five or more reported crashes in a 12-month period that are susceptible to correction by a multi-way stop installation. Such crashes include right-turn and left-turn collisions as well as right-angle collisions.*
 - C. *Minimum volumes:*
 - 1. *The vehicular volume entering the intersection from the major street approaches (total of both approaches) averages at least 300 vehicles per hour for any 8 hours of an average day; and*
 - 2. *The combined vehicular, pedestrian, and bicycle volume entering the intersection from the minor street approaches (total of both approaches) averages at least 200 units per hour for the same 8 hours, with an average delay to minor-street vehicular traffic of at least 30 seconds per vehicle during the highest hour; but*
 - 3. *If the 85th-percentile approach speed of the major-street traffic exceeds 40 mph, the minimum vehicular volume warrants are 70 percent of the values provided in Items 1 and 2.*
 - D. *Where no single criterion is satisfied, but where Criteria B, C.1, and C.2 are all satisfied to 80 percent of the minimum values. Criterion C.3 is excluded from this condition.*

Option:

- 05 *Other criteria that may be considered in an engineering study include:*
- A. *The need to control left-turn conflicts;*
 - B. *The need to control vehicle/pedestrian conflicts near locations that generate high pedestrian volumes;*
 - C. *Locations where a road user, after stopping, cannot see conflicting traffic and is not able to negotiate the intersection unless conflicting cross traffic is also required to stop; and*
 - D. *An intersection of two residential neighborhood collector (through) streets of similar design and operating characteristics where multi-way stop control would improve traffic operational characteristics of the intersection.*

Section 2B.08 YIELD Sign (R1-2)**Standard:**

- 01 **The YIELD (R1-2) sign (see Figure 2B-1) shall be a downward-pointing equilateral triangle with a wide red border and the legend YIELD in red on a white background.**

Support:

- 02 The YIELD sign assigns right-of-way to traffic on certain approaches to an intersection. Vehicles controlled by a YIELD sign need to slow down to a speed that is reasonable for the existing conditions or stop when necessary to avoid interfering with conflicting traffic.

Section 2B.09 YIELD Sign Applications**Option:**

- 01 YIELD signs may be installed:
- A. On the approaches to a through street or highway where conditions are such that a full stop is not always required.
 - B. At the second crossroad of a divided highway, where the median width at the intersection is 30 feet or greater. In this case, a STOP or YIELD sign may be installed at the entrance to the first roadway of a divided highway, and a YIELD sign may be installed at the entrance to the second roadway.
 - C. For a channelized turn lane that is separated from the adjacent travel lanes by an island, even if the adjacent lanes at the intersection are controlled by a highway traffic control signal or by a STOP sign.
 - D. At an intersection where a special problem exists and where engineering judgment indicates the problem to be susceptible to correction by the use of the YIELD sign.
 - E. Facing the entering roadway for a merge-type movement if engineering judgment indicates that control is needed because acceleration geometry and/or sight distance is not adequate for merging traffic operation.

Standard:

- 02 **A YIELD (R1-2) sign shall be used to assign right-of-way at the entrance to a roundabout. YIELD signs at roundabouts shall be used to control the approach roadways and shall not be used to control the circulatory roadway.**
- 03 **Other than for all of the approaches to a roundabout, YIELD signs shall not be placed on all of the approaches to an intersection.**

Section 2B.10 STOP Sign or YIELD Sign Placement**Standard:**

- 01 **The STOP or YIELD sign shall be installed on the near side of the intersection on the right-hand side of the approach to which it applies. When the STOP or YIELD sign is installed at this required location and the sign visibility is restricted, a Stop Ahead sign (see Section 2C.36) shall be installed in advance of the STOP sign or a Yield Ahead sign (see Section 2C.36) shall be installed in advance of the YIELD sign.**
- 02 **The STOP or YIELD sign shall be located as close as practical to the intersection it regulates, while optimizing its visibility to the road user it is intended to regulate.**
- 03 **STOP signs and YIELD signs shall not be mounted on the same post.**
- 04 **No items other than inventory stickers, sign installation dates, and bar codes shall be affixed to the fronts of STOP or YIELD signs, and the placement of these items shall be in the border of the sign.**
- 05 **No items other than official traffic control signs, inventory stickers, sign installation dates, anti-vandalism stickers, and bar codes shall be mounted on the backs of STOP or YIELD signs.**
- 06 **No items other than retroreflective strips (see Section 2A.21) or official traffic control signs shall be mounted on the fronts or backs of STOP or YIELD signs supports.**

Guidance:

- 07 *STOP or YIELD signs should not be placed farther than 50 feet from the edge of the pavement of the intersected roadway (see Drawing F in Figure 2A-3).*
- 08 *A sign that is mounted back-to-back with a STOP or YIELD sign should stay within the edges of the STOP or YIELD sign. If necessary, the size of the STOP or YIELD sign should be increased so that any other sign installed back-to-back with a STOP or YIELD sign remains within the edges of the STOP or YIELD sign.*

Option:

- 09 Where drivers proceeding straight ahead must yield to traffic approaching from the opposite direction, such as at a one-lane bridge, a TO ONCOMING TRAFFIC (R1-2aP) plaque may be mounted below the YIELD sign.

Support:

- 10 Figure 2A-3 shows examples of some typical placements of STOP signs and YIELD signs.
- 11 Section 2A.16 contains additional information about separate and combined mounting of other signs with STOP or YIELD signs.

Guidance:

- 12 *Stop lines that are used to supplement a STOP sign should be located as described in Section 3B.16. Yield lines that are used to supplement a YIELD sign should be located as described in Section 3B.16.*
- 13 *Where there is a marked crosswalk at the intersection, the STOP sign should be installed in advance of the crosswalk line nearest to the approaching traffic.*
- 14 *Except at roundabouts, where there is a marked crosswalk at the intersection, the YIELD sign should be installed in advance of the crosswalk line nearest to the approaching traffic.*
- 15 *Where two roads intersect at an acute angle, the STOP or YIELD sign should be positioned at an angle, or shielded, so that the legend is out of view of traffic to which it does not apply.*
- 16 *If a raised splitter island is available on the left-hand side of a multi-lane roundabout approach, an additional YIELD sign should be placed on the left-hand side of the approach.*

Option:

- 17 If a raised splitter island is available on the left-hand side of a single lane roundabout approach, an additional YIELD sign may be placed on the left-hand side of the approach.
- 18 At wide-throat intersections or where two or more approach lanes of traffic exist on the signed approach, observance of the right-of-way control may be improved by the installation of an additional STOP or YIELD sign on the left-hand side of the road and/or the use of a stop or yield line. At channelized intersections or at divided roadways separated by a median, the additional STOP or YIELD sign may be placed on a channelizing island or in the median. An additional STOP or YIELD sign may also be placed overhead facing the approach at the intersection to improve observance of the right-of-way control.

Standard:

- 19 **More than one STOP sign or more than one YIELD sign shall not be placed on the same support facing in the same direction.**

Option:

- 20 For a yield-controlled channelized right-turn movement onto a roadway without an acceleration lane and for an entrance ramp onto a freeway or expressway without an acceleration lane, a NO MERGE AREA (W4-5P) supplemental plaque (see Section 2C.40) may be mounted below a Yield Ahead (W3-2) sign and/or below a YIELD (R1-2) sign when engineering judgment indicates that road users would expect an acceleration lane to be present.

Section 2B.11 Yield Here To Pedestrians Signs and Stop Here For Pedestrians Signs (R1-5 Series)**Standard:**

- 01 **Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians (R1-5, R1-5a, R1-5b, or R1-5c) signs (see Figure 2B-2) shall be used if yield (stop) lines are used in advance of a marked crosswalk that crosses an uncontrolled multi-lane approach. The Stop Here for Pedestrians signs shall only be used where the law specifically requires that a driver must stop for a pedestrian in a crosswalk. The legend STATE LAW may be displayed at the top of the R1-5, R1-5a, R1-5b, and R1-5c signs, if applicable.**

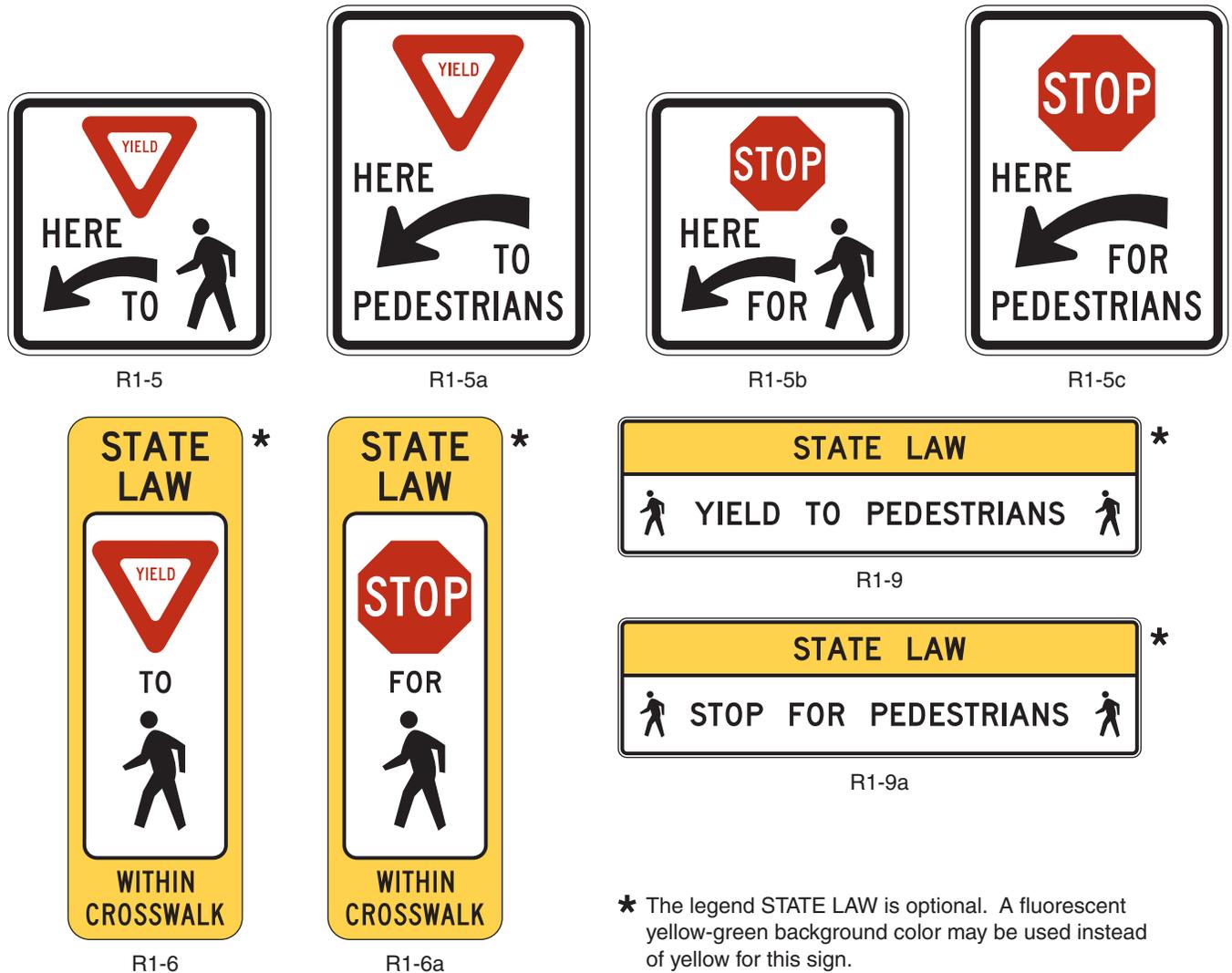
Guidance:

- 02 *If yield (stop) lines and Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians signs are used in advance of a crosswalk that crosses an uncontrolled multi-lane approach, they should be placed 20 to 50 feet in advance of the nearest crosswalk line (see Section 3B.16 and Figure 3B-17), and parking should be prohibited in the area between the yield (stop) line and the crosswalk.*
- 03 *Yield (stop) lines and Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians signs should not be used in advance of crosswalks that cross an approach to or departure from a roundabout.*

Option:

- 04 Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians signs may be used in advance of a crosswalk that crosses an uncontrolled multi-lane approach to indicate to road users where to yield (stop) even if yield (stop) lines are not used.

Figure 2B-2. Unsignalized Pedestrian Crosswalk Signs



* The legend STATE LAW is optional. A fluorescent yellow-green background color may be used instead of yellow for this sign.

05 A Pedestrian Crossing (W11-2) warning sign may be placed overhead or may be post-mounted with a diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) plaque at the crosswalk location where Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians signs have been installed in advance of the crosswalk.

Standard:

06 **If a W11-2 sign has been post-mounted at the crosswalk location where a Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians sign is used on the approach, the Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians sign shall not be placed on the same post as or block the road user’s view of the W11-2 sign.**

Option:

07 An advance Pedestrian Crossing (W11-2) warning sign with an AHEAD or a distance supplemental plaque may be used in conjunction with a Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians sign on the approach to the same crosswalk.

08 In-Street Pedestrian Crossing signs and Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians signs may be used together at the same crosswalk.

Section 2B.12 In-Street and Overhead Pedestrian Crossing Signs (R1-6, R1-6a, R1-9, and R1-9a)

Option:

01 The In-Street Pedestrian Crossing (R1-6 or R1-6a) sign (see Figure 2B-2) or the Overhead Pedestrian Crossing (R1-9 or R1-9a) sign (see Figure 2B-2) may be used to remind road users of laws regarding right-of-way at an unsignalized pedestrian crosswalk. The legend STATE LAW may be displayed at the top of the R1-6, R1-6a, R1-9, and R1-9a signs, if applicable. On the R1-6 and R1-6a signs, the legends STOP or YIELD may be used instead of the appropriate STOP sign or YIELD sign symbol.

02 Highway agencies may develop and apply criteria for determining the applicability of In-Street Pedestrian Crossing signs.

Standard:

03 **If used, the In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign shall be placed in the roadway at the crosswalk location on the center line, on a lane line, or on a median island. The In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign shall not be post-mounted on the left-hand or right-hand side of the roadway.**

04 **If used, the Overhead Pedestrian Crossing sign shall be placed over the roadway at the crosswalk location.**

05 **An In-Street or Overhead Pedestrian Crossing sign shall not be placed in advance of the crosswalk to educate road users about the State law prior to reaching the crosswalk, nor shall it be installed as an educational display that is not near any crosswalk.**

Guidance:

06 *If an island (see Chapter 3I) is available, the In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign, if used, should be placed on the island.*

Option:

07 If a Pedestrian Crossing (W11-2) warning sign is used in combination with an In-Street or an Overhead Pedestrian Crossing sign, the W11-2 sign with a diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) plaque may be post-mounted on the right-hand side of the roadway at the crosswalk location.

Standard:

08 **The In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign and the Overhead Pedestrian Crossing sign shall not be used at signalized locations.**

09 **The STOP FOR legend shall only be used in States where the State law specifically requires that a driver must stop for a pedestrian in a crosswalk.**

10 **The In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign shall have a black legend (except for the red STOP or YIELD sign symbols) and border on a white background, surrounded by an outer yellow or fluorescent yellow-green background area (see Figure 2B-2). The Overhead Pedestrian Crossing sign shall have a black legend and border on a yellow or fluorescent yellow-green background at the top of the sign and a black legend and border on a white background at the bottom of the sign (see Figure 2B-2).**

11 **Unless the In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign is placed on a physical island, the sign support shall be designed to bend over and then bounce back to its normal vertical position when struck by a vehicle.**

Support:

12 The Provisions of Section 2A.18 concerning mounting height are not applicable for the In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign.

Standard:

13 **The top of an In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign shall be a maximum of 4 feet above the pavement surface. The top of an In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign placed in an island shall be a maximum of 4 feet above the island surface.**

Option:

14 The In-Street Pedestrian Crossing sign may be used seasonably to prevent damage in winter because of plowing operations, and may be removed at night if the pedestrian activity at night is minimal.

15 In-Street Pedestrian Crossing signs, Overhead Pedestrian Crossing signs, and Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians signs may be used together at the same crosswalk.

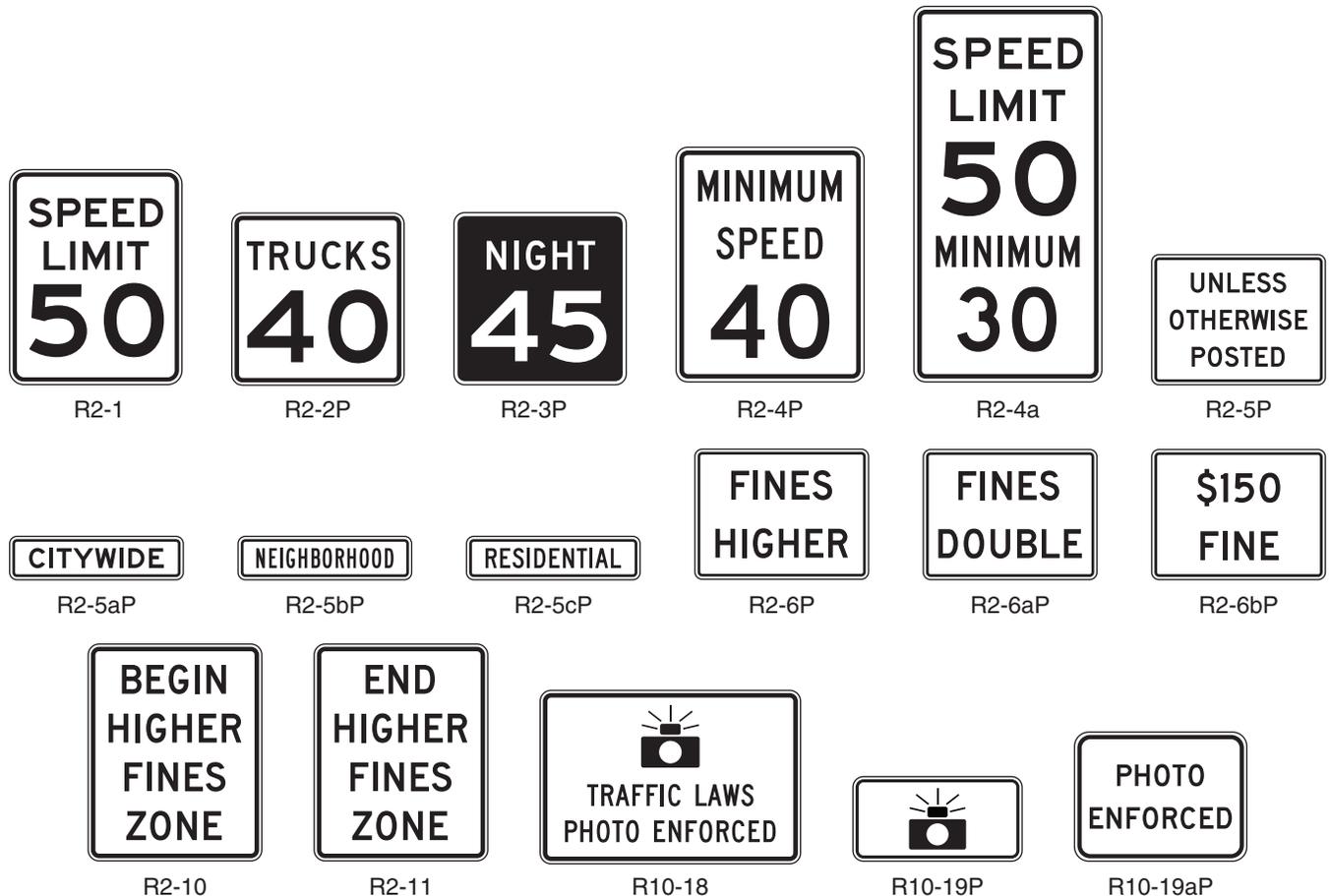
Section 2B.13 Speed Limit Sign (R2-1)

Standard:

01 **Speed zones (other than statutory speed limits) shall only be established on the basis of an engineering study that has been performed in accordance with traffic engineering practices. The engineering study shall include an analysis of the current speed distribution of free-flowing vehicles.**

02 **The Speed Limit (R2-1) sign (see Figure 2B-3) shall display the limit established by law, ordinance, regulation, or as adopted by the authorized agency based on the engineering study. The speed limits displayed shall be in multiples of 5 mph.**

03 **Speed Limit (R2-1) signs, indicating speed limits for which posting is required by law, shall be located at the points of change from one speed limit to another.**

Figure 2B-3. Speed Limit and Photo Enforcement Signs and Plaques

- 04 At the downstream end of the section to which a speed limit applies, a Speed Limit sign showing the next speed limit shall be installed. Additional Speed Limit signs shall be installed beyond major intersections and at other locations where it is necessary to remind road users of the speed limit that is applicable.
- 05 Speed Limit signs indicating the statutory speed limits shall be installed at entrances to the State and, where appropriate, at jurisdictional boundaries in urban areas.
Support:
- 06 In general, the maximum speed limits applicable to rural and urban roads are established:
- Statutorily – a maximum speed limit applicable to a particular class of road, such as freeways or city streets, that is established by State law; or
 - As altered speed zones – based on engineering studies.
- 07 State statutory limits might restrict the maximum speed limit that can be established on a particular road, notwithstanding what an engineering study might indicate.
Option:
- 08 If a jurisdiction has a policy of installing Speed Limit signs in accordance with statutory requirements only on the streets that enter a city, neighborhood, or residential area to indicate the speed limit that is applicable to the entire city, neighborhood, or residential area unless otherwise posted, a CITYWIDE (R2-5aP), NEIGHBORHOOD (R2-5bP), or RESIDENTIAL (R2-5cP) plaque may be mounted above the Speed Limit sign and an UNLESS OTHERWISE POSTED (R2-5P) plaque may be mounted below the Speed Limit sign (see Figure 2B-3).

Guidance:

- 09 *A Reduced Speed Limit Ahead (W3-5 or W3-5a) sign (see Section 2C.38) should be used to inform road users of a reduced speed zone where the speed limit is being reduced by more than 10 mph, or where engineering judgment indicates the need for advance notice to comply with the posted speed limit ahead.*
- 10 *States and local agencies should conduct engineering studies to reevaluate non-statutory speed limits on segments of their roadways that have undergone significant changes since the last review, such as the addition or elimination of parking or driveways, changes in the number of travel lanes, changes in the configuration of bicycle lanes, changes in traffic control signal coordination, or significant changes in traffic volumes.*
- 11 *No more than three speed limits should be displayed on any one Speed Limit sign or assembly.*
- 12 *When a speed limit within a speed zone is posted, it should be within 5 mph of the 85th-percentile speed of free-flowing traffic.*
- 13 *Speed studies for signalized intersection approaches should be taken outside the influence area of the traffic control signal, which is generally considered to be approximately 1/2 mile, to avoid obtaining skewed results for the 85th-percentile speed.*

Support:

- 14 Advance warning signs and other traffic control devices to attract the motorist's attention to a signalized intersection are usually more effective than a reduced speed limit zone.

Guidance:

- 15 *An advisory speed plaque (see Section 2C.08) mounted below a warning sign should be used to warn road users of an advisory speed for a roadway condition. A Speed Limit sign should not be used for this situation.*

Option:

- 16 Other factors that may be considered when establishing or reevaluating speed limits are the following:
- A. Road characteristics, shoulder condition, grade, alignment, and sight distance;
 - B. The pace;
 - C. Roadside development and environment;
 - D. Parking practices and pedestrian activity; and
 - E. Reported crash experience for at least a 12-month period.
- 17 Two types of Speed Limit signs may be used: one to designate passenger car speeds, including any nighttime information or minimum speed limit that might apply; and the other to show any special speed limits for trucks and other vehicles.
- 18 A changeable message sign that changes the speed limit for traffic and ambient conditions may be installed provided that the appropriate speed limit is displayed at the proper times.
- 19 A changeable message sign that displays to approaching drivers the speed at which they are traveling may be installed in conjunction with a Speed Limit sign.

Guidance:

- 20 *If a changeable message sign displaying approach speeds is installed, the legend YOUR SPEED XX MPH or such similar legend should be displayed. The color of the changeable message legend should be a yellow legend on a black background or the reverse of these colors.*

Support:

- 21 Advisory Speed signs and plaques are discussed in Sections 2C.08 and 2C.14. Temporary Traffic Control Zone Speed signs are discussed in Part 6. The WORK ZONE (G20-5aP) plaque intended for installation above a Speed Limit sign is discussed in Section 6F.12. School Speed Limit signs are discussed in Section 7B.15.

Section 2B.14 Truck Speed Limit Plaque (R2-2P)**Standard:**

- 01 **Where a special speed limit applies to trucks or other vehicles, the legend TRUCKS XX or such similar legend shall be displayed below the legend Speed Limit XX on the same sign or on a separate R2-2P plaque (see Figure 2B-3) below the standard legend.**

Section 2B.15 Night Speed Limit Plaque (R2-3P)**Standard:**

- 01 **Where different speed limits are prescribed for day and night, both limits shall be posted.**

Guidance:

- 02 A Night Speed Limit (R2-3P) plaque (see Figure 2B-3) should be reversed using a white retroreflectorized legend and border on a black background.

Option:

- 03 A Night Speed Limit plaque may be combined with or installed below the standard Speed Limit (R2-1) sign.

Section 2B.16 Minimum Speed Limit Plaque (R2-4P)**Standard:**

- 01 A Minimum Speed Limit (R2-4P) plaque (see Figure 2B-3) shall be displayed only in combination with a Speed Limit sign.

Option:

- 02 Where engineering judgment determines that slow speeds on a highway might impede the normal and reasonable movement of traffic, the Minimum Speed Limit plaque may be installed below a Speed Limit (R2-1) sign to indicate the minimum legal speed. If desired, the Speed Limit sign and the Minimum Speed Limit plaque may be combined on the R2-4a sign (see Figure 2B-3).

Section 2B.17 Higher Fines Signs and Plaque (R2-6P, R2-10, and R2-11)**Standard:**

- 01 If increased fines are imposed for traffic violations within a designated zone of a roadway, a BEGIN HIGHER FINES ZONE (R2-10) sign (see Figure 2B-3) or a FINES HIGHER (R2-6P) plaque (see Figure 2B-3) shall be used to provide notice to road users. If used, the FINES HIGHER plaque shall be mounted below an applicable regulatory or warning sign in a temporary traffic control zone, a school zone, or other applicable designated zone.
- 02 If an R2-10 sign or an R2-6P plaque is posted to provide notice of increased fines for traffic violations, an END HIGHER FINES ZONE (R2-11) sign (see Figure 2B-3) shall be installed at the downstream end of the zone to provide notice to road users of the termination of the increased fines zone.

Guidance:

- 03 If used, the BEGIN HIGHER FINES ZONE sign or FINES HIGHER plaque should be located at the beginning of the temporary traffic control zone, school zone, or other applicable designated zone and just beyond any interchanges, major intersections, or other major traffic generators.

Standard:

- 04 The Higher Fines signs and plaque shall have a black legend and border on a white rectangular background. All supplemental plaques mounted below the Higher Fines signs and plaque shall have a black legend and border on a white rectangular background.

Guidance:

- 05 Agencies should limit the use of the Higher Fines signs and plaque to locations where work is actually underway, or to locations where the roadway, shoulder, or other conditions, including the presence of a school zone and/or a reduced school speed limit zone, require a speed reduction or extra caution on the part of the road user.

Option:

- 06 Alternate legends such as BEGIN (or END) DOUBLE FINES ZONE may also be used for the R2-10 and R2-11 signs.
- 07 The legend FINES HIGHER on the R2-6P plaque may be replaced by FINES DOUBLE (R2-6aP), \$XX FINE (R2-6bP), or another legend appropriate to the specific regulation (see Figure 2B-3).
- 08 The following may be mounted below an R2-10 sign or R2-6P plaque:
- A. A supplemental plaque specifying the times that the higher fines are in effect (similar to the S4-1P plaque shown in Figure 7B-1), or
 - B. A supplemental plaque WHEN CHILDREN (WORKERS) ARE PRESENT, or
 - C. A supplemental plaque WHEN FLASHING (similar to the S4-4P plaque shown in Figure 7B-1) if used in conjunction with a yellow flashing beacon.

Support:

- 09 Section 6F.12 contains information regarding other signs and plaques associated with increased fines for traffic violations in temporary traffic control zones. Section 7B.10 contains information regarding other signs and plaques associated with increased fines for traffic violations in designated school zones.

Section 2B.18 Movement Prohibition Signs (R3-1 through R3-4, R3-18, and R3-27)

Standard:

01 **Except as provided in Paragraphs 11 and 13, where specific movements are prohibited, Movement Prohibition signs shall be installed.**

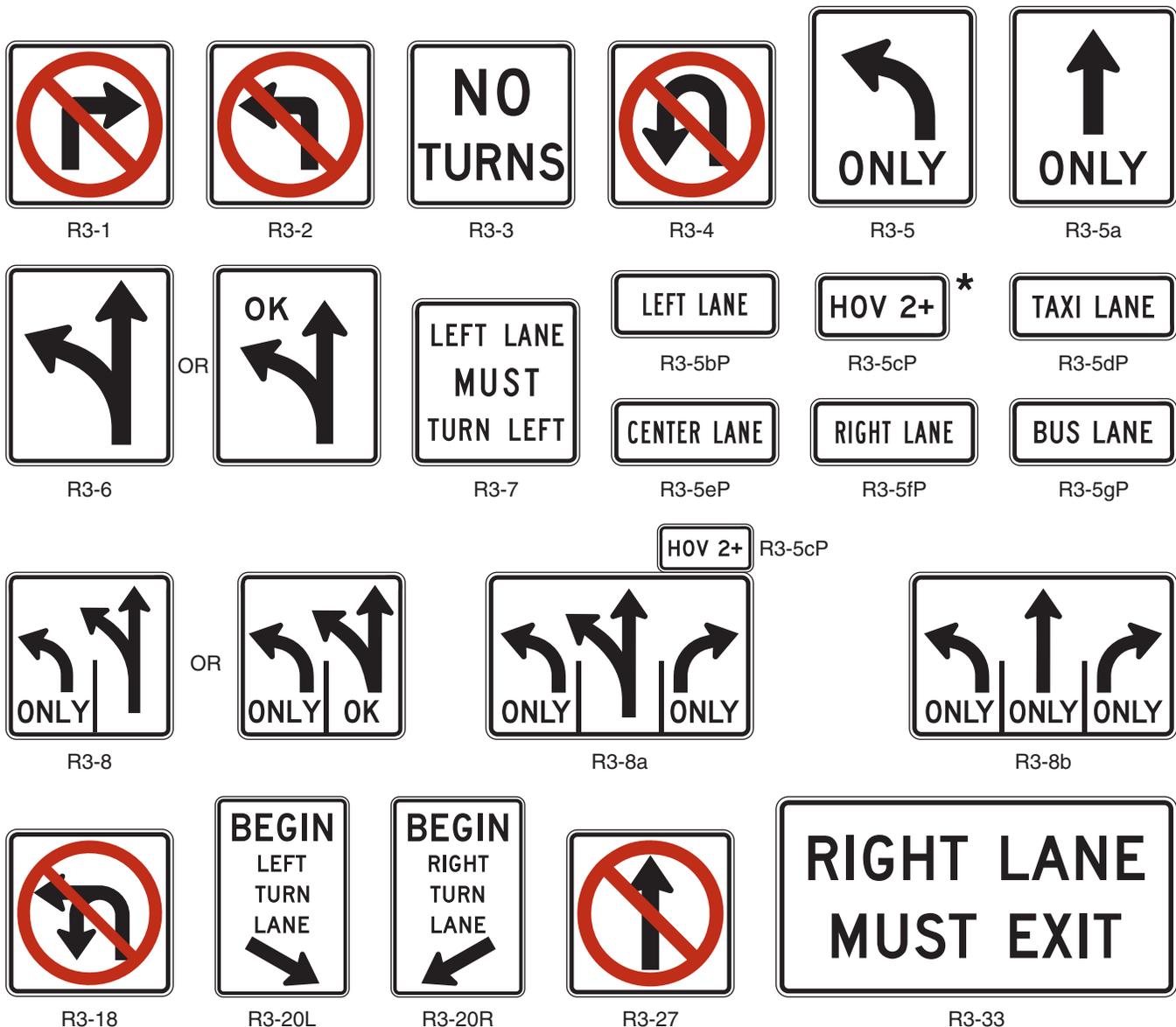
Guidance:

02 *Movement Prohibition signs should be placed where they will be most easily seen by road users who might be intending to make the movement.*

03 *If No Right Turn (R3-1) signs (see Figure 2B-4) are used, at least one should be placed either over the roadway or at a right-hand corner of the intersection.*

04 *If No Left Turn (R3-2) signs (see Figure 2B-4) are used, at least one should be placed over the roadway, at the far left-hand corner of the intersection, on a median, or in conjunction with the STOP sign or YIELD sign located on the near right-hand corner.*

Figure 2B-4. Movement Prohibition and Lane Control Signs and Plaques



* The diamond symbol may be used instead of the "HOV" word message. The minimum vehicle occupancy level may vary, such as 2+, 3+, 4+. The words "LANE" or "ONLY" may be used with this sign when appropriate.

05 *Except as provided in Item C of Paragraph 9 for signalized locations, if NO TURNS (R3-3) signs (see Figure 2B-4) are used, two signs should be used, one at a location specified for a No Right Turn sign and one at a location specified for a No Left Turn sign.*

06 *If No U-Turn (R3-4) signs (see Figure 2B-4) or combination No U-Turn/No Left Turn (R3-18) signs (see Figure 2B-4) are used, at least one should be used at a location specified for No Left Turn signs.*

Option:

07 *If both left turns and U-turns are prohibited, the combination No U-Turn/No Left Turn (R3-18) sign (see Figure 2B-4) may be used instead of separate R3-2 and R3-4 signs.*

Guidance:

08 *If No Straight Through (R3-27) signs (see Figure 2B-4) are used, at least one should be placed either over the roadway or at a location where it can be seen by road users who might be intending to travel straight through the intersection.*

09 *If turn prohibition signs are installed in conjunction with traffic control signals:*

- A. *The No Right Turn sign should be installed adjacent to a signal face viewed by road users in the right-hand lane.*
- B. *The No Left Turn (or No U-Turn or combination No U-Turn/No Left Turn) sign should be installed adjacent to a signal face viewed by road users in the left-hand lane.*
- C. *A NO TURNS sign should be placed adjacent to a signal face viewed by all road users on that approach, or two signs should be used.*

Option:

10 *If turn prohibition signs are installed in conjunction with traffic control signals, an additional Movement Prohibition sign may be post-mounted to supplement the sign mounted overhead.*

11 *Where ONE WAY signs are used (see Section 2B.40), No Left Turn and No Right Turn signs may be omitted.*

12 *When the movement restriction applies during certain time periods only, the following Movement Prohibition signing alternatives may be used and are listed in order of preference:*

- A. *Changeable message signs, especially at signalized intersections.*
- B. *Permanently mounted signs incorporating a supplementary legend showing the hours and days during which the prohibition is applicable.*
- C. *Portable signs, installed by proper authority, located off the roadway at each corner of the intersection. The portable signs are only to be used during the time that the movement prohibition is applicable.*

13 *Movement Prohibition signs may be omitted at a ramp entrance to an expressway or a channelized intersection where the design is such as to indicate clearly the one-way traffic movement on the ramp or turning lane.*

Standard:

14 **The No Left Turn (R3-2) sign, the No U-Turn (R3-4) sign, and the combination No U-Turn/No Left Turn (R3-18) sign shall not be used at approaches to roundabouts to prohibit drivers from turning left onto the circulatory roadway of a roundabout.**

Support:

15 *At roundabouts, the use of R3-2, R3-4, or R3-18 signs to prohibit left turns onto the circulatory roadway might confuse drivers about the possible legal turning movements around the roundabout. Roundabout Directional Arrow (R6-4 series) signs (see Section 2B.43) and/or ONE WAY (R6-1R or R6-2R) signs are the appropriate signs to indicate the travel direction within a roundabout.*

Section 2B.19 Intersection Lane Control Signs (R3-5 through R3-8)

Standard:

01 **Intersection Lane Control signs, if used, shall require road users in certain lanes to turn, shall permit turns from a lane where such turns would otherwise not be permitted, shall require a road user to stay in the same lane and proceed straight through an intersection, or shall indicate permitted movements from a lane.**

02 **Intersection Lane Control signs (see Figure 2B-4) shall have three applications:**

- A. **Mandatory Movement Lane Control (R3-5, R3-5a, and R3-7) signs,**
- B. **Optional Movement Lane Control (R3-6) sign, and**
- C. **Advance Intersection Lane Control (R3-8 series) signs.**

Guidance:

- 03 When Intersection Lane Control signs are mounted overhead, each sign should be placed over the lane or a projection of the lane to which it applies.
- 04 On signalized approaches where through lanes that become mandatory turn lanes, multiple-lane turns that include shared lanes for through and turning movements, or other lane-use regulations are present that would be unexpected by unfamiliar road users, overhead lane control signs should be installed at the signalized location over the appropriate lanes or projections thereof and in advance of the intersection over the appropriate lanes.
- 05 Where overhead mounting on the approach is impractical for the advance and/or intersection lane-use signs, one of the following alternatives should be employed:
- A. At locations where through lanes become mandatory turn lanes, a mandatory movement lane control (R3-7) sign should be post-mounted on the left-hand side of the roadway where a through lane is becoming a mandatory left-turn lane on a one-way street or where a median of sufficient width for the signs is available, or on the right-hand side of the roadway where a through lane is becoming a mandatory right-turn lane.
 - B. At locations where a through lane is becoming a mandatory left-turn lane on a two-way street where a median of sufficient width for the signs is not available, and at locations where multiple-lane turns that include shared lanes for through and turning movements are present, an Advance Intersection Lane Control (R3-8 series) sign should be post-mounted in a prominent location in advance of the intersection, and consideration should be given to the use of an oversized version in accordance with Table 2B-1.

Standard:

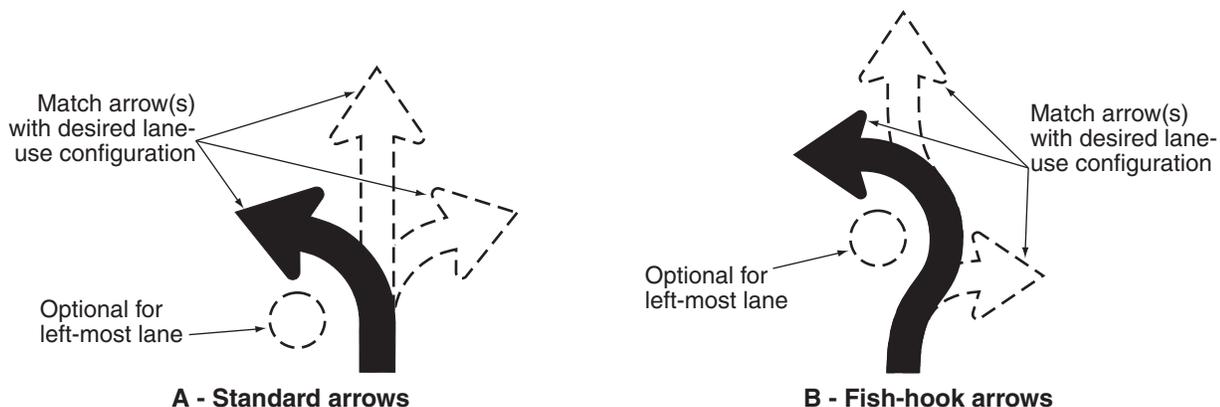
- 06 Use of an overhead sign for one approach lane shall not require installation of overhead signs for the other lanes of that approach.

Option:

- 07 Where the number of through lanes on an approach is two or less, the Intersection Lane Control signs (R3-5, R3-6, or R3-8) may be overhead or post-mounted.
- 08 Intersection Lane Control signs may be omitted where:
- A. A turn bay has been provided by physical construction or pavement markings, and
 - B. Only the road users using such turn bays are permitted to make a turn in that direction.
- 09 At roundabouts, Intersection Lane Control (R3-5, R3-6, and R3-8 series) signs may display any of the arrow symbol options shown in Figure 2B-5.

Section 2B.20 Mandatory Movement Lane Control Signs (R3-5, R3-5a, R3-7, and R3-20)**Standard:**

- 01 If used, the Mandatory Movement Lane Control (R3-5, R3-5a, and R3-7) sign (see Figure 2B-4) shall indicate only the single vehicle movement that is required from the lane. If used, the Mandatory Movement Lane Control sign shall be located in advance of the intersection, such as near the upstream end of the mandatory movement lane, and/or at the intersection where the regulation applies. When the mandatory movement applies to lanes exclusively designated for HOV traffic, the R3-5cP supplemental plaque shall be used. When the mandatory movement applies to lanes that are not HOV facilities, but are lanes exclusively designated for buses and/or taxis, the word message R3-5dP and/or R3-5gP supplemental plaques shall be used.

Figure 2B-5. Intersection Lane Control Sign Arrow Options for Roundabouts

02 **The Mandatory Movement Lane Control (R3-7) sign shall include the legend RIGHT (LEFT) LANE MUST TURN RIGHT (LEFT). The Mandatory Movement Lane Control (R3-5 and R3-5a) symbol signs shall include the legend ONLY.**

03 **The R3-7 word message sign shall be for post-mounting only.**

04 **Where the number of lanes available to through traffic on an approach is three or more, Mandatory Movement Lane Control (R3-5 and R3-5a) symbol signs, if used, shall be mounted overhead over the specific lanes to which they apply (see Section 2B.19).**

Guidance:

05 *If the R3-5 or R3-5a sign is post-mounted on an approach with two or fewer through lanes, a supplemental plaque (see Figure 2B-4), such as LEFT LANE (R3-5bP), HOV 2+ (R3-5cP), TAXI LANE (R3-5dP), CENTER LANE (R3-5eP), RIGHT LANE (R3-5fP), BUS LANE (R3-5gP), or BOTH LANES, should be added above the sign to indicate the specific lane to which the mandatory movement applies. If Mandatory Lane Movement Control (R3-5) symbol signs with supplemental R3-5bP or R3-5fP plaques are used, they should be mounted adjacent to and along only the full width portion of the turn lane.*

06 *The use of the Mandatory Movement Lane Control (R3-7) word message sign should be limited to only locations that are adjacent to the full-width portion of a mandatory turn lane. The R3-7 sign should not be installed adjacent to a through lane in advance of a turn bay taper or adjacent to a turn bay taper.*

07 *Mandatory Movement Lane Control signs should be accompanied by lane-use arrow markings, especially where traffic volumes are high, where there is a high percentage of commercial vehicles, or where other distractions exist.*

Option:

08 The Straight Through Only (R3-5a) sign may be used to require a road user in a particular lane to proceed straight through an intersection.

09 When the Mandatory Movement Lane Control sign for a left-turn lane is installed back-to-back with a Keep Right (R4-7) sign, the dimensions of the Mandatory Movement Lane Control (R3-5) sign may be the same as the Keep Right sign.

10 The diamond symbol may be used instead of the word message HOV on the R3-5cP supplemental plaque.

11 The BEGIN RIGHT TURN LANE (R3-20R) sign (see Figure 2B-4) may be post-mounted on the right-hand side of the roadway at the upstream end of the turn lane taper of a mandatory right-turn lane. The BEGIN LEFT TURN LANE (R3-20L) sign (see Figure 2B-4) may be post-mounted on a median (or on the left-hand side of the roadway for a one-way street) at the upstream end of the turn lane taper of a mandatory left-turn lane.

Section 2B.21 Optional Movement Lane Control Sign (R3-6)

Standard:

01 **If used, the Optional Movement Lane Control (R3-6) sign (see Figure 2B-4) shall be used for two or more movements from a specific lane or to emphasize permitted movements. If used, the Optional Movement Lane Control sign shall be located in advance of the intersection, such as near the upstream end of an adjacent mandatory movement lane, and/or at the intersection where the regulation applies.**

02 **If used, the Optional Movement Lane Control sign shall indicate all permissible movements from specific lanes.**

03 **Optional Movement Lane Control signs shall be used for two or more movements from a specific lane where a movement, not normally allowed, is permitted.**

04 **The Optional Movement Lane Control sign shall not be used alone to effect a turn prohibition.**

05 **Where the number of lanes available to through traffic on an approach is three or more, an Optional Movement Lane Control (R3-6) sign, if used, shall be mounted overhead over the specific lane to which it applies (see Section 2B.19).**

Guidance:

06 *If the Optional Movement Lane Control sign is post-mounted on an approach with two or fewer through lanes, a supplemental plaque (see Figure 2B-4), such as LEFT LANE (R3-5bP), HOV 2+ (R3-5cP), TAXI LANE (R3-5dP), CENTER LANE (R3-5eP), RIGHT LANE (R3-5fP), or BUS LANE (R3-5gP), should be added above the R3-6 sign to indicate the specific lane from which the optional movements can be made.*

Option:

07 The word message OK may be used within the border in combination with the arrow symbols of the R3-6 sign.

Standard:

- 08 **Because more than one movement is permitted from the lane, the word message ONLY shall not be used on an Optional Movement Lane Control sign.**

Section 2B.22 Advance Intersection Lane Control Signs (R3-8 Series)

Option:

- 01 Advance Intersection Lane Control (R3-8, R3-8a, and R3-8b) signs (see Figure 2B-4) may be used to indicate the configuration of all lanes ahead.
- 02 The word messages ONLY, OK, THRU, ALL, or HOV 2+ may be used within the border in combination with the arrow symbols of the R3-8 sign series. The HOV 2+ (R3-5cP) supplemental plaque may be installed at the top outside border of the R3-8 sign over the applicable lane designation on the sign. The diamond symbol may be used instead of the word message HOV. The minimum allowable vehicle occupancy requirement may vary based on the level established for a particular facility.

Guidance:

- 03 *If used, an Advance Intersection Lane Control sign should be placed at an adequate distance in advance of the intersection so that road users can select the appropriate lane (see Figure 2A-4). If used, the Advance Intersection Lane Control sign should be installed either in advance of the tapers or at the beginning of the turn lane.*

Option:

- 04 An Advance Intersection Lane Control sign may be repeated closer to the intersection for additional emphasis.

Standard:

- 05 **Where three or more approach lanes are available to traffic, Advance Intersection Lane Control (R3-8 series) signs, if used, shall be post-mounted in advance of the intersection and shall not be mounted overhead (see Section 2B.19).**

Section 2B.23 RIGHT (LEFT) LANE MUST EXIT Sign (R3-33)

Option:

- 01 A RIGHT (LEFT) LANE MUST EXIT (R3-33) sign (see Figure 2B-4) may be used to supplement an overhead EXIT ONLY guide sign to inform road users that traffic in the right-hand (left-hand) lane of a roadway that is approaching a grade-separated interchange is required to depart the roadway on the exit ramp at the next interchange.

Support:

- 02 Section 2C.43 contains information regarding a warning sign that can be used in advance of lane drops at grade-separated interchanges.

Section 2B.24 Two-Way Left Turn Only Signs (R3-9a, R3-9b)

Guidance:

- 01 *Two-Way Left Turn Only (R3-9a or R3-9b) signs (see Figure 2B-6) should be used in conjunction with the required pavement markings where a non-reversible lane is reserved for the exclusive use of left-turning vehicles in either direction and is not used for passing, overtaking, or through travel.*

Option:

- 02 The post-mounted R3-9b sign may be used as an alternate to or a supplement to the overhead R3-9a sign. The legend BEGIN or END may be used within the border of the main sign itself, or on an R3-9cP or R3-9dP plaque (see Figure 2B-6) mounted immediately above it.

Support:

- 03 Signing is especially helpful to drivers in areas where the two-way left turn only maneuver is new, in areas subject to environmental conditions that frequently obscure the pavement markings, and on peripheral streets with two-way left turn only lanes leading to an extensive system of routes with two-way left turn only lanes.

Section 2B.25 BEGIN and END Plaques (R3-9cP, R3-9dP)

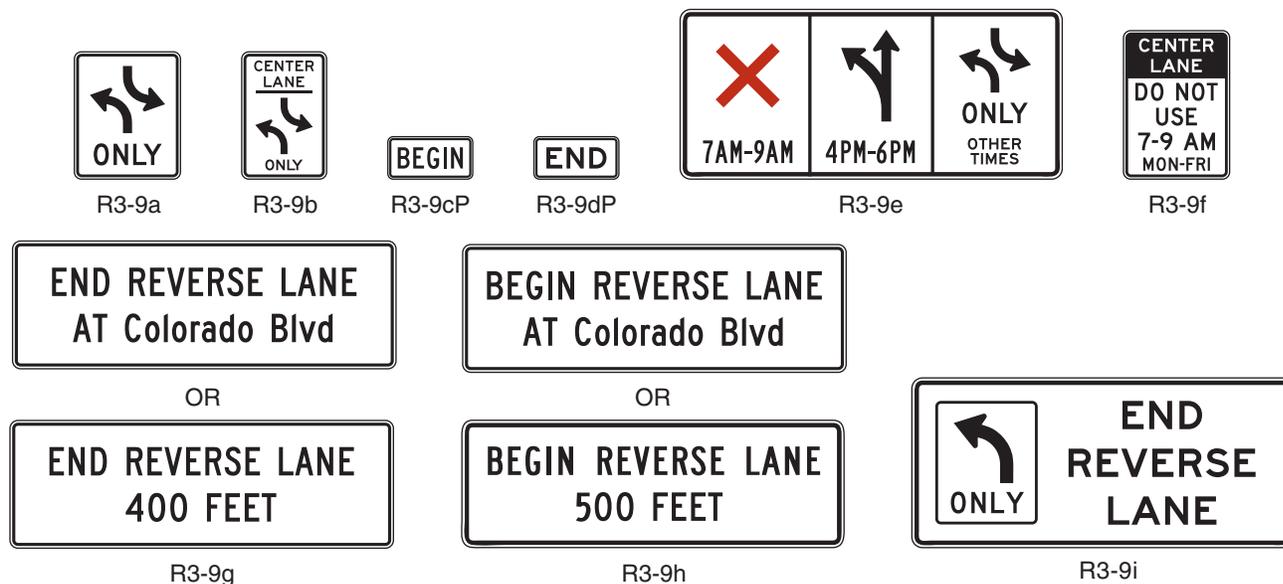
Option:

- 01 The BEGIN (R3-9cP) or END (R3-9dP) plaque (see Figure 2B-6) may be used to supplement a regulatory sign to inform road users of the location where a regulatory condition begins or ends.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the BEGIN or END plaque shall be mounted directly above a regulatory sign.**

Figure 2B-6. Center and Reversible Lane Control Signs and Plaques



Section 2B.26 Reversible Lane Control Signs (R3-9e through R3-9i)

Option:

- 01 A reversible lane may be used for through traffic (with left turns either permitted or prohibited) in alternating directions during different periods of the day, and the lane may be used for exclusive left turns in one or both directions during other periods of the day as well. Reversible Lane Control (R3-9e through R3-9i) signs (see Figure 2B-6) may be either static type or changeable message type. These signs may be either post-mounted or overhead.

Standard:

- 02 **Post-mounted Reversible Lane Control signs shall be used only as a supplement to overhead signs or signals. post-mounted signs shall be identical in design to the overhead signs and an additional legend such as CENTER LANE shall be added to the sign (R3-9f) to indicate which lane is controlled. For both word messages and symbols, this legend shall be at the top of the sign.**
- 03 **Where it is determined by an engineering study that lane-use control signals or physical barriers are not necessary, the lane shall be controlled by overhead Reversible Lane Control signs (see Figure 2B-7).**

Option:

- 04 Reversing traffic flow may be controlled with pavement markings and Reversible Lane Control signs (without the use of lane control signals), when all of the following conditions are met:
 - A. Only one lane is being reversed,
 - B. An engineering study indicates that the use of Reversible Lane Control signs alone would result in an acceptable level of safety and efficiency, and
 - C. There are no unusual or complex operations in the reversible lane pattern.

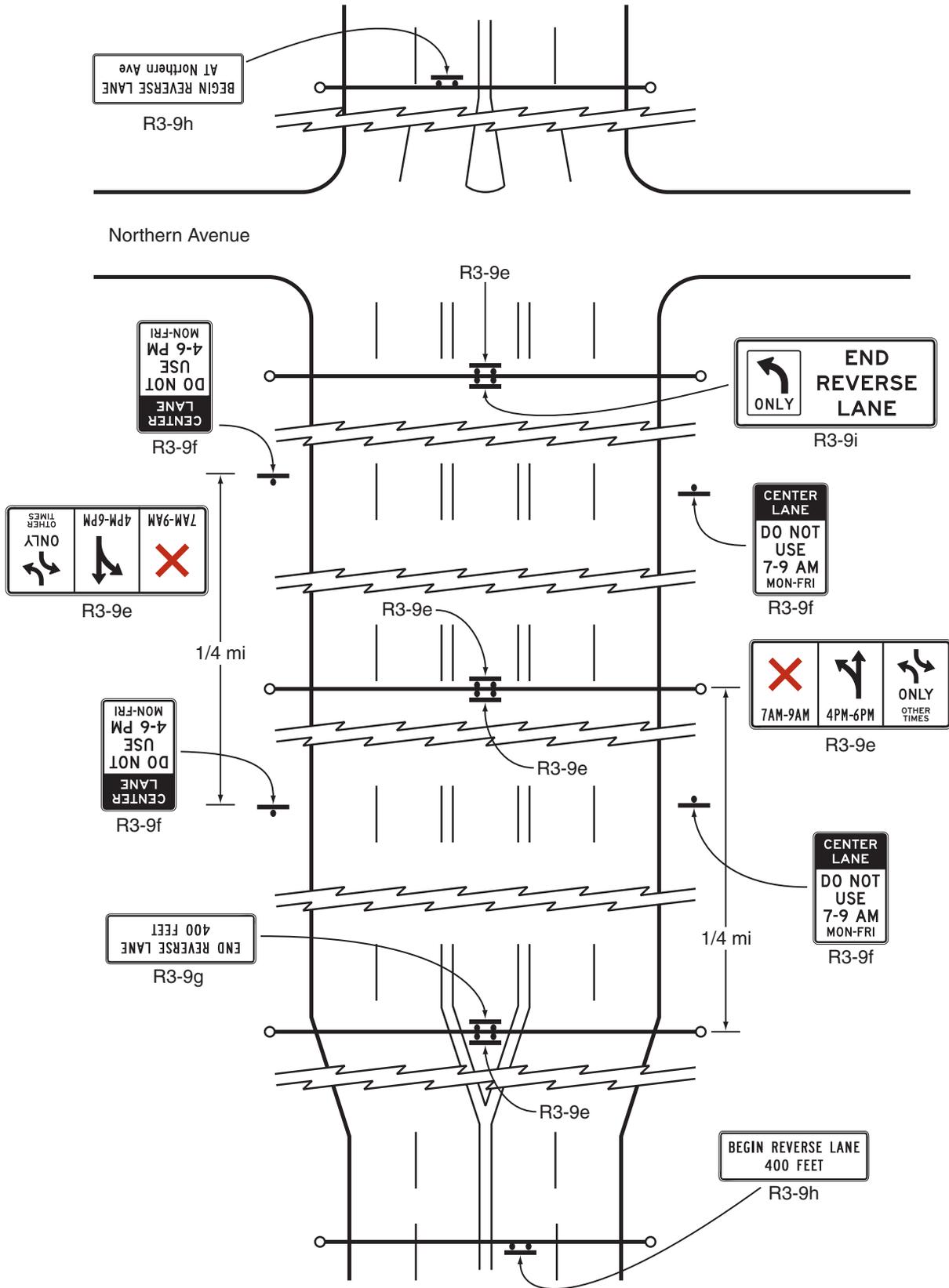
Standard:

- 05 **Reversible Lane Control signs shall contain the legend or symbols designating the allowable uses of the lane and the time periods such uses are allowed. Where symbols and legends are used, their meanings shall be as shown in Table 2B-2.**

Table 2B-2. Meanings of Symbols and Legends on Reversible Lane Control Signs

Symbol / Word Message	Meaning
Red X on white background	Lane closed
Upward pointing black arrow on white background (if left turns are permitted, the arrow shall be modified to show left / through arrow)	Lane open for through travel and any turns not otherwise prohibited
Black two-way left-turn arrows on white background and legend ONLY	Lane may be used only for left turns in either direction (i.e., as a two-way left-turn lane)
Black single left-turn arrow on white background and legend ONLY	Lane may be used only for left turns in one direction (without opposing left turns in the same lane)

Figure 2B-7. Location of Reversible Two-Way Left-Turn Signs



- 06 **Reversible Lane Control signs shall consist of a white background with a black legend and border, except for the R3-9d sign, where the color red is used.**
- 07 **Symbol signs, such as the R3-9d sign, shall consist of the appropriate symbol in the upper portion of the sign with the appropriate times of the day and days of the week below it. All times of the day and days of the week shall be accounted for on the sign to eliminate confusion to the road user.**
- 08 **In situations where more than one message is conveyed to the road user, such as on the R3-9d sign, the sign legend shall be arranged as follows:**
- A. **The prohibition or restriction message is the primary legend and shall be on the top for word message signs and to the far left for symbol signs,**
 - B. **The permissive use message shall be displayed as the second legend, and**
 - C. **The OTHER TIMES message shall be displayed at the bottom for word message signs and to the far right for symbol signs.**

Option:

- 09 The symbol signs may also include a downward pointing arrow with the legend THIS LANE. The term OTHER TIMES may be used for either the symbol or word message sign.

Standard:

- 10 **A Reversible Lane Control sign shall be mounted over the center of the lane that is being reversed and shall be perpendicular to the roadway alignment.**
- 11 **If the vertical or horizontal alignment is curved to the degree that a driver would be unable to see at least one sign, and preferably two signs, then additional overhead signs shall be installed. The placement of the signs shall be such that the driver will have a definite indication of the lanes specifically reserved for use at any given time. Special consideration shall be given to major generators introducing traffic between the normal sign placement.**
- 12 **Transitions at the entry to and exit from a section of roadway with reversible lanes shall be carefully reviewed, and advance signs shall be installed to notify or warn drivers of the boundaries of the reversible lane controls. The R3-9g or R3-9h signs shall be used for this purpose.**

Option:

- 13 More than one sign may be used at the termination of the reversible lane to emphasize the importance of the message (R3-9i).

Standard:

- 14 **Flashing beacons, if used to accentuate the overhead Reversible Lane Control signs, shall comply with the applicable requirements for flashing beacons in Chapter 4L.**
- 15 **When used in conjunction with Reversible Lane Control signs, the Turn Prohibition signs (R3-1 to R3-4, R3-18) shall be mounted overhead and separate from the Reversible Lane Control signs. The Turn Prohibition signs shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 2B.18.**

Guidance:

- 16 *For additional emphasis, a supplemental plaque stating the distance of the prohibition, such as NEXT 1 MILE, should be added to the Turn Prohibition signs that are used in conjunction with Reversible Lane Control signs.*
- 17 *If used, overhead signs should be located at intervals not greater than 1/4 mile. The bottom of the overhead Reversible Lane Control signs should not be more than 19 feet above the pavement grade.*
- 18 *Where more than one sign is used at the termination of a reversible lane, they should be at least 250 feet apart. Longer distances between signs are appropriate for streets with speeds over 35 mph, but the separation should not exceed 1,000 feet.*
- 19 *Because left-turning vehicles have a significant impact on the safety and efficiency of a reversible lane operation, if an exclusive left-turn lane or two-way left-turn lane cannot be incorporated into the lane-use pattern for a particular peak or off-peak period, consideration should be given to prohibiting left turns and U-turns during that time period.*

Section 2B.27 Jughandle Signs (R3-23, R3-24, R3-25, and R3-26 Series)

Support:

- 01 A jughandle turn is a left-turn or U-turn that because of special geometry is made by initially making a right turn. This type of turn can increase the operational efficiency of a roadway by eliminating the need for exclusive left-turn lanes and can increase the operational efficiency of a traffic control signal by eliminating the need for protected left-turn phases. A jughandle turn can also provide an opportunity for trucks and commercial vehicles to make a U-turn where the median and roadway are not of sufficient width to accommodate a traditional U-turn by these vehicles.

02 Figure 2B-8 shows the various signs that can be used for signing jughandle turns. Figure 2B-9 shows examples of regulatory and destination guide signing for various types of jughandle turns.

Standard:

03 On multi-lane roadways, since road users generally anticipate that they need to be in the left-hand lane when approaching a location where they desire to turn left or make a U-turn, an ALL TURNS FROM RIGHT LANE (R3-23) or a U TURN FROM RIGHT LANE (R3-23a) sign (see Figure 2B-9) shall be installed in advance of the location to inform drivers that left turns and/or U-turns will be made from the right-hand lane.

Option:

04 Where a median of sufficient width is available, supplemental regulatory or guide signs may also be placed on the left-hand side of the roadway.

Standard

05 An R3-24 series sign with an upward diagonal arrow pointing to the right if the jughandle entrance is designed as an exit ramp (see Drawings A and B of Figure 2B-9) or an R3-25 series sign with a horizontal arrow pointing to the right if the jughandle entrance is designed as an intersection shall be installed on the right-hand side of the roadway at the entrance to the jughandle. The legend on the sign shall be ALL TURNS, U TURN, or U AND LEFT TURNS, as appropriate.

06 If the jughandle is designed such that the jughandle entrance is downstream of the location where the turn would normally have been made (see Drawing C of Figure 2B-9), an R3-26 series sign with an arrow pointing straight upward shall be installed on the right-hand side of the roadway at the intersection to inform road users that they need to proceed straight through the intersection in order to make a left turn or U-turn. The legend on the sign shall be U TURN or U AND LEFT TURNS, as appropriate.

Support:

07 The R3-24, R3-25, and R3-26 series of signs are designed to be mounted below conventional guide signs.

08 Section 2C.14 contains information regarding the use of advisory exit and ramp speed signs for exit ramps.

09 Section 2D.39 contains information regarding the use of guide signs for jughandles.

Figure 2B-8. Jughandle Regulatory Signs

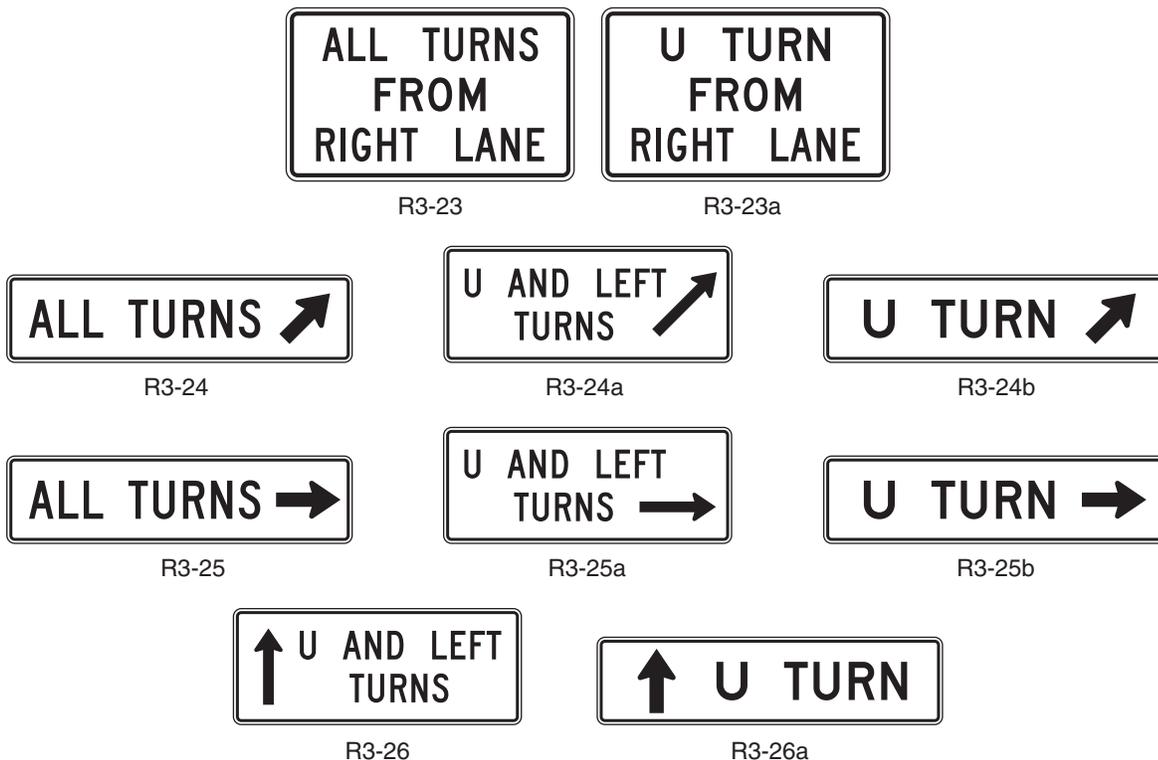


Figure 2B-9. Examples of Applications of Jughandle Regulatory and Guide Signing
(Sheet 1 of 3)

A – Turns made prior to the intersection

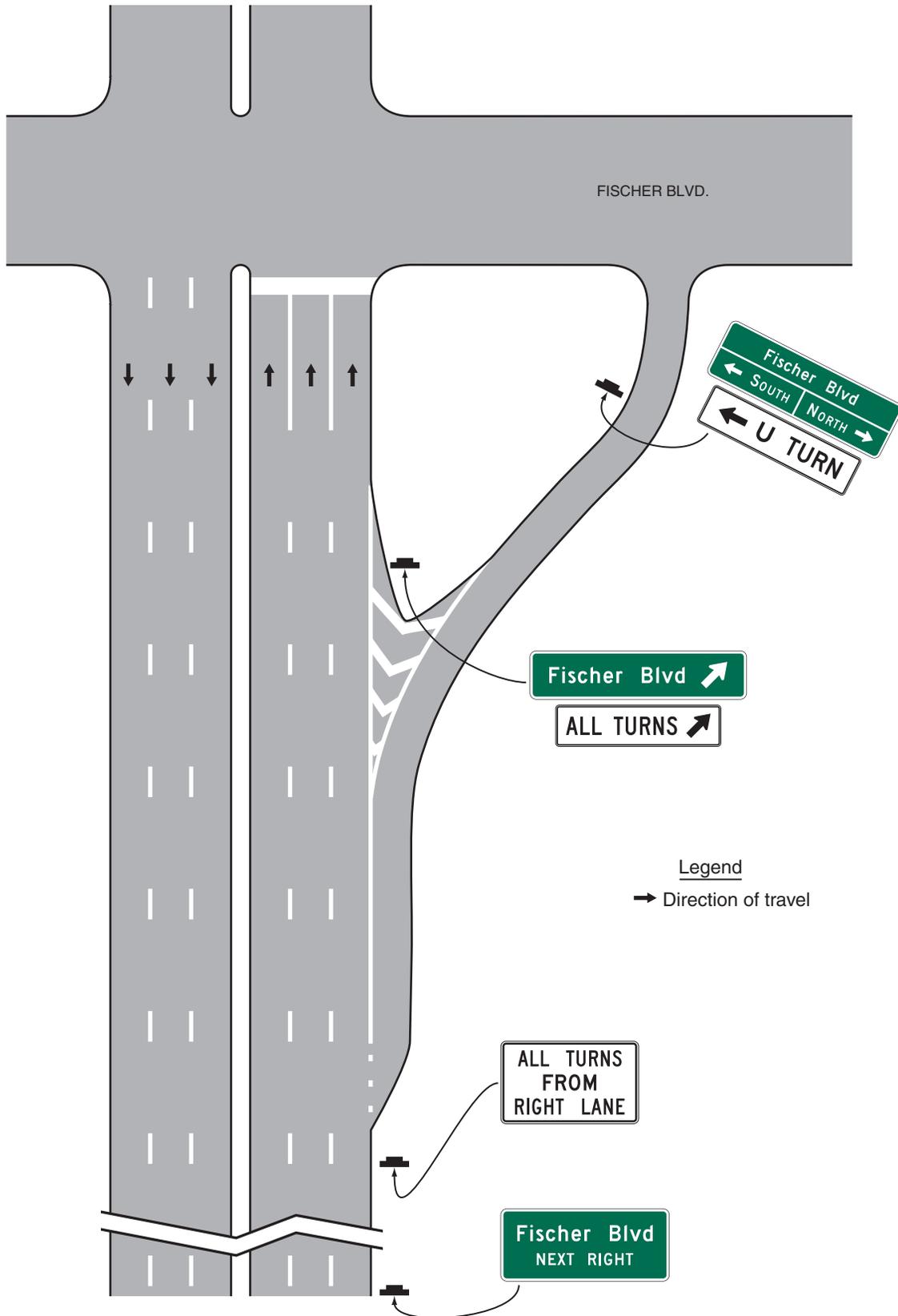


Figure 2B-9. Examples of Applications of Jughandle Regulatory and Guide Signing
(Sheet 2 of 3)

B - Traditional jughandle

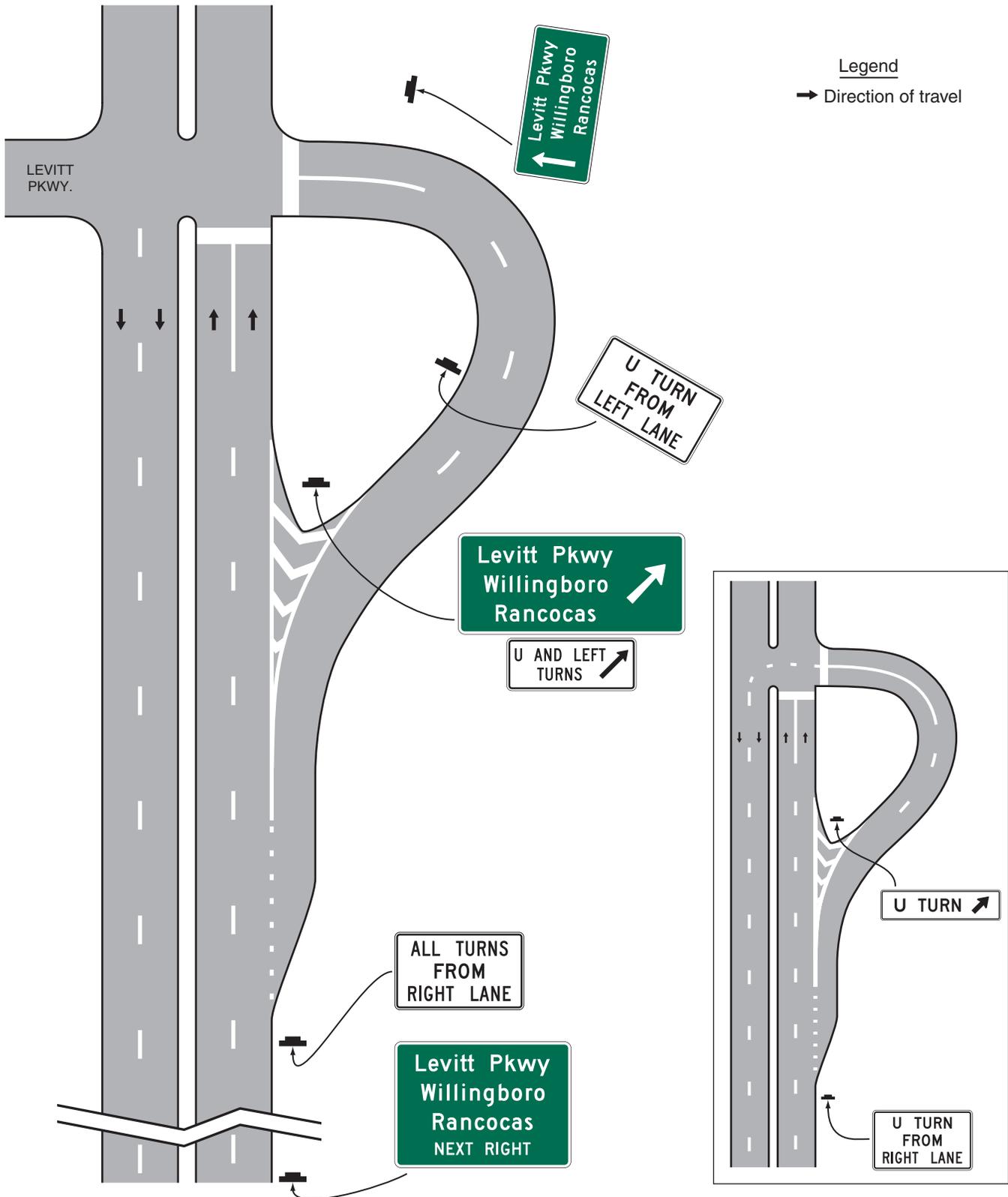
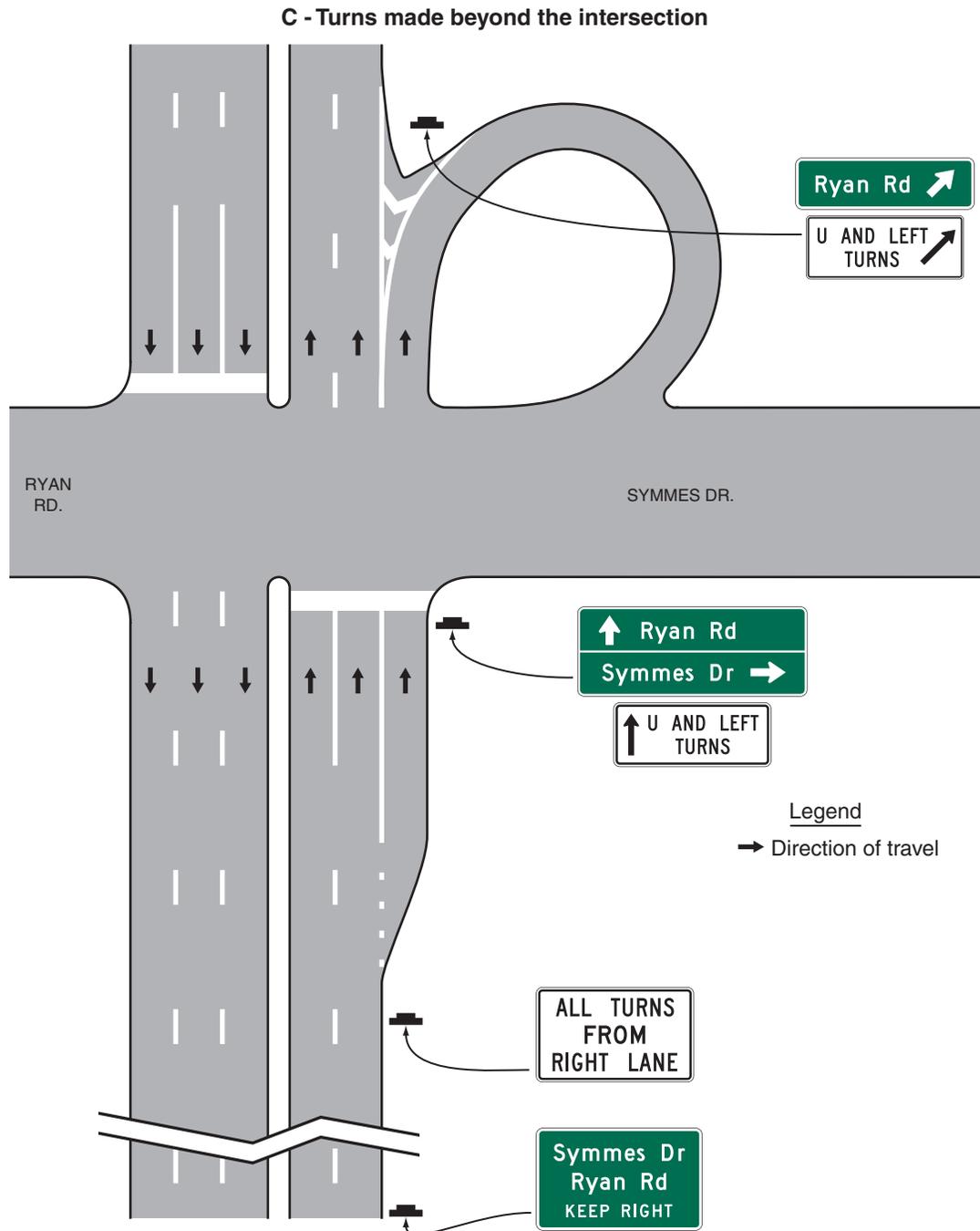


Figure 2B-9. Examples of Applications of Jughandle Regulatory and Guide Signing
(Sheet 3 of 3)



Section 2B.28 DO NOT PASS Sign (R4-1)

Option:

01 The Do Not Pass (R4-1) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be used in addition to pavement markings (see Section 3B.02) to emphasize the restriction on passing. The Do Not Pass sign may be used at the beginning of, and at intervals within, a zone through which sight distance is restricted or where other conditions make overtaking and passing inappropriate.

02 If signing is needed on the left-hand side of the roadway for additional emphasis, NO PASSING ZONE (W14-3) signs may be used (see Section 2C.45).

Support:

03 Standards for determining the location and extent of no-passing zone pavement markings are set forth in Section 3B.02.

Figure 2B-10. Passing, Keep Right, and Slow Traffic Signs



Section 2B.29 PASS WITH CARE Sign (R4-2)*Guidance:*

- 01 *The PASS WITH CARE (R4-2) sign (see Figure 2B-10) should be installed at the downstream end of a no-passing zone if a DO NOT PASS sign has been installed at the upstream end of the zone.*

Section 2B.30 KEEP RIGHT EXCEPT TO PASS Sign (R4-16) and SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT Sign (R4-3)*Option:*

- 01 The KEEP RIGHT EXCEPT TO PASS (R4-16) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be used on multi-lane roadways to direct drivers to stay in the right-hand lane except when they are passing another vehicle.

Guidance:

- 02 *If used, the KEEP RIGHT EXCEPT TO PASS sign should be installed just beyond the beginning of a multi-lane roadway and at selected locations along multi-lane roadways for additional emphasis.*

Option:

- 03 The SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT (R4-3) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be used on multi-lane roadways to reduce unnecessary lane changing.

Guidance:

- 04 *If used, the SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT sign should be installed just beyond the beginning of a multi-lane pavement, and at selected locations where there is a tendency on the part of some road users to drive in the left-hand lane (or lanes) below the normal speed of traffic. This sign should not be used on the approach to an interchange or through an interchange area.*

Section 2B.31 TRUCKS USE RIGHT LANE Sign (R4-5)*Guidance:*

- 01 *If an extra lane has been provided for trucks and other slow-moving traffic, a SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT (R4-3) sign (see Figure 2B-10), TRUCKS USE RIGHT LANE (R4-5) sign (see Figure 2B-10), or other appropriate sign should be installed at the beginning of the lane.*

Option:

- 02 The SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT sign may be used as a supplement or as an alternative to the TRUCKS USE RIGHT LANE sign. Both signs may be used on multi-lane roadways to improve capacity and reduce lane changing.
- 03 The TRUCKS USE RIGHT LANE (R4-5) sign may be used on multi-lane roadways to reduce unnecessary lane changing.

Guidance:

- 04 *If an extra lane has been provided for trucks and other slow-moving traffic, a Lane Ends sign (see Section 2C.42) should be installed in advance of the point where the extra lane ends. Appropriate pavement markings should be installed at both the upstream and downstream ends of the extra lane (see Section 3B.09 and Figure 3B-13).*

Support:

- 05 Section 2D.51 contains information regarding advance information signs for extra lanes that have been provided for trucks and other slow-moving traffic.

Section 2B.32 Keep Right and Keep Left Signs (R4-7, R4-8)*Option:*

- 01 The Keep Right (R4-7) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be used at locations where it is necessary for traffic to pass only to the right-hand side of a roadway feature or obstruction. The Keep Left (R4-8) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be used at locations where it is necessary for traffic to pass only to the left-hand side of a roadway feature or obstruction.

Guidance:

- 02 *At locations where it is not readily apparent that traffic is required to keep to the right, a Keep Right sign should be used.*
- 03 *If used, the Keep Right sign should be installed as close as practical to approach ends of raised medians, parkways, islands, and underpass piers. The sign should be mounted on the face of or just in front of a pier or other obstruction separating opposite directions of traffic in the center of the highway such that traffic will have to pass to the right-hand side of the sign.*

Standard:

- 04 **The Keep Right sign shall not be installed on the right-hand side of the roadway in a position where traffic must pass to the left-hand side of the sign.**

Option:

- 05 The Keep Right sign may be omitted at intermediate ends of divisional islands and medians.
- 06 Word message KEEP RIGHT (LEFT) with an arrow (R4-7a or R4-7b) signs (see Figure 2B-10) may be used instead of the R4-7 or R4-8 symbol signs.
- 07 Where the obstruction obscures the Keep Right sign, the minimum placement height may be increased for better sign visibility.
- 08 A narrow Keep Right (R4-7c) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be installed on the approach end of a median island that is less than 4 feet wide at the point where the sign is to be located.

Standard:

- 09 **A narrow Keep Right (R4-7c) sign shall not be installed on a median island that has a width of 4 feet or more at the point where the sign is to be located.**

Section 2B.33 STAY IN LANE Sign (R4-9)

Option:

- 01 A STAY IN LANE (R4-9) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be used on multi-lane highways to direct road users to stay in their lane until conditions permit shifting to another lane.

Guidance:

- 02 *If a STAY IN LANE sign is used, it should be accompanied by a double solid white lane line(s) to prohibit lane changing.*

Section 2B.34 RUNAWAY VEHICLES ONLY Sign (R4-10)*Guidance:*

- 01 *A RUNAWAY VEHICLES ONLY (R4-10) sign (see Figure 2B-10) should be installed near a truck escape (or runaway truck) ramp entrance to discourage other road users from entering the ramp.*

Section 2B.35 Slow Vehicle Turn-Out Signs (R4-12, R4-13, and R4-14)

Support:

- 01 On two-lane highways in areas where traffic volumes and/or vertical or horizontal curvature make passing difficult, turn-out areas are sometimes provided for the purpose of giving a group of faster vehicles an opportunity to pass a slow-moving vehicle.

Option:

- 02 A SLOW VEHICLES WITH XX OR MORE FOLLOWING VEHICLES MUST USE TURN-OUT (R4-12) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be installed in advance of a turn-out area to inform drivers who are driving so slow that they have accumulated a specific number of vehicles behind them that they are required by the traffic laws of that State to use the turn-out to allow the vehicles following them to pass.

Support:

- 03 The specific number of vehicles displayed on the R4-12 sign provides law enforcement personnel with the information they need to enforce this regulation.

Option:

- 04 If an R4-12 sign has been installed in advance of a turn-out area, a SLOW VEHICLES MUST USE TURN-OUT AHEAD (R4-13) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may also be installed downstream from the R4-12 sign, but upstream from the turn-out area, to remind slow drivers that they are required to use a turn-out that is a short distance ahead.

Standard:

- 05 **If an R4-12 sign has been installed in advance of a turn-out area, a SLOW VEHICLES MUST TURN OUT (with arrow) (R4-14) sign (see Figure 2B-10) shall be installed at the entry point of the turn-out area.**

Support:

- 06 Section 2D.52 contains information regarding advance information signs for slow vehicle turn-out areas.

Section 2B.36 DO NOT DRIVE ON SHOULDER Sign (R4-17) and DO NOT PASS ON SHOULDER Sign (R4-18)

Option:

- 01 The DO NOT DRIVE ON SHOULDER (R4-17) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be installed to inform road users that using the shoulder of a roadway as a travel lane is prohibited.
- 02 The DO NOT PASS ON SHOULDER (R4-18) sign (see Figure 2B-10) may be installed to inform road users that using the shoulder of a roadway to pass other vehicles is prohibited.

Section 2B.37 DO NOT ENTER Sign (R5-1)

Standard:

- 01 **The DO NOT ENTER (R5-1) sign (see Figure 2B-11) shall be used where traffic is prohibited from entering a restricted roadway.**

Guidance:

- 02 *The DO NOT ENTER sign, if used, should be placed directly in view of a road user at the point where a road user could wrongly enter a divided highway, one-way roadway, or ramp (see Figure 2B-12). The sign should be mounted on the right-hand side of the roadway, facing traffic that might enter the roadway or ramp in the wrong direction.*
- 03 *If the DO NOT ENTER sign would be visible to traffic to which it does not apply, the sign should be turned away from, or shielded from, the view of that traffic.*

Option:

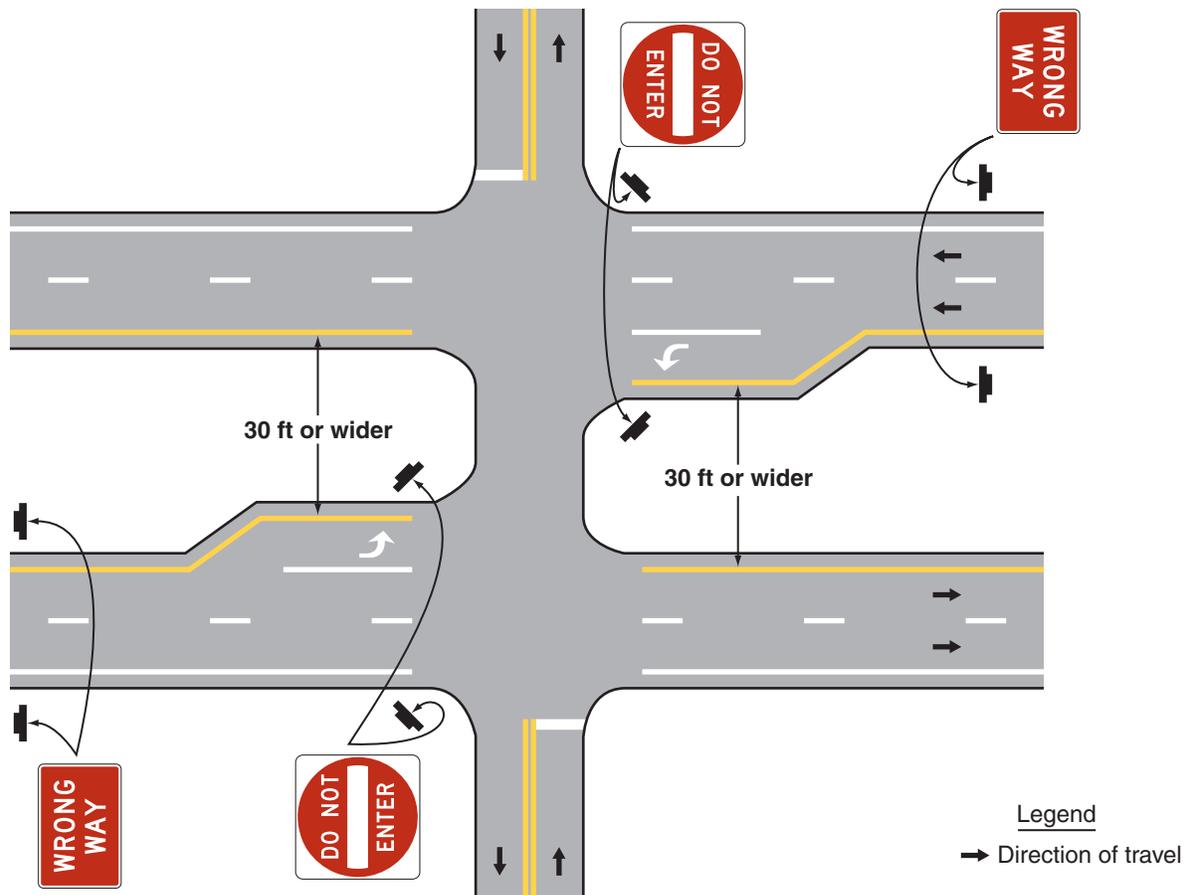
- 04 The DO NOT ENTER sign may be installed where it is necessary to emphasize the one-way traffic movement on a ramp or turning lane.
- 05 A second DO NOT ENTER sign on the left-hand side of the roadway may be used, particularly where traffic approaches from an intersecting roadway (see Figure 2B-12).

Figure 2B-11. Selective Exclusion Signs



* An optional word message sign is shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book

Figure 2B-12. Locations of Wrong-Way Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths of 30 Feet or Wider



Support:

- 06 Section 2B.41 contains information regarding an optional lower mounting height for DO NOT ENTER signs that are located along an exit ramp facing a road user who is traveling in the wrong direction.

Section 2B.38 WRONG WAY Sign (R5-1a)

Option:

- 01 The WRONG WAY (R5-1a) sign (see Figure 2B-11) may be used as a supplement to the DO NOT ENTER sign where an exit ramp intersects a crossroad or a crossroad intersects a one-way roadway in a manner that does not physically discourage or prevent wrong-way entry (see Figure 2B-12).

Guidance:

- 02 If used, the WRONG WAY sign should be placed at a location along the exit ramp or the one-way roadway farther from the crossroad than the DO NOT ENTER sign (see Section 2B.41).

Support:

- 03 Section 2B.41 contains information regarding an optional lower mounting height for WRONG WAY signs that are located along an exit ramp facing a road user who is traveling in the wrong direction.

Section 2B.39 Selective Exclusion Signs

Support:

- 01 Selective Exclusion signs (see Figure 2B-11) give notice to road users that State or local statutes or ordinances exclude designated types of traffic from using particular roadways or facilities.

Standard:

- 02 If used, Selective Exclusion signs shall clearly indicate the type of traffic that is excluded.

Support:

- 03 Typical exclusion messages include:
- A. No Trucks (R5-2),
 - B. NO MOTOR VEHICLES (R5-3),
 - C. NO COMMERCIAL VEHICLES (R5-4),
 - D. NO TRUCKS (VEHICLES) WITH LUGS (R5-5),
 - E. No Bicycles (R5-6),
 - F. NO NON-MOTORIZED TRAFFIC (R5-7),
 - G. NO MOTOR-DRIVEN CYCLES (R5-8),
 - H. No Pedestrians (R9-3),
 - I. No Skaters (R9-13),
 - J. No Equestrians (R9-14), and
 - K. No Hazardous Material (R14-3) (see Section 2B.62).

Option:

- 04 Appropriate combinations or groupings of these legends into a single sign, such as NO PEDESTRIANS BICYCLES MOTOR-DRIVEN CYCLES (R5-10a), or NO PEDESTRIANS OR BICYCLES (R5-10b) may be used.

Guidance:

- 05 *If an exclusion is governed by vehicle weight, a Weight Limit sign (see Section 2B.59) should be used instead of a Selective Exclusion sign.*
- 06 *If used on a freeway or expressway ramp, the NO PEDESTRIANS OR BICYCLES (R5-10b) sign should be installed in a location where it is clearly visible to any pedestrian or bicyclist attempting to enter the limited access facility from a street intersecting the exit ramp.*
- 07 *The Selective Exclusion sign should be placed on the right-hand side of the roadway at an appropriate distance from the intersection so as to be clearly visible to all road users turning into the roadway that has the exclusion. The NO PEDESTRIANS (R5-10c) or No Pedestrian Crossing (R9-3) sign (see Section 2B.51) should be installed so as to be clearly visible to pedestrians who are at a location where an alternative route is available.*

Option:

- 08 The NO PEDESTRIANS (R5-10c) or No Pedestrian Crossing (R9-3) sign may also be used at underpasses or elsewhere where pedestrian facilities are not provided.
- 09 The NO TRUCKS (R5-2a) word message sign may be used as an alternate to the No Trucks (R5-2) symbol sign.
- 10 The AUTHORIZED VEHICLES ONLY (R5-11) sign may be used at median openings and other locations to prohibit vehicles from using the median opening or facility unless they have special permission (such as law enforcement vehicles or emergency vehicles) or are performing official business (such as highway agency vehicles).

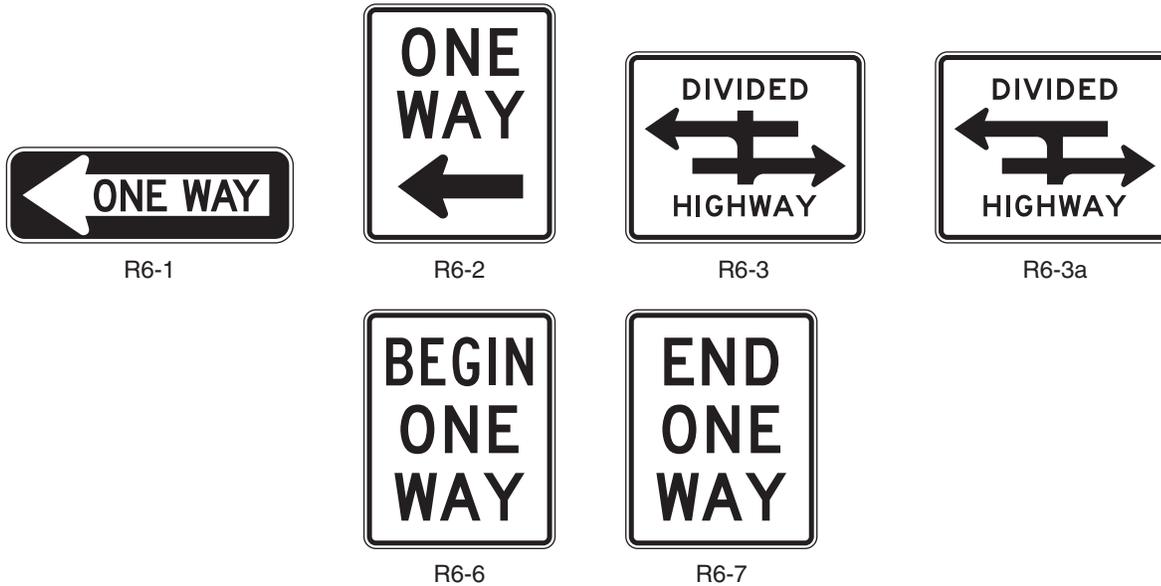
Section 2B.40 ONE WAY Signs (R6-1, R6-2)**Standard:**

- 01 **Except as provided in Paragraph 6, the ONE WAY (R6-1 or R6-2) sign (see Figure 2B-13) shall be used to indicate streets or roadways upon which vehicular traffic is allowed to travel in one direction only.**
- 02 **ONE WAY signs shall be placed parallel to the one-way street at all alleys and roadways that intersect one-way roadways as shown in Figure 2B-14.**
- 03 **At an intersection with a divided highway that has a median width at the intersection itself of 30 feet or more, ONE WAY signs shall be placed, visible to each crossroad approach, on the near right and far left corners of each intersection with the directional roadways (see Figure 2B-15).**
- 04 **At an intersection with a divided highway that has a median width at the intersection itself of less than 30 feet, Keep Right (R4-7) signs and/or ONE WAY signs shall be installed (see Figures 2B-16 and 2B-17). If Keep Right signs are installed, they shall be placed as close as practical to the approach ends of the medians and shall be visible to traffic on the divided highway and each crossroad approach. If ONE WAY signs are installed, they shall be placed on the near right and far left corners of the intersection and shall be visible to each crossroad approach.**

Option:

- 05 At an intersection with a divided highway that has a median width at the intersection itself of less than 30 feet, ONE WAY signs may also be placed on the far right corner of the intersection as shown in Figures 2B-16 and 2B-17.
- 06 ONE WAY signs may be omitted on the one-way roadways of divided highways, where the design of interchanges indicates the direction of traffic on the separate roadways.

Figure 2B-13. ONE WAY and Divided Highway Crossing Signs

**Standard:**

- 07 If used at unsignalized intersections with one-way streets, ONE WAY signs shall be placed on the near right and the far left corners of the intersection facing traffic entering or crossing the one-way street (see Figure 2B-14).
- 08 If used at signalized intersections with one-way streets, ONE WAY signs shall be placed near the appropriate signal faces, on the poles holding the traffic signals, on the mast arm or span wire holding the signals, or at the locations specified for unsignalized intersections.
- 09 At unsignalized T-intersections where the roadway at the top of the T-intersection is a one-way roadway, ONE WAY signs shall be placed on the near right and the far side of the intersection facing traffic on the stem approach (see Figure 2B-14).

- 10 At signalized T-intersections where the roadway at the top of the T-intersection is a one-way roadway, ONE WAY signs shall be placed near the appropriate signal faces, on the poles holding the traffic signals, on the mast arm or span wire holding the signals, or at the locations specified for unsignalized intersections.

Option:

- 11 Where the central island of a roundabout allows for the installation of signs, ONE WAY signs may be used instead of or in addition to Roundabout Directional Arrow (R6-4 series) signs (see Section 2B.43) to direct traffic counter-clockwise around the central island.

Guidance:

- 12 Where used on the central island of a roundabout, the mounting height of a ONE WAY sign should be at least 4 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the traveled way.

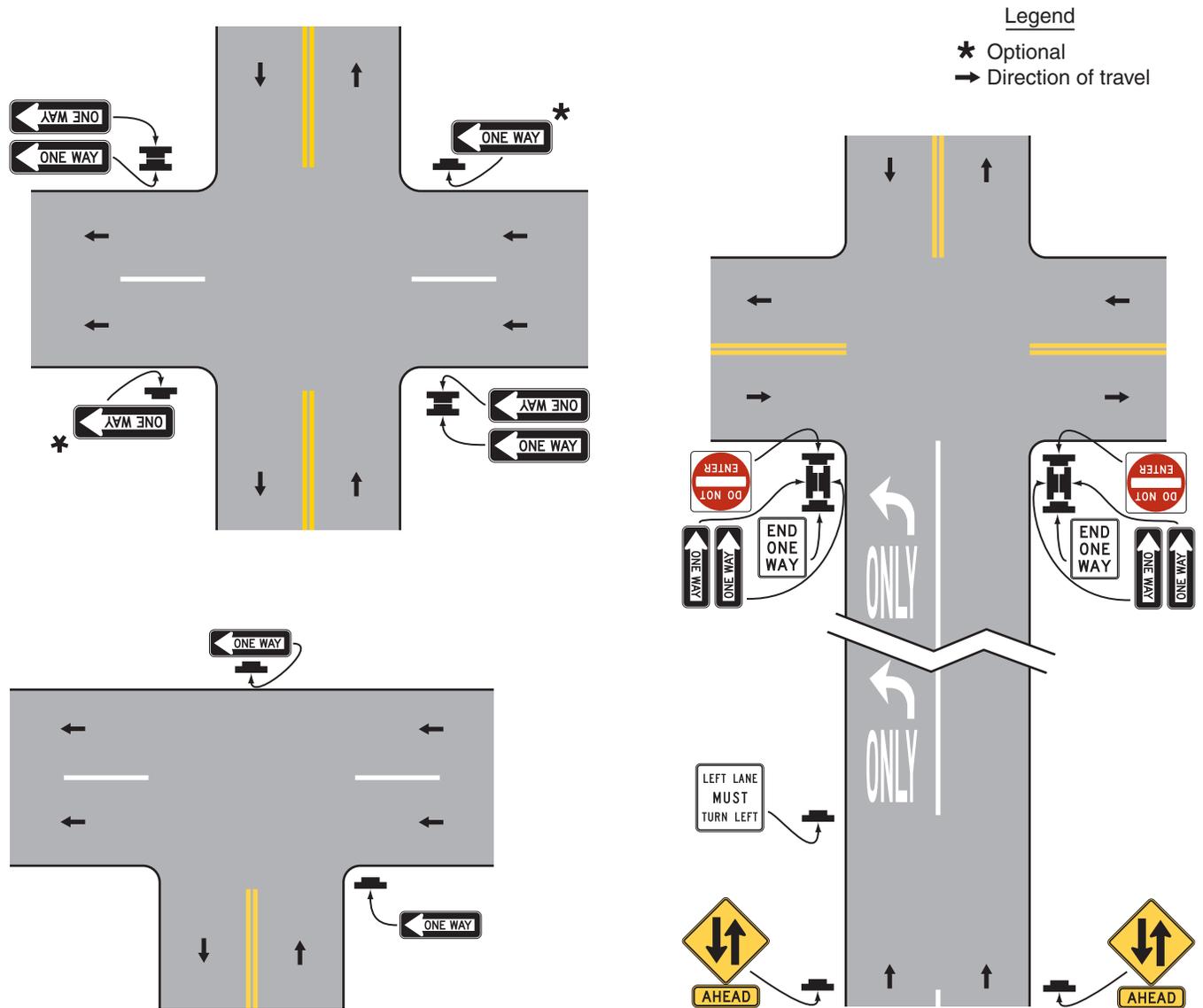
Support:

- 13 Using ONE WAY signs on the central island of a roundabout might result in some drivers incorrectly concluding that the cross street is a one-way street. Using Roundabout Directional Arrow signs might reduce this confusion. However, using ONE WAY signs might be necessary in States that have defined a roundabout as a series of T-intersections.

Option:

- 14 The BEGIN ONE WAY (R6-6) sign (see Figure 2B-13) may be used notify road users of the beginning point of a one direction of travel restriction on the street or roadway. The END ONE WAY (R6-7) sign (see Figure 2B-13) may be used notify road users of the ending point of a one direction of travel restriction on the street or roadway.

Figure 2B-14. Locations of ONE WAY Signs



Section 2B.41 Wrong-Way Traffic Control at Interchange Ramps

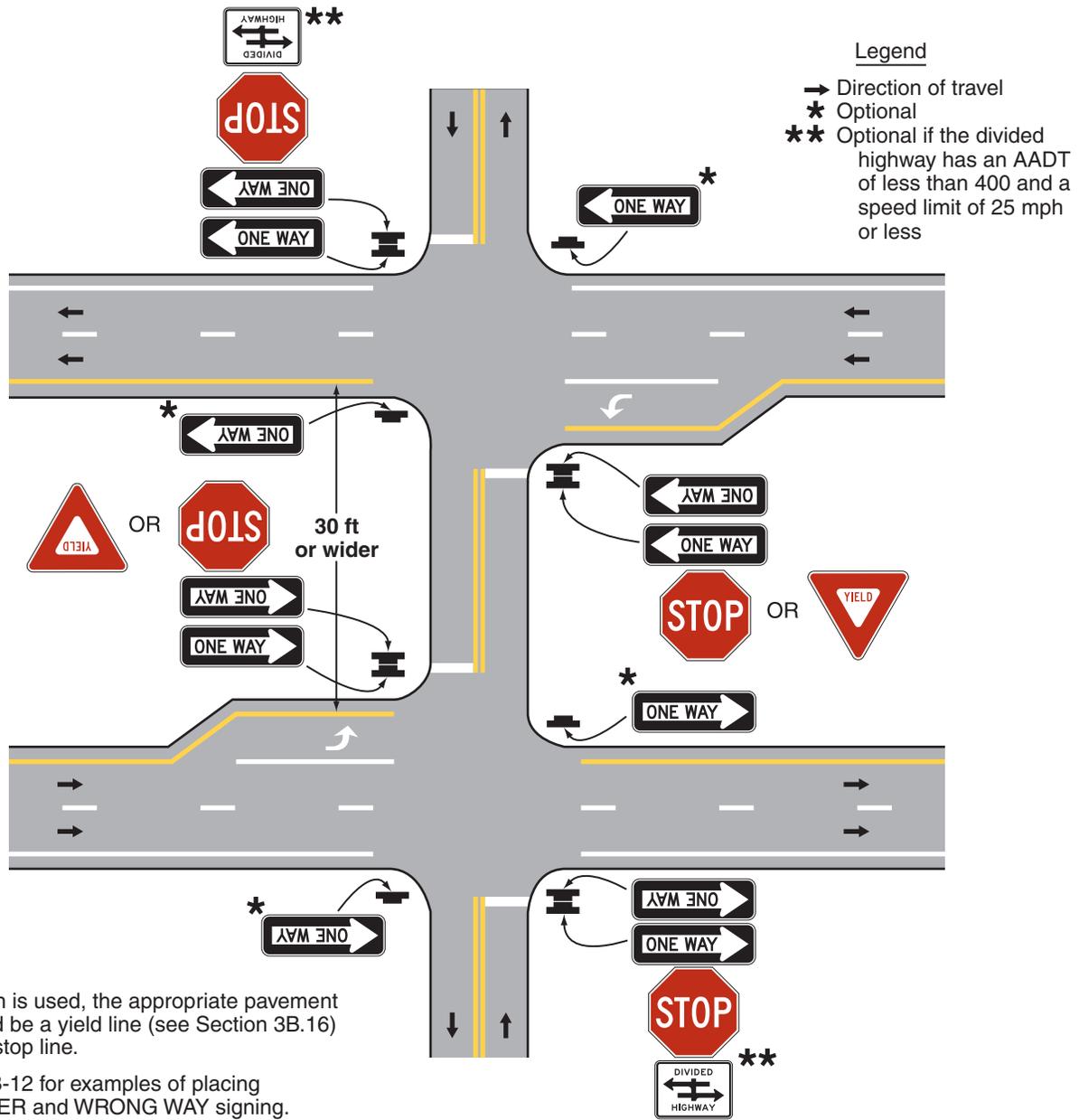
Standard:

- 01 **At interchange exit ramp terminals where the ramp intersects a crossroad in such a manner that wrong-way entry could inadvertently be made, the following signs shall be used (see Figure 2B-18):**
 - A. **At least one ONE WAY sign for each direction of travel on the crossroad shall be placed where the exit ramp intersects the crossroad.**
 - B. **At least one DO NOT ENTER sign shall be conspicuously placed near the downstream end of the exit ramp in positions appropriate for full view of a road user starting to enter wrongly from the crossroad.**
 - C. **At least one WRONG WAY sign shall be placed on the exit ramp facing a road user traveling in the wrong direction.**

Guidance:

- 02 **In addition, the following pavement markings should be used (see Figure 2B-18):**
 - A. **On two-lane paved crossroads at interchanges, double solid yellow lines should be used as a center line for an adequate distance on both sides approaching the ramp intersections.**
 - B. **Where crossroad channelization or ramp geometrics do not make wrong-way movements difficult, a lane-use arrow should be placed in each lane of an exit ramp near the crossroad terminal where it will be clearly visible to a potential wrong-way road user.**

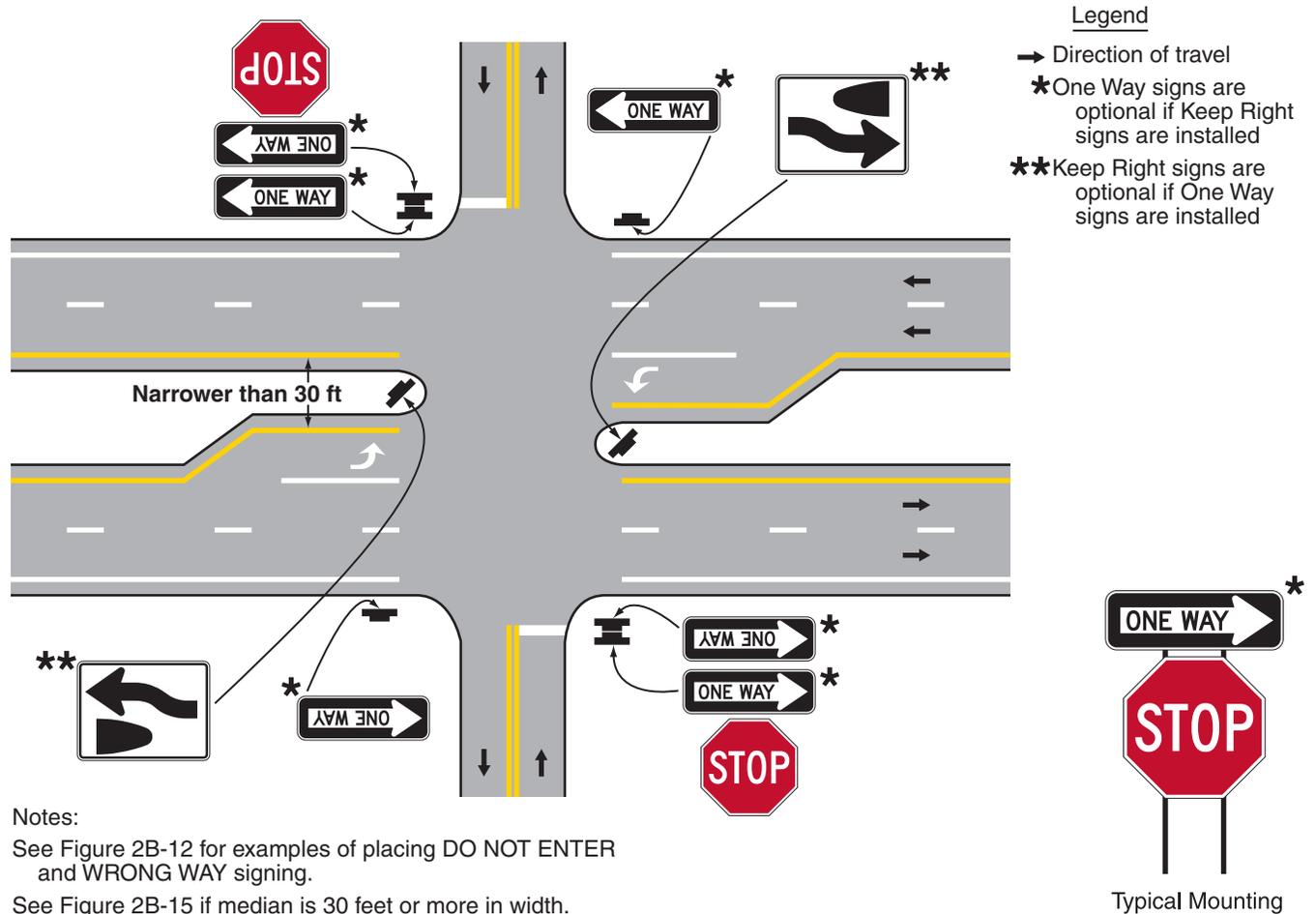
Figure 2B-15. ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths of 30 Feet or Wider



Option:

- 03 The following traffic control devices may be used to supplement the signs and pavement markings described in Paragraphs 1 and 2:
- A. Additional ONE WAY signs may be placed, especially on two-lane rural crossroads, appropriately in advance of the ramp intersection to supplement the required ONE WAY sign(s).
 - B. Additional WRONG WAY signs may be used.
 - C. Slender, elongated wrong-way arrow pavement markings (see Figure 3B-24) intended primarily to warn wrong-way road users that they are traveling in the wrong direction may be placed upstream from the ramp terminus (see Figure 2B-18) to indicate the correct direction of traffic flow. Wrong-way arrow pavement markings may also be placed on the exit ramp at appropriate locations near the crossroad junction to indicate wrong-way movement. The wrong-way arrow markings may consist of pavement markings or bidirectional red-and-white raised pavement markers or other units that show red to wrong-way road users and white to other road users (see Figure 3B-24).

Figure 2B-16. ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths Narrower Than 30 Feet



- D. Lane-use arrow pavement markings may be placed on the exit ramp and crossroad near their intersection to indicate the permissive direction of flow.
- E. Freeway entrance signs (see Section 2D.46) may be used.

Guidance:

- 04 On interchange entrance ramps where the ramp merges with the through roadway and the design of the interchange does not clearly make evident the direction of traffic on the separate roadways or ramps, a ONE WAY sign visible to traffic on the entrance ramp and through roadway should be placed on each side of the through roadway near the entrance ramp merging point as illustrated in Figure 2B-19.

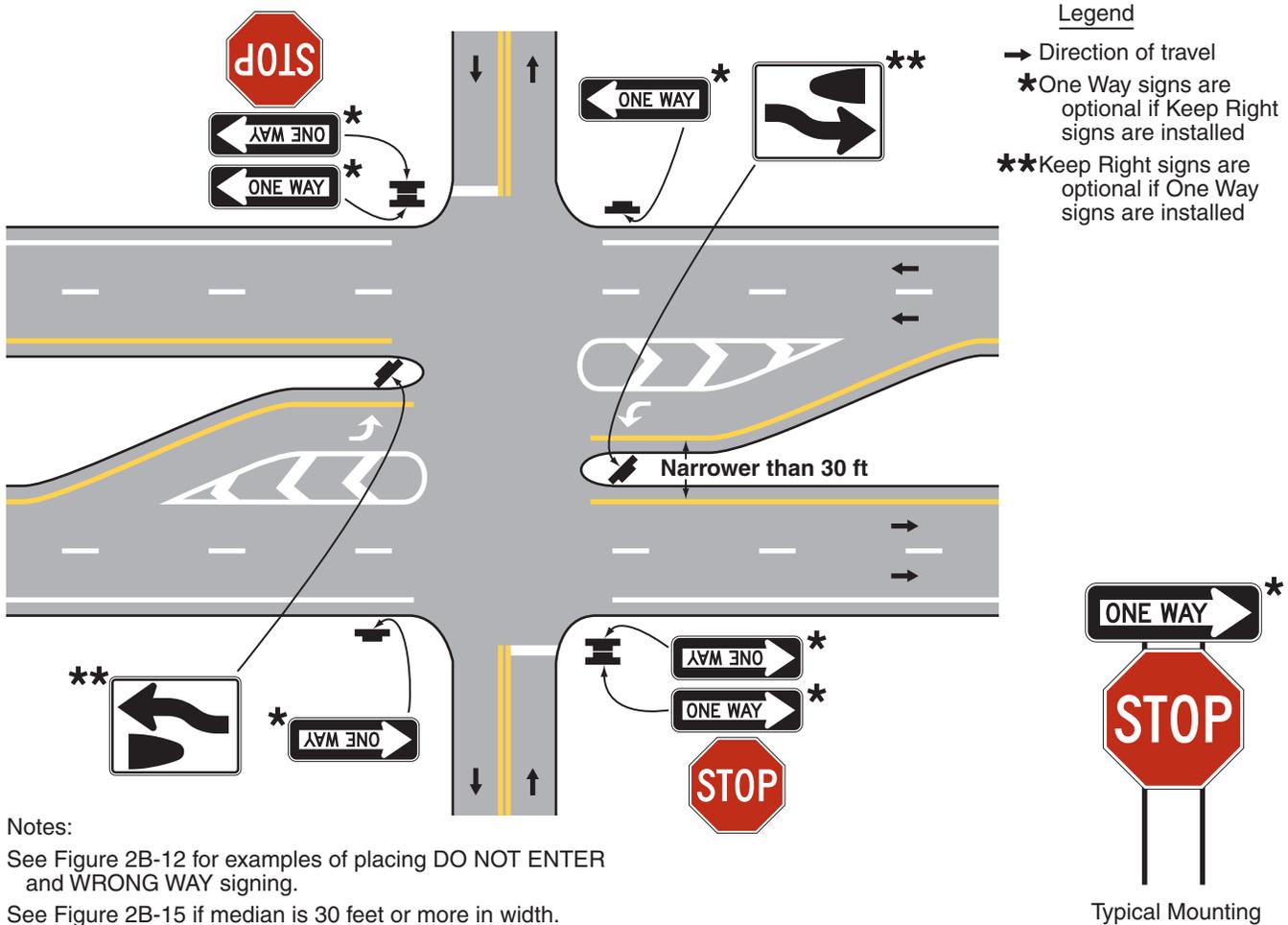
Option:

- 05 At locations where engineering judgment determines that a special need exists, other standard warning or prohibitive methods and devices may be used as a deterrent to the wrong-way movement.
- 06 Where there are no parked cars, pedestrian activity or other obstructions such as snow or vegetation, and if an engineering study indicates that a lower mounting height would address wrong-way movements on freeway or expressway exit ramps, a DO NOT ENTER sign(s) and/or a WRONG WAY sign(s) that is located along the exit ramp facing a road user who is traveling in the wrong direction may be installed at a minimum mounting height of 3 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement.

Support:

- 07 Section 2B.41 contains further information on signing to avoid wrong-way movements at at-grade intersections on expressways.

Figure 2B-17. ONE WAY Signing for Divided Highways with Median Widths Narrower Than 30 Feet and Separated Left-Turn Lanes



Section 2B.42 Divided Highway Crossing Signs (R6-3, R6-3a)

Standard:

01 On unsignalized minor-street approaches from which both left turns and right turns are permitted onto a divided highway that has a median width at the intersection itself of 30 feet or more, except as provided in Paragraph 2, a Divided Highway Crossing (R6-3 or R6-3a) sign (see Figure 2B-13) shall be used to advise road users that they are approaching an intersection with a divided highway (see Figure 2B-15).

Option:

02 If the divided highway that has a median width at the intersection itself of 30 feet or more has a traffic volume of less than 400 AADT and a speed limit of 25 mph or less, the Divided Highway Crossing signs facing the unsignalized minor-street approaches may be omitted.

03 A Divided Highway Crossing sign may be used on signalized minor-street approaches from which both left turns and right turns are permitted onto a divided highway to advise road users that they are approaching an intersection with a divided highway.

Standard:

04 If a Divided Highway Crossing sign is used at a four-legged intersection, the R6-3 sign shall be used. If used at a T-intersection, the R6-3a sign shall be used.

05 The Divided Highway Crossing sign shall be located on the near right corner of the intersection, mounted beneath a STOP or YIELD sign or on a separate support.

Option:

06 An additional Divided Highway Crossing sign may be installed on the left-hand side of the approach to supplement the Divided Highway Crossing sign on the near right corner of the intersection.

Figure 2B-18. Example of Application of Regulatory Signing and Pavement Markings at an Exit Ramp Termination to Deter Wrong-Way Entry

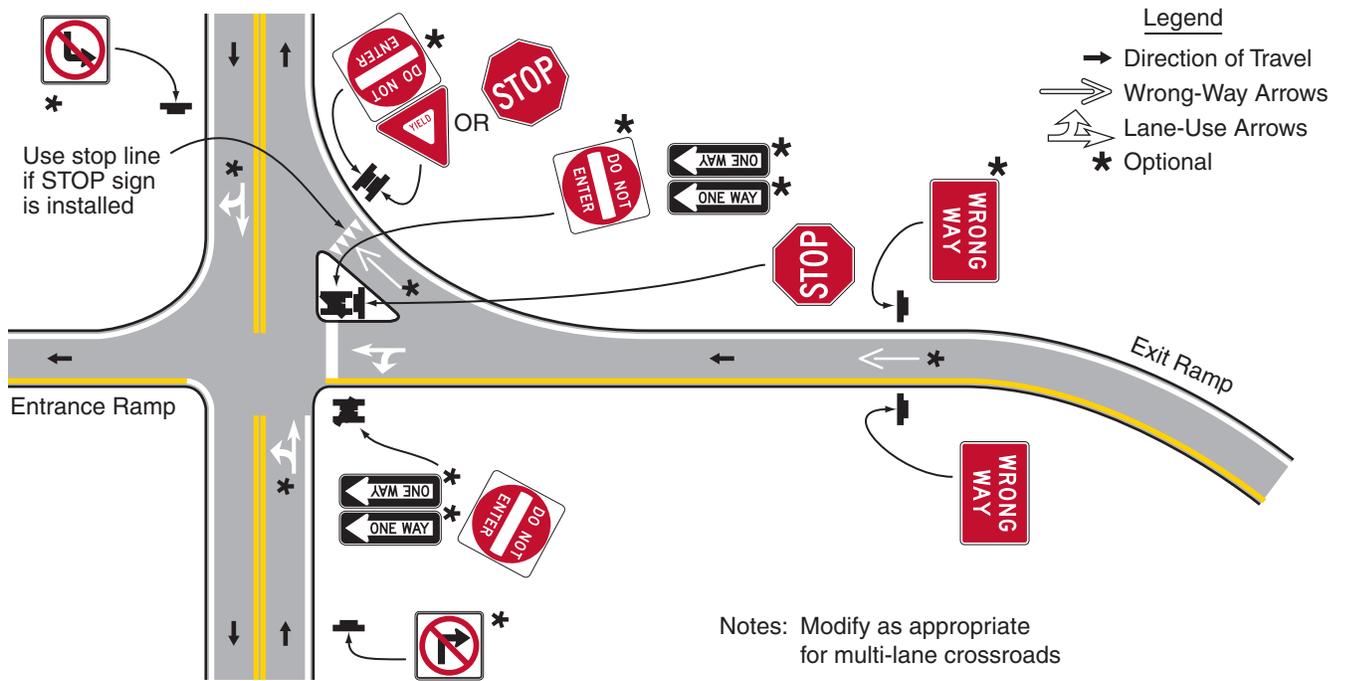
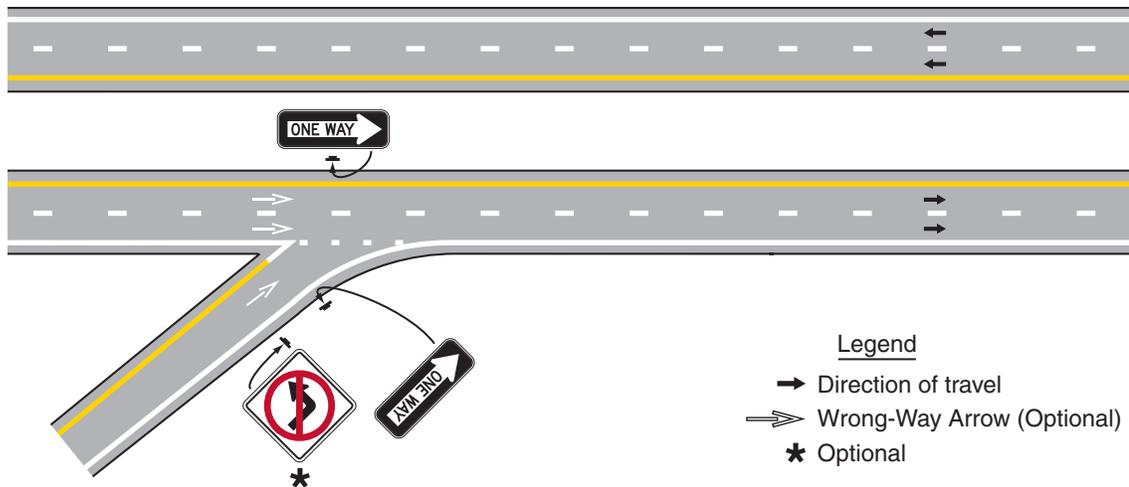


Figure 2B-19. Example of Application of Regulatory Signing and Pavement Markings at an Entrance Ramp Terminal Where the Design Does Not Clearly Indicate the Direction of Flow



Section 2B.43 Roundabout Directional Arrow Signs (R6-4, R6-4a, and R6-4b)

Guidance:

- 01 Where the central island of a roundabout allows for the installation of signs, Roundabout Directional Arrow (R6-4 series) signs (see Figure 2B-20) should be used in the central island to direct traffic counter-clockwise around the central island, except as provided in Paragraph 11 in Section 2B.40.

Standard:

- 02 The R6-4 sign shall be a horizontal rectangle with two black chevron symbols pointing to the right on a white background. The R6-4a sign shall be a horizontal rectangle with three black chevron symbols pointing to the right on a white background. The R6-4b sign shall be a horizontal rectangle with four black chevron symbols pointing to the right on a white background. No border shall be used on the Roundabout Directional Arrow signs.

- 03 Roundabout Directional Arrow signs shall be used only at roundabouts and other circular intersections.

Guidance:

- 04 When used on the central island of a roundabout, the mounting height of a Roundabout Directional Arrow sign should be at least 4 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the traveled way.

Option:

- 05 More than one Roundabout Directional Arrow sign and/or R6-4a or R6-4b signs may be used facing high-speed approaches, facing approaches with limited visibility, or in other circumstances as determined by engineering judgment where increased sign visibility would be appropriate.

Section 2B.44 Roundabout Circulation Plaque (R6-5P)

Guidance:

- 01 Where the central island of a roundabout does not provide a reasonable place to install a sign, Roundabout Circulation (R6-5P) plaques (see Figure 2B-20) should be placed below the YIELD signs on each approach.

Option:

- 02 At roundabouts where Roundabout Directional Arrow signs and/or ONE WAY signs have been installed in the central island, Roundabout Circulation plaques may be placed below the YIELD signs on approaches to roundabouts to supplement the central island signs.

- 03 The Roundabout Circulation plaque may be used at any type of circular intersection.

Section 2B.45 Examples of Roundabout Signing

Support:

- 01 Figures 2B-21 through 2B-23 illustrate examples of regulatory and warning signing for roundabouts of various configurations.

- 02 Section 2D.38 contains information regarding guide signing at roundabouts and Chapter 3C contains information regarding pavement markings at roundabouts.

Figure 2B-20. Roundabout Signs and Plaques

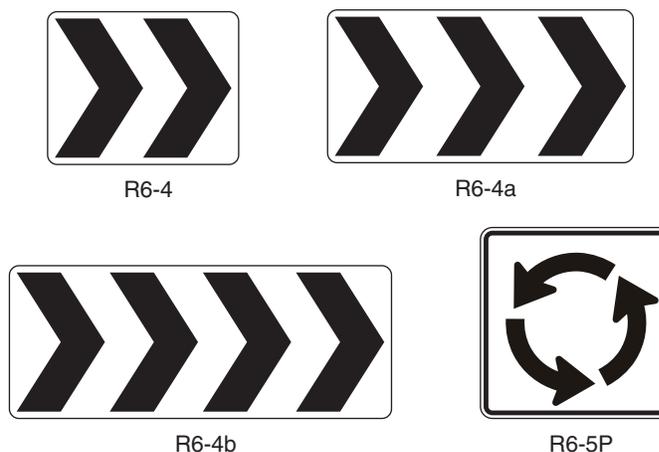
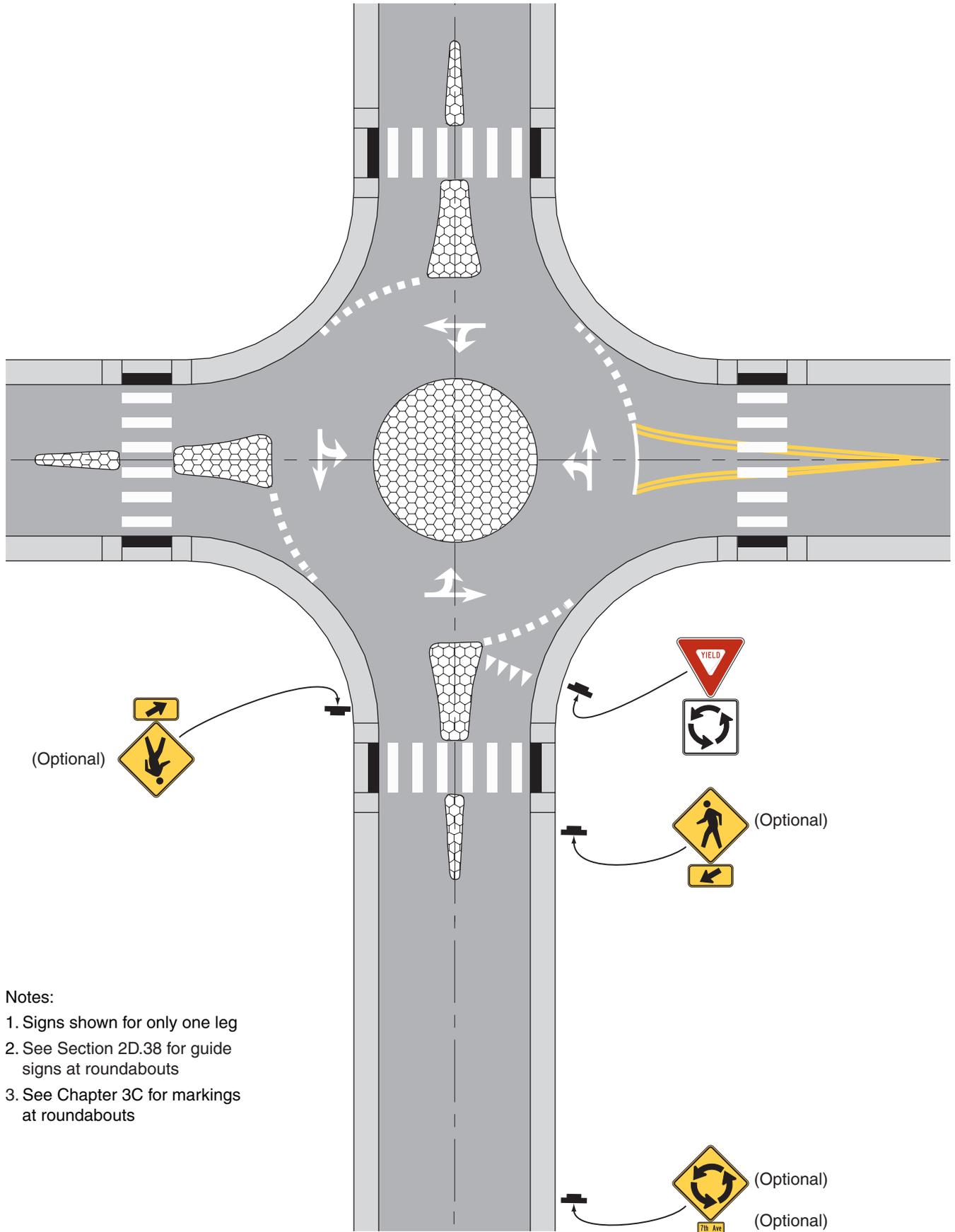


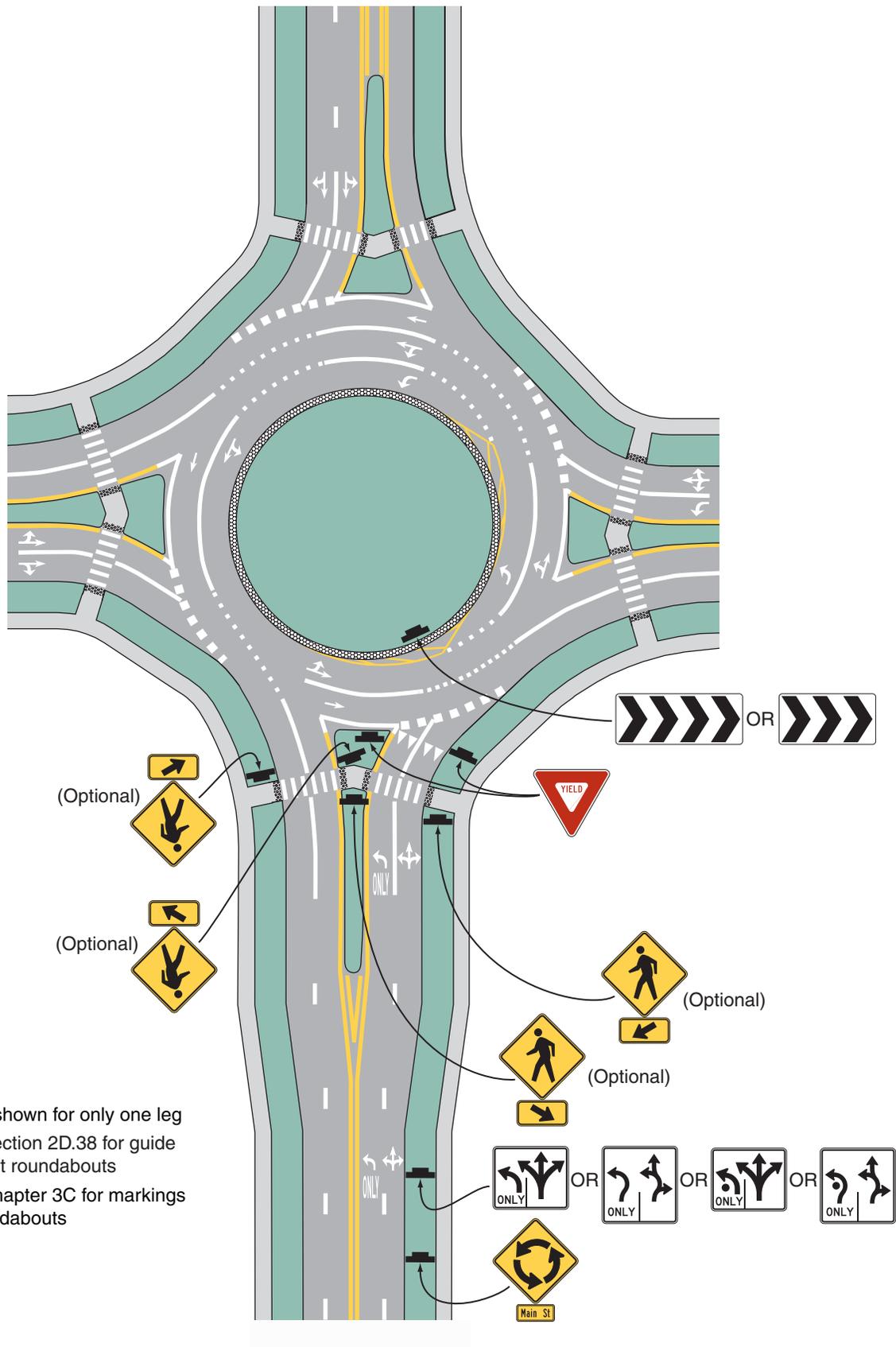
Figure 2B-21. Example of Regulatory and Warning Signs for a Mini-Roundabout



Notes:

1. Signs shown for only one leg
2. See Section 2D.38 for guide signs at roundabouts
3. See Chapter 3C for markings at roundabouts

Figure 2B-23. Example of Regulatory and Warning Signs for a Two-Lane Roundabout with Consecutive Double Lefts



Notes:

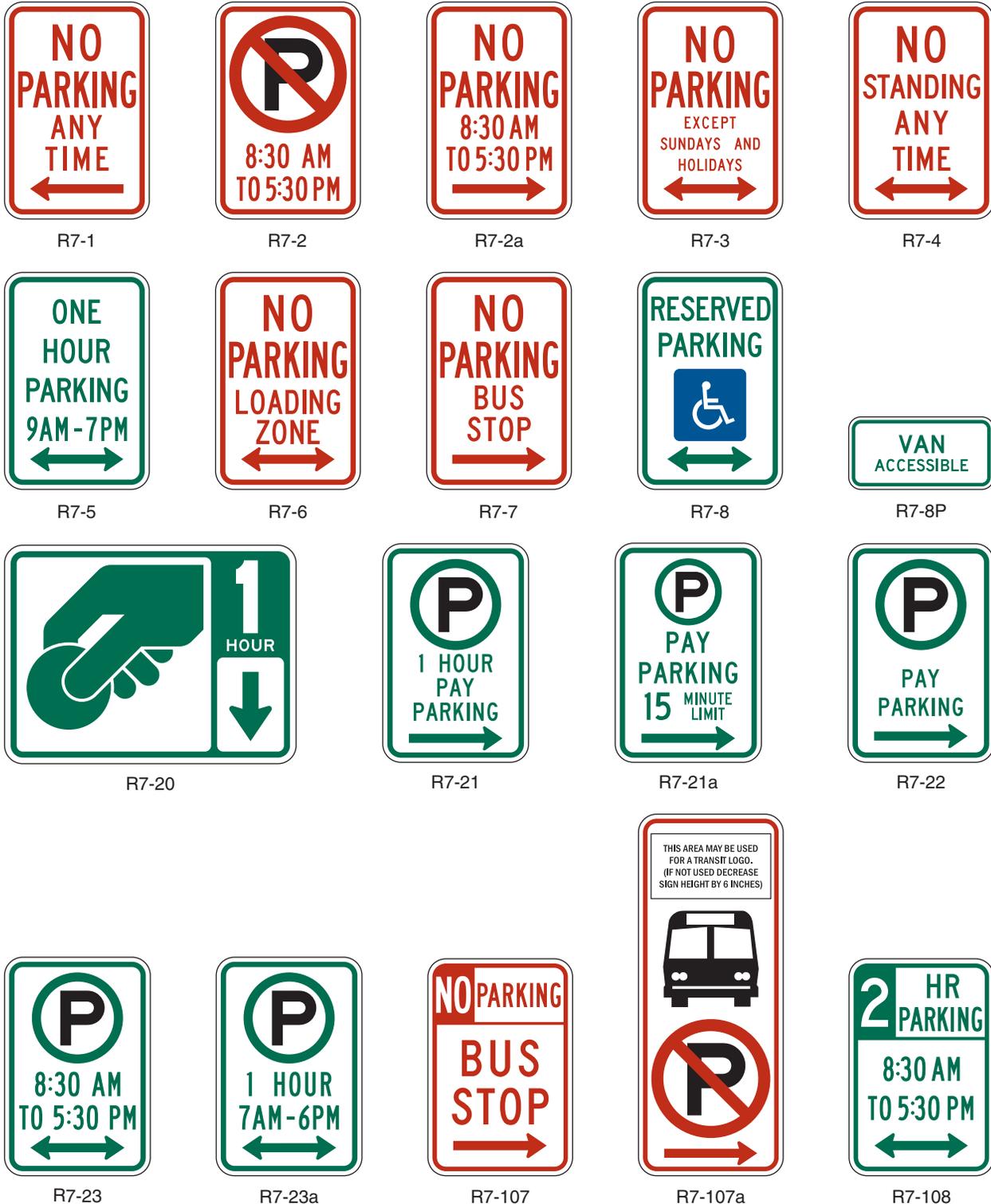
1. Signs shown for only one leg
2. See Section 2D.38 for guide signs at roundabouts
3. See Chapter 3C for markings at roundabouts

Section 2B.46 Parking, Standing, and Stopping Signs (R7 and R8 Series)

Support:

01 Signs governing the parking, stopping, and standing of vehicles cover a wide variety of regulations, and only general guidance can be provided here. The word “standing” when used on the R7 and R8 series of signs refers to the practice of a driver keeping the vehicle in a stationary position while continuing to occupy the vehicle. Typical examples of parking, stopping, and standing signs and plaques (see Figures 2B-24 and 2B-25) are as follows:

Figure 2B-24. Parking and Standing Signs and Plaques (R7 Series) (Sheet 1 of 2)



1. NO PARKING ANY TIME (R7-1);
2. NO PARKING X:XX AM TO X:XX PM (R7-2, R7-2a);
3. NO PARKING EXCEPT SUNDAYS AND HOLIDAYS (R7-3);
4. NO STANDING ANY TIME (R7-4);
5. XX HOUR PARKING X:XX AM – X:XX PM (R7-5);
6. NO PARKING LOADING ZONE (R7-6);
7. NO PARKING BUS STOP (R7-7, R7-107, R7-107a);
8. RESERVED PARKING for persons with disabilities (R7-8);
9. VAN ACCESSIBLE (R7-8P);
10. Pay Station (R7-20);
11. Pay Parking (R7-21, R7-21a, R7-22);
12. Parking Permitted X:XX AM TO X:XX PM (R7-23);
13. Parking Permitted XX HOUR(S) XX AM – XX PM (R7-23a);
14. XX HR PARKING X:XX AM TO X:XX PM (R7-108);
15. NO PARKING ANYTIME/XX HOUR PARKING X:XX AM – X:XX PM (R7-200, R7-200a);
16. TOW-AWAY ZONE (R7-201P, R7-201aP);
17. THIS SIDE OF SIGN (R7-202P);
18. EMERGENCY SNOW ROUTE NO PARKING IF OVER XX INCHES (R7-203);
19. NO PARKING ON PAVEMENT (R8-1);
20. NO PARKING EXCEPT ON SHOULDER (R8-2);
21. No Parking (R8-3, R8-3a);
22. EXCEPT SUNDAYS AND HOLIDAYS (R8-3bP);
23. ON PAVEMENT (R8-3cP);
24. ON BRIDGE (R8-3dP);
25. ON TRACKS (R8-3eP);
26. EXCEPT ON SHOULDER (R8-3fP);
27. LOADING ZONE (R8-3gP);
28. X:XX AM TO X:XX PM (R8-3hP);
29. EMERGENCY PARKING ONLY (R8-4);
30. NO STOPPING ON PAVEMENT (R8-5);
31. NO STOPPING EXCEPT ON SHOULDER (R8-6); and
32. EMERGENCY STOPPING ONLY (R8-7).

Figure 2B-24. Parking and Standing Signs and Plaques (R7 Series) (Sheet 2 of 2)



Section 2B.47 Design of Parking, Standing, and Stopping Signs

Support:

- 01 Discussions of parking signs and parking regulations in this Section apply not only to parking, but also to standing and stopping.

Standard:

- 02 **The legend on parking signs shall state applicable regulations. Parking signs (see Figures 2B-24 and 2B-25) shall comply with the standards of shape, color, and location.**

Figure 2B-25. Parking and Stopping Signs and Plaques (R8 Series)

03 Where parking is prohibited at all times or at specific times, the basic design for parking signs shall have a red legend and border on a white background (Parking Prohibition signs), except that the R8-4 and R8-7 signs and the alternate design for the R7-201aP plaque shall have a black legend and border on a white background, and the R8-3 sign shall have a black legend and border and a red circle and slash on a white background.

04 Where only limited-time parking or parking in a particular manner are permitted, the signs shall have a green legend and border on a white background (Permissive Parking signs).

Guidance:

05 *Parking signs should display the following information from top to bottom of the sign, in the order listed:*

- A. The restriction or prohibition;
- B. The times of the day that it is applicable, if not at all hours; and
- C. The days of the week that it is applicable, if not every day.

06 *If the parking restriction applies to a limited area or zone, the limits of the restriction should be shown by arrows or supplemental plaques. If arrows are used and if the sign is at the end of a parking zone, there should be a single-headed arrow pointing in the direction that the regulation is in effect. If the sign is at an intermediate point in a zone, there should be a double-headed arrow pointing both ways. When a single sign is used at the transition point between two parking zones, it should display a right and left arrow pointing in the direction that the respective restrictions apply.*

07 *Where special parking restrictions are imposed during heavy snowfall, Emergency Snow Route (R7-203) signs (see Figure 2B-24) should be installed. The legend will vary according to the regulations, but the signs should be vertical rectangles, having a white background with the upper part of the plate a red background.*

Standard:

08 Where parking spaces that are reserved for persons with disabilities are designated to accommodate wheelchair vans, a VAN ACCESSIBLE (R7-8P) plaque shall be mounted below the R7-8 sign. The R7-8 sign (see Figure 2B-24) shall have a green legend and border and a white wheelchair symbol on a blue square, all on a white background. The R7-8P plaque (see Figure 2B-24) shall have a green legend and border on a white background.

Option:

- 09 To minimize the number of parking signs, blanket regulations that apply to a given district may, if legal, be posted at district boundary lines.
- 10 As an alternate to the use of arrows to show designated restriction zones, word messages such as BEGIN, END, HERE TO CORNER, HERE TO ALLEY, THIS SIDE OF SIGN, or BETWEEN SIGNS may be used.
- 11 Where parking is prohibited during certain hours and time-limited parking or parking in a particular manner is permitted during certain other time periods, the red Parking Prohibition and green Permissive Parking signs may be designed as follows:
- A. Two 12 x 18-inch parking signs may be used with the red Parking Prohibition sign installed above or to the left of the green Permissive Parking sign; or
 - B. The red Parking Prohibition sign and the green Permissive Parking sign may be combined (see Figure 2B-24) to form an R7-200 sign on a single 24 x 18-inch sign, or an R7-200a sign on a single 12 x 30-inch sign.
- 12 At the transition point between two parking zones, a single sign or two signs mounted side by side may be used.
- 13 The words NO PARKING may be used as an alternative to the No Parking symbol. The supplemental educational plaque, NO PARKING, with a red legend and border on a white background, may be used above signs incorporating the No Parking symbol.
- 14 Alternate designs for the R7-107 sign may be developed such as the R7-107a sign (see Figure 2B-24). Alternate designs may include, on a single sign, a transit logo, an approved bus symbol, a parking prohibition, the words BUS STOP, and an arrow. The preferred bus symbol color is black, but other dark colors may be used. Additionally, the transit logo may be displayed on the bus face in the appropriate colors instead of placing the logo separately. The reverse side of the sign may contain bus routing information.
- 15 To make the parking regulations more effective and to improve public relations by giving a definite warning, a TOW-AWAY ZONE (R7-201P) plaque (see Figure 2B-24) may be appended to, or incorporated in, any parking prohibition sign. The Tow-Away Zone (R7-201aP) symbol plaque may be used instead of the R7-201P word message plaque. The R7-201aP plaque may have either a black or red legend and border on a white background.
- Guidance:*
- 16 *If a fee is charged for parking and a midblock pay station is used instead of individual parking meters for each parking space, pay parking signs should be used. Pay Parking (R7-22) signs (see Figure 2B-24) should be used to define the area where the pay station parking applies. Pay Station (R7-20) signs (see Figure 2B-24) should be used at the pay station or to direct road users to the pay station.*

Standard:

- 17 **If the pay parking is subject to a maximum time limit, the appropriate time limit (number of hours or minutes) shall be displayed on the Pay Parking (R7-21 or R7-21a) and Pay Station (R7-20) signs.**
- Option:
- 18 In rural areas (see Figure 2B-25), the legends NO PARKING ON PAVEMENT (R8-1) or NO STOPPING ON PAVEMENT (R8-5) are generally suitable and may be used. If a roadway has paved shoulders, the NO PARKING EXCEPT ON SHOULDER sign (R8-2) or the NO STOPPING EXCEPT ON SHOULDER sign (R8-6) may be used as these signs would be less likely to cause confusion. The R8-3 symbol sign or the word message NO PARKING (R8-3a) sign may be used to prohibit any parking along a given highway. Word message supplemental plaques may be mounted below the R8-3 or R8-3a sign. These word message supplemental plaques may include legends such as EXCEPT SUNDAYS AND HOLIDAYS (R8-3bP), ON PAVEMENT (R8-3cP), ON BRIDGE (R8-3dP), ON TRACKS (R8-3eP), EXCEPT ON SHOULDERS (R8-3fP), LOADING ZONE (with arrow) (R8-3gP), and X:XX AM TO X:XX PM (with arrow) (R8-3hP).
- 19 Colors that are in compliance with the provisions of Section 2A.10 may be used for color coding of parking time limits.
- Guidance:*
- 20 *If colors are used for color coding of parking time limits, the colors green, red, and black should be the only colors that are used.*

Section 2B.48 Placement of Parking, Stopping, and Standing Signs

Guidance:

- 01 *When signs with arrows are used to indicate the extent of the restricted zones, the signs should be set at an angle of not less than 30 degrees or more than 45 degrees with the line of traffic flow in order to be visible to approaching traffic.*
- 02 *Spacing of signs should be based on legibility and sign orientation.*
- 03 *If the zone is unusually long, signs showing a double arrow should be used at intermediate points within the zone.*

Standard:

- 04 **If the signs are mounted at an angle of 90 degrees to the curb line, two signs shall be mounted back to back at the transition point between two parking zones, each with an appended THIS SIDE OF SIGN (R7-202P) supplemental plaque.**

Guidance:

- 05 *If the signs are mounted at an angle of 90 degrees to the curb line, signs without any arrows or appended plaques should be used at intermediate points within a parking zone, facing in the direction of approaching traffic. Otherwise the standards of placement should be the same as for signs using directional arrows.*

Section 2B.49 Emergency Restriction Signs (R8-4, R8-7, R8-8)

Option:

- 01 The EMERGENCY PARKING ONLY (R8-4) sign (see Figure 2B-25) or the EMERGENCY STOPPING ONLY (R8-7) sign (see Figure 2B-25) may be used to discourage or prohibit shoulder parking, particularly where scenic or other attractions create a tendency for road users to stop temporarily.
- 02 The DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS (R8-8) sign (see Figure 8B-1) may be used to discourage or prohibit parking or stopping on railroad or light rail transit tracks (see Section 8B.09).

Standard:

- 03 **Emergency Restriction signs shall be rectangular and shall have a red or black legend and border on a white background.**

Section 2B.50 WALK ON LEFT FACING TRAFFIC and No Hitchhiking Signs (R9-1, R9-4, R9-4a)

Option:

- 01 The WALK ON LEFT FACING TRAFFIC (R9-1) sign (see Figure 2B-26) may be used on highways where no sidewalks are provided.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the WALK ON LEFT FACING TRAFFIC sign shall be installed on the right-hand side of the road where pedestrians walk on the pavement or shoulder in the absence of pedestrian pathways or sidewalks.**

Option:

- 03 The No Hitchhiking (R9-4) sign (see Figure 2B-26) may be used to prohibit standing in or adjacent to the roadway for the purpose of soliciting a ride. The R9-4a word message sign (see Figure 2B-26) may be used as an alternate to the R9-4 symbol sign.

Section 2B.51 Pedestrian Crossing Signs (R9-2, R9-3)

Option:

- 01 Pedestrian Crossing signs (see Figure 2B-26) may be used to limit pedestrian crossing to specific locations.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, Pedestrian Crossing signs shall be installed to face pedestrian approaches.**

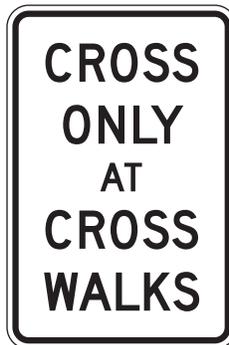
Option:

- 03 Where crosswalks are clearly defined, the CROSS ONLY AT CROSSWALKS (R9-2) sign may be used to prohibit pedestrians from crossing at locations away from crosswalks.
- 04 The No Pedestrian Crossing (R9-3) sign may be used to prohibit pedestrians from crossing a roadway at an undesirable location or in front of a school or other public building where a crossing is not designated.
- 05 The NO PEDESTRIAN CROSSING (R9-3a) word message sign may be used as an alternate to the R9-3 symbol sign. The USE CROSSWALK (R9-3bP) supplemental plaque, along with an arrow, may be installed below either sign to designate the direction of the crossing.

Figure 2B-26. Pedestrian Signs and Plaques (Sheet 1 of 2)



R9-1



R9-2



R9-3



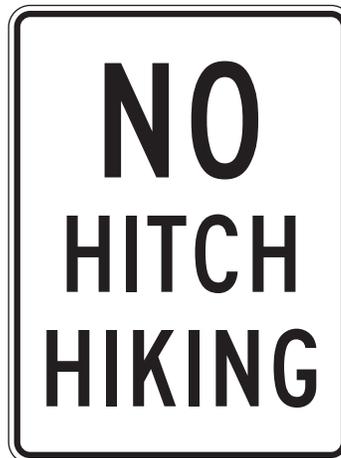
R9-3a



R9-3bP



R9-4



R9-4a



R10-1



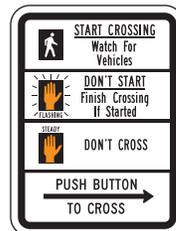
R10-2



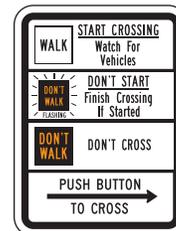
R10-3



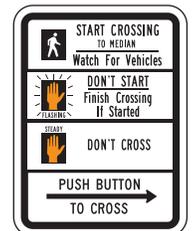
R10-3a



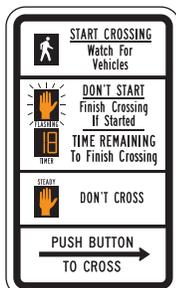
R10-3b



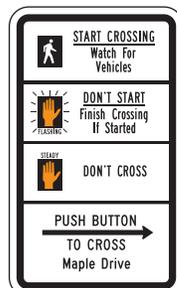
R10-3c



R10-3d



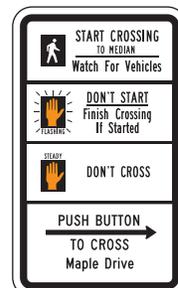
R10-3e



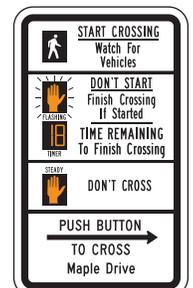
R10-3f



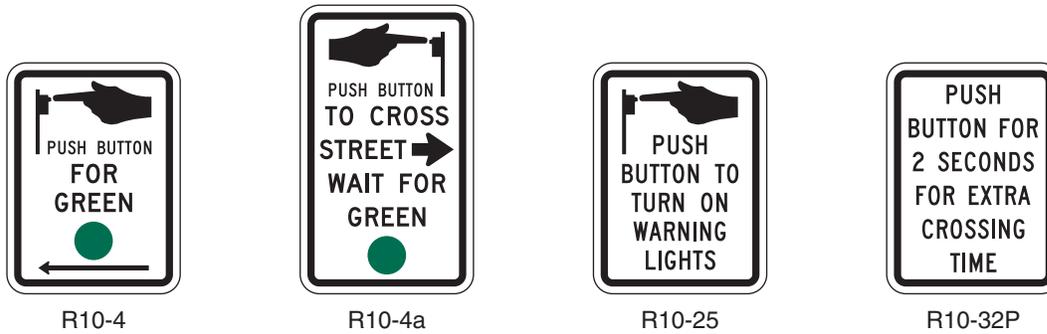
R10-3g



R10-3h



R10-3i

Figure 2B-26. Pedestrian Signs and Plaques (Sheet 2 of 2)**Support:**

- 06 One of the most frequent uses of the Pedestrian Crossing signs is at signalized intersections that have three crossings that can be used and one leg that cannot be crossed.

Guidance:

- 07 *The R9-3bP plaque should not be installed in combination with educational plaques.*

Section 2B.52 Traffic Signal Pedestrian and Bicycle Actuation Signs (R10-1 through R10-4, and R10-24 through R10-26)**Standard:**

- 01 **Traffic Signal signs applicable to pedestrian actuation (see Figure 2B-26) or bicyclist actuation (see Figure 9B-2) shall be mounted immediately above or incorporated into the pushbutton detector units (see Section 4E.08).**

Support:

- 02 Traffic Signal signs applicable to pedestrians include:
- A. CROSS ONLY ON GREEN (symbolic circular green) (R10-1);
 - B. CROSS ONLY ON (symbolic walk indication) SIGNAL (R10-2);
 - C. Push Button for Walk Signal (R10-3 series); and
 - D. Push Button for Green Signal (R10-4 series).

Option:

- 03 The following signs may be used as an alternate for the R10-3 and R10-4 signs:
- A. Push Button to Cross Street Wait for Walk Signal (R10-3a); or
 - B. Push Button to Cross Street Wait for Green Signal (R10-4a).
- 04 The name of the street to be crossed may be substituted for the word STREET in the legends on the R10-3a and R10-4a signs.

Guidance:

- 05 *The finger in the pushbutton symbol on the R10-3, R10-3a, R10-4, and R10-4a signs should point in the same direction as the arrow on the sign.*

Option:

- 06 Where symbol-type pedestrian signal indications are used, an educational sign (R10-3b) may be used instead of the R10-3 sign to improve pedestrian understanding of pedestrian indications at signalized intersections. Where word-type pedestrian signal indications are being retained for the remainder of their useful service life, the legends WALK/DONT WALK may be substituted for the symbols on the educational sign R10-3b, thus creating educational sign R10-3c. The R10-3d educational sign may be used to inform pedestrians that the pedestrian clearance time is sufficient only for the pedestrian to cross to the median at locations where pedestrians cross in two stages using a median refuge island. The R10-3e educational sign may be used where countdown pedestrian signals have been provided. In order to assist the pedestrian in understanding which pushbutton to push, the R10-3f to R10-3i educational signs that provide the name of the street to be crossed may be used instead of the R10-3b to R10-3e educational signs.

- 07 The R10-24 or R10-26 sign (see Section 9B.11) may be used where a pushbutton detector has been installed exclusively to actuate a green phase for bicyclists.

- 08 The R10-25 sign (see Figure 2B-26) may be used where a pushbutton detector has been installed for pedestrians to activate In-Roadway Warning Lights (see Chapter 4N) or flashing beacons that have been added to the pedestrian warning signs.

Support:

- 09 Section 4E.08 contains information regarding the application of the R10-32P plaque.

Section 2B.53 Traffic Signal Signs (R10-5 through R10-30)

Option:

- 01 To supplement traffic signal control, Traffic Signal signs R10-5 through R10-30 may be used to regulate road users.
- 02 Traffic Signal signs (see Figure 2B-27) may be installed at certain locations to clarify signal control. Among the legends that may be used for this purpose are LEFT ON GREEN ARROW ONLY (R10-5), STOP HERE ON RED (R10-6 or R10-6a) for observance of stop lines, DO NOT BLOCK INTERSECTION (R10-7) for avoidance of traffic obstructions, USE LANE(S) WITH GREEN ARROW (R10-8) for obedience to lane-use control signals (see Chapter 4M), LEFT TURN YIELD ON GREEN (symbolic circular green) (R10-12), and LEFT TURN YIELD ON FLASHING RED ARROW AFTER STOP (R10-27).

Guidance:

- 03 *If used, the LEFT ON GREEN ARROW ONLY (R10-5) sign, the LEFT TURN YIELD ON GREEN (symbolic circular green) (R10-12) sign, or the LEFT TURN YIELD ON FLASHING RED ARROW AFTER STOP (R10-27) sign should be located adjacent to the left-turn signal face.*

Option:

- 04 If needed for additional emphasis, an additional LEFT TURN YIELD ON GREEN (symbolic circular green) (R10-12) sign with an AT SIGNAL (R10-31P) supplemental plaque (see Figure 2B-27) may be installed in advance of the intersection.
- 05 In situations where traffic control signals are coordinated for progressive timing, the Traffic Signal Speed (I1-1) sign may be used (see Section 2H.03).

Standard:

- 06 **The CROSSWALK STOP ON RED (symbolic circular red) (R10-23) sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall only be used in conjunction with pedestrian hybrid beacons (see Section 4F.02).**
- 07 **The EMERGENCY SIGNAL (R10-13) sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall be used in conjunction with emergency-vehicle traffic control signals (see Section 4G.02).**
- 08 **The EMERGENCY SIGNAL—STOP ON FLASHING RED (R10-14 or R10-14a) sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall be used in conjunction with emergency-vehicle hybrid beacons (see Section 4G.04).**

Option:

- 09 In order to remind drivers who are making turns to yield to pedestrians, a Turning Vehicles Yield to Pedestrians (R10-15) sign (see Figure 2B-27) may be used.
- 10 A U-TURN YIELD TO RIGHT TURN (R10-16) sign (see Figure 2B-27) may be installed near the left-turn signal face if U-turns are allowed on a protected left-turn movement on an approach from which a right-turn GREEN ARROW signal indication is simultaneously being displayed to drivers making a right turn from the conflicting approach to their left.

Section 2B.54 No Turn on Red Signs (R10-11 Series, R10-17a, and R10-30)

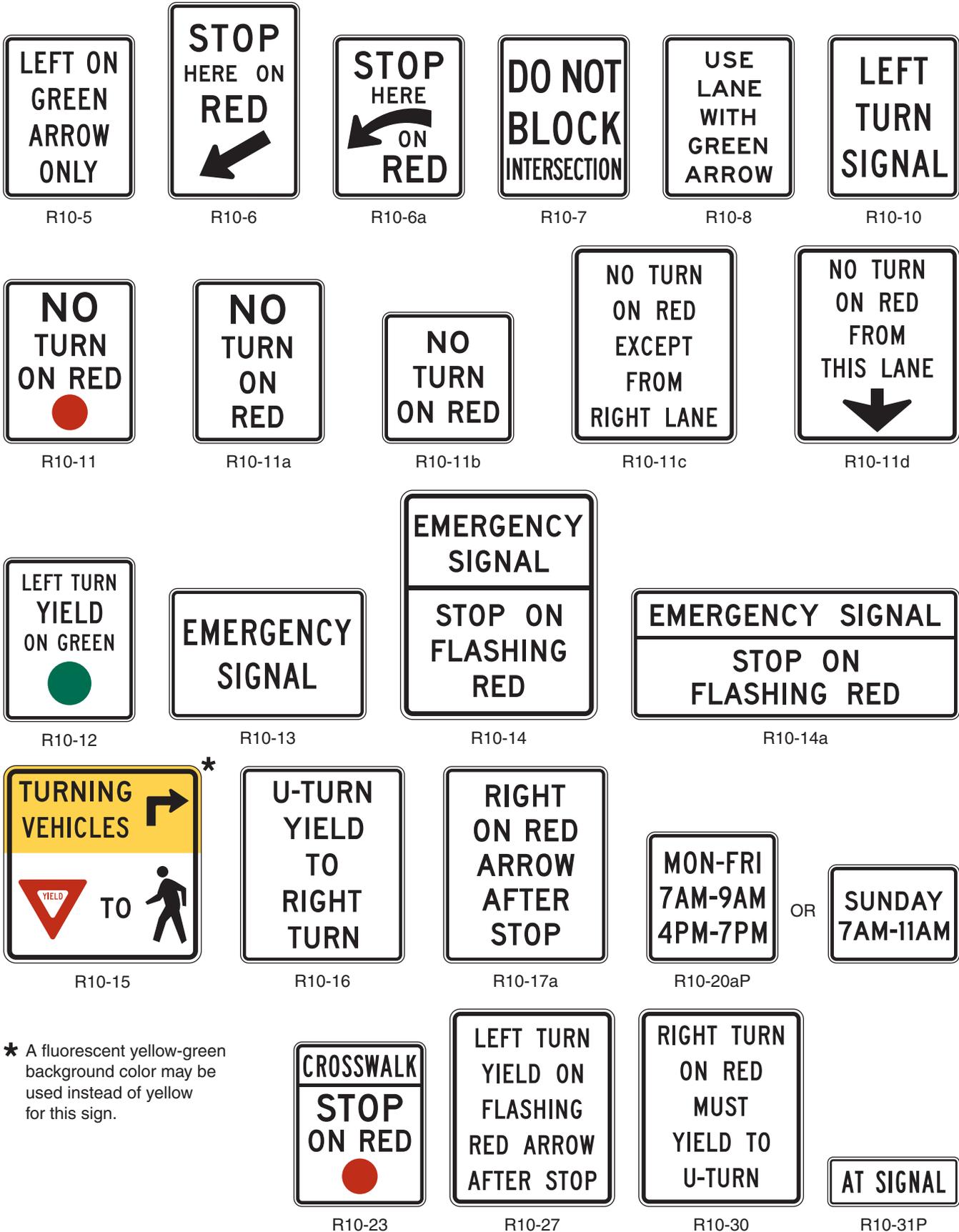
Standard:

- 01 **Where a right turn on red (or a left turn on red from a one-way street to a one-way street) is to be prohibited, a symbolic NO TURN ON RED (symbolic circular red) (R10-11) sign (see Figure 2B-27) or a NO TURN ON RED (R10-11a, R10-11b) word message sign (see Figure 2B-27) shall be used.**

Guidance:

- 02 *If used, the No Turn on Red sign should be installed near the appropriate signal head.*
- 03 *A No Turn on Red sign should be considered when an engineering study finds that one or more of the following conditions exists:*
- A. *Inadequate sight distance to vehicles approaching from the left (or right, if applicable);*
 - B. *Geometrics or operational characteristics of the intersection that might result in unexpected conflicts;*
 - C. *An exclusive pedestrian phase;*
 - D. *An unacceptable number of pedestrian conflicts with right-turn-on-red maneuvers, especially involving children, older pedestrians, or persons with disabilities;*
 - E. *More than three right-turn-on-red accidents reported in a 12-month period for the particular approach; or*
 - F. *The skew angle of the intersecting roadways creates difficulty for drivers to see traffic approaching from their left.*

Figure 2B-27. Traffic Signal Signs and Plaques



* A fluorescent yellow-green background color may be used instead of yellow for this sign.

Option:

- 04 A supplemental R10-20aP plaque (see Figure 2B-27) showing times of day (similar to the S4-1P plaque shown in Figure 7B-1) with a black legend and border on a white background may be mounted below a No Turn on Red sign to indicate that the restriction is in place only during certain times.
- 05 Alternatively, a blank-out sign may be used instead of a static NO TURN ON RED sign, to display either the NO TURN ON RED legend or the No Right Turn symbol or word message, as appropriate, only at certain times during the day or during one or more portion(s) of a particular cycle of the traffic signal.
- 06 On signalized approaches with more than one right-turn lane, a NO TURN ON RED EXCEPT FROM RIGHT LANE (R10-11c) sign (see Figure 2B-27) may be post-mounted at the intersection or a NO TURN ON RED FROM THIS LANE (with down arrow) (R10-11d) sign (see Figure 2B-27) may be mounted directly over the center of the lane from which turns on red are prohibited.

Guidance:

- 07 *Where turns on red are permitted and the signal indication is a steady RED ARROW, the RIGHT (LEFT) ON RED ARROW AFTER STOP (R10-17a) sign (see Figure 2B-27) should be installed adjacent to the RED ARROW signal indication.*

Option:

- 08 A RIGHT TURN ON RED MUST YIELD TO U-TURN (R10-30) sign (see Figure 2B-27) may be installed to remind road users that they must yield to conflicting u-turn traffic on the street or highway onto which they are turning right on a red signal after stopping.

Section 2B.55 Photo Enforced Signs and Plaques (R10-18, R10-19P, R10-19aP)**Option:**

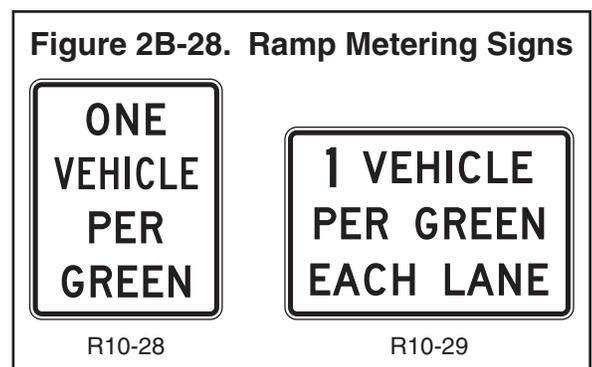
- 01 A TRAFFIC LAWS PHOTO ENFORCED (R10-18) sign (see Figure 2B-3) may be installed at a jurisdictional boundary to advise road users that some of the traffic regulations within that jurisdiction are being enforced by photographic equipment.
- 02 A Photo Enforced (R10-19P) plaque or a PHOTO ENFORCED (R10-19aP) word message plaque (see Figure 2B-3) may be mounted below a regulatory sign to advise road users that the regulation is being enforced by photographic equipment.

Standard:

- 03 **If used below a regulatory sign, the Photo Enforced (R10-19P or R10-19aP) plaque shall be a rectangle with a black legend and border on a white background.**

Section 2B.56 Ramp Metering Signs (R10-28 and R10-29)**Option:**

- 01 When ramp control signals (see Chapter 4I) are used to meter traffic on a freeway or expressway entrance ramp, regulatory signs with legends appropriate to the control may be installed adjacent to the ramp control signal faces.
- 02 For entrance ramps with only one controlled lane, an XX VEHICLE(S) PER GREEN (R10-28) sign (see Figure 2B-28) may be used to inform road users of the number of vehicles that are permitted to proceed during each short display of the green signal indication. For entrance ramps with more than one controlled lane, an XX VEHICLE(S) PER GREEN Each Lane (R10-29) (see Figure 2B-28) sign may be used to inform road users of the number of vehicles that are permitted to proceed from each lane during each short display of the green signal indication.

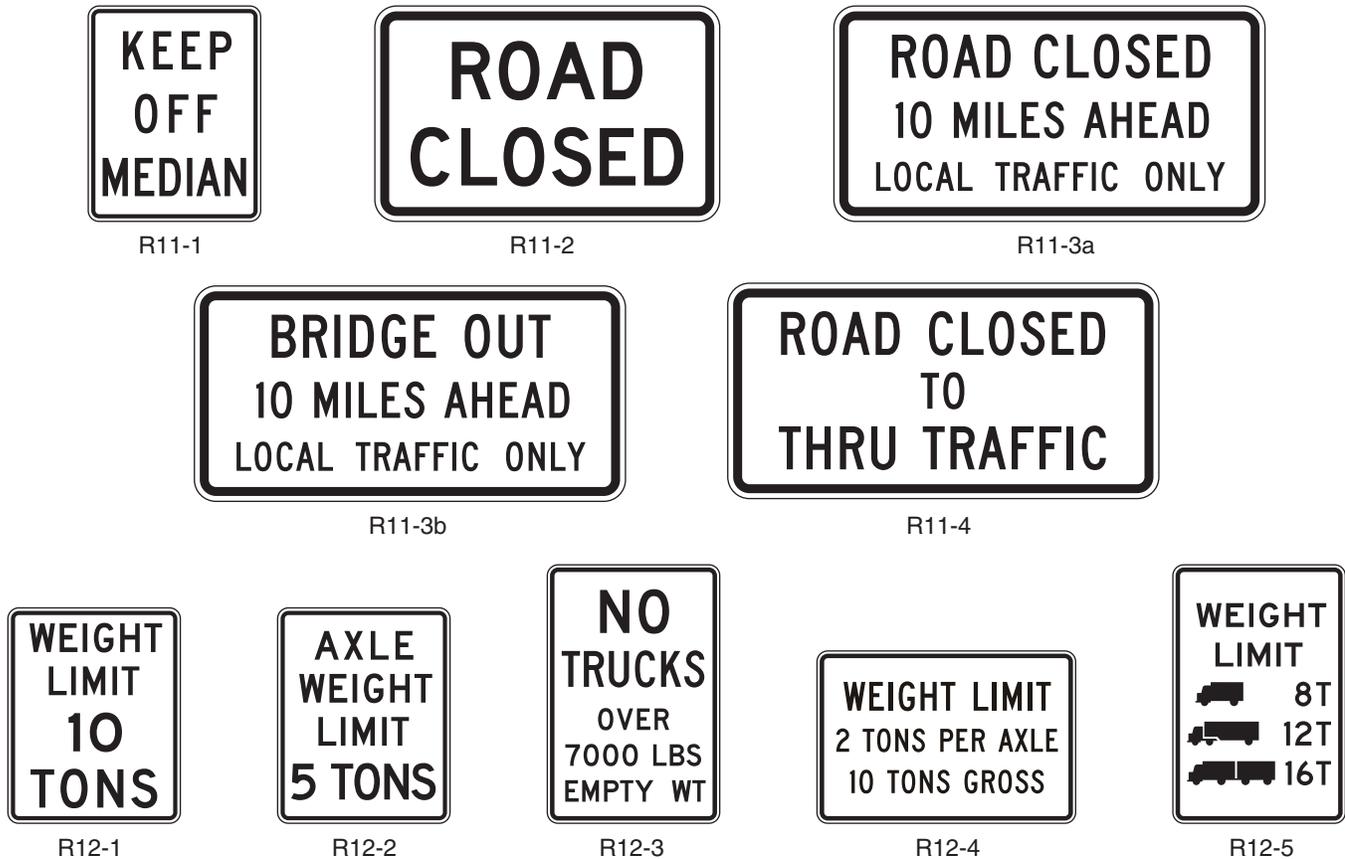
**Section 2B.57 KEEP OFF MEDIAN Sign (R11-1)****Option:**

- 01 The KEEP OFF MEDIAN (R11-1) sign (see Figure 2B-29) may be used to prohibit driving into or parking on the median.

Guidance:

- 02 *The KEEP OFF MEDIAN sign should be installed on the left of the roadway within the median at random intervals as needed wherever there is a tendency for encroachment.*

Figure 2B-29. Road Closed and Weight Limit Signs



Section 2B.58 ROAD CLOSED Sign (R11-2) and LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY Signs (R11-3 Series, R11-4)

Guidance:

- 01 The ROAD CLOSED (R11-2) sign should be installed where roads have been closed to all traffic (except authorized vehicles).
- 02 ROAD CLOSED—LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY (R11-3) or ROAD CLOSED TO THRU TRAFFIC (R11-4) signs should be used where through traffic is not permitted, or for a closure some distance beyond the sign, but where the highway is open for local traffic up to the point of closure.

Standard:

- 03 The Road Closed (R11-2, R11-3 series, and R11-4) signs (see Figure 2B-29) shall be designed as horizontal rectangles. These signs shall be preceded by the applicable Advance Road Closed warning sign with the secondary legend AHEAD and, if applicable, an Advance Detour warning sign (see Section 6F.19).

Option:

- 04 An intersecting street name or a well-known destination may be substituted for the XX MILES AHEAD legend in urban areas.
- 05 The word message BRIDGE OUT may be substituted for the ROAD CLOSED legend where applicable.

Section 2B.59 Weight Limit Signs (R12-1 through R12-5)

Option:

- 01 The Weight Limit (R12-1) sign carrying the legend WEIGHT LIMIT XX TONS may be used to indicate vehicle weight restrictions including load.
- 02 Where the restriction applies to axle weight rather than gross load, the legend may be AXLE WEIGHT LIMIT XX TONS or AXLE WEIGHT LIMIT XX LBS (R12-2).
- 03 To restrict trucks of certain sizes by reference to empty weight in residential areas, the legend may be NO TRUCKS OVER XX TONS EMPTY WT or NO TRUCKS OVER XX LBS EMPTY WT (R12-3).

- 04 In areas where multiple regulations of the type described in Paragraphs 1 through 3 are applicable, a sign combining the necessary messages on a single sign may be used, such as WEIGHT LIMIT XX TONS PER AXLE, XX TONS GROSS (R12-4).
- 05 Posting of specific load limits may be accomplished by use of the Weight Limit symbol sign (R12-5). A sign containing the legend WEIGHT LIMIT on the top two lines, and showing three different truck symbols and their respective weight limits for which restrictions apply may be used, with the weight limits displayed to the right of each symbol as XX T. A bottom line of legend stating GROSS WT may be included if needed for enforcement purposes.

Standard:

- 06 **If used, the Weight Limit sign (see Figure 2B-29) shall be located in advance of the applicable section of highway or structure.**

Guidance:

- 07 *If used, the Weight Limit sign with an advisory distance ahead legend should be placed at approach road intersections or other points where prohibited vehicles can detour or turn around.*

Section 2B.60 Weigh Station Signs (R13 Series)*Guidance:*

- 01 *An R13-1 sign with the legend TRUCKS OVER XX TONS MUST ENTER WEIGH STATION NEXT RIGHT (see Figure 2B-30) should be used to direct appropriate traffic into a weigh station.*
- 02 *The R13-1 sign should be supplemented by the D8 series of guide signs (see Section 2D.49).*

Option:

- 03 The reverse color combination, a white legend and border on a black background, may be used for the R13-1 sign.

Section 2B.61 TRUCK ROUTE Sign (R14-1)*Guidance:*

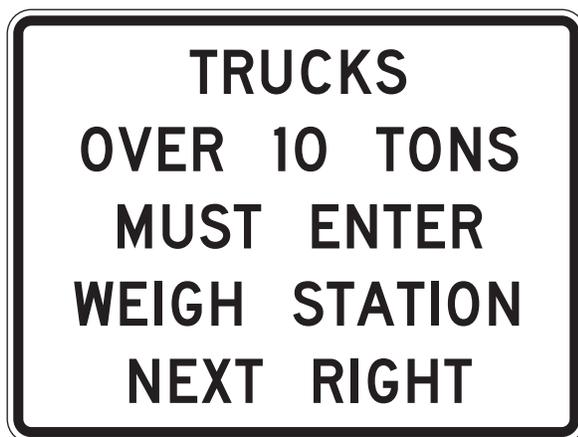
- 01 *The TRUCK ROUTE (R14-1) sign (see Figure 2B-30) should be used to mark a route that has been designated to allow truck traffic.*

Option:

- 02 On a numbered highway, the TRUCK (M4-4) auxiliary sign may be used (see Section 2D.20).

Section 2B.62 Hazardous Material Signs (R14-2, R14-3)*Option:*

- 01 The Hazardous Material Route (R14-2) sign (see Figure 2B-30) may be used to identify routes that have been designated by proper authority for vehicles transporting hazardous material.
- 02 On routes where the transporting of hazardous material is prohibited, the Hazardous Material Prohibition (R14-3) sign (see Figure 2B-30) may be used.

Figure 2B-30. Truck Signs

R13-1*



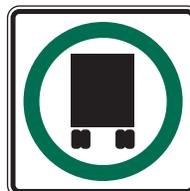
R14-1



R14-2



R14-3



R14-4



R14-5

* The R13-1 sign may be black-on-white or white-on-black

Guidance:

- 03 *If used, the Hazardous Material Prohibition sign should be installed on a street or roadway at a point where vehicles transporting hazardous material have the opportunity to take an alternate route.*

Section 2B.63 National Network Signs (R14-4, R14-5)

Support:

- 01 The signing of the National Network routes for trucking is optional.

Standard:

- 02 **When a National Network route is signed, the National Network (R14-4) sign (see Figure 2B-30) shall be used.**

Option:

- 03 The National Network Prohibition (R14-5) sign (see Figure 2B-30) may be used to identify routes, portions of routes, and ramps where trucks are prohibited. The R14-5 sign may also be used to mark the ends of designated routes.

Section 2B.64 Headlight Use Signs (R16-5 through R16-11)

Support:

- 01 Some States require road users to turn on their vehicle headlights under certain weather conditions, as a safety improvement measure on roadways experiencing high crash rates, or in special situations such as when driving through a tunnel.

- 02 Figure 2B-31 shows the various signs that can be used for informing motorists of these requirements.

Option:

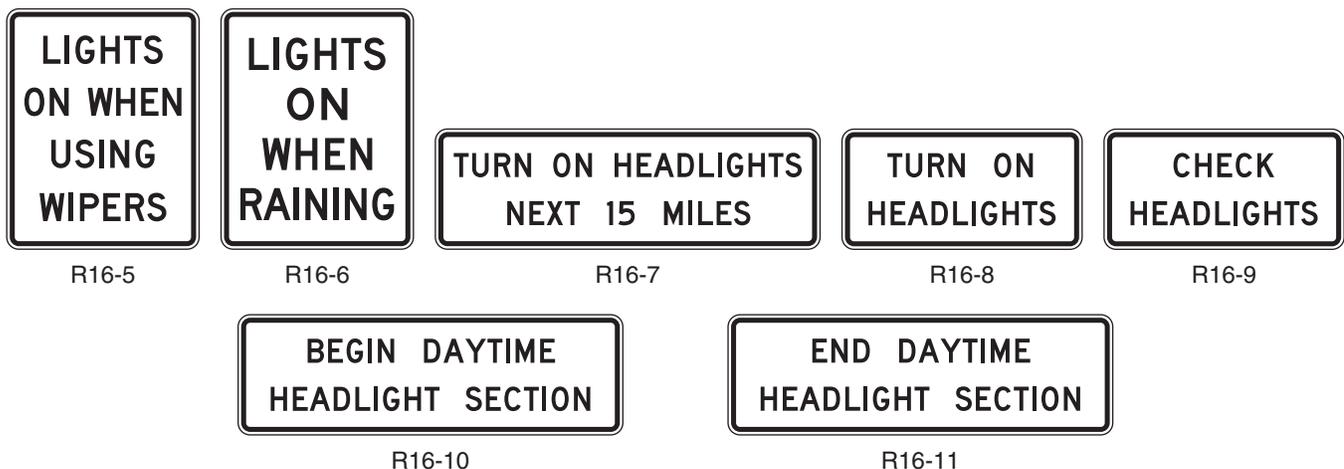
- 03 A LIGHTS ON WHEN USING WIPERS (R16-5) sign or a LIGHTS ON WHEN RAINING (R16-6) sign may be installed to inform road users of State laws regarding headlight use. Although these signs are typically installed facing traffic entering the State just inside the State border, they also may be installed at other locations within the State.

Guidance:

- 04 *If a particular section of roadway has been designated as a safety improvement zone within which headlight use is required, a TURN ON HEADLIGHTS NEXT XX MILES (R16-7) sign or a BEGIN DAYTIME HEADLIGHT SECTION (R16-10) sign should be installed at the upstream end of the section, and a END DAYTIME HEADLIGHT SECTION (R16-11) sign should be installed at the downstream end of the section.*

Option:

- 05 A TURN ON HEADLIGHTS (R16-8) sign may be installed to require road users to turn on their headlights in special situations such as when driving through a tunnel. A CHECK HEADLIGHTS (R16-9) sign may be installed downstream from the special situation to inform drivers that the using their headlights is no longer required.

Figure 2B-31. Headlight Use Signs

Section 2B.65 FENDER BENDER Sign (R16-4)

Option:

- 01 A FENDER BENDER MOVE VEHICLES FROM TRAVEL LANES (R16-4) sign (see Figure 2B-32) may be installed to require motorists to move their vehicle out of the travel lanes if they have been involved in a crash.

Section 2B.66 Seat Belt Symbol

Standard:

- 01 **When a seat belt symbol is used, the symbol shown in Figure 2B-32 shall be used.**

Guidance:

- 02 *The seat belt symbol should not be used alone. If used, the seat belt symbol should be incorporated into regulatory sign messages for mandatory seat belt use.*

Section 2B.67 Barricades

Option:

- 01 Barricades may be used to mark any of the following conditions:
- A. A roadway ends,
 - B. A ramp or lane closed for operational purposes, or
 - C. The permanent or semi-permanent closure or termination of a roadway.

Standard:

- 02 **When used to warn and alert road users of the terminus of a roadway in other than temporary traffic control zones, barricades shall meet the design criteria of Section 6F.68 for a Type 3 Barricade, except that the colors of the stripes shall be retroreflective white and retroreflective red.**

Option:

- 03 An end-of-roadway marker or markers may be used as described in Section 2C.66.

Guidance:

- 04 *Appropriate advance warning signs (see Chapter 2C) should be used.*

Section 2B.68 Gates

Support:

- 01 Gates described in this section used for weather or other emergency conditions are typically permanently installed to enable the gate to be immediately deployed as needed to prohibit the entry of traffic to the highway segment(s).
- 02 A gate typically features a gate arm that is moved from a vertical to a horizontal position or is rotated in a horizontal plane from parallel to traffic to perpendicular to traffic. Traffic is obstructed and required to stop when the gate arm is placed in a horizontal position perpendicular to traffic. Another type of gate consists of a segment of fence (usually on rollers) that swings open and closed, or that is retracted to open and then extended to close.
- 03 Gates are sometimes used to enforce a required stop. Some examples of such uses are the following:
- A. Parking facility entrances and exits,
 - B. Private community entrances and exits,
 - C. Military base entrances and exits,
 - D. Toll plaza lanes,
 - E. Movable bridges (see Chapter 4J),
 - F. Automated Flagger Assistance Devices (see Chapter 6E), and
 - G. Grade crossings (see Part 8).
- 04 Gates are sometimes used to periodically close a roadway or a ramp. Some examples of such uses are the following:
- A. Closing ramps to implement counter-flow operations for evacuations,
 - B. Closing ramps that lead to reversible lanes, and
 - C. Closing roadways for weather events such as snow, ice, or flooding, or for other emergencies.

Figure 2B-32. Other Regulatory Signs and Symbols



R16-4



Seat Belt Symbol

Standard:

- 05 **Except as provided in Paragraph 6, gate arms, if used, shall be fully retroreflectorized on both sides, have vertical stripes alternately red and white at 16-inch intervals measured horizontally as shown in Figure 8C-1.**

Option:

- 06 If used on a one-way roadway or ramp, the retroreflectorization may be omitted on the side of the gate facing away from approaching traffic.

- 07 Where gate arms are used to block off ramps into reversible lanes or to redirect approaching traffic, the red and white striping may be angled such that the stripes slope downward at an angle of 45 degrees toward the side of the gate arm on which traffic is to pass.

Standard:

- 08 **The gate arm shall extend across the approaching lane or lanes of traffic to effectively block motor vehicle and/or pedestrian travel as appropriate.**

- 09 **When gate arms are in the vertical position or rotated to an open position, the closest part of the gate arm and support shall have a lateral offset of at least 2 feet from the face of the curb or the edge of the traveled way.**

- 10 **When gate arms that are located in the median or on an island are in the horizontal position or rotated to a closed position, the closest part of the counterweight or its supports shall have a lateral offset of at least 2 feet from the face of the curb or the edge of the traveled way of the open roadway on the opposite side of the median or island.**

Guidance:

- 11 *When a gate that is rotated in a horizontal plane is in the position where it is parallel to traffic (indicating that the roadway is open), the outer end of the gate arm should be rotated to the downstream direction (from the perspective of traffic in the lane adjacent to the gate support) to prevent spearing if the gate is struck by an errant vehicle.*

- 12 *If a pedestrian route is present and if it is not intended that pedestrian traffic be controlled by the gate, a minimum of 2 feet of lateral offset from supports, posts, counterweights, and gate mechanisms should be provided when the gate arm is in the open position and when the gate arm is in the closed position such that pedestrian travel is not impeded.*

Option:

- 13 Red lights may be attached to traffic gates.

Standard:

- 14 **If red lights are attached to a traffic gate, the red lights shall be steadily illuminated or flashed only during the period when the gate is in the horizontal or closed position and when the gate is in the process of being opened or closed.**

- 15 **Except as provided in Paragraph 16, rolling sections of fence, if used, shall include either a horizontal strip of retroreflectorized sheeting on both sides of the fence with vertical stripes alternately red and white at 16-inch intervals measured horizontally to simulate the appearance of a gate arm in the horizontal position, or one or more Type 4 object markers (see Section 2C.66), or both. If a horizontal strip of retroreflectorized sheeting is used, the bottom of the sheeting shall be located 3.5 to 4.5 feet above the roadway surface.**

Option:

- 16 If used on a one-way roadway or ramp, the retroreflectorization may be omitted on the side of the fence facing away from approaching traffic.

CHAPTER 2C. WARNING SIGNS AND OBJECT MARKERS

Section 2C.01 Function of Warning Signs

Support:

- 01 Warning signs call attention to unexpected conditions on or adjacent to a highway, street, or private roads open to public travel and to situations that might not be readily apparent to road users. Warning signs alert road users to conditions that might call for a reduction of speed or an action in the interest of safety and efficient traffic operations.

Section 2C.02 Application of Warning Signs

Standard:

- 01 **The use of warning signs shall be based on an engineering study or on engineering judgment.**

Guidance:

- 02 *The use of warning signs should be kept to a minimum as the unnecessary use of warning signs tends to breed disrespect for all signs. In situations where the condition or activity is seasonal or temporary, the warning sign should be removed or covered when the condition or activity does not exist.*

Option:

- 03 Consistent with the provisions of Chapter 2L, changeable message signs may be used to display a warning message.
- 04 Consistent with the provisions of Chapter 4L, a Warning Beacon may be used in combination with a standard warning sign.

Support:

- 05 The categories of warning signs are shown in Table 2C-1.
- 06 Warning signs provided in this Manual cover most of the conditions that are likely to be encountered. Additional warning signs for low-volume roads (as defined in Section 5A.01), temporary traffic control zones, school areas, grade crossings, and bicycle facilities are discussed in Parts 5 through 10, respectively.
- 07 Section 1A.09 contains information regarding the assistance that is available to jurisdictions that do not have engineers on their staffs who are trained and/or experienced in traffic control devices.

Section 2C.03 Design of Warning Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Except as provided in Paragraph 2 or unless specifically designated otherwise, all warning signs shall be diamond-shaped (square with one diagonal vertical) with a black legend and border on a yellow background. Warning signs shall be designed in accordance with the sizes, shapes, colors, and legends contained in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).**

Option:

- 02 A warning sign that is larger than the size shown in the Oversized column in Table 2C-2 for that particular sign may be diamond-shaped or may be rectangular or square in shape.
- 03 Except for symbols on warning signs, minor modifications may be made to the design provided that the essential appearance characteristics are met. Modifications may be made to the symbols shown on combined horizontal alignment/intersection signs (see Section 2C.11) and intersection warning signs (see Section 2C.46) in order to approximate the geometric configuration of the intersecting roadway(s).
- 04 Word message warning signs other than those provided in this Manual may be developed and installed by State and local highway agencies.
- 05 Warning signs regarding conditions associated with pedestrians, bicyclists, and playgrounds may have a black legend and border on a yellow or fluorescent yellow-green background.

Standard:

- 06 **Warning signs regarding conditions associated with school buses and schools and their related supplemental plaques shall have a black legend and border on a fluorescent yellow-green background (see Section 7B.07).**

Section 2C.04 Size of Warning Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Except as provided in Section 2A.11, the sizes for warning signs shall be as shown in Table 2C-2.**

Table 2C-1. Categories of Warning Signs and Plaques

Category	Group	Section	Signs or Plaques	Sign Designations
Roadway Related	Changes in Horizontal Alignment	2C.07	Turn, Curve, Reverse Turn, Reverse Curve, Winding Road, Hairpin Curve, 270-Degree Curve	W1-1,2,3,4,5,11,15
		2C.08	Advisory Speed	W13-1P
		2C.09	Chevron Alignment	W1-8
		2C.10	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed	W1-1a,2a
		2C.11	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection	W1-10,10a,10b,10c,10d
		2C.12	Large Arrow (one direction)	W1-6
		2C.13	Truck Rollover	W1-13
		2C.14	Advisory Exit or Ramp Speed	W13-2,3
	Vertical Alignment	2C.15	Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Exit or Ramp Speed	W13-6,7
		2C.16	Hill	W7-1,1a,2P,2bP,3P,3aP,3bP
		2C.17	Truck Escape Ramp	W7-4,4b,4c,4dP,4eP,4fP
	Cross Section	2C.18	Hill Blocks View	W7-6
		2C.19	Road Narrows	W5-1
		2C.20,21	Narrow Bridge, One Lane Bridge	W5-2,3
		2C.22,23,25	Divided Highway, Divided Highway Ends, Double Arrow	W6-1,2; W12-1
		2C.24	Freeway or Expressway Ends, All Traffic Must Exit	W19-1,2,3,4,5
		2C.26	Dead End, No Outlet	W14-1,1a,2,2a
		2C.27	Low Clearance	W12-2,2a
	Roadway Surface Condition	2C.28,29	Bump, Dip, Speed Hump	W8-1,2; W17-1
		2C.30	Pavement Ends	W8-3
2C.31		Shoulder, Uneven Lanes	W8-4,9,11,17,17P,23,25	
2C.32		Slippery When Wet, Loose Gravel, Rough Road, Bridge Ices Before Road, Fallen Rocks	W8-5,7,8,13,14	
2C.33		Grooved Pavement, Metal Bridge Deck	W8-15,15P,16	
2C.34		No Center Line	W8-12	
Weather	2C.35	Road May Flood, Flood Gauge, Gusty Winds Area, Fog Area	W8-18,19,21,22	
Traffic Related	Advance Traffic Control	2C.36-39	Stop Ahead, Yield Ahead, Signal Ahead, Be Prepared To Stop, Speed Reduction, Drawbridge Ahead, Ramp Meter Ahead	W3-1,2,3,4,5,5a,6,7,8
	Traffic Flow	2C.40-45	Merge, No Merge Area, Lane Ends, Added Lane, Two-Way Traffic, Right Lane Exit Only Ahead, No Passing Zone	W4-1,2,3,5,5P,6; W6-3; W9-1,2,7; W14-3
	Intersections	2C.46	Cross Road, Side Road, T, Y, Circular Intersection, Side Roads	W2-1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8; W16-12P,17P
		2C.47	Large Arrow (two directions)	W1-7
		2C.48	Oncoming Extended Green	W25-1,2
	Vehicular Traffic	2C.49	Truck Crossing, Truck (symbol), Emergency Vehicle, Tractor, Bicycle, Golf Cart, Horse-Drawn Vehicle, Trail Crossing	W8-6; W11-1,5,5a,8,10,11,12P,14,15,15P,15a; W16-13P
	Non-Vehicular	2C.50,51	Pedestrian, Deer, Cattle, Snowmobile, Equestrian, Wheelchair, Large Animals, Playground	W11-2,3,4,6,7,9,16,17,18,19,20,21,22; W15-1; W16-13P
New	2C.52	New Traffic Pattern Ahead	W23-2	
Other Supplemental Plaques	Location	2C.53	Downward Diagonal Arrow, Ahead	W16-7P,9P
	HOV	2C.53	High-Occupancy Vehicle	W16-11P
	Distance	2C.55	XX Feet, XX Miles, Next XX Feet, Next XX Miles	W7-3aP; W16-2P,2aP,3P,3aP,4P
	Arrow	2C.56	Advance Arrow, Directional Arrow	W16-5P,6P
	Street Name Plaque	2C.58	Advance Street Name	W16-8P,8aP
	Intersection	2C.59	Cross Traffic Does Not Stop	W4-4P,4aP,4bP
	Share The Road	2C.60	Share The Road	W16-1P
	Photo Enforced	2C.61	Photo Enforced	W16-10P,10aP
	New	2C.62	New	W16-15P

Table 2C-2. Warning Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 1 of 3)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road		Expressway	Freeway	Minimum	Oversized
			Single Lane	Multi-Lane				
Horizontal Alignment	W1-1,2,3,4,5	2C.07	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	48 x 48
Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed	W1-1a,2a	2C.10	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	—	48 x 48
One-Direction Large Arrow	W1-6	2C.12	48 x 24	48 x 24	60 x 30	60 x 30	—	60 x 30
Two-Direction Large Arrow	W1-7	2C.47	48 x 24	48 x 24	—	—	—	60 x 30
Chevron Alignment	W1-8	2C.09	18 x 24	18 x 24	30 x 36	36 x 48	—	24 x 30
Combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection	W1-10,10a,10b,10c,10d,10e	2C.11	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	—
Hairpin Curve	W1-11	2C.07	30 x 30	30 x 30	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	48 x 48
Truck Rollover	W1-13	2C.13	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	36 x 36
270-degree Loop	W1-15	2C.07	30 x 30	30 x 30	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	48 x 48
Intersection Warning	W2-1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8	2C.46	30 x 30	30 x 30	36 x 36	—	24 x 24	48 x 48
Advanced Traffic Control	W3-1,2,3	2C.36	30 x 30	30 x 30	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30	—
Be Prepared to Stop	W3-4	2C.36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30	—
Reduced Speed Limit Ahead	W3-5	2C.38	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	—	—
XX MPH Speed Zone Ahead	W3-5a	2C.38	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	—	—
Draw Bridge	W3-6	2C.39	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	—	60 x 60
Ramp Meter Ahead	W3-7	2C.37	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	—	—	—
Ramp Metered When Flashing	W3-8	2C.37	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	—	—	—
Merge	W4-1	2C.40	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30*	—
Lane Ends	W4-2	2C.42	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30*	—
Added Lane	W4-3	2C.41	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30*	—
Cross Traffic Does Not Stop (plaque)	W4-4P	2C.59	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18	—	—	48 x 24
Traffic From Left (Right) Does Not Stop (plaque)	W4-4aP	2C.59	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18	—	—	48 x 24
Oncoming Traffic Does Not Stop (plaque)	W4-4bP	2C.59	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18	—	—	48 x 24
Entering Roadway Merge	W4-5	2C.40	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	—	—
No Merge Area (plaque)	W4-5P	2C.40	18 x 24	18 x 24	24 x 30	—	—	—
Entering Roadway Added Lane	W4-6	2C.41	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	—	—
Road Narrows	W5-1	2C.19	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30*	—
Narrow Bridge	W5-2	2C.20	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30*	—
One Lane Bridge	W5-3	2C.21	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30*	—
Divided Highway	W6-1	2C.22	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	—	—
Divided Highway Ends	W6-2	2C.23	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	—	—
Two-Way Traffic	W6-3	2C.44	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	—	—
Hill	W7-1	2C.16	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Hill with Grade	W7-1a	2C.16	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Use Low Gear (plaque)	W7-2P	2C.57	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
Trucks Use Lower Gear (plaque)	W7-2bP	2C.57	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
XX% Grade (plaque)	W7-3P	2C.57	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
Next XX Miles (plaque)	W7-3aP	2C.55	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
XX% Grade, XX Miles (plaque)	W7-3bP	2C.57	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
Runaway Truck Ramp XX Miles	W7-4	2C.17	78 x 48	78 x 48	78 x 48	78 x 48	—	—
Runaway Truck Ramp (with arrow)	W7-4b	2C.17	78 x 60	78 x 60	78 x 60	78 x 60	—	—
Truck Escape Ramp	W7-4c	2C.17	78 x 60	78 x 60	78 x 60	78 x 60	—	—
Sand, Gravel, Paved (plaques)	W7-4dP,4eP,4fP	2C.17	24 x 12	24 x 12	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	—
Hill Blocks View	W7-6	2C.18	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	—	48 x 48
Bump or Dip	W8-1,2	2C.28	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48

Table 2C-2. Warning Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 2 of 3)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road		Expressway	Freeway	Minimum	Oversized
			Single Lane	Multi-Lane				
Pavement Ends	W8-3	2C.30	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	30 x 30*	—
Soft Shoulder	W8-4	2C.31	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Slippery When Wet	W8-5	2C.32	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Road Condition (plaques)	W8-5P,5bP,5cP	2C.32	24 x 18	24 x 18	30 x 24	36 x 30	—	36 x 30
Ice	W8-5aP	2C.32	24 x 12	24 x 12	30 x 18	30 x 18	—	—
Truck Crossing	W8-6	2C.49	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Loose Gravel	W8-7	2C.32	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Rough Road	W8-8	2C.32	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Low Shoulder	W8-9	2C.31	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Uneven Lanes	W8-11	2C.32	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	48 x 48
No Center Line	W8-12	2C.34	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	—	—
Bridge Ices Before Road	W8-13	2C.32	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Fallen Rocks	W8-14	2C.32	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Grooved Pavement	W8-15	2C.33	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Motorcycle (plaque)	W8-15P	2C.33	24 x 18	24 x 18	30 x 24	36 x 30	—	36 x 30
Metal Bridge Deck	W8-16	2C.33	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Shoulder Drop Off (symbol)	W8-17	2C.31	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Shoulder Drop-Off (plaque)	W8-17P	2C.31	24 x 18	24 x 18	30 x 24	36 x 30	—	36 x 30
Road May Flood	W8-18	2C.35	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Flood Gauge	W8-19	2C.35	12 x 72	12 x 72	—	—	—	—
Gusty Winds Area	W8-21	2C.35	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Fog Area	W8-22	2C.35	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
No Shoulder	W8-23	2C.31	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Shoulder Ends	W8-25	2C.31	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Left (Right) Lane Ends	W9-1	2C.42	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30*	48 x 48
Lane Ends Merge Left (Right)	W9-2	2C.42	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30*	48 x 48
Right (Left) Lane Exit Only Ahead	W9-7	2C.43	132 x 72	132 x 72	132 x 72	132 x 72	—	—
Bicycle	W11-1	2C.49	30 x 30	30 x 30	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Pedestrian	W11-2	2C.50	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Large Animals	W11-3,4,16,17,18,19,20,21,22	2C.50	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Farm Vehicle	W11-5,5a	2C.49	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Snowmobile	W11-6	2C.50	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Equestrian	W11-7	2C.50	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Emergency Vehicle	W11-8	2C.49	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Handicapped	W11-9	2C.50	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	—	48 x 48
Truck	W11-10	2C.49	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Golf Cart	W11-11	2C.49	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Emergency Signal Ahead (plaque)	W11-12P	2C.49	36 x 30	36 x 30	36 x 30	—	—	—
Horse-Drawn Vehicle	W11-14	2C.49	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Bicycle / Pedestrian	W11-15	2C.49	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Trail Crossing	W11-15a	2C.49	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Trail X-ing (plaque)	W11-15P	2C.49	24 x 18	24 x 18	30 x 24	—	—	36 x 30
Double Arrow	W12-1	2C.25	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	—	—
Low Clearance (with arrows)	W12-2	2C.27	36 x 36	36 x 36	48 x 48	48 x 48	30 x 30*	—
Low Clearance	W12-2a	2C.27	78 x 24	78 x 24	—	—	—	—
Advisory Speed (plaque)	W13-1P	2C.08	18 x 18	18 x 18	24 x 24	30 x 30	—	30 x 30
Advisory Exit or Ramp Speed	W13-2,3	2C.14	24 x 30	24 x 30	36 x 48	36 x 48	—	48 x 60
Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Exit or Ramp Speed	W13-6,7	2C.15	24 x 42	24 x 42	36 x 60	36 x 60	—	48 x 84
Dead End, No Outlet	W14-1,2	2C.26	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48

Table 2C-2. Warning Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 3 of 3)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road		Expressway	Freeway	Minimum	Oversized
			Single Lane	Multi-Lane				
Dead End, No Outlet (with arrow)	W14-1a,2a	2C.26	36 x 8	36 x 8	—	—	—	—
No Passing Zone (pennant)	W14-3	2C.45	48 x 48 x 36	48 x 48 x 36	—	—	40 x 40 x 30	64 x 64 x 48
Playground	W15-1	2C.51	30 x 30*	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Share the Road (plaque)	W16-1P	2C.60	18 x 24	18 x 24	24 x 30	—	—	24 x 30
XX Feet	W16-2P	2C.55	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	30 x 24
XX Ft	W16-2aP	2C.55	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	—	—	30 x 18
XX Miles (2-line plaque)	W16-3P	2C.55	30 x 24	30 x 24	—	—	—	—
XX Miles (1-line plaque)	W16-3aP	2C.55	30 x 12	30 x 12	—	—	—	—
Next XX Feet (plaque)	W16-4P	2C.55	30 x 24	30 x 24	—	—	—	—
Supplemental Arrow (plaque)	W16-5P,6P	2C.56	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
Downward Diagonal Arrow (plaque)	W16-7P	2C.50	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	—	—	30 x 18
Advance Street Name (1-line plaque)	W16-8P	2C.58	Varies x 8	Varies x 8	—	—	—	—
Advance Street Name (2-line plaque)	W16-8aP	2C.58	Varies x 15	Varies x 15	—	—	—	—
Ahead (plaque)	W16-9P	2C.50	24 x 12	24 x 12	30 x 18	—	—	—
Photo Enforced (symbol plaque)	W16-10P	2C.61	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18	—	—	48 x 24
Photo Enforced (plaque)	W16-10aP	2C.61	24 x 18	24 x 18	36 x 30	—	—	48 x 36
HOV (plaque)	W16-11P	2G.09	24 x 12	24 x 12	30 x 18	—	—	30 x 18
Traffic Circle (plaque)	W16-12P	2C.46	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
When Flashing (plaque)	W16-13P	2C.50	24 x 18	24 x 18	—	—	—	—
New (plaque)	W16-15P	2C.62	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	—	—	—
Roundabout (plaque)	W16-17P	2C.46	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	—	—	—
NOTICE	W16-18P	2A.15	24 x 12	24 x 12	—	—	—	—
Speed Hump	W17-1	2C.29	30 x 30*	36 x 36	—	—	24 x 24*	48 x 48
Freeway Ends XX Miles	W19-1	2C.24	—	—	—	144 x 48	—	—
Expressway Ends XX Miles	W19-2	2C.24	—	—	144 x 48	—	—	—
Freeway Ends	W19-3	2C.24	—	—	—	48 x 48	—	—
Expressway Ends	W19-4	2C.24	—	—	48 x 48	—	—	—
All Traffic Must Exit	W19-5	2C.24	—	—	90 x 48	90 x 48	—	—
New Traffic Pattern Ahead	W23-2	2C.52	36 x 36	36 x 36	—	—	—	—
Traffic Signal Extended Green	W25-1,2	2C.48	24 x 30	24 x 30	—	—	—	—

* The minimum size required for diamond-shaped warning signs facing traffic on multi-lane conventional roads shall be 36 x 36 per Section 2C.04

Notes: 1. Larger signs may be used when appropriate
2. Dimensions in inches are shown as width x height

Support:

- 02 Section 2A.11 contains information regarding the applicability of the various columns in Table 2C-2.

Standard:

- 03 **Except as provided in Paragraph 5, the minimum size for all diamond-shaped warning signs facing traffic on a multi-lane conventional road where the posted speed limit is higher than 35 mph shall be 36 x 36 inches.**

- 04 **The minimum size for supplemental warning plaques that are not included in Table 2C-2 shall be as shown in Table 2C-3.**

Option:

- 05 If a diamond-shaped warning sign is placed on the left-hand side of a multi-lane roadway to supplement the installation of the same warning sign on the right-hand side of the roadway, the minimum size identified in the Single Lane column in Table 2C-2 may be used.

Table 2C-3. Minimum Size of Supplemental Warning Plaques

Size of Warning Sign	Size of Supplemental Plaque			
	Rectangular			Square
	1 Line	2 Lines	Arrow	
24 x 24	24 x 12	24 x 18	24 x 12	18 x 18
30 x 30				
36 x 36	30 x 18	30 x 24	30 x 18	24 x 24
48 x 48				

Notes: 1. Larger supplemental plaques may be used when appropriate
2. Dimensions in inches are shown as width x height

06 Signs and plaques larger than those shown in Tables 2C-2 and 2C-3 may be used (see Section 2A.11).

Guidance:

07 *The minimum size for all diamond-shaped warning signs facing traffic on exit and entrance ramps should be the size identified in Table 2C-2 for the mainline roadway classification (Expressway or Freeway). If a minimum size is not provided in the Freeway Column, the Expressway size should be used. If a minimum size is not provided in the Freeway or the Expressway Column, the Oversized size should be used.*

Section 2C.05 Placement of Warning Signs

Support:

01 For information on placement of warning signs, see Sections 2A.16 to 2A.21.

02 The time needed for detection, recognition, decision, and reaction is called the Perception-Response Time (PRT). Table 2C-4 is provided as an aid for determining warning sign location. The distances shown in Table 2C-4 can be adjusted for roadway features, other signing, and to improve visibility.

Guidance:

03 *Warning signs should be placed so that they provide an adequate PRT. The distances contained in Table 2C-4 are for guidance purposes and should be applied with engineering judgment. Warning signs should not be placed too far in advance of the condition, such that drivers might tend to forget the warning because of other driving distractions, especially in urban areas.*

Table 2C-4. Guidelines for Advance Placement of Warning Signs

Posted or 85th-Percentile Speed	Advance Placement Distance ¹								
	Condition A: Speed reduction and lane changing in heavy traffic ²	Condition B: Deceleration to the listed advisory speed (mph) for the condition							
		0 ³	10 ⁴	20 ⁴	30 ⁴	40 ⁴	50 ⁴	60 ⁴	70 ⁴
20 mph	225 ft	100 ft ⁶	N/A ⁵	—	—	—	—	—	—
25 mph	325 ft	100 ft ⁶	N/A ⁵	N/A ⁵	—	—	—	—	—
30 mph	460 ft	100 ft ⁶	N/A ⁵	N/A ⁵	—	—	—	—	—
35 mph	565 ft	100 ft ⁶	N/A ⁵	N/A ⁵	N/A ⁵	—	—	—	—
40 mph	670 ft	125 ft	100 ft ⁶	100 ft ⁶	N/A ⁵	—	—	—	—
45 mph	775 ft	175 ft	125 ft	100 ft ⁶	100 ft ⁶	N/A ⁵	—	—	—
50 mph	885 ft	250 ft	200 ft	175 ft	125 ft	100 ft ⁶	—	—	—
55 mph	990 ft	325 ft	275 ft	225 ft	200 ft	125 ft	N/A ⁵	—	—
60 mph	1,100 ft	400 ft	350 ft	325 ft	275 ft	200 ft	100 ft ⁶	—	—
65 mph	1,200 ft	475 ft	450 ft	400 ft	350 ft	275 ft	200 ft	100 ft ⁶	—
70 mph	1,250 ft	550 ft	525 ft	500 ft	450 ft	375 ft	275 ft	150 ft	—
75 mph	1,350 ft	650 ft	625 ft	600 ft	550 ft	475 ft	375 ft	250 ft	100 ft ⁶

¹ The distances are adjusted for a sign legibility distance of 180 feet for Condition A. The distances for Condition B have been adjusted for a sign legibility distance of 250 feet, which is appropriate for an alignment warning symbol sign. For Conditions A and B, warning signs with less than 6-inch legend or more than four words, a minimum of 100 feet should be added to the advance placement distance to provide adequate legibility of the warning sign.

² Typical conditions are locations where the road user must use extra time to adjust speed and change lanes in heavy traffic because of a complex driving situation. Typical signs are Merge and Right Lane Ends. The distances are determined by providing the driver a PRT of 14.0 to 14.5 seconds for vehicle maneuvers (2005 AASHTO Policy, Exhibit 3-3, Decision Sight Distance, Avoidance Maneuver E) minus the legibility distance of 180 feet for the appropriate sign.

³ Typical condition is the warning of a potential stop situation. Typical signs are Stop Ahead, Yield Ahead, Signal Ahead, and Intersection Warning signs. The distances are based on the 2005 AASHTO Policy, Exhibit 3-1, Stopping Sight Distance, providing a PRT of 2.5 seconds, a deceleration rate of 11.2 feet/second², minus the sign legibility distance of 180 feet.

⁴ Typical conditions are locations where the road user must decrease speed to maneuver through the warned condition. Typical signs are Turn, Curve, Reverse Turn, or Reverse Curve. The distance is determined by providing a 2.5 second PRT, a vehicle deceleration rate of 10 feet/second², minus the sign legibility distance of 250 feet.

⁵ No suggested distances are provided for these speeds, as the placement location is dependent on site conditions and other signing. An alignment warning sign may be placed anywhere from the point of curvature up to 100 feet in advance of the curve. However, the alignment warning sign should be installed in advance of the curve and at least 100 feet from any other signs.

⁶ The minimum advance placement distance is listed as 100 feet to provide adequate spacing between signs.

- 04 *Minimum spacing between warning signs with different messages should be based on the estimated PRT for driver comprehension of and reaction to the second sign.*
- 05 *The effectiveness of the placement of warning signs should be periodically evaluated under both day and night conditions.*

Option:

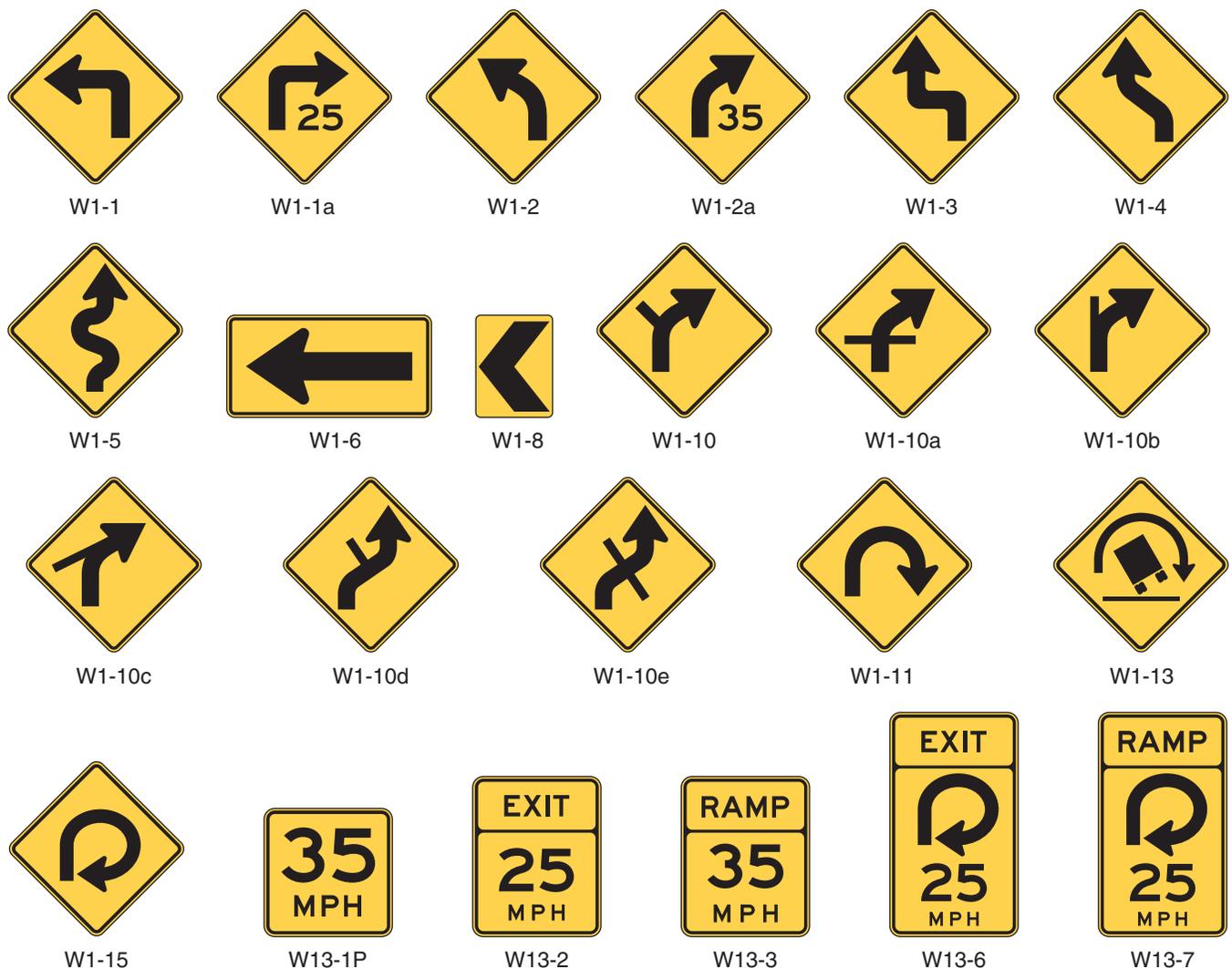
- 06 Warning signs that advise road users about conditions that are not related to a specific location, such as Deer Crossing or SOFT SHOULDER, may be installed in an appropriate location, based on engineering judgment, since they are not covered in Table 2C-4.

Section 2C.06 Horizontal Alignment Warning Signs

Support:

- 01 A variety of horizontal alignment warning signs (see Figure 2C-1), pavement markings (see Chapter 3B), and delineation (see Chapter 3F) can be used to advise motorists of a change in the roadway alignment. Uniform application of these traffic control devices with respect to the amount of change in the roadway alignment conveys a consistent message establishing driver expectancy and promoting effective roadway operations. The design and application of horizontal alignment warning signs to meet those requirements are addressed in Sections 2C.06 through 2C.15.

Figure 2C-1. Horizontal Alignment Signs and Plaques



Note: Turn arrows and reverse turn arrows may be substituted for the curve arrows and reverse curve arrows on the W1-10 series signs where appropriate.

Standard:

- 02 **In advance of horizontal curves on freeways, on expressways, and on roadways with more than 1,000 AADT that are functionally classified as arterials or collectors, horizontal alignment warning signs shall be used in accordance with Table 2C-5 based on the speed differential between the roadway's posted or statutory speed limit or 85th-percentile speed, whichever is higher, or the prevailing speed on the approach to the curve, and the horizontal curve's advisory speed.**

Option:

- 03 Horizontal Alignment Warning signs may also be used on other roadways or on arterial and collector roadways with less than 1,000 AADT based on engineering judgment.

Section 2C.07 Horizontal Alignment Signs (W1-1 through W1-5, W1-11, W1-15)**Standard:**

- 01 **If Table 2C-5 indicates that a horizontal alignment sign (see Figure 2C-1) is required, recommended, or allowed, the sign installed in advance of the curve shall be a Curve (W1-2) sign unless a different sign is recommended or allowed by the provisions of this Section.**
- 02 **A Turn (W1-1) sign shall be used instead of a Curve sign in advance of curves that have advisory speeds of 30 mph or less (see Figure 2C-2).**

Guidance:

- 03 *Where there are two changes in roadway alignment in opposite directions that are separated by a tangent distance of less than 600 feet, the Reverse Turn (W1-3) sign should be used instead of multiple Turn (W1-1) signs and the Reverse Curve (W1-4) sign should be used instead of multiple Curve (W1-2) signs.*

Option:

- 04 A Winding Road (W1-5) sign may be used instead of multiple Turn (W1-1) or Curve (W1-2) signs where there are three or more changes in roadway alignment each separated by a tangent distance of less than 600 feet.
- 05 A NEXT XX MILES (W7-3aP) supplemental distance plaque (see Section 2C.55) may be installed below the Winding Road sign where continuous roadway curves exist for a specific distance.
- 06 If the curve has a change in horizontal alignment of 135 degrees or more, the Hairpin Curve (W1-11) sign may be used instead of a Curve or Turn sign.
- 07 If the curve has a change of direction of approximately 270 degrees, such as on a cloverleaf interchange ramp, the 270-degree Loop (W1-15) sign may be used instead of a Curve or Turn sign.

Guidance:

- 08 *When the Hairpin Curve sign or the 270-degree Loop sign is installed, either a One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign or Chevron Alignment (W1-8) signs should be installed on the outside of the turn or curve.*

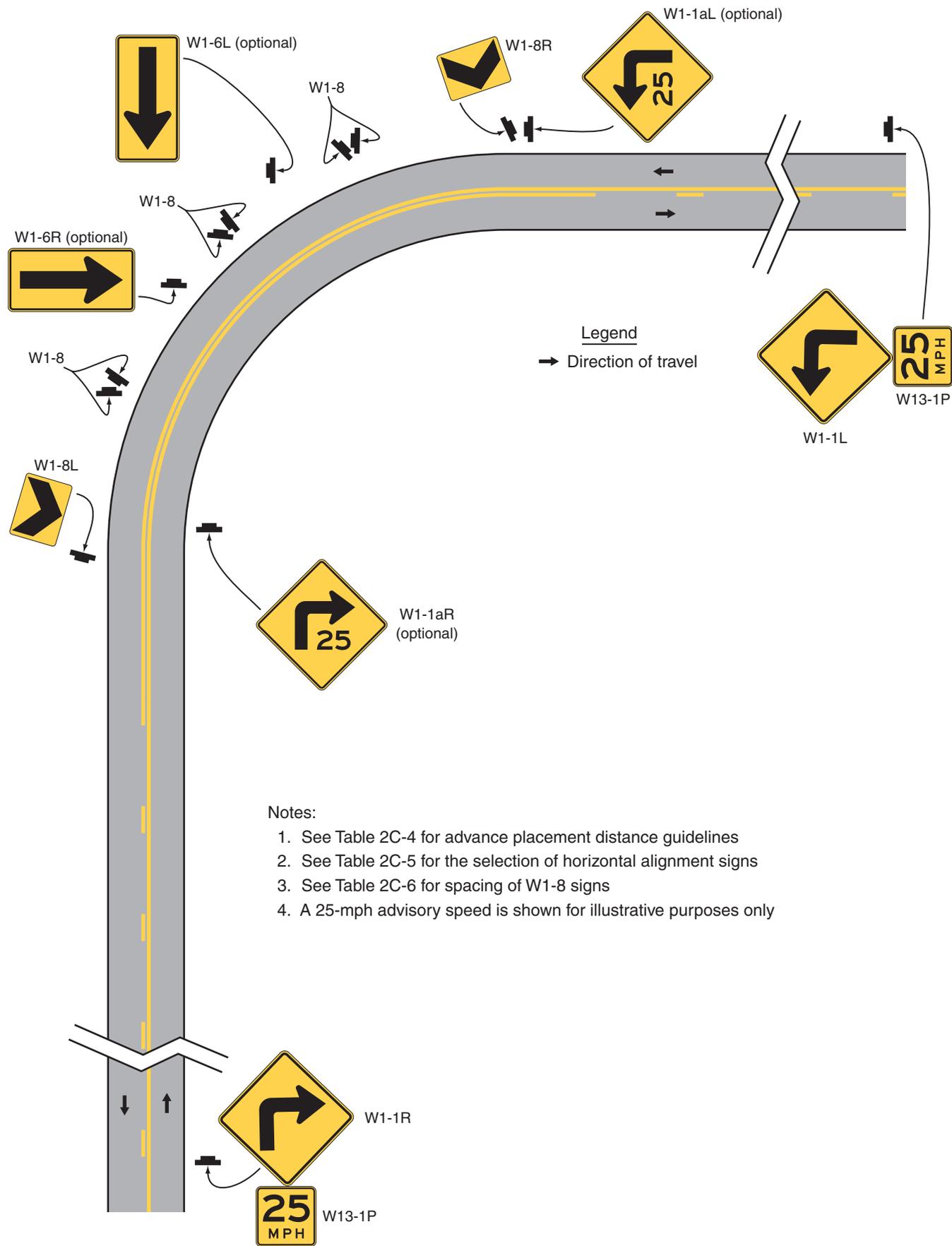
Table 2C-5. Horizontal Alignment Sign Selection

Type of Horizontal Alignment Sign	Difference Between Speed Limit and Advisory Speed				
	5 mph	10 mph	15 mph	20 mph	25 mph or more
Turn (W1-1), Curve (W1-2), Reverse Turn (W1-3), Reverse Curve (W1-4), Winding Road (W1-5), and Combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection (W10-1) (see Section 2C.07 to determine which sign to use)	Recommended	Required	Required	Required	Required
Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P)	Recommended	Required	Required	Required	Required
Chevrons (W1-8) and/or One Direction Large Arrow (W1-6)	Optional	Recommended	Required	Required	Required
Exit Speed (W13-2) and Ramp Speed (W13-3) on exit ramp	Optional	Optional	Recommended	Required	Required

Note: Required means that the sign and/or plaque shall be used, recommended means that the sign and/or plaque should be used, and optional means that the sign and/or plaque may be used.

See Section 2C.06 for roadways with less than 1,000 ADT.

Figure 2C-2. Example of Warning Signs for a Turn



Notes:

1. See Table 2C-4 for advance placement distance guidelines
2. See Table 2C-5 for the selection of horizontal alignment signs
3. See Table 2C-6 for spacing of W1-8 signs
4. A 25-mph advisory speed is shown for illustrative purposes only

Section 2C.08 Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P)

Option:

01 The Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque (see Figure 2C-1) may be used to supplement any warning sign to indicate the advisory speed for a condition.

Standard:

02 **The use of the Advisory Speed plaque for horizontal curves shall be in accordance with the information shown in Table 2C-5. The Advisory Speed plaque shall also be used where an engineering study indicates a need to advise road users of the advisory speed for other roadway conditions.**

03 **If used, the Advisory Speed plaque shall carry the message XX MPH. The speed displayed shall be a multiple of 5 mph.**

04 **Except in emergencies or when the condition is temporary, an Advisory Speed plaque shall not be installed until the advisory speed has been determined by an engineering study.**

05 **The Advisory Speed plaque shall only be used to supplement a warning sign and shall not be installed as a separate sign installation.**

06 **The advisory speed shall be determined by an engineering study that follows established engineering practices.**

Support:

07 Among the established engineering practices that are appropriate for the determination of the recommended advisory speed for a horizontal curve are the following:

- A. An accelerometer that provides a direct determination of side friction factors
- B. A design speed equation
- C. A traditional ball-bank indicator using the following criteria:
 1. 16 degrees of ball-bank for speeds of 20 mph or less
 2. 14 degrees of ball-bank for speeds of 25 to 30 mph
 3. 12 degrees of ball-bank for speeds of 35 mph and higher

08 The 16, 14, and 12 degrees of ball-bank criteria are comparable to the current AASHTO horizontal curve design guidance. Research has shown that drivers often exceed existing posted advisory curve speeds by 7 to 10 mph.

Guidance:

09 *The advisory speed should be determined based on free-flowing traffic conditions.*

10 *Because changes in conditions, such as roadway geometrics, surface characteristics, or sight distance, might affect the advisory speed, each location should be evaluated periodically or when conditions change.*

Section 2C.09 Chevron Alignment Sign (W1-8)

Standard:

01 **The use of the Chevron Alignment (W1-8) sign (see Figures 2C-1 and 2C-2) to provide additional emphasis and guidance for a change in horizontal alignment shall be in accordance with the information shown in Table 2C-5.**

Option:

02 When used, Chevron Alignment signs may be used instead of or in addition to standard delineators.

Standard:

03 **The Chevron Alignment sign shall be a vertical rectangle. No border shall be used on the Chevron Alignment sign.**

04 **If used, Chevron Alignment signs shall be installed on the outside of a turn or curve, in line with and at approximately a right angle to approaching traffic. Chevron Alignment signs shall be installed at a minimum height of 4 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the traveled way.**

Guidance:

05 *The approximate spacing of Chevron Alignment signs on the turn or curve measured from the point of curvature (PC) should be as shown in Table 2C-6.*

06 *If used, Chevron Alignment signs should be visible for a sufficient distance to provide the road user with adequate time to react to the change in alignment.*

Standard:

07 **Chevron Alignment signs shall not be placed on the far side of a T-intersection facing traffic on the stem approach to warn drivers that a through movement is not physically possible, as this is the function of a Two-Direction (or One-Direction) Large Arrow sign.**

08 **Chevron Alignment signs shall not be used to mark obstructions within or adjacent to the roadway, including the beginning of guardrails or barriers, as this is the function of an object marker (see Section 2C.63).**

Table 2C-6. Typical Spacing of Chevron Alignment Signs on Horizontal Curves

Advisory Speed	Curve Radius	Sign Spacing
15 mph or less	Less than 200 feet	40 feet
20 to 30 mph	200 to 400 feet	80 feet
35 to 45 mph	401 to 700 feet	120 feet
50 to 60 mph	701 to 1,250 feet	160 feet
More than 60 mph	More than 1,250 feet	200 feet

Note: The relationship between the curve radius and the advisory speed shown in this table should not be used to determine the advisory speed.

Section 2C.10 Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed Signs (W1-1a, W1-2a)

Option:

01 The Turn (W1-1) sign or the Curve (W1-2) sign may be combined with the Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque (see Section 2C.08) to create a combination Turn/Advisory Speed (W1-1a) sign or combination Curve/Advisory Speed (W1-2a) sign (see Figure 2C-1).

02 The combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed sign may be used to supplement the advance Horizontal Alignment warning sign and Advisory Speed plaque based upon an engineering study.

Standard:

03 **If used, the combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed sign shall not be used alone and shall not be used as a substitute for a Horizontal Alignment warning sign and Advisory Speed plaque at the advance warning location. The combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed sign shall only be used as a supplement to the advance Horizontal Alignment warning sign. If used, the combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed sign shall be installed at the beginning of the turn or curve.**

Guidance:

04 *The advisory speed displayed on the combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Speed sign should be based on the advisory speed for the horizontal curve using recommended engineering practices (see Section 2C.08).*

Section 2C.11 Combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection Signs (W1-10 Series)

Option:

01 The Turn (W1-1) sign or the Curve (W1-2) sign may be combined with the Cross Road (W2-1) sign or the Side Road (W2-2 or W2-3) sign to create a combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection (W1-10 series) sign (see Figure 2C-1) that depicts the condition where an intersection occurs within or immediately adjacent to a turn or curve.

Guidance:

02 *Elements of the combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection sign related to horizontal alignment should comply with the provisions of Section 2C.07, and elements related to intersection configuration should comply with the provisions of Section 2C.46. The symbol design should approximate the configuration of the intersecting roadway(s). No more than one Cross Road or two Side Road symbols should be displayed on any one combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection sign.*

Standard:

03 **The use of the combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection sign shall be in accordance with the appropriate Turn or Curve sign information shown in Table 2C-5.**

Section 2C.12 One-Direction Large Arrow Sign (W1-6)

Option:

01 A One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign (see Figure 2C-1) may be used either as a supplement or alternative to Chevron Alignment signs in order to delineate a change in horizontal alignment (see Figure 2C-2).

02 A One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign may be used to supplement a Turn or Reverse Turn sign (see Figure 2C-2) to emphasize the abrupt curvature.

Standard:

03 **The One-Direction Large Arrow sign shall be a horizontal rectangle with an arrow pointing to the left or right.**

04 **The use of the One-Direction Large Arrow sign shall be in accordance with the information shown in Table 2C-5.**

05 **If used, the One-Direction Large Arrow sign shall be installed on the outside of a turn or curve in line with and at approximately a right angle to approaching traffic.**

06 **The One-Direction Large Arrow sign shall not be used where there is no alignment change in the direction of travel, such as at the beginnings and ends of medians or at center piers.**

07 **The One-Direction Large Arrow sign directing traffic to the right shall not be used in the central island of a roundabout.**

Guidance:

08 *If used, the One-Direction Large Arrow sign should be visible for a sufficient distance to provide the road user with adequate time to react to the change in alignment.*

Section 2C.13 Truck Rollover Warning Sign (W1-13)*Option:*

01 A Truck Rollover Warning (W1-13) sign (see Figure 2C-1) may be used to warn drivers of vehicles with a high center of gravity, such as trucks, tankers, and recreational vehicles, of a curve or turn where geometric conditions might contribute to a loss of control and a rollover as determined by an engineering study.

Support:

02 Among the established engineering practices that are appropriate for the determination of the truck rollover potential of a horizontal curve are the following:

- A. An accelerometer that provides a direct determination of side friction factors
- B. A design speed equation
- C. A traditional ball-bank indicator using 10 degrees of ball-bank

Standard:

03 **If a Truck Rollover Warning (W1-13) sign is used, it shall be accompanied by an Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque indicating the recommended speed for vehicles with a higher center of gravity.**

Option:

04 The Truck Rollover Warning sign may be displayed as a static sign, as a static sign supplemented by a flashing warning beacon, or as a changeable message sign activated by the detection of an approaching vehicle with a high center of gravity that is traveling in excess of the recommended speed for the condition.

Support:

05 The curved arrow on the Truck Rollover Warning sign shows the direction of roadway curvature. The truck tips in the opposite direction.

Section 2C.14 Advisory Exit and Ramp Speed Signs (W13-2 and W13-3)**Standard:**

01 **Advisory Exit Speed (W13-2) and Advisory Ramp Speed (W13-3) signs (see Figure 2C-1) shall be vertical rectangles. The use of Advisory Exit Speed and Advisory Ramp Speed signs on freeway and expressway ramps shall be in accordance with the information shown in Table 2C-5.**

Guidance:

02 *If used, the Advisory Exit Speed sign should be installed along the deceleration lane and the advisory speed displayed should be based on an engineering study. When a Truck Rollover (W1-13) sign (see Section 2C.13) is also installed for the ramp, the advisory exit speed should be based on the truck advisory speed for the horizontal alignment using recommended engineering practices.*

03 *If used, the Advisory Exit Speed sign should be visible in time for the road user to decelerate and make an exiting maneuver.*

Support:

04 table 2C-4 lists recommended advance sign placement distances for deceleration to various advisory speeds.

Guidance:

05 *If used, the Advisory Ramp Speed sign should be installed on the ramp to confirm the ramp advisory speed.*

- 06 *If used, Chevron Alignment (W1-8) signs and/or One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) signs should be installed on the outside of the exit curve as described in Sections 2C.09 and 2C.12.*

Option:

- 07 Where there is a need to remind road users of the recommended advisory speed, a horizontal alignment warning sign with an advisory speed plaque may be installed at or beyond the beginning of the exit curve or on the outside of the curve, provided that it is apparent that the sign applies only to exiting traffic. These signs may also be used at intermediate points along the ramp, especially if the ramp curvature changes and the subsequent curves on the ramp have a different advisory speed than the initial ramp curve.

Support:

- 08 Figure 2C-3 shows an example of advisory speed signing for an exit ramp.

Section 2C.15 Combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Exit and Ramp Speed Signs (W13-6 and W13-7)

Option:

- 01 A horizontal alignment sign (see Section 2C.07) may be combined with an Advisory Exit Speed or Advisory Ramp Speed sign to create a combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Exit Speed (W13-6) sign or a combination Horizontal Alignment/Advisory Ramp Speed (W13-7) sign (see Figure 2C-1). These combination signs may be used where the severity of the exit ramp curvature might not be apparent to road users in the deceleration lane or where the curvature needs to be specifically identified as being on the exit ramp rather than on the mainline.

Section 2C.16 Hill Signs (W7-1, W7-1a)

Guidance:

- 01 *The Hill (W7-1) sign (see Figure 2C-4) should be used in advance of a downgrade where the length, percent of grade, horizontal curvature, and/or other physical features require special precautions on the part of road users.*
- 02 *The Hill sign and supplemental grade (W7-3P) plaque (see Section 2C.57) used in combination, or the W7-1a sign used alone, should be installed in advance of downgrades for the following conditions:*
- A. 5% grade that is more than 3,000 feet in length,
 - B. 6% grade that is more than 2,000 feet in length,
 - C. 7% grade that is more than 1,000 feet in length,
 - D. 8% grade that is more than 750 feet in length, or
 - E. 9% grade that is more than 500 feet in length.

- 03 *These signs should also be installed for steeper grades or where crash experience and field observations indicate a need.*

- 04 *Supplemental plaques (see Section 2C.57) and larger signs should be used for emphasis or where special hill characteristics exist. On longer grades, the use of the Hill sign with a distance (W7-3aP) plaque or the combination distance/grade (W7-3bP) plaque at periodic intervals of approximately 1-mile spacing should be considered.*

Standard:

- 05 **If the percent grade is displayed on a supplemental plaque, the plaque shall be placed below the Hill (W7-1) sign.**

Option:

- 06 A USE LOW GEAR (W7-2P) or TRUCKS USE LOWER GEAR (W7-2bP) supplemental plaque (see Figure 2C-4) may be used to indicate a situation where downshifting as well as braking might be advisable.

Section 2C.17 Truck Escape Ramp Signs (W7-4 Series)

Guidance:

- 01 *Where applicable, truck escape (or runaway truck) ramp advance warning signs (see Figure 2C-4) should be located approximately 1 mile, and 1/2 mile in advance of the grade, and of the ramp. A sign also should be placed at the gore. A RUNAWAY VEHICLES ONLY (R4-10) sign (see Section 2B.35) should be installed near the ramp entrance to discourage other road users from entering the ramp. No Parking (R8-3) signs should be placed near the ramp entrance.*

Standard:

- 02 **When truck escape ramps are installed, at least one of the W7-4 series signs shall be used.**

Figure 2C-3. Example of Advisory Speed Signing for an Exit Ramp

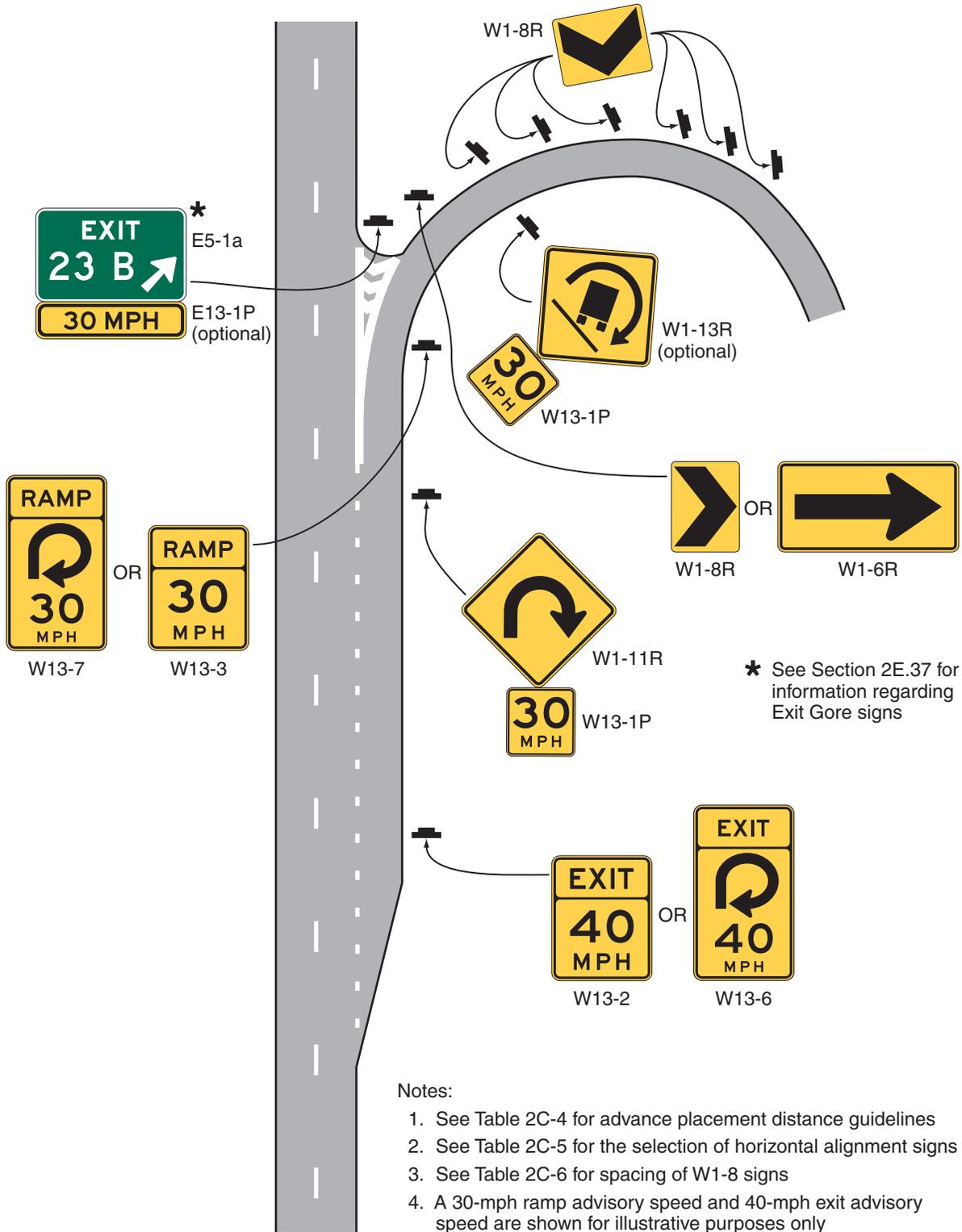
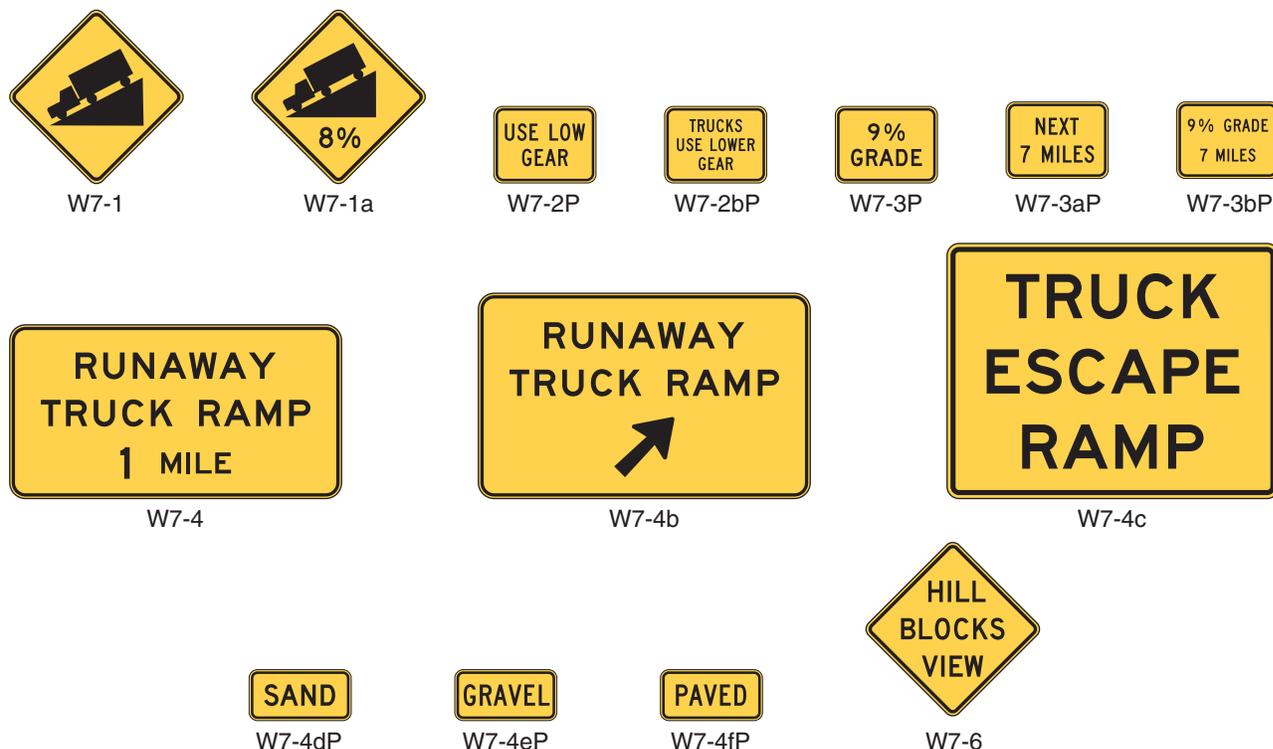


Figure 2C-4. Vertical Grade Signs and Plaques

Option:

- 03 A SAND (W7-4dP), GRAVEL (W7-4eP), or PAVED (W7-4fP) supplemental plaque (see Figure 2C-4) may be used to describe the ramp surface. State and local highway agencies may develop appropriate word message signs for the specific situation.

Section 2C.18 HILL BLOCKS VIEW Sign (W7-6)

Option:

- 01 A HILL BLOCKS VIEW (W7-6) sign (see Figure 2C-4) may be used in advance of a crest vertical curve to advise road users to reduce speed as they approach and traverse the hill as only limited stopping sight distance is available.

Guidance:

- 02 When a HILL BLOCKS VIEW sign is used, it should be supplemented by an Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque indicating the recommended speed for traveling over the hillcrest based on available stopping sight distance.

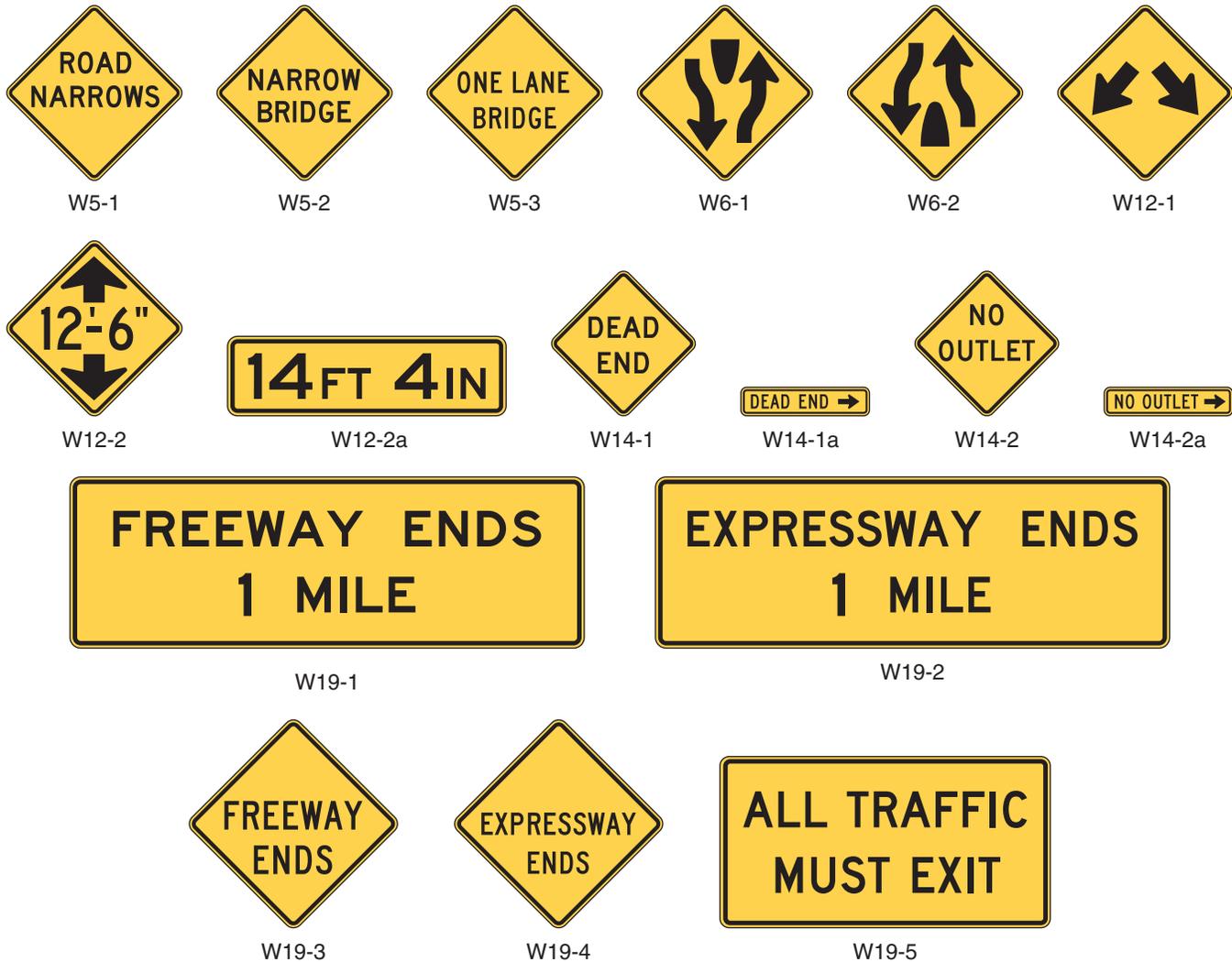
Section 2C.19 ROAD NARROWS Sign (W5-1)

Guidance:

- 01 Except as provided in Paragraph 2, a ROAD NARROWS (W5-1) sign (see Figure 2C-5) should be used in advance of a transition on two-lane roads where the pavement width is reduced abruptly to a width such that vehicles traveling in opposite directions cannot simultaneously travel through the narrow portion of the roadway without reducing speed.

Option:

- 02 The ROAD NARROWS (W5-1) sign may be omitted on low-volume local streets that have speed limits of 30 mph or less.
- 03 Additional emphasis may be provided by the use of object markers and delineators (see Sections 2B.63 through 2B.65 and Chapter 3F). The Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque (see Section 2C.08) may be used to indicate the recommended speed.

Figure 2C-5. Miscellaneous Warning Signs**Section 2C.20 NARROW BRIDGE Sign (W5-2)***Guidance:*

- 01 A **NARROW BRIDGE** (W5-2) sign (see Figure 2C-5) should be used in advance of any bridge or culvert having a two-way roadway clearance width of 16 to 18 feet, or any bridge or culvert having a roadway clearance less than the width of the approach travel lanes.
- 02 Additional emphasis should be provided by the use of object markers, delineators, and/or pavement markings.

Option:

- 03 A **NARROW BRIDGE** sign may be used in advance of a bridge or culvert on which the approach shoulders are narrowed or eliminated.

Section 2C.21 ONE LANE BRIDGE Sign (W5-3)*Guidance:*

- 01 A **ONE LANE BRIDGE** (W5-3) sign (see Figure 2C-5) should be used on two-way roadways in advance of any bridge or culvert:
- A. Having a clear roadway width of less than 16 feet, or
 - B. Having a clear roadway width of less than 18 feet when commercial vehicles constitute a high proportion of the traffic, or
 - C. Having a clear roadway width of 18 feet or less where the sight distance is limited on the approach to the structure.
- 02 Additional emphasis should be provided by the use of object markers, delineators, and/or pavement markings.

Section 2C.22 Divided Highway Sign (W6-1)*Guidance:*

- 01 A Divided Highway (W6-1) sign (see Figure 2C-5) should be used on the approaches to a section of highway (not an intersection or junction) where the opposing flows of traffic are separated by a median or other physical barrier.

Standard:

- 02 The Divided Highway (W6-1) sign shall not be used instead of a Keep Right (R4-7 series) sign on the approach end of a median island.

Section 2C.23 Divided Highway Ends Sign (W6-2)*Guidance:*

- 01 A Divided Highway Ends (W6-2) sign (see Figure 2C-5) should be used in advance of the end of a section of physically divided highway (not an intersection or junction) as a warning of two-way traffic ahead.
- 02 The Two-Way Traffic (W6-3) sign (see Section 2C.44) should be used to give warning and notice of the transition to a two-lane, two-way section.

Section 2C.24 Freeway or Expressway Ends Signs (W19 Series)*Option:*

- 01 A FREEWAY ENDS XX MILES (W19-1) sign or a FREEWAY ENDS (W19-3) sign (see Figure 2C-5) may be used in advance of the end of a freeway.
- 02 An EXPRESSWAY ENDS XX MILES (W19-2) sign or an EXPRESSWAY ENDS (W19-4) sign (see Figure 2C-5) may be used in advance of the end of an expressway.
- 03 The rectangular W19-1 and W19-2 signs may be post-mounted or may be mounted overhead for increased emphasis.

Guidance:

- 04 If the reason that the freeway is ending is that the next portion of the freeway is not yet constructed and as a result all traffic must use an exit ramp to leave the freeway, an ALL TRAFFIC MUST EXIT (W19-5) sign (see Figure 2C-5) should be used in addition to the Freeway Ends signs in advance of the downstream end of the freeway.

Section 2C.25 Double Arrow Sign (W12-1)*Option:*

- 01 The Double Arrow (W12-1) sign (see Figure 2C-5) may be used to advise road users that traffic is permitted to pass on either side of an island, obstruction, or gore in the roadway. Traffic separated by this sign may either rejoin or change directions.

Guidance:

- 02 If used on an island, the Double Arrow sign should be mounted near the approach end.
- 03 If used in front of a pier or obstruction, the Double Arrow sign should be mounted on the face of, or just in front of, the obstruction. Where stripe markings are used on the obstruction, they should be discontinued to leave a 3-inch space around the outside of the sign.

Section 2C.26 DEAD END/NO OUTLET Signs (W14-1, W14-1a, W14-2, W14-2a)*Option:*

- 01 The DEAD END (W14-1) sign (see Figure 2C-5) may be used at the entrance of a single road or street that terminates in a dead end or cul-de-sac. The NO OUTLET (W14-2) sign (see Figure 2C-5) may be used at the entrance to a road or road network from which there is no other exit.
- 02 DEAD END (W14-1a) or NO OUTLET (W14-2a) signs (see Figure 2C-5) may be used in combination with Street Name (D3-1) signs (see Section 2D.43) to warn turning traffic that the cross street ends in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- 03 At locations where the cross street does not have a name, the W14-1a or W14-2a signs may be used alone in place of a street name sign.

Standard:

- 04 The DEAD END (W14-1a) and NO OUTLET (W14-2a) signs shall be horizontal rectangles with an arrow pointing to the left or right.

05 **When the W14-1 or W14-2 sign is used, the sign shall be posted as near as practical to the entry point or at a sufficient advance distance to permit the road user to avoid the dead end or no outlet condition by turning at the nearest intersecting street.**

06 **The DEAD END (W14-1a) or NO OUTLET (W14-2a) signs shall not be used instead of the W14-1 or W14-2 signs where traffic can proceed straight through the intersection into the dead end street or no outlet area.**

Section 2C.27 Low Clearance Signs (W12-2 and W12-2a)

Standard:

01 **The Low Clearance (W12-2) sign (see Figure 2C-5) shall be used to warn road users of clearances less than 12 inches above the statutory maximum vehicle height.**

Guidance:

02 *The actual clearance should be displayed on the Low Clearance sign to the nearest 1 inch not exceeding the actual clearance. However, in areas that experience changes in temperature causing frost action, a reduction, not exceeding 3 inches, should be used for this condition.*

03 *Where the clearance is less than the legal maximum vehicle height, the W12-2 sign with a supplemental distance plaque should be placed at the nearest intersecting road or wide point in the road at which a vehicle can detour or turn around.*

04 *In the case of an arch or other structure under which the clearance varies greatly, two or more signs should be used as necessary on the structure itself to give information as to the clearances over the entire roadway.*

05 *Clearances should be evaluated periodically, particularly when resurfacing operations have occurred.*

Option:

06 The Low Clearance sign may be installed on or in advance of the structure. If a sign is placed on the structure, it may be a rectangular shape (W12-2a) with the appropriate legend (see Figure 2C-5).

Section 2C.28 BUMP and DIP Signs (W8-1, W8-2)

Guidance:

01 *BUMP (W8-1) and DIP (W8-2) signs (see Figure 2C-6) should be used to give warning of a sharp rise or depression in the profile of the road.*

Option:

02 These signs may be supplemented with an Advisory Speed plaque (see Section 2C.08).

Standard:

03 **The DIP sign shall not be used at a short stretch of depressed alignment that might momentarily hide a vehicle.**

Guidance:

04 *A short stretch of depressed alignment that might momentarily hide a vehicle should be treated as a no-passing zone when center line striping is provided on a two-lane or three-lane road (see Section 3B.02).*

Section 2C.29 SPEED HUMP Sign (W17-1)

Guidance:

01 *The SPEED HUMP (W17-1) sign (see Figure 2C-6) should be used to give warning of a vertical deflection in the roadway that is designed to limit the speed of traffic.*

02 *If used, the SPEED HUMP sign should be supplemented by an Advisory Speed plaque (see Section 2C.08).*

Option:

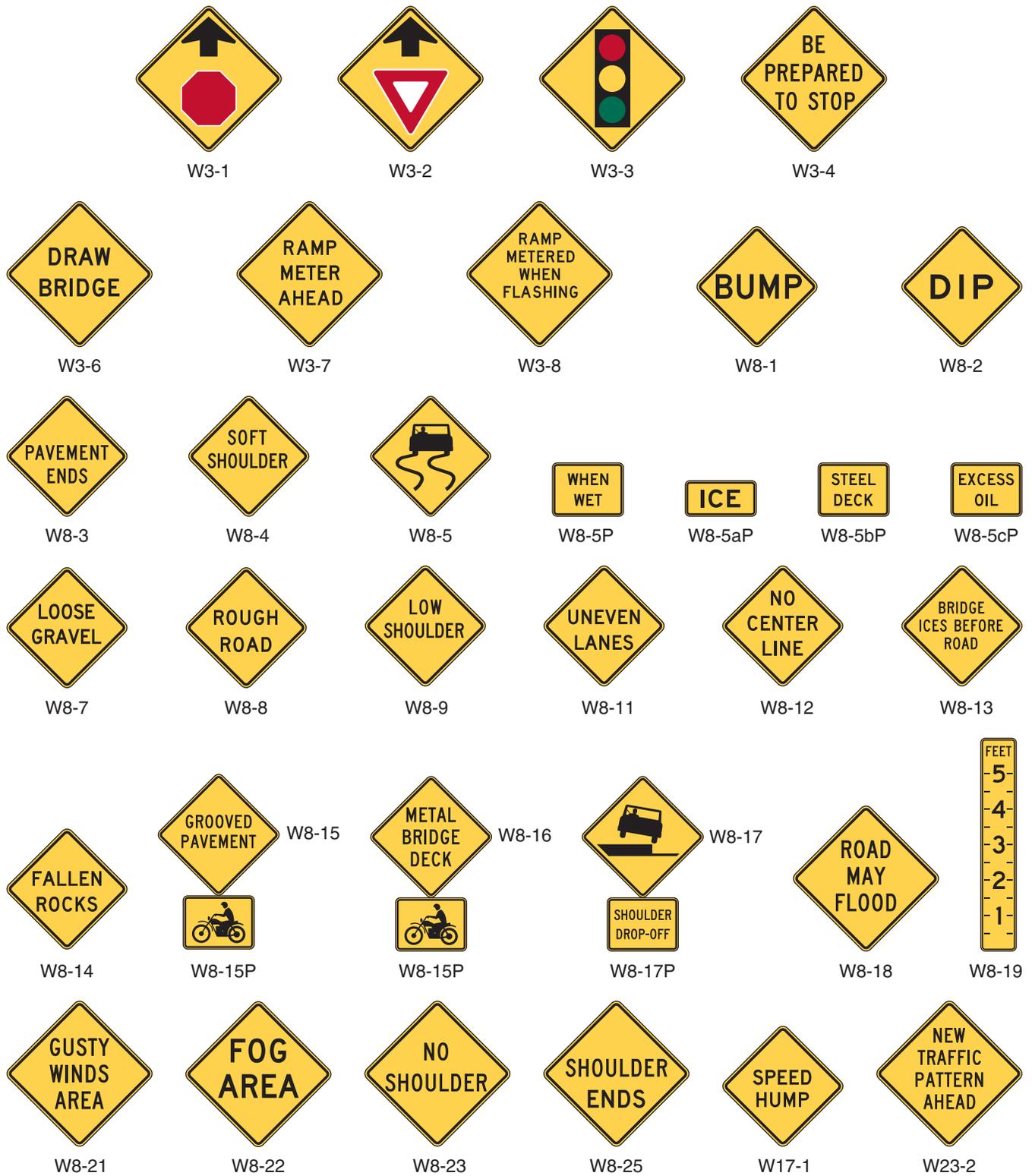
03 If a series of speed humps exists in close proximity, an Advisory Speed plaque may be eliminated on all but the first SPEED HUMP sign in the series.

04 The legend SPEED BUMP may be used instead of the legend SPEED HUMP on the W17-1 sign.

Support:

05 Speed humps generally provide more gradual vertical deflection than speed bumps. Speed bumps limit the speed of traffic more severely than speed humps. Other forms of speed humps include speed tables and raised intersections. However, these differences in engineering terminology are not well known by the public, so for signing purposes these terms are interchangeable.

Figure 2C-6. Roadway and Weather Condition and Advance Traffic Control Signs and Plaques



Section 2C.30 PAVEMENT ENDS Sign (W8-3)*Guidance:*

- 01 A *PAVEMENT ENDS (W8-3)* word message sign (see Figure 2C-6) should be used where a paved surface changes to either a gravel treated surface or an earth road surface.

Option:

- 02 An Advisory Speed plaque (see Section 2C.08) may be used when the change in roadway condition requires a reduced speed.

Section 2C.31 Shoulder Signs (W8-4, W8-9, W8-17, W8-23, and W8-25)*Option:*

- 01 The *SOFT SHOULDER (W8-4)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn of a soft shoulder condition.
- 02 The *LOW SHOULDER (W8-9)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn of a shoulder condition where there is an elevation difference of less than 3 inches between the shoulder and the travel lane.

Guidance:

- 03 *The Shoulder Drop Off (W8-17)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) should be used where an unprotected shoulder drop-off, adjacent to the travel lane, exceeds 3 inches in depth for a significant continuous length along the roadway, based on engineering judgment.

Option:

- 04 A *SHOULDER DROP-OFF (W8-17P)* supplemental plaque (see Figure 2C-6) may be mounted below the W8-17 sign.
- 05 The *NO SHOULDER (W8-23)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn road users that a shoulder does not exist along a portion of the roadway.
- 06 The *SHOULDER ENDS (W8-25)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn road users that a shoulder is ending.

Standard:

- 07 **When used, shoulder signs shall be placed in advance of the condition (see Table 2C-4).**

Guidance:

- 08 *Additional shoulder signs should be placed at appropriate intervals along the road where the condition continually exists.*

Section 2C.32 Surface Condition Signs (W8-5, W8-7, W8-8, W8-11, W8-13, and W8-14)*Option:*

- 01 The *Slippery When Wet (W8-5)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn of unexpected slippery conditions. Supplemental plaques with legends such as *ICE*, *WHEN WET*, *STEEL DECK*, or *EXCESS OIL* may be used with the W8-5 sign to indicate the reason that the slippery conditions might be present.
- 02 The *LOOSE GRAVEL (W8-7)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn of loose gravel on the roadway surface.
- 03 The *ROUGH ROAD (W8-8)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn of a rough roadway surface.
- 04 An *UNEVEN LANES (W8-11)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn of a difference in elevation between travel lanes.
- 05 The *BRIDGE ICES BEFORE ROAD (W8-13)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used in advance of bridges to advise bridge users of winter weather conditions. The *BRIDGE ICES BEFORE ROAD* sign may be removed or covered during seasons of the year when its message is not relevant.
- 06 The *FALLEN ROCKS (W8-14)* sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used in advance of an area that is adjacent to a hillside, mountain, or cliff where rocks frequently fall onto the roadway.

Guidance:

- 07 *When used, Surface Condition signs should be placed in advance of the beginning of the affected section (see Table 2C-4), and additional signs should be placed at appropriate intervals along the road where the condition exists.*

Section 2C.33 Warning Signs and Plaques for Motorcyclists (W8-15, W8-15P, and W8-16)

Support:

- 01 The signs and plaques described in this Section are intended to give motorcyclists advance notice of surface conditions that might adversely affect their ability to maintain control of their motorcycle under wet or dry conditions. The use of some of the advance surface condition warning signs described in Section 2C.32, such as Slippery When Wet, LOOSE GRAVEL, or ROUGH ROAD, can also be helpful to motorcyclists if those conditions exist.

Option:

- 02 If a portion of a street or highway features a roadway pavement surface that is grooved or textured instead of smooth, such as a grooved skid resistance treatment for a horizontal curve or a brick pavement surface, a GROOVED PAVEMENT (W8-15) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to provide advance warning of this condition to motorcyclists, bicyclists, and other road users. Alternate legends such as TEXTURED PAVEMENT or BRICK PAVEMENT may also be used on the W8-15 sign.
- 03 If a bridge or a portion of a bridge includes a metal or grated surface, a METAL BRIDGE DECK (W8-16) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to provide advance warning of this condition to motorcyclists, bicyclists, and other road users.
- 04 A Motorcycle (W8-15P) plaque (see Figure 2C-6) may be mounted below or above a W8-15 or W8-16 sign if the warning is intended to be directed primarily to motorcyclists.

Section 2C.34 NO CENTER LINE Sign (W8-12)

Option:

- 01 The NO CENTER LINE (W8-12) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn of a roadway without center line pavement markings.

Section 2C.35 Weather Condition Signs (W8-18, W8-19, W8-21, and W8-22)

Option:

- 01 The ROAD MAY FLOOD (W8-18) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn road users that a section of roadway is subject to frequent flooding. A Depth Gauge (W8-19) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may also be installed within a roadway section that frequently floods.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the Depth Gauge sign shall be in addition to the ROAD MAY FLOOD sign and shall indicate the depth of the water at the deepest point on the roadway.**

Option:

- 03 The GUSTY WINDS AREA (W8-21) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn road users that wind gusts frequently occur along a section of highway that are strong enough to impact the stability of trucks, recreational vehicles, and other vehicles with high centers of gravity. A NEXT XX MILES (W7-3a) supplemental plaque may be mounted below the W8-21 sign to inform road users of the length of roadway that frequently experiences strong wind gusts.
- 04 The FOG AREA (W8-22) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn road users that foggy conditions frequently reduce visibility along a section of highway. A NEXT XX MILES (W7-3a) supplemental plaque may be mounted below the W8-22 sign to inform road users of the length of roadway that frequently experiences foggy conditions.

Section 2C.36 Advance Traffic Control Signs (W3-1, W3-2, W3-3, W3-4)

Standard:

- 01 **The Advance Traffic Control symbol signs (see Figure 2C-6) include the Stop Ahead (W3-1), Yield Ahead (W3-2), and Signal Ahead (W3-3) signs. These signs shall be installed on an approach to a primary traffic control device that is not visible for a sufficient distance to permit the road user to respond to the device (see Table 2C-4). The visibility criteria for a traffic control signal shall be based on having a continuous view of at least two signal faces for the distance specified in Table 4D-2.**

Support:

- 02 Figure 2A-4 shows the typical placement of an Advance Traffic Control sign.
- 03 Permanent obstructions causing the limited visibility might include roadway alignment or structures. Intermittent obstructions might include foliage or parked vehicles.

Guidance:

- 04 *Where intermittent obstructions occur, engineering judgment should determine the treatment to be implemented.*

Option:

- 05 An Advance Traffic Control sign may be used for additional emphasis of the primary traffic control device, even when the visibility distance to the device is satisfactory.

- 06 An advance street name plaque (see Section 2C.58) may be installed above or below an Advance Traffic Control sign.

- 07 A warning beacon may be used with an Advance Traffic Control sign.

- 08 A BE PREPARED TO STOP (W3-4) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn of stopped traffic caused by a traffic control signal or in advance of a section of roadway that regularly experiences traffic congestion.

Standard:

- 09 **When a BE PREPARED TO STOP sign is used in advance of a traffic control signal, it shall be used in addition to a Signal Ahead sign and shall be placed downstream from the Signal Ahead (W3-3) sign.**

Option:

- 10 The BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be supplemented with a warning beacon (see Section 4L.03).

Guidance:

- 11 *When the warning beacon is interconnected with a traffic control signal or queue detection system, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be supplemented with a WHEN FLASHING (W16-13P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12).*

Support:

- 12 Section 2C.40 contains information regarding the use of a NO MERGE AREA (W4-5P) supplemental plaque in conjunction with a Yield Ahead sign.

Section 2C.37 Advance Ramp Control Signal Signs (W3-7 and W3-8)*Option:*

- 01 A RAMP METER AHEAD (W3-7) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used to warn road users that a freeway entrance ramp is metered and that they will encounter a ramp control signal (see Chapter 4I).

Guidance:

- 02 *When the ramp control signals are operated only during certain periods of the day, a RAMP METERED WHEN FLASHING (W3-8) sign (see Figure 2C-6) should be installed in advance of the ramp control signal near the entrance to the ramp, or on the arterial on the approach to the ramp, to alert road users to the presence and operation of ramp meters.*

Standard:

- 03 **The RAMP METERED WHEN FLASHING sign shall be supplemented with a warning beacon (see Section 4L.03) that flashes when the ramp control signal is in operation.**

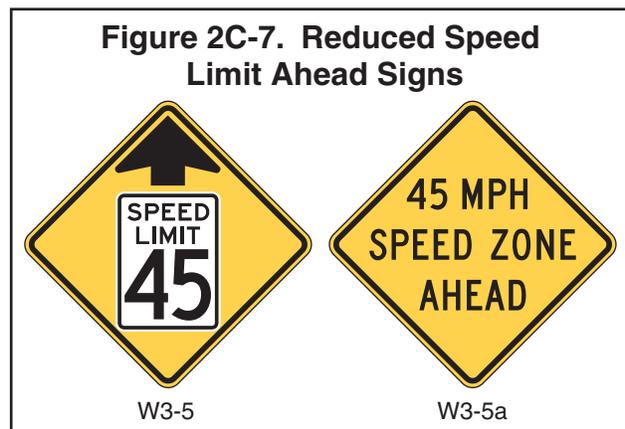
Section 2C.38 Reduced Speed Limit Ahead Signs (W3-5, W3-5a)*Guidance:*

- 01 *A Reduced Speed Limit Ahead (W3-5 or W3-5a) sign (see Figure 2C-7) should be used to inform road users of a reduced speed zone where the speed limit is being reduced by more than 10 mph, or where engineering judgment indicates the need for advance notice to comply with the posted speed limit ahead.*

Standard:

- 02 **If used, Reduced Speed Limit Ahead signs shall be followed by a Speed Limit (R2-1) sign installed at the beginning of the zone where the speed limit applies.**

- 03 **The speed limit displayed on the Reduced Speed Limit Ahead sign shall be identical to the speed limit displayed on the subsequent Speed Limit sign.**



Section 2C.39 DRAW BRIDGE Sign (W3-6)

Standard:

- 01 A DRAW BRIDGE (W3-6) sign (see Figure 2C-6) shall be used in advance of movable bridge signals and gates (see Section 4J.02) to give warning to road users, except in urban conditions where such signing would not be practical.

Section 2C.40 Merge Signs (W4-1, W4-5)

Option:

- 01 A Merge (W4-1) sign (see Figure 2C-8) may be used to warn road users on the major roadway that merging movements might be encountered in advance of a point where lanes from two separate roadways converge as a single traffic lane and no turning conflict occurs.
- 02 A Merge sign may also be installed on the side of the entering roadway to warn road users on the entering roadway of the merge condition.

Guidance:

- 03 *The Merge sign should be installed on the side of the major roadway where merging traffic will be encountered and in such a position as to not obstruct the road user’s view of entering traffic.*
- 04 *Where two roadways of approximately equal importance converge, a Merge sign should be placed on each roadway.*
- 05 *When a Merge sign is to be installed on an entering roadway that curves before merging with the major roadway, such as a ramp with a curving horizontal alignment as it approaches the major roadway, the Entering Roadway Merge (W4-5) sign (see Figure 2C-8) should be used to better portray the actual geometric conditions to road users on the entering roadway.*
- 06 *The Merge sign should not be used where two roadways converge and merging movements are not required.*
- 07 *The Merge sign should not be used in place of a Lane Ends sign (see Section 2C.42) where lanes of traffic moving on a single roadway must merge because of a reduction in the actual or usable pavement width.*

Option:

- 08 An Entering Roadway Merge (W4-5) sign with a NO MERGE AREA (W4-5P) supplemental plaque (see Figure 2C-8) mounted below it may be used to warn road users on an entering roadway that they will encounter an abrupt merging situation without an acceleration lane at the downstream end of the ramp.
- 09 A Merge (W4-1) sign with a NO MERGE AREA (W4-5P) supplemental plaque mounted below it may be used to warn road users on the major roadway that traffic on an entering roadway will encounter an abrupt merging situation without an acceleration lane at the downstream end of the ramp.

Figure 2C-8. Merging and Passing Signs and Plaques



- 10 For a yield-controlled channelized right-turn movement onto a roadway without an acceleration lane, a NO MERGE AREA (W4-5P) supplemental plaque may be mounted below a Yield Ahead (W3-2) sign and/or below a YIELD (R1-2) sign when engineering judgment indicates that road users would expect an acceleration lane to be present.

Section 2C.41 Added Lane Signs (W4-3, W4-6)

Guidance:

- 01 *The Added Lane (W4-3) sign (see Figure 2C-8) should be installed in advance of a point where two roadways converge and merging movements are not required. When possible, the Added Lane sign should be placed such that it is visible from both roadways; if this is not possible, an Added Lane sign should be placed on the side of each roadway.*
- 02 *When an Added Lane sign is to be installed on a roadway that curves before converging with another roadway that has a tangent alignment at the point of convergence, the Entering Roadway Added Lane (W4-6) sign (see Figure 2C-8) should be used to better portray the actual geometric conditions to road users on the curving roadway.*

Section 2C.42 Lane Ends Signs (W4-2, W9-1, W9-2)

Guidance:

- 01 *The LANE ENDS MERGE LEFT (RIGHT) (W9-2) sign or the Lane Ends (W4-2) sign should be used to warn of the reduction in the number of traffic lanes in the direction of travel on a multi-lane highway (see Figure 2C-8).*

Option:

- 02 *The RIGHT (LEFT) LANE ENDS (W9-1) sign (see Figure 2C-8) may be used in advance of the Lane Ends (W4-2) sign or the LANE ENDS MERGE LEFT (RIGHT) (W9-2) sign as additional warning or to emphasize that the traffic lane is ending and that a merging maneuver will be required.*

Guidance:

- 03 *If used, the RIGHT (LEFT) LANE ENDS (W9-1) sign should be installed adjacent to the Lane-Reduction Arrow pavement markings.*

Option:

- 04 *On one-way streets or on divided highways where the width of the median will permit, two Lane Ends signs may be placed facing approaching traffic, one on the right-hand side and the other on the left-hand side or median.*

Support:

- 05 *Section 3B.09 contains information regarding the use of pavement markings in conjunction with a lane reduction.*

Guidance:

- 06 *Where an extra lane has been provided for slower moving traffic (see Section 2B.31), a Lane Ends word sign or a Lane Ends (W4-2) symbol sign should be installed in advance of the downstream end of the extra lane.*
- 07 *Lane Ends signs should not be installed in advance of the downstream end of an acceleration lane.*

Standard:

- 08 **In dropped lane situations, regulatory signs (see Section 2B.20) shall be used to inform road users that a through lane is becoming a mandatory turn lane. The W4-2, W9-1, and W9-2 signs shall not be used in dropped lane situations.**

Section 2C.43 RIGHT (LEFT) LANE EXIT ONLY AHEAD Sign (W9-7)

Option:

- 01 *The RIGHT (LEFT) LANE EXIT ONLY AHEAD (W9-7) sign (see Figure 2C-8) may be used to provide advance warning to road users that traffic in the right-hand (left-hand) lane of a roadway that is approaching a grade-separated interchange will be required to depart the roadway on an exit ramp at the next interchange.*

Standard:

- 02 **The W9-7 sign shall be a horizontal rectangle with a black legend and border on a yellow background.**

Guidance:

- 03 *If used, the W9-7 sign should be installed upstream from the first overhead guide sign that contains an EXIT ONLY sign panel or upstream from the first RIGHT (LEFT) LANE MUST EXIT (R3-33) regulatory sign, whichever is farther upstream from the exit.*

Support:

- 04 Section 2B.23 contains information regarding a regulatory sign that can also be used for lane drops at grade-separated interchanges.

Section 2C.44 Two-Way Traffic Sign (W6-3)

Guidance:

- 01 A Two-Way Traffic (W6-3) sign (see Figure 2C-8) should be used to warn road users of a transition from a multi-lane divided section of roadway to a two-lane, two-way section of roadway.
- 02 A Two-Way Traffic (W6-3) sign with an AHEAD (W16-9P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) should be used to warn road users of a transition from a one-way street to a two-lane, two-way section of roadway (see Figure 2B-14).

Option:

- 03 The Two-Way Traffic sign may be used at intervals along a two-lane, two-way roadway and may be used to supplement the Divided Highway (Road) Ends (W6-2) sign discussed in Section 2C.23.

Section 2C.45 NO PASSING ZONE Sign (W14-3)

Standard:

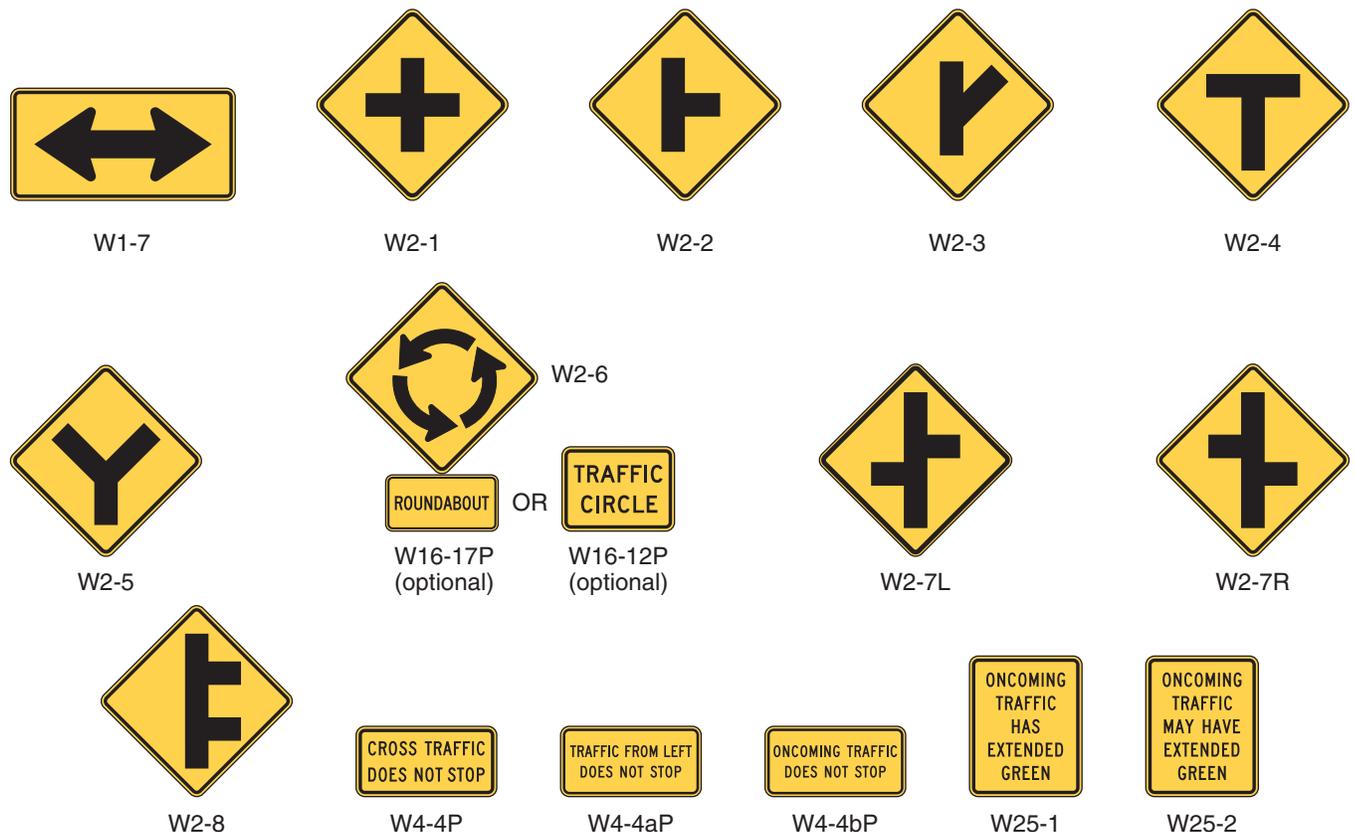
- 01 The NO PASSING ZONE (W14-3) sign (see Figure 2C-8) shall be a pennant-shaped isosceles triangle with its longer axis horizontal and pointing to the right. When used, the NO PASSING ZONE sign shall be installed on the left side of the roadway at the beginning of no-passing zones identified by pavement markings or DO NOT PASS signs or both (see Sections 2B.28 and 3B.02).

Section 2C.46 Intersection Warning Signs (W2-1 through W2-8)

Option:

- 01 A Cross Road (W2-1) symbol, Side Road (W2-2 or W2-3) symbol, T-Symbol (W2-4), or Y-Symbol (W2-5) sign (see Figure 2C-9) may be used in advance of an intersection to indicate the presence of an intersection and the possibility of turning or entering traffic.

Figure 2C-9. Intersection Warning Signs and Plaques



02 The Circular Intersection (W2-6) symbol sign (see Figure 2C-9) may be installed in advance of a circular intersection (see Figures 2B-21 through 2B-23).

Guidance:

03 *If an approach to a roundabout has a statutory or posted speed limit of 40 mph or higher, the Circular Intersection (W2-6) symbol sign should be installed in advance of the circular intersection.*

Option:

04 An educational plaque (see Figure 2C-9) with a legend such as ROUNDABOUT (W16-17P) or TRAFFIC CIRCLE (W16-12P) may be mounted below a Circular Intersection symbol sign.

05 The relative importance of the intersecting roadways may be shown by different widths of lines in the symbol.

06 An advance street name plaque (see Section 2C.58) may be installed above or below an Intersection Warning sign.

Guidance:

07 *The Intersection Warning sign should illustrate and depict the general configuration of the intersecting roadway, such as cross road, side road, T-intersection, or Y-intersection.*

08 *Intersection Warning signs, other than the Circular Intersection (W2-6) symbol sign and the T-intersection (W2-4) symbol sign should not be used on approaches controlled by STOP signs, YIELD signs, or signals.*

09 *If an Intersection Warning sign is used where the side roads are not opposite of each other, the Offset Side Roads (W2-7) symbol sign (see Figure 2C-9) should be used instead of the Cross Road symbol sign.*

10 *If an Intersection Warning sign is used where two closely-spaced side roads are on the same side of the highway, the Double Side Roads (W2-8) symbol sign (see Figure 2C-9) should be used instead of the Side Road symbol sign.*

11 *No more than two side road symbols should be displayed on the same side of the highway on a W2-7 or W2-8 symbol sign, and no more than three side road symbols should be displayed on a W2-7 or W2-8 symbol sign.*

Support:

12 Figure 2A-4 shows the typical placement of an Intersection Warning sign.

Section 2C.47 Two-Direction Large Arrow Sign (W1-7)

Standard:

01 **The Two-Direction Large Arrow (W1-7) sign (see Figure 2C-9) shall be a horizontal rectangle.**

02 **If used, it shall be installed on the far side of a T-intersection in line with, and at approximately a right angle to, traffic approaching from the stem of the T-intersection.**

03 **The Two-Direction Large Arrow sign shall not be used where there is no change in the direction of travel such as at the beginnings and ends of medians or at center piers.**

04 **The Two-Direction Large Arrow sign directing traffic to the left and right shall not be used in the central island of a roundabout.**

Guidance:

05 *The Two-Direction Large Arrow sign should be visible for a sufficient distance to provide the road user with adequate time to react to the intersection configuration.*

Section 2C.48 Traffic Signal Signs (W25-1, W25-2)

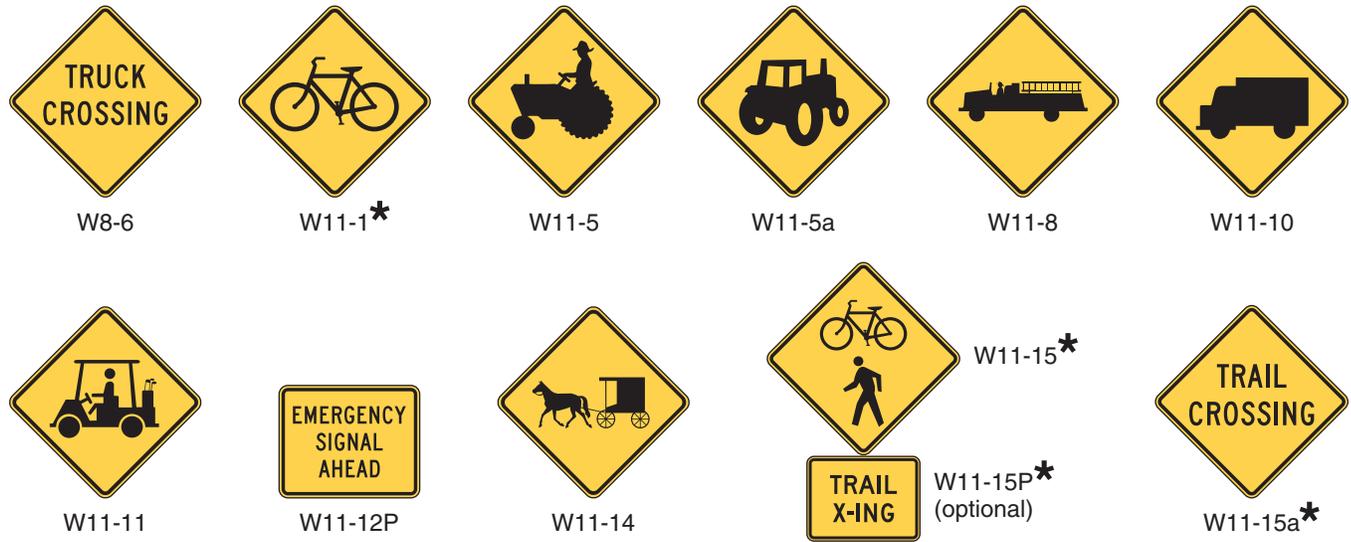
Standard:

01 **At locations where either a W25-1 or a W25-2 sign is required based on the provisions in Section 4D.05, the W25-1 or W25-2 sign (see Figure 2C-9) shall be installed near the left-most signal head. The W25-1 and W25-2 signs shall be vertical rectangles.**

Section 2C.49 Vehicular Traffic Warning Signs (W8-6, W11-1, W11-5, W11-5a, W11-8, W11-10, W11-11, W11-12P, W11-14, W11-15, and W11-15a)

Option:

01 Vehicular Traffic Warning (W8-6, W11-1, W11-5, W11-5a, W11-8, W11-10, W11-11, W11-12P, W11-14, W11-15, and W11-15a) signs (see Figure 2C-10) may be used to alert road users to locations where unexpected entries into the roadway by trucks, bicyclists, farm vehicles, emergency vehicles, golf carts, horse-drawn vehicles, or other vehicles might occur. The TRUCK CROSSING (W8-6) word message sign may be used as an alternate to the Truck Crossing (W11-10) symbol sign.

Figure 2C-10. Vehicular Traffic Warning Signs and Plaques

* A fluorescent yellow-green background color may be used for this sign or plaque.

Support:

- 02 These locations might be relatively confined or might occur randomly over a segment of roadway.

Guidance:

- 03 *Vehicular Traffic Warning signs should be used only at locations where the road user's sight distance is restricted, or the condition, activity, or entering traffic would be unexpected.*
- 04 *If the condition or activity is seasonal or temporary, the Vehicular Traffic Warning sign should be removed or covered when the condition or activity does not exist.*

Option:

- 05 The combined Bicycle/Pedestrian (W11-15) sign may be used where both bicyclists and pedestrians might be crossing the roadway, such as at an intersection with a shared-use path. A TRAIL X-ING (W11-15P) supplemental plaque (see Figure 2C-10) may be mounted below the W11-15 sign. The TRAIL CROSSING (W11-15a) sign may be used to warn of shared-use path crossings where pedestrians, bicyclists, and other user groups might be crossing the roadway.
- 06 The W11-1, W11-15, and W11-15a signs and their related supplemental plaques may have a fluorescent yellow-green background with a black legend and border.
- 07 Supplemental plaques (see Section 2C.53) with legends such as AHEAD, XX FEET, NEXT XX MILES, or SHARE THE ROAD may be mounted below Vehicular Traffic Warning signs to provide advance notice to road users of unexpected entries.

Guidance:

- 08 *If used in advance of a pedestrian and bicycle crossing, a W11-15 or W11-15a sign should be supplemented with an AHEAD or XX FEET plaque to inform road users that they are approaching a point where crossing activity might occur.*

Standard:

- 09 **If a post-mounted W11-1, W11-11, W11-15, or W11-15a sign is placed at the location of the crossing point where golf carts, pedestrians, bicyclists, or other shared-use path users might be crossing the roadway, a diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) shall be mounted below the sign. If the W11-1, W11-11, W11-15, or W11-15a sign is mounted overhead, the W16-7P supplemental plaque shall not be used.**

Option:

- 10 The crossing location identified by a W11-1, W11-11, W11-15, or W11-15a sign may be defined with crosswalk markings (see Section 3B.18).

Standard:

11 **The Emergency Vehicle (W11-8) sign (see Figure 2C-10) with the EMERGENCY SIGNAL AHEAD (W11-12P) supplemental plaque (see Figure 2C-10) shall be placed in advance of all emergency-vehicle traffic control signals (see Chapter 4G).**

Option:

12 The Emergency Vehicle (W11-8) sign, or a word message sign indicating the type of emergency vehicle (such as rescue squad), may be used in advance of the emergency-vehicle station when no emergency-vehicle traffic control signal is present.

13 A Warning Beacon (see Section 4L.03) may be used with any Vehicular Traffic Warning sign to indicate specific periods when the condition or activity is present or is likely to be present, or to provide enhanced sign conspicuity.

14 A supplemental WHEN FLASHING (W16-13P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) may be used with any Vehicular Traffic Warning sign that is supplemented with a Warning Beacon to indicate specific periods when the condition or activity is present or is likely to be present.

Section 2C.50 Non-Vehicular Warning Signs (W11-2, W11-3, W11-4, W11-6, W11-7, W11-9, and W11-16 through W11-22)

Option:

01 Non-Vehicular Warning (W11-2, W11-3, W11-4, W11-6, W11-7, W11-9, and W11-16 through W11-22) signs (see Figure 2C-11) may be used to alert road users in advance of locations where unexpected entries into the roadway might occur or where shared use of the roadway by pedestrians, animals, or equestrians might occur.

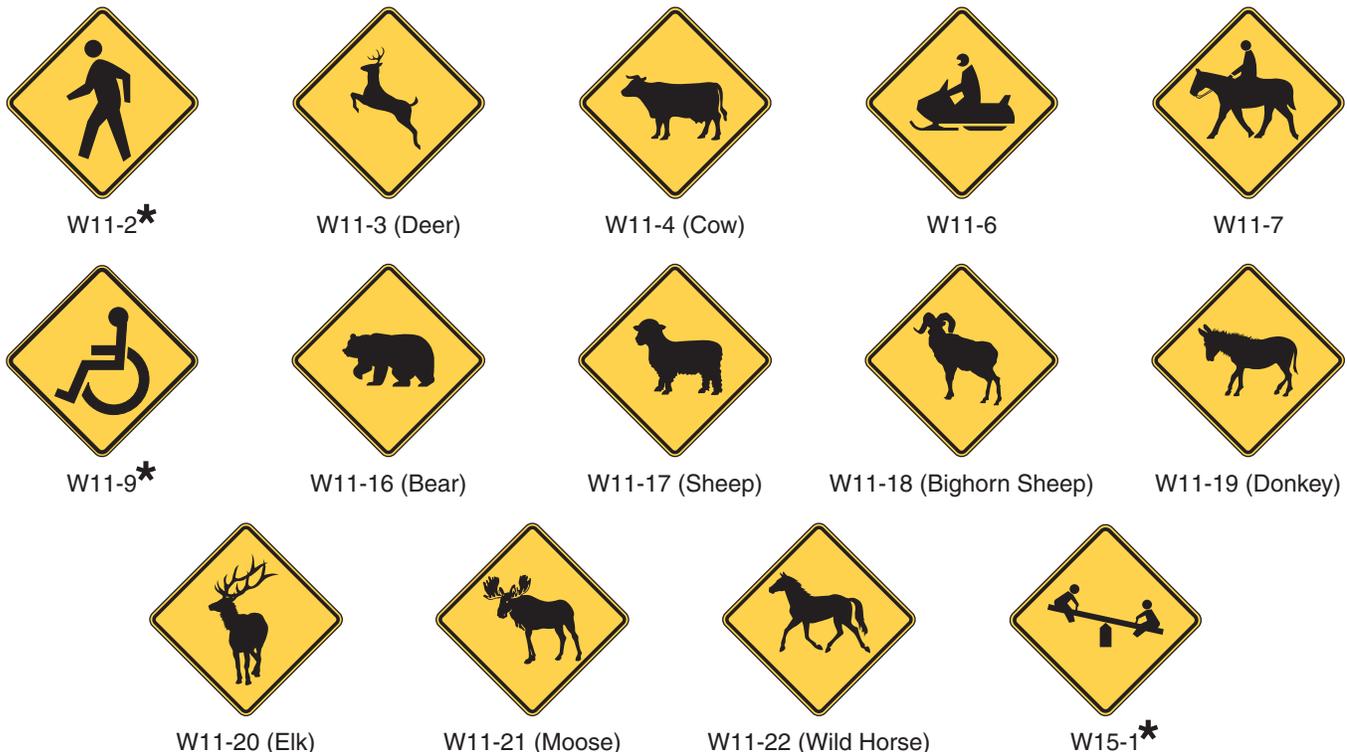
Support:

02 These conflicts might be relatively confined, or might occur randomly over a segment of roadway.

Guidance:

03 *If used in advance of a pedestrian, snowmobile, or equestrian crossing, the W11-2, W11-6, W11-7, and W11-9 signs should be supplemented with plaques (see Section 2C.55) with the legend AHEAD or XX FEET to inform road users that they are approaching a point where crossing activity might occur.*

Figure 2C-11. Non-Vehicular Warning Signs



* A fluorescent yellow-green background color may be used for this sign or plaque.

Standard:

- 04 **If a post-mounted W11-2, W11-6, W11-7, or W11-9 sign is placed at the location of the crossing point where pedestrians, snowmobilers, or equestrians might be crossing the roadway, a diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) shall be mounted below the sign. If the W11-2, W11-6, W11-7, or W11-9 sign is mounted overhead, the W16-7P plaque shall not be used.**

Option:

- 05 A Pedestrian Crossing (W11-2) sign may be placed overhead or may be post-mounted with a diagonal downward pointing arrow (W16-7P) plaque at the crosswalk location where Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians signs (see Section 2B.11) have been installed in advance of the crosswalk.

Standard:

- 06 **If a W11-2 sign has been post-mounted at the crosswalk location where a Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians sign is used on the approach, the Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians sign shall not be placed on the same post as or block the road user's view of the W11-2 sign.**

Option:

- 07 An advance Pedestrian Crossing (W11-2) sign with an AHEAD or a distance supplemental plaque may be used in conjunction with a Yield Here To (Stop Here For) Pedestrians sign on the approach to the same crosswalk.

- 08 The crossing location identified by a W11-2, W11-6, W11-7, or W11-9 sign may be defined with crosswalk markings (see Section 3B.18).

- 09 The W11-2 and W11-9 signs and their related supplemental plaques may have a fluorescent yellow-green background with a black legend and border.

Guidance:

- 10 *When a fluorescent yellow-green background is used, a systematic approach featuring one background color within a zone or area should be used. The mixing of standard yellow and fluorescent yellow-green backgrounds within a selected site area should be avoided.*

Option:

- 11 A Warning Beacon (see Section 4L.03) may be used with any Non-Vehicular Warning sign to indicate specific periods when the condition or activity is present or is likely to be present, or to provide enhanced sign conspicuity.

- 12 A supplemental WHEN FLASHING (W16-13P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) may be used with any Non-Vehicular Warning sign that is supplemented with a Warning Beacon to indicate specific periods when the condition or activity is present or is likely to be present.

Section 2C.51 Playground Sign (W15-1)

Option:

- 01 The Playground (W15-1) sign (see Figure 2C-11) may be used to give advance warning of a designated children's playground that is located adjacent to the road.

- 02 The Playground sign may have a fluorescent yellow-green background with a black legend and border.

Guidance:

- 03 *If the access to the playground area requires a roadway crossing, the application of crosswalk pavement markings (see Section 3B.18) and Non-Vehicular Warning signs (see Section 2C.50) should be considered.*

Section 2C.52 NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD Sign (W23-2)

Option:

- 01 A NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD (W23-2) sign (see Figure 2C-6) may be used on the approach to an intersection or along a section of roadway to provide advance warning of a change in traffic patterns, such as revised lane usage, roadway geometry, or signal phasing.

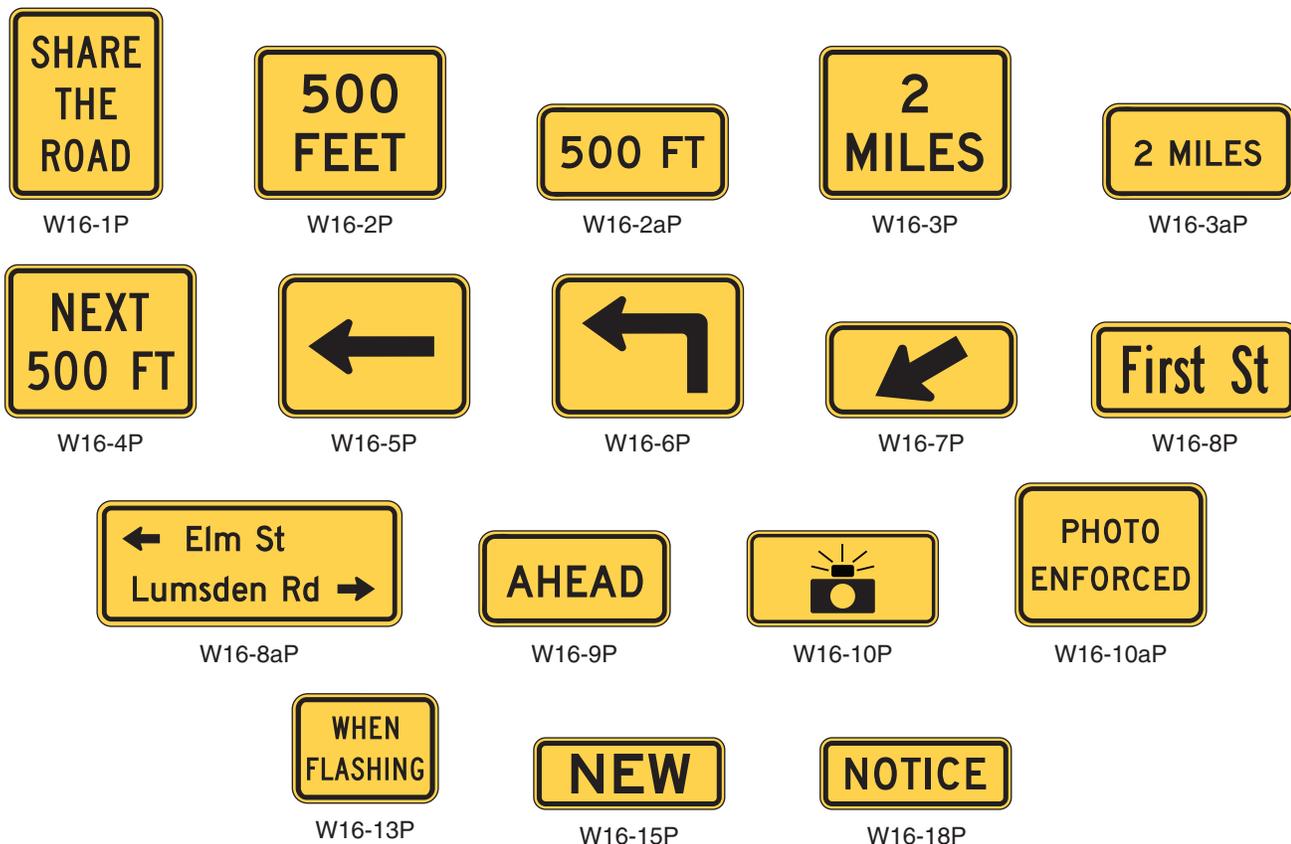
Guidance:

- 02 *The NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD sign should be removed when the traffic pattern returns to normal, when the changed pattern is no longer considered to be new, or within six months.*

Section 2C.53 Use of Supplemental Warning Plaques

Option:

- 01 A supplemental warning plaque (see Figure 2C-12) may be displayed with a warning or regulatory sign when engineering judgment indicates that road users require additional warning information beyond that contained in the main message of the warning or regulatory sign.

Figure 2C-12. Supplemental Warning Plaques

Note: The background color (yellow or fluorescent yellow-green) shall match the color of the warning sign that it supplements.

Standard:

- 02 Supplemental warning plaques shall be used only in combination with warning or regulatory signs. They shall not be mounted alone or displayed alone. If used, a supplemental warning plaque shall be installed on the same post(s) as the warning or regulatory sign that it supplements.
- 03 Unless otherwise provided in this Manual for a particular plaque, supplemental warning plaques shall be mounted below the sign they supplement.

Section 2C.54 Design of Supplemental Warning Plaques**Standard:**

- 01 A supplemental warning plaque used with a warning sign shall have the same legend, border, and background color as the warning sign with which it is displayed. A supplemental warning plaque used with a regulatory sign shall have a black legend and border on a yellow background.
- 02 Supplemental warning plaques shall be square or rectangular.

Section 2C.55 Distance Plaques (W16-2 Series, W16-3 Series, W16-4P, W7-3aP)**Option:**

- 01 The Distance Ahead (W16-2 series and W16-3 series) plaques (see Figure 2C-12) may be used to inform the road user of the distance to the condition indicated by the warning sign.
- 02 The Next Distance (W7-3aP and W16-4P) plaques (see Figures 2C-4 and 2C-12) may be used to inform road users of the length of roadway over which the condition indicated by the warning sign exists.

Section 2C.56 Supplemental Arrow Plaques (W16-5P, W16-6P)**Guidance:**

- 01 If the condition indicated by a warning sign is located on an intersecting road and the distance between the intersection and condition is not sufficient to provide adequate advance placement of the warning sign, a Supplemental Arrow (W16-5P or W16-6P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) should be used below the warning sign.

Standard:

- 02 **Supplemental Arrow plaques shall have the same legend design as the Advance Turn Arrow and Directional Arrow auxiliary signs (see Sections 2D.26 and 2D.28) except that they shall have a black legend and border on a yellow or fluorescent yellow-green background, as appropriate.**

Section 2C.57 Hill-Related Plaques (W7-2 Series, W7-3 Series)*Guidance:*

- 01 *Hill-Related (W7-2 series, W7-3 series) plaques (see Figure 2C-4) or other appropriate legends and larger signs should be used for emphasis or where special hill characteristics exist.*
- 02 *On longer grades, the use of the distance plaque (W7-3aP or W7-3bP) at periodic intervals of approximately 1-mile spacing should be considered.*

Section 2C.58 Advance Street Name Plaque (W16-8P, W16-8aP)

Option:

- 01 An Advance Street Name (W16-8P or W16-8aP) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) may be used with any Intersection sign (W2 series, W10-2, W10-3, or W10-4) or Advance Traffic Control (W3 series) sign to identify the name of the intersecting street.

Standard:

- 02 **The lettering on Advance Street Name plaques shall be composed of a combination of lower-case letters with initial upper-case letters.**
- 03 **If two street names are used on the Advance Street Name plaque, a directional arrow pointing in the direction of the street shall be placed next to each street name. Arrows pointing to the left shall be placed to the left of the street name, and arrows pointing to the right shall be placed to the right of the street name.**

Guidance:

- 04 *If two street names are used on the Advance Street Name plaque, the street names and associated arrows should be displayed in the following order:*
- A. *For a single intersection, the name of the street to the left should be displayed above the name of the street to the right; or*
 - B. *For two sequential intersections, such as where the plaque is used with an Offset Side Roads (W2-7) or a Double Side Road (W2-8) symbol sign, the name of the first street encountered should be displayed above the name of the second street encountered, and the arrow associated with the second street encountered should be an advance arrow, such as the arrow shown on the W16-6P arrow plaque (see Figure 2C-12).*

Section 2C.59 CROSS TRAFFIC DOES NOT STOP Plaque (W4-4P)

Option:

- 01 The CROSS TRAFFIC DOES NOT STOP (W4-4P) plaque (see Figure 2C-9) may be used in combination with a STOP sign when engineering judgment indicates that conditions are present that are causing or could cause drivers to misinterpret the intersection as an all-way stop.
- 02 Alternative messages (see Figure 2C-9) such as TRAFFIC FROM LEFT (RIGHT) DOES NOT STOP (W4-4aP) or ONCOMING TRAFFIC DOES NOT STOP (W4-4bP) may be used when such messages more accurately describe the traffic controls established at the intersection.

Guidance:

- 03 *Plaques with the appropriate alternative messages of TRAFFIC FROM LEFT (RIGHT) DOES NOT STOP or ONCOMING TRAFFIC DOES NOT STOP should be used at intersections where STOP signs control all but one approach to the intersection, unless the only non-stopped approach is from a one-way street.*

Standard:

- 04 **If a W4-4P plaque or a plaque with an alternative message is used, it shall be mounted below the STOP sign.**

Section 2C.60 SHARE THE ROAD Plaque (W16-1P)

Option:

- 01 In situations where there is a need to warn drivers to watch for other slower forms of transportation traveling along the highway, such as bicycles, golf carts, horse-drawn vehicles, or farm machinery, a SHARE THE ROAD (W16-1P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) may be used.

Standard:

- 02 **A W16-1P plaque shall not be used alone. If a W16-1P plaque is used, it shall be mounted below either a Vehicular Traffic Warning sign (see Section 2C.49) or a Non-Vehicular Warning sign (see Section 2C.50). The background color of the W16-1P plaque shall match the background color of the warning sign with which it is displayed.**

Section 2C.61 Photo Enforced Plaque (W16-10P)

Option:

- 01 A Photo Enforced (W16-10P) plaque or a PHOTO ENFORCED (W16-10aP) word message plaque (see Figure 2C-12) may be mounted below a warning sign to advise road users that the regulations associated with the condition being warned about (such as a traffic control signal or a toll plaza) are being enforced by photographic equipment.

Standard:

- 02 **If used below a warning sign, the Photo Enforced (W16-10P or W16-10aP) plaque shall be a rectangle with a black legend and border on a yellow background.**

Section 2C.62 NEW Plaque (W16-15P)

Option:

- 01 A NEW (W16-15P) plaque (see Figure 2C-12) may be mounted above a regulatory sign when a new regulation takes effect in order to alert road users to the new traffic regulation. A NEW plaque may also be mounted above an advance warning sign (such as a Signal Ahead sign for a newly-installed traffic control signal) for a new traffic regulation.

Standard:

- 02 **The NEW plaque shall not be used alone.**
 03 **The NEW plaque shall be removed no later than 6 months after the regulation has been in effect.**

Section 2C.63 Object Marker Design and Placement Height

Support:

- 01 Type 1, 2, and 3 object markers are used to mark obstructions within or adjacent to the roadway. Type 4 object markers are used to mark the end of a roadway.

Standard:

- 02 **When used, object markers (see Figure 2C-13) shall not have a border and shall consist of an arrangement of one or more of the following types:**
- Type 1—a diamond-shaped sign, at least 18 inches on a side, consisting of either a yellow (OM1-1) or black (OM1-2) sign with nine yellow retroreflective devices, each with a minimum diameter of 3 inches, mounted symmetrically on the sign, or an all-yellow retroreflective sign (OM1-3).**
- Type 2—either a marker (OM2-1V or OM2-1H) consisting of three yellow retroreflective devices, each with a minimum diameter of 3 inches, arranged either horizontally or vertically on a white sign measuring at least 6 x 12 inches; or an all-yellow horizontal or vertical retroreflective sign (OM2-2V or OM2-2H), measuring at least 6 x 12 inches.**
- Type 3—a striped marker, 12 x 36 inches, consisting of a vertical rectangle with alternating black and retroreflective yellow stripes sloping downward at an angle of 45 degrees toward the side of the obstruction on which traffic is to pass. The minimum width of the yellow and black stripes shall be 3 inches.**
- Type 4—a diamond-shaped sign, at least 18 inches on a side, consisting of either a red (OM4-1) or black (OM4-2) sign with nine red retroreflective devices, each with a minimum diameter of 3 inches, mounted symmetrically on the sign, or an all-red retroreflective sign (OM4-3).**

Support:

- 03 A better appearance can be achieved if the black stripes are wider than the yellow stripes.
- 04 Type 3 object markers with stripes that begin at the upper right side and slope downward to the lower left side are designated as right object markers (OM3-R). Object markers with stripes that begin at the upper left side and slope downward to the lower right side are designated as left object markers (OM3-L).

Guidance:

- 05 *When used for marking obstructions within the roadway or obstructions that are 8 feet or less from the shoulder or curb, the minimum mounting height, measured from the bottom of the object marker to the elevation*

of the near edge of the traveled way, should be 4 feet.

06 When used to mark obstructions more than 8 feet from the shoulder or curb, the clearance from the ground to the bottom of the object marker should be at least 4 feet.

07 Object markers should not present a vertical or horizontal clearance obstacle for pedestrians.

Option:

08 When object markers or markings are applied to an obstruction that by its nature requires a lower or higher mounting, the vertical mounting height may vary according to need.

Support:

09 Section 9B.26 contains information regarding the use of object markers on shared-use paths.

Section 2C.64 Object Markers for Obstructions Within the Roadway

Standard:

01 Obstructions within the roadway shall be marked with a Type 1 or Type 3 object marker. In addition to markers on the face of the obstruction, warning of approach to the obstruction shall be given by appropriate pavement markings (see Section 3B.10).

Option:

02 To provide additional emphasis, a Type 1 or Type 3 object marker may be installed at or near the approach end of a median island.

03 To provide additional emphasis, large surfaces such as bridge piers may be painted with diagonal stripes, 12 inches or greater in width, similar in design to the Type 3 object marker.

Standard:

04 The alternating black and retroreflective yellow stripes (OM3-L, OM3-R) shall be sloped down at an angle of 45 degrees toward the side on which traffic is to pass the obstruction. If traffic can pass to either side of the obstruction, the alternating black and retroreflective yellow stripes (OM3-C) shall form chevrons that point upwards.

Option:

05 Appropriate signs (see Sections 2B.32 and 2C.25) directing traffic to one or both sides of the obstruction may be used instead of the object marker.

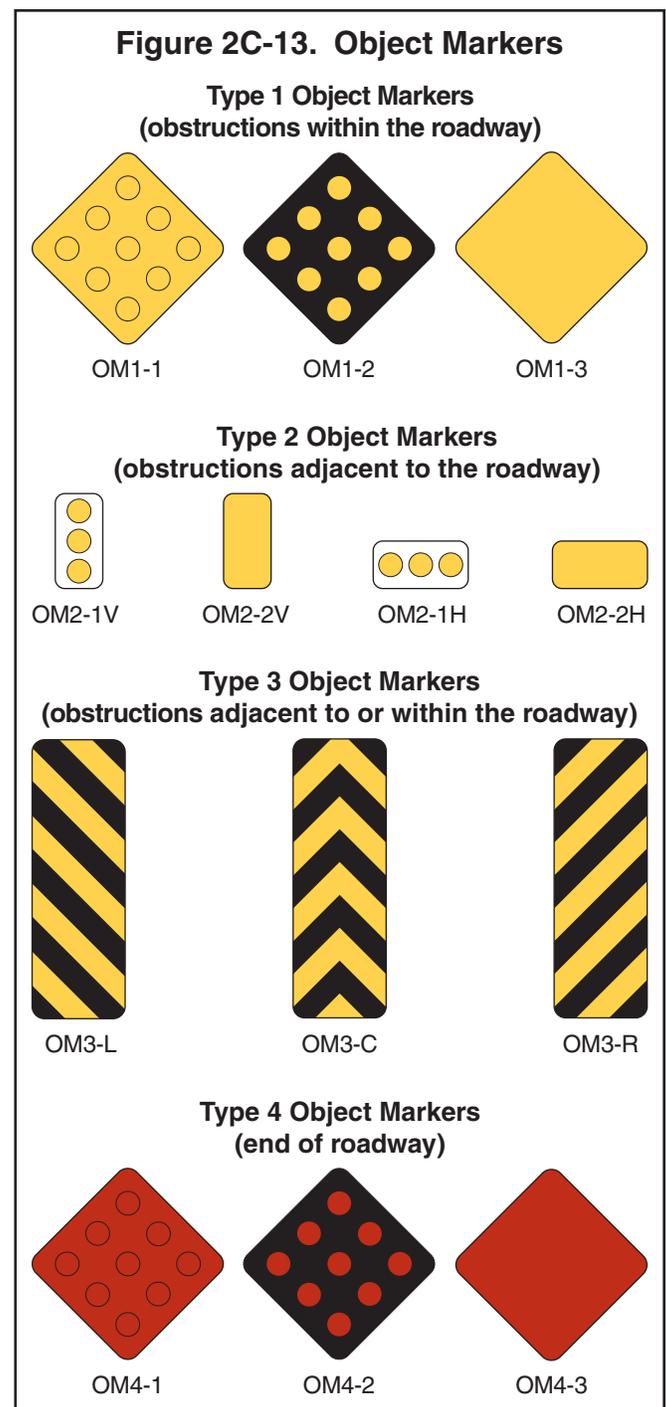
Section 2C.65 Object Markers for Obstructions Adjacent to the Roadway

Support:

01 Obstructions not actually within the roadway are sometimes so close to the edge of the road that they need a marker. These include underpass piers, bridge abutments, handrails, ends of traffic barriers, utility poles, and culvert headwalls. In other cases there might not be a physical object involved, but other roadside conditions exist, such as narrow shoulders, drop-offs, gores, small islands, and abrupt changes in the roadway alignment, that might make it undesirable for a road user to leave the roadway, and therefore would create a need for a marker.

Standard:

02 If a Type 2 or Type 3 object marker is used to mark an obstruction adjacent to the roadway, the edge of the object marker that is closest to the road user shall be installed in line with the closest edge of the obstruction.



03 Where Type 3 object markers are applied to the approach ends of guardrail and other roadside appurtenances, sheeting without a substrate shall be directly affixed to the approach end of the guardrail in a rectangular shape conforming to the size of the approach end of the guardrail with alternating black and retroreflective yellow stripes sloping downward at a angle of 45 degrees toward the side of the obstruction on which traffic is to pass.

04 Type 1 and Type 4 object markers shall not be used to mark obstructions adjacent to the roadway.

Guidance:

05 Standard warning signs in this Chapter should also be used where applicable.

Section 2C.66 Object Markers for Ends of Roadways

Support:

01 The Type 4 object marker is used to warn and alert road users of the end of a roadway in other than construction or maintenance areas.

Standard:

02 **If an object marker is used to mark the end of a roadway, a Type 4 object marker shall be used.**

Option:

03 The Type 4 object marker may be used in instances where there are no alternate vehicular paths.

04 Where conditions warrant, more than one marker, or a larger marker with or without a Type 3 Barricade (see Section 2B.67), may be used at the end of the roadway.

Standard:

05 **The minimum mounting height, measured vertically from the bottom of a Type 4 object marker to the elevation of the near edge of the traveled way, shall be 4 feet.**

Guidance:

06 *Appropriate advance warning signs in this Chapter should be used.*

CHAPTER 2D. GUIDE SIGNS—CONVENTIONAL ROADS

Section 2D.01 Scope of Conventional Road Guide Sign Standards

Standard:

- 01 The provisions of this Chapter shall apply to any road or street other than low-volume roads (as defined in Section 5A.01), expressways, and freeways.

Section 2D.02 Application

Support:

- 01 Guide signs are essential to direct road users along streets and highways, to inform them of intersecting routes, to direct them to cities, towns, villages, or other important destinations, to identify nearby rivers and streams, parks, forests, and historical sites, and generally to give such information as will help them along their way in the most simple, direct manner possible.
- 02 Chapter 2A addresses placement, location, and other general criteria for signs.

Section 2D.03 Color, Retroreflection, and Illumination

Support:

- 01 Requirements for illumination, retroreflection, and color are stated under the specific headings for individual guide signs or groups of signs. General provisions are given in Sections 2A.07, 2A.08, and 2A.10.

Standard:

- 02 **Except where otherwise provided in this Manual for individual signs or groups of signs, guide signs on streets and highways shall have a white message and border on a green background. All messages, borders, and legends shall be retroreflective and all backgrounds shall be retroreflective or illuminated.**

Support:

- 03 Color coding is sometimes used to help road users distinguish between multiple potentially confusing destinations. Examples of valuable uses of color coding include guide signs for roadways approaching or inside an airport property with multiple terminals serving multiple airlines, and community wayfinding guide signs for various traffic generator destinations within a community or area.

Standard:

- 04 **Except where otherwise provided in this Manual, different color sign backgrounds shall not be used to provide color coding of destinations. The color coding shall be accomplished by the use of different colored square or rectangular sign panels on the face of the guide signs.**

Option:

- 05 The different colored sign panels may include a black or white (whichever provides the better contrast with the panel color) letter, numeral, or other appropriate designation to identify an airport terminal or other destination.

Support:

- 06 Two examples of color-coded sign assemblies are shown in Figure 2D-1. Section 2D.50 contains specific provisions regarding Community Wayfinding guide signs.

Section 2D.04 Size of Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Except as provided in Section 2A.11, the sizes of conventional road guide signs that have standardized designs shall be as shown in Table 2D-1.**

Support:

- 02 Section 2A.11 contains information regarding the applicability of the various columns in Table 2D-1.

Option:

- 03 Signs larger than those shown in Table 2D-1 may be used (see Section 2A.11).

Support:

- 04 For other guide signs, the legends are so variable that a standardized design or size is not appropriate. The sign size is determined primarily by the length of the message, and the size of lettering and spacing necessary for proper legibility.

Option:

- 05 Reduced letter height, reduced interline spacing, and reduced edge spacing may be used on guide signs if sign size must be limited by factors such as lane width or vertical or lateral clearance.

Figure 2D-1. Examples of Color-Coded Destination Guide Signs**A - Freeway or Expressway – Airport Terminals****B - Conventional Road or Street – Urban Areas***Guidance:*

- 06 *Reduced spacing between the letters or words on a line of legend should not be used as a means of reducing the overall size of a guide sign, except where determined necessary by engineering judgment to meet unusual lateral space constraints. In such cases, the legibility distance of the sign legend should be the primary consideration in determining whether to reduce the spacing between the letters or the words or between the words and the sign border, or to reduce the letter height.*
- 07 *When a reduction in the prescribed size is necessary, the design used should be as similar as possible to the design for the standard size.*

Section 2D.05 Lettering Style**Standard:**

- 01 **The design of upper-case letters, lower-case letters, numerals, route shields, and spacing shall be as provided in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).**
- 02 **The lettering for names of places, streets, and highways on conventional road guide signs shall be a combination of lower-case letters with initial upper-case letters (see Section 2A.13). The nominal loop height of the lower-case letters shall be 3/4 the height of the initial upper-case letter. When a mixed-case legend letter height is specified referring only to the initial upper-case letter, the height of the lower-case letters that follow shall be determined by this proportion. When the height of a lower-case letter is referenced, the reference is made to the nominal loop height and the height of the initial upper-case letter shall also be determined by this proportion.**
- 03 **All other word legends on conventional road guide signs shall be in upper-case letters.**
- 04 **The unique letter forms for each of the Standard Alphabet series shall not be stretched, compressed, warped, or otherwise manipulated. Modifications to the length of a word for a given letter height and series shall be accomplished only by the methods described in Section 2D.04.**

Section 2D.06 Size of Lettering**Support:**

- 01 **Sign legibility is a direct function of letter size and spacing. Legibility distance has to be sufficient to give road users enough time to read and comprehend the sign. Under optimum conditions, a guide sign message can be read and understood in a brief glance. The legibility distance takes into account factors such as inattention, blocking of view by other vehicles, unfavorable weather, inferior eyesight, or other causes for delayed or slow reading. Where conditions permit, repetition of guide information on successive signs gives the road user more than one opportunity to obtain the information needed.**

Table 2D-1. Conventional Road Guide Sign Sizes

Sign	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road	Minimum	Oversized
Interstate Route Sign (1 or 2 digits)	M1-1	2D.11	24 x 24	24 x 24	36 x 36
Interstate Route Sign (3 digits)	M1-1	2D.11	30 x 24	30 x 24	45 x 36
Off-Interstate Route Sign (1 or 2 digits)	M1-2,3	2D.11	24 x 24	24 x 24	36 x 36
Off-Interstate Route Sign (3 digits)	M1-2,3	2D.11	30 x 24	30 x 24	45 x 36
U.S. Route Sign (1 or 2 digits)	M1-4	2D.11	24 x 24	24 x 24	36 x 36
U.S. Route Sign (3 digits)	M1-4	2D.11	30 x 24	30 x 24	45 x 36
State Route Sign (1 or 2 digits)	M1-5	2D.11	24 x 24	24 x 24	36 x 36
State Route Sign (3 digits)	M1-5	2D.11	30 x 24	30 x 24	45 x 36
County Route Sign (1, 2, or 3 digits)	M1-6	2D.11	24 x 24	24 x 24	36 x 36
Forest Route (1, 2, or 3 digits)	M1-7	2D.11	24 x 24	18 x 18	36 x 36
Junction	M2-1	2D.13	21 x 15	21 x 15	30 x 21
Combination Junction (2 route signs)	M2-2	2D.14	60 x 48*	—	—
Cardinal Direction	M3-1,2,3,4	2D.15	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
Alternate	M4-1,1a	2D.17	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
By-Pass	M4-2	2D.18	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
Business	M4-3	2D.19	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
Truck	M4-4	2D.20	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
To	M4-5	2D.21	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
End	M4-6	2D.22	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
Temporary	M4-7,7a	2D.24	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
Begin	M4-14	2D.23	24 x 12	24 x 12	36 x 18
Advance Turn Arrow	M5-1,2,3	2D.28	21 x 15	21 x 15	—
Lane Designation	M5-4,5,6	2D.33	24 x 18	24 x 18	36 x 24
Directional Arrow	M6-1,2,2a,3,4,5,6,7	2D.29	21 x 15	21 x 15	30 x 21
Destination (1 line)	D1-1	2D.39	Varies x 18	Varies x 18	—
Destination and Distance (1 line)	D1-1a	2D.39	Varies x 18	Varies x 18	—
Circular Intersection Destination (1 line)	D1-1d	2D.40	Varies x 18	Varies x 18	—
Circular Intersection Departure Guide	D1-1e	2D.40	Varies x 42*	—	—
Destination (2 lines)	D1-2	2D.39	Varies x 30	Varies x 30	—
Destination and Distance (2 lines)	D1-2a	2D.39	Varies x 30	Varies x 30	—
Circular Intersection Destination (2 lines)	D1-2d	2D.40	Varies x 30	Varies x 30	—
Destination (3 lines)	D1-3	2D.39	Varies x 42	Varies x 42	—
Destination and Distance (3 lines)	D1-3a	2D.39	Varies x 42	Varies x 42	—
Circular Intersection Destination (3 lines)	D1-3d	2D.40	Varies x 42	Varies x 42	—
Distance (1 line)	D2-1	2D.43	Varies x 18	Varies x 18	—
Distance (2 lines)	D2-2	2D.43	Varies x 30	Varies x 30	—
Distance (3 lines)	D2-3	2D.43	Varies x 42	Varies x 42	—
Street Name (1 line)	D3-1,1a	2D.45	Varies x 12	Varies x 8	Varies x 18
Advance Street Name (2 lines)	D3-2	2D.46	Varies x 30*	—	—
Advance Street Name (3 lines)	D3-2	2D.46	Varies x 42*	—	—
Advance Street Name (4 lines)	D3-2	2D.46	Varies x 60*	—	—
Parking Area	D4-1	2D.49	30 x 24	18 x 15	—
Park - Ride	D4-2	2D.50	30 x 36	24 x 30	36 x 48
National Scenic Byways	D6-4	2D.56	24 x 24	24 x 24	—
National Scenic Byways	D6-4a	2D.56	24 x 12	24 x 12	—
Weigh Station XX Miles	D8-1	2D.51	78 x 60	60 x 48	96 x 72
Weigh Station Next Right	D8-2	2D.51	84 x 72	66 x 54	108 x 90
Weigh Station (with arrow)	D8-3	2D.51	66 x 60	48 x 42	84 x 78
Crossover	D13-1,2	2D.55	60 x 30	60 x 30	78 x 42
Freeway Entrance	D13-3	2D.48	48 x 30	48 x 30	—
Freeway Entrance (with arrow)	D13-3a	2D.48	48 x 42	48 x 42	—
Combination Lane Use / Destination	D15-1	2D.35	Varies x 96	Varies x 96	—
Next Truck Lane XX Miles	D17-1	2D.53	42 x 48	42 x 48	60 x 66
Truck Lane XX Miles	D17-2	2D.53	42 x 42	42 x 42	60 x 54
Slow Vehicle Turn-Out XX Miles	D17-7	2D.54	72 x 42	72 x 42	96 x 54

*The size shown is for a typical sign. The size should be appropriately based on the amount of legend required for the sign.

- Notes: 1. Larger signs may be used when appropriate
2. Dimensions in inches are shown as width x height

Standard:

02 **Design layouts for conventional road guide signs showing interline spacing, edge spacing, and other specification details shall be as shown in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).**

03 **The principal legend on guide signs shall be in letters and numerals at least 6 inches in height for all upper-case letters, or a combination of 6 inches in height for upper-case letters and 4.5 inches in height for lower-case letters. On low-volume roads (as defined in Section 5A.01) with speeds of 25 mph or less, and on urban streets with speeds of 25 mph or less, the principal legend shall be in letters at least 4 inches in height for all upper-case letters, or a combination of 4 inches in height for upper-case letters and 3 inches in height for lower-case letters.**

Guidance:

04 *Lettering sizes should be consistent on any particular class of highway.*

05 *The minimum lettering sizes provided in this Manual should be exceeded where conditions indicate a need for greater legibility.*

Section 2D.07 Amount of Legend*Support:*

01 The longer the legend on a guide sign, the longer it will take road users to comprehend it, regardless of letter size.

Guidance:

02 *Except where otherwise provided in this Manual, guide signs should be limited to no more than three lines of destinations, which include place names, route numbers, street names, and cardinal directions. Where two or more signs are included in the same overhead display, the amount of legend should be further minimized. Where appropriate, a distance message or action information, such as an exit number, NEXT RIGHT, or directional arrows, should be provided on guide signs in addition to the destinations.*

Section 2D.08 Arrows*Support:*

01 Arrows are used for lane assignment and to indicate the direction toward designated routes or destinations. Figure 2D-2 shows the various standard arrow designs that have been approved for use on guide signs. Detailed drawings and standardized sizes based on ranges of letter heights are shown for these arrows in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

02 **On overhead signs where it is desirable to indicate a lane to be followed, a down arrow shall be positioned approximately over the center of the lane and shall point vertically downward toward the approximate center of that lane. Down arrows shall be used only on overhead guide signs that restrict the use of specific lanes to traffic bound for the destination(s) and/or route(s) indicated by these arrows. Down arrows shall not be used unless an arrow can be located over and pointed to the approximate center of each lane that can be used to reach the destination displayed on the sign.**

03 **If down arrows are used, having more than one down arrow pointing to the same lane on a single overhead sign (or on multiple signs on the same overhead sign structure) shall not be permitted.**

04 **Where a roadway is leaving the through lanes, a directional arrow shall point upward at an angle that approximates the alignment of the exit roadway.**

Option:

05 Curved-stem arrows (see Figure 2D-8) that represent the intended driver paths to destinations involving left-turn movements may be used on guide signs on approaches to circular intersections.

Standard:

06 **Curved-stem arrows shall not be used on any sign that is not associated with a circular intersection.**

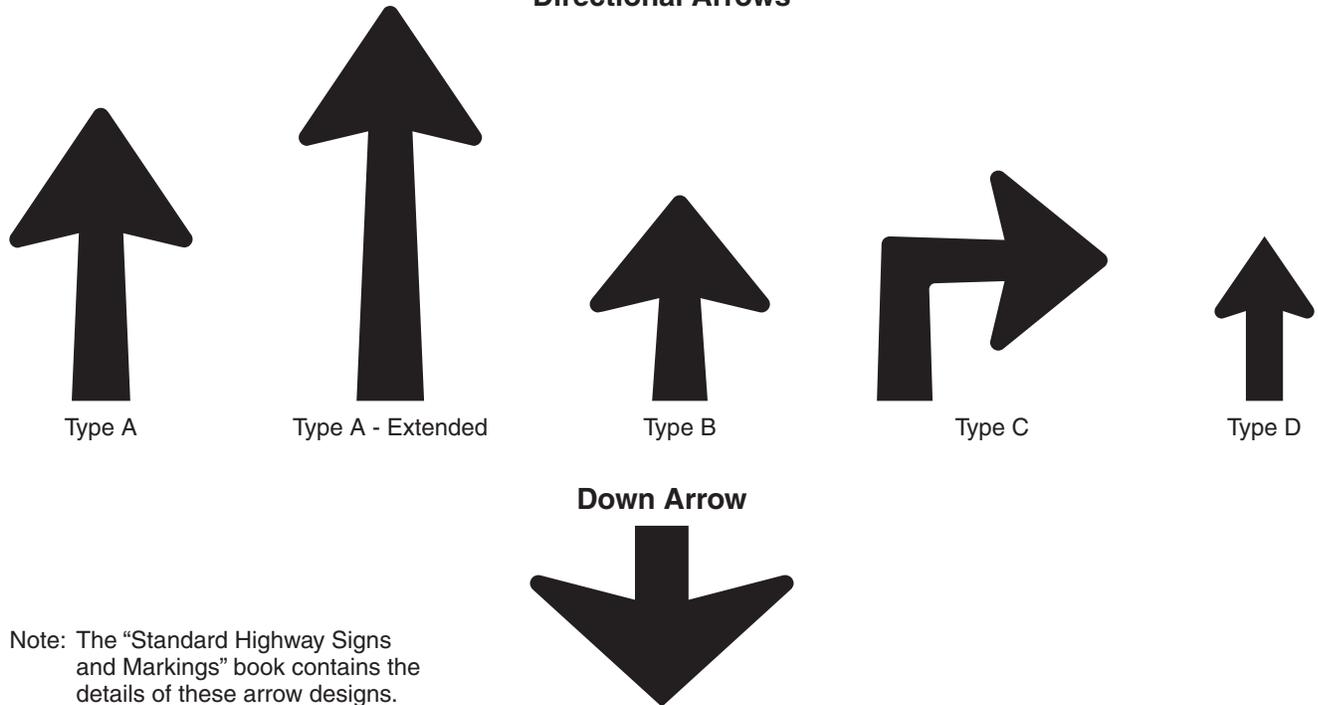
Guidance:

07 *If curved-stem arrows are used, the principles set forth in Sections 2D.26 through 2D.29 should be followed.*

08 *The Type A directional arrow should be used on guide signs on freeways, expressways, and conventional roads to indicate the direction to a specific destination or group of destinations, except as otherwise provided in this Section and in Section 2E.19.*

09 *When a directional arrow in a vertical, upward-pointing orientation is placed to the side of a group of destinations to indicate a through movement, the Type A directional arrow should be used. When a directional arrow in a vertical, upward-pointing orientation is placed to the side of a single destination or under a destination or group of destinations, the Type B directional arrow should be used.*

Figure 2D-2. Arrows for Use on Guide Signs
Directional Arrows



Note: The “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book contains the details of these arrow designs.

- 10 *The Type B directional arrow should be used on guide signs on conventional roads when placed at any angle to the side of a single destination or when placed in a horizontal orientation to the side of a group of destinations.*
- 11 *The Type C advance turn directional arrow should be used on conventional road guide signs placed in advance of an intersection where a turn must be made to reach a posted destination or group of destinations.*
- 12 *The Type D directional arrow should be used primarily for sign applications other than guide signs, except as provided in Paragraph 15.*

Option:

- 13 *The Type A-Extended directional arrow may be used on guide signs where additional emphasis regarding the direction is needed relative to the amount of legend on the sign.*
- 14 *The Type C directional arrow may be used to the side of the legend of an overhead guide sign to accentuate a sharp turn exit maneuver from a mainline roadway (see Section 2E.36 for additional information regarding Exit Direction signs for low advisory ramp speeds).*
- 15 *On conventional roads on the approach to an intersection where the Combination Lane-Use/Destination overhead guide sign (see Section 2D.33) is not used, the Type C advance turn directional arrow may be used beneath the legend of an overhead guide sign to indicate the fact that a turn must be made from a mandatory movement lane over which the sign is placed to reach the destination or destinations displayed on the sign.*
- 16 *The Type D directional arrow may be used on post-mounted guide signs on conventional roads with lower operating speeds if the height of the text on the sign is 8 inches or less.*
- 17 *The directional and down arrows shown in Figure 2D-2 may be used on signs other than guide signs for the purposes of providing directional guidance and lane assignment.*

Guidance:

- 18 *Arrows used on guide signs to indicate the directions toward designated routes or destinations should be pointed at the appropriate angle to clearly convey the direction to be taken. A horizontally oriented directional arrow design should be used at right-angle intersections.*
- 19 *On a post-mounted guide sign, a directional arrow for a straight-through movement should point upward. Except as provided in Section 2D.46, for a turn, the arrow on a guide sign should point horizontally or at an upward angle that approximates the sharpness of the turn.*
- 20 *At an exit, an arrow should be placed at the side of the sign that will reinforce the movement of exiting traffic. The directional arrow design should be used.*

Option:

- 21 Arrows may be placed below the principal sign legend or on the appropriate side of the legend.
- 22 On a post-mounted sign at an exit where placement of the arrow to the side of the legend farthest from the roadway would create an unusually wide sign that limits the road user's view of the arrow, the directional arrow may be placed at the bottom portion of the sign, centered under the legend.

Guidance:

- 23 *The width across the arrowhead for the Types A, B, and C directional arrows should be between 1.5 and 1.75 times the height of the upper-case letters of the principal legend on the sign. The width across the arrowhead for the Type D directional arrow should be at least equal to the height of the upper-case letters of the principal legend on the sign. For down arrows used on overhead signs, the width across the arrowhead should be approximately two times the height of the upper-case letters of the principal legend on the sign.*
- 24 *Arrows used in Overhead Arrow-per-Lane and Diagrammatic guide signing, if used on conventional roads, except for signs on approaches to roundabouts, should follow the principles set forth in Section 2E.19. Arrows used in Diagrammatic guide signing on approaches to roundabouts should follow the principles set forth in Section 2D.38.*

Support:

- 25 The "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11) contains design details and standardized sizes of the various arrows based on ranges of letter heights of principal legends.

Section 2D.09 Numbered Highway Systems**Support:**

- 01 The purpose of numbering and signing highway systems is to identify routes and facilitate travel.
- 02 The Interstate and United States (U.S.) highway systems are numbered by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) upon recommendations of the State highway organizations because the respective States own these systems. State and county road systems are numbered by the appropriate authorities.
- 03 The basic policy for numbering the Interstate and U.S. highway systems is contained in the following Purpose and Policy statements published by AASHTO (see Page i for AASHTO's address):
- A. "Establishment and Development of United States Numbered Highways," and
 - B. "Establishment of a Marking System of the Routes Comprising the National System of Interstate and Defense Highways."

Guidance:

- 04 *The principles of these policies should be followed in establishing the highway systems described in Paragraph 2 and any other systems, with effective coordination between adjacent jurisdictions. Care should be taken to avoid the use of numbers or other designations that have been assigned to Interstate, U.S., or State routes in the same geographic area. Overlapping numbered routes should be kept to a minimum.*

Standard:

- 05 **Route systems shall be given preference in this order: Interstate, United States, State, and county. The preference shall be given by installing the highest-priority legend on the top or the left of the sign.**

Support:

- 06 Section 2D.53 contains information regarding the signing of unnumbered highways to enhance route guidance and facilitate travel.

Section 2D.10 Route Signs and Auxiliary Signs**Standard:**

- 01 **All numbered highway routes shall be identified by route signs and auxiliary signs.**
- 02 **The signs for each system of numbered highways, which are distinctive in shape and color, shall be used only on that system and the approaches thereto.**

Option:

- 03 Route signs and auxiliary signs may be proportionally enlarged where greater legibility is needed.

Support:

- 04 Route signs are typically mounted in assemblies with auxiliary signs.
- 05 Section 2D.55 contains information regarding the signing for National Scenic Byways.
- 06 Section 2H.07 contains information regarding the signing for Auto Tour Routes.

Section 2D.11 Design of Route Signs

Standard:

01 The “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11) shall be used for designing route signs. Other route sign designs shall be established by the authority having jurisdiction.

02 Interstate Route signs (see Figure 2D-3) shall consist of a cutout shield, with the route number in white letters on a blue background, the word INTERSTATE in white upper-case letters on a red background, and a white border. This sign shall be used on all Interstate routes and in connection with route sign assemblies on intersecting highways.

03 A 24 x 24-inch minimum sign size shall be used for Interstate route numbers with one or two digits, and a 30 x 24-inch minimum sign size shall be used for Interstate route numbers having three digits.

Option:

04 Interstate Route signs may contain the State name in white upper-case letters on a blue background.

Standard:

05 Off-Interstate Business Route signs (see Figure 2D-3) shall consist of a cutout shield carrying the number of the connecting Interstate route and the words BUSINESS and either LOOP or SPUR in upper-case letters. The legend and border shall be white on a green background, and the shield shall be the same shape and dimensions as the Interstate Route sign. In no instance shall the word INTERSTATE appear on the Off-Interstate Business Route sign.

Option:

06 The Off-Interstate Business Route sign may be used on a major highway that is not a part of the Interstate system, but one that serves the business area of a city from an interchange on the system.

07 When used on a green guide sign, a white square or rectangle may be placed behind the shield to improve contrast.

Standard:

08 U.S. Route signs (see Figure 2D-3) shall consist of black numerals on a white shield surrounded by a rectangular black background without a border. This sign shall be used on all U.S. routes and in connection with route sign assemblies on intersecting highways.

09 A 24 x 24-inch minimum sign size shall be used for U.S. route numbers with one or two digits, and a 30 x 24-inch minimum sign size shall be used for U.S. route numbers having three digits.

10 State Route signs shall be designed by the individual State highway agencies.

Guidance:

11 State Route signs (see Figure 2D-3) should be rectangular and should be approximately the same size as the U.S. Route sign. State Route signs should also be similar to the U.S. Route sign by containing approximately the same size black numerals on a white area surrounded by a rectangular black background without a border. The shape of the white area should be circular in the absence of any determination to the contrary by the individual State concerned.

12 Where U.S. or State Route signs are used as components of guide signs, only the distinctive shape of the shield itself and the route numerals within should be used. The rectangular background upon which the distinctive shape of the shield is mounted, such as the black area around the outside of the shields on the M1-4 and standard M1-5 signs, should not be included on the guide sign. Where U.S. or State Route signs are used as components of other signs of non-contrasting background colors, the rectangular background should be used to so that recognition of the distinctive shape of the shield can be maintained.



Standard:

13 **If county road authorities elect to establish and identify a special system of important county roads, a statewide policy for such signing shall be established that includes a uniform numbering system to uniquely identify each route. The County Route (M1-6) sign (see Figure 2D-3) shall consist of a pentagon shape with a yellow county name and route number and border on a blue background. County Route signs displaying two digits or the equivalent (letter and numeral, or two letters) shall be a minimum size of 18 x 18 inches; those carrying three digits or the equivalent shall be a minimum size of 24 x 24 inches.**

14 **If a jurisdiction uses letters instead of numbers to identify routes, all references to numbered routes in this Chapter shall be interpreted to also include lettered routes.**

Guidance:

15 *If used with other route signs in common assemblies, the County Route sign should be of a size compatible with that of the other route signs.*

Option:

16 When used on a green guide sign, a yellow square or rectangle may be placed behind the County Route sign to improve contrast.

Standard:

17 **Route signs (see Figure 2D-3) for park and forest roads shall be designed with adequate distinctiveness and legibility and of a size compatible with other route signs used in common assemblies.**

Section 2D.12 Design of Route Sign Auxiliaries**Standard:**

01 **Route sign auxiliaries carrying word legends, except the JCT sign, shall have a standard size of 24 x 12 inches. Those carrying arrow symbols, or the JCT sign, shall have a standard size of 21 x 15 inches. All route sign auxiliaries shall match the color combination of the route sign that they supplement.**

Guidance:

02 *With route signs of larger heights, auxiliary signs should be suitably enlarged, but not such that they exceed the width of the route sign.*

03 *The background, legend, and border of a route sign auxiliary should have the same colors as those of the route sign with which the auxiliary is mounted in a route sign assembly (see Section 2D.29). For a route sign design that uses multiple background colors, such as the Interstate route sign, the background color of the corresponding auxiliary should be that of the background area on which the route number is placed on the route sign.*

Option:

04 A route sign and any auxiliary signs used with it may be combined on a single sign as a guide sign.

Guidance:

05 *If a route sign and its auxiliary signs are combined to form a single guide sign, the background color of the sign should be green and the design should comply with the basic principles for the design of guide signs.*

Standard:

06 **If a route sign and its auxiliary signs are combined on a single sign with a green background, the auxiliary messages shall be white legends placed directly on the green background. Auxiliary signs shall not be mounted directly to a guide sign or other type of sign.**

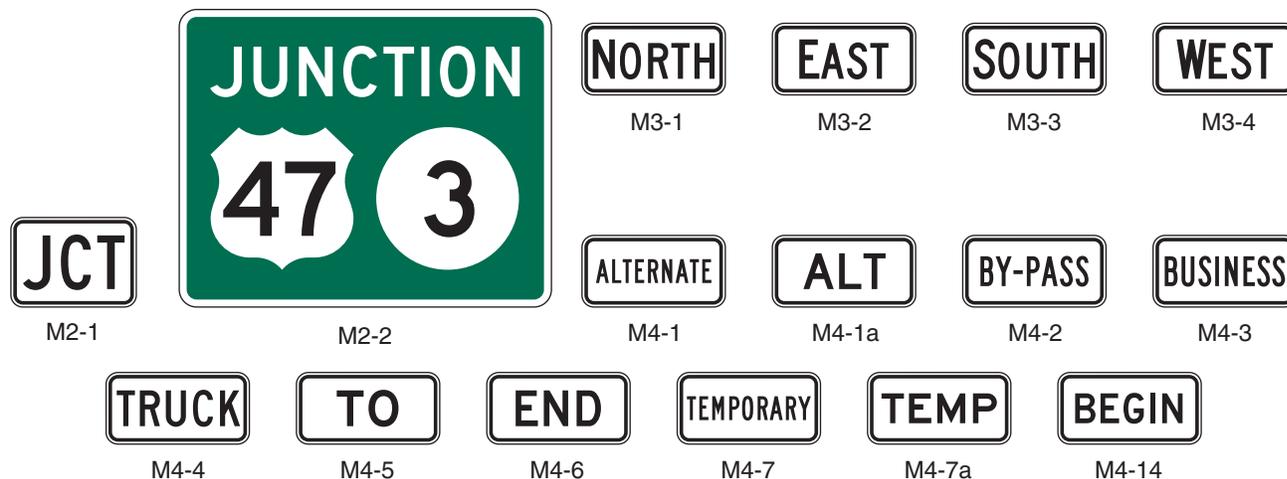
Support:

07 Chapter 2F contains information regarding auxiliary signs for toll highways.

Section 2D.13 Junction Auxiliary Sign (M2-1)**Standard:**

01 **The Junction (M2-1) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) shall carry the abbreviated legend JCT and shall be mounted at the top of an assembly (see Section 2D.30) directly above the route sign, the sign for an alternative route (see Section 2D.17) that is part of the route designation, or the Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign where access is available only to one direction of the intersected route. The minimum size of the Junction auxiliary sign shall be 21 x 15 inches for compatibility with auxiliary signs carrying arrow symbols.**

Figure 2D-4. Route Sign Auxiliaries



Section 2D.14 Combination Junction Sign (M2-2)

Option:

- 01 As an alternative to the standard Junction assembly where more than one route is to be intersected or joined, a rectangular guide sign may be used carrying the word JUNCTION above the route numbers.

Standard:

- 02 **The Combination Junction (M2-2) sign (see Figure 2D-4) shall have a green background with white border and lettering for the word JUNCTION.**

Guidance:

- 03 *The Combination Junction sign should comply with the specific provisions of Section 2D.11 regarding the incorporation of the route signs as components of guide signs.*
- 04 *Although the size of the Combination Junction sign will depend on the number of routes involved, the numerals should be large enough for clear legibility and should be of a size comparable with those in the individual route signs.*

Section 2D.15 Cardinal Direction Auxiliary Signs (M3-1 through M3-4)

Guidance:

- 01 *Cardinal Direction auxiliary signs (see Figure 2D-4) carrying the legend NORTH, EAST, SOUTH, or WEST should be used to indicate the general direction of the entire route.*

Standard:

- 02 **To improve the readability and recognition of the cardinal directions, the first letter of the cardinal direction words shall be ten percent larger, rounded up to the nearest whole number size.**
- 03 **If used, the Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above a route sign or, if used, an auxiliary sign for an alternative route.**

Section 2D.16 Auxiliary Signs for Alternative Routes (M4 Series)

Option:

- 01 Auxiliary signs, carrying legends such as ALTERNATE, BY-PASS, BUSINESS, or TRUCK, may be used to indicate an alternate route of the same number between two points on that route.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the auxiliary signs for alternative routes shall be mounted directly above a route sign.**

Section 2D.17 ALTERNATE Auxiliary Signs (M4-1, M4-1a)

Option:

- 01 The ALTERNATE (M4-1) or the ALT (M4-1a) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) may be used to indicate an officially designated alternate routing of a numbered route between two points on that route.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the ALTERNATE or ALT auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above a route sign.**

Guidance:

- 03 *The shorter (time or distance) or better-constructed route should retain the regular route number, and the longer or worse-constructed route should be designated as the alternate route.*

Section 2D.18 BY-PASS Auxiliary Sign (M4-2)*Option:*

- 01 The BY-PASS (M4-2) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) may be used to designate a route that branches from the numbered route through a city, bypasses a part of the city or congested area, and rejoins the numbered route beyond the city.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the BY-PASS auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above a route sign.**

Section 2D.19 BUSINESS Auxiliary Sign (M4-3)*Option:*

- 01 The BUSINESS (M4-3) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) may be used to designate an alternate route that branches from a numbered route, passes through the business portion of a city, and rejoins the numbered route beyond that area.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the BUSINESS auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above a route sign.**

Section 2D.20 TRUCK Auxiliary Sign (M4-4)*Option:*

- 01 The TRUCK (M4-4) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) may be used to designate an alternate route that branches from a numbered route, when it is desirable to encourage or require commercial vehicles to use the alternate route.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the TRUCK auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above a route sign.**

Section 2D.21 TO Auxiliary Sign (M4-5)*Option:*

- 01 The TO (M4-5) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) may be used to provide directional guidance to a particular road facility from other highways in the vicinity (see Section 2D.35).

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the TO auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above a route sign or an auxiliary sign for an alternative route. If a Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign is also included in the assembly, the TO auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above the Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign.**

Section 2D.22 END Auxiliary Sign (M4-6)*Guidance:*

- 01 *The END (M4-6) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) should be used where the route being traveled ends, usually at a junction with another route.*

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the END auxiliary sign shall be mounted either directly above a route sign or above a sign for an alternative route that is part of the designation of the route being terminated.**

Section 2D.23 BEGIN Auxiliary Sign (M4-14)*Option:*

- 01 The BEGIN (M4-14) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) may be used where a route begins, usually at a junction with another route.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the BEGIN auxiliary sign shall be mounted at the top of the first Confirming assembly (see Section 2D.34) for the route that is beginning.**

Guidance:

- 03 *If a BEGIN auxiliary sign is included in the first Confirming assembly, a Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign should also be included in the assembly.*

Standard:

- 04 If a Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign is also included in the assembly, the BEGIN auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above the Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign.

Section 2D.24 TEMPORARY Auxiliary Signs (M4-7, M4-7a)

Option:

- 01 The TEMPORARY (M4-7) or the TEMP (M4-7a) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-4) may be used for an interim period to designate a section of highway that is not planned as a permanent part of a numbered route, but that connects completed portions of that route.

Standard:

- 02 If used, the TEMPORARY or TEMP auxiliary sign shall be mounted directly above the route sign, above a Cardinal Direction sign, or above a sign for an alternate route that is a part of the route designation.
- 03 TEMPORARY or TEMP auxiliary signs shall be promptly removed when the temporary route is abandoned.

Section 2D.25 Temporary Detour and Auxiliary Signs

Support:

- 01 Chapter 6F contains information regarding Temporary Detour and Auxiliary signs.

Section 2D.26 Advance Turn Arrow Auxiliary Signs (M5-1, M5-2, and M5-3)

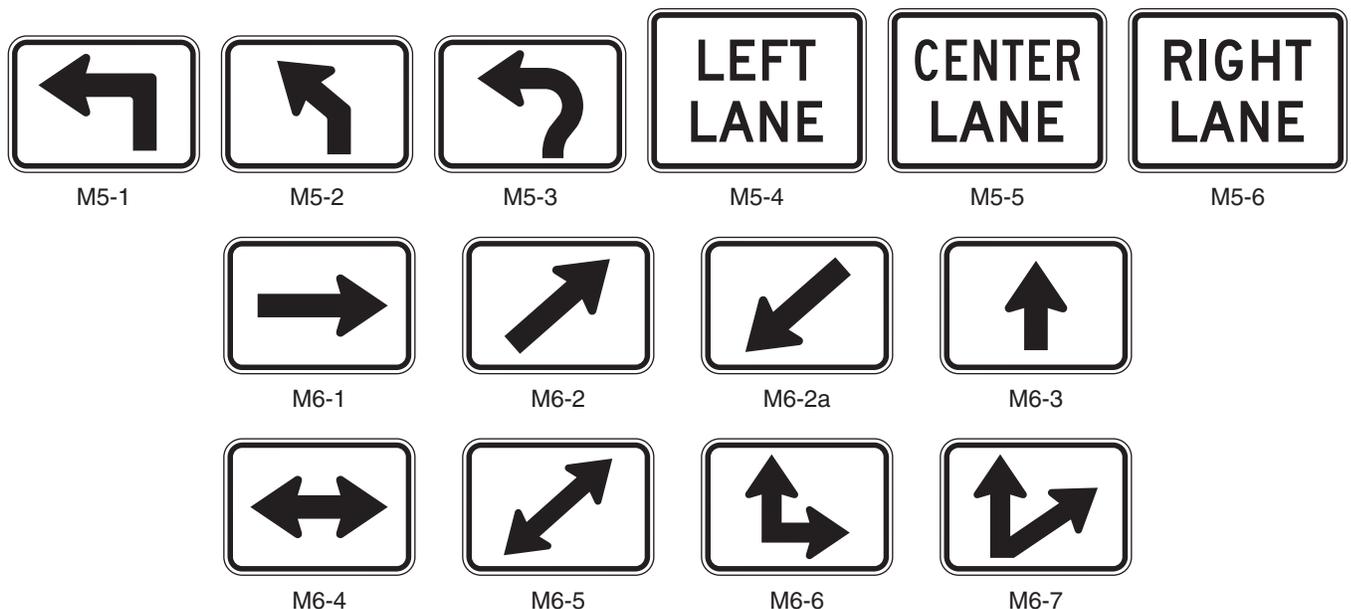
Standard:

- 01 If used, the Advance Turn Arrow auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-5) shall be mounted directly below the route sign in Advance Route Turn assemblies, and displays a right or left arrow, the shaft of which is bent at a 90-degree angle (M5-1) or at a 45-degree angle (M5-2).
- 02 If used, the curved-stem Advance Turn Arrow auxiliary (M5-3) sign shall be used only on the approach to a circular intersection to depict a movement along the circulatory roadway around the central island and to the left, relative to the approach roadway and entry into the intersection.

Guidance:

- 03 If the M5-3 sign is used, then this arrow type should also be used consistently on any regulatory lane-use signs (see Chapter 2B), Destination signs (see Section 2D.37), and pavement markings (see Part 3) for a particular destination or movement.

Figure 2D-5. Advance Turn and Directional Arrow Auxiliary Signs



Section 2D.27 Lane Designation Auxiliary Signs (M5-4, M5-5, and M5-6)

Option:

- 01 A Lane Designation (M5-4, M5-5, or M5-6) auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-5) may be mounted directly below the route sign in an Advance Route Turn assembly on multi-lane roadways to allow road users to move into the appropriate lane prior to reaching the intersection or interchange.

Standard:

- 02 If used, the Lane Designation auxiliary signs shall be used only where the designated lane is a mandatory movement lane and shall be located adjacent to the full-width portion of the mandatory movement lane. The Lane Designation auxiliary signs shall not be installed adjacent to a through lane in advance of a lane that is being added or along the taper for a lane that is being added.

Section 2D.28 Directional Arrow Auxiliary Signs (M6 Series)

Standard:

- 01 If used, the Directional Arrow auxiliary sign (see Figure 2D-5) shall be mounted below the route sign and any other auxiliary signs in Directional assemblies (see Section 2D.32), and displays a single- or double-headed arrow pointing in the general direction that the route follows.
- 02 A Directional Arrow auxiliary sign that displays a double-headed arrow shall not be mounted in any Directional assembly in advance of or at a circular intersection.

Option:

- 03 The downward pointing diagonal arrow auxiliary (M6-2a) sign may be used in a Directional assembly at the far corner of an intersection to indicate the immediate entry point to a freeway or expressway entrance ramp (see Section 2D.46).

Standard:

- 04 The M6-2a sign shall not be used on the approach to or on the near side of an intersection, such as to designate an approach lane.

Section 2D.29 Route Sign Assemblies

Standard:

- 01 A Route Sign assembly shall consist of a route sign and auxiliary signs that further identify the route and indicate the direction. Route Sign assemblies shall be installed on all approaches to numbered routes that intersect with other numbered routes.
- 02 Where two or more routes follow the same section of highway, the route signs for Interstate, U.S., State, and county routes shall be mounted in that order from the left in horizontal arrangements and from the top in vertical arrangements. Subject to this order of precedence, route signs for lower-numbered routes shall be placed at the left or top.
- 03 Within groups of assemblies, information for routes intersecting from the left shall be mounted at the left in horizontal arrangements and at the top or center of vertical arrangements. Similarly, information for routes intersecting from the right shall be at the right or bottom, and for straight-through routes at the center in horizontal arrangements or top in vertical arrangements.
- 04 Route Sign assemblies shall be mounted in accordance with the general specifications for signs (Chapter 2A), with the lowest sign in the assembly at the height prescribed for single signs.

Guidance:

- 05 Assemblies for two or more routes, or for different directions on the same route, should be mounted in groups on a common support.

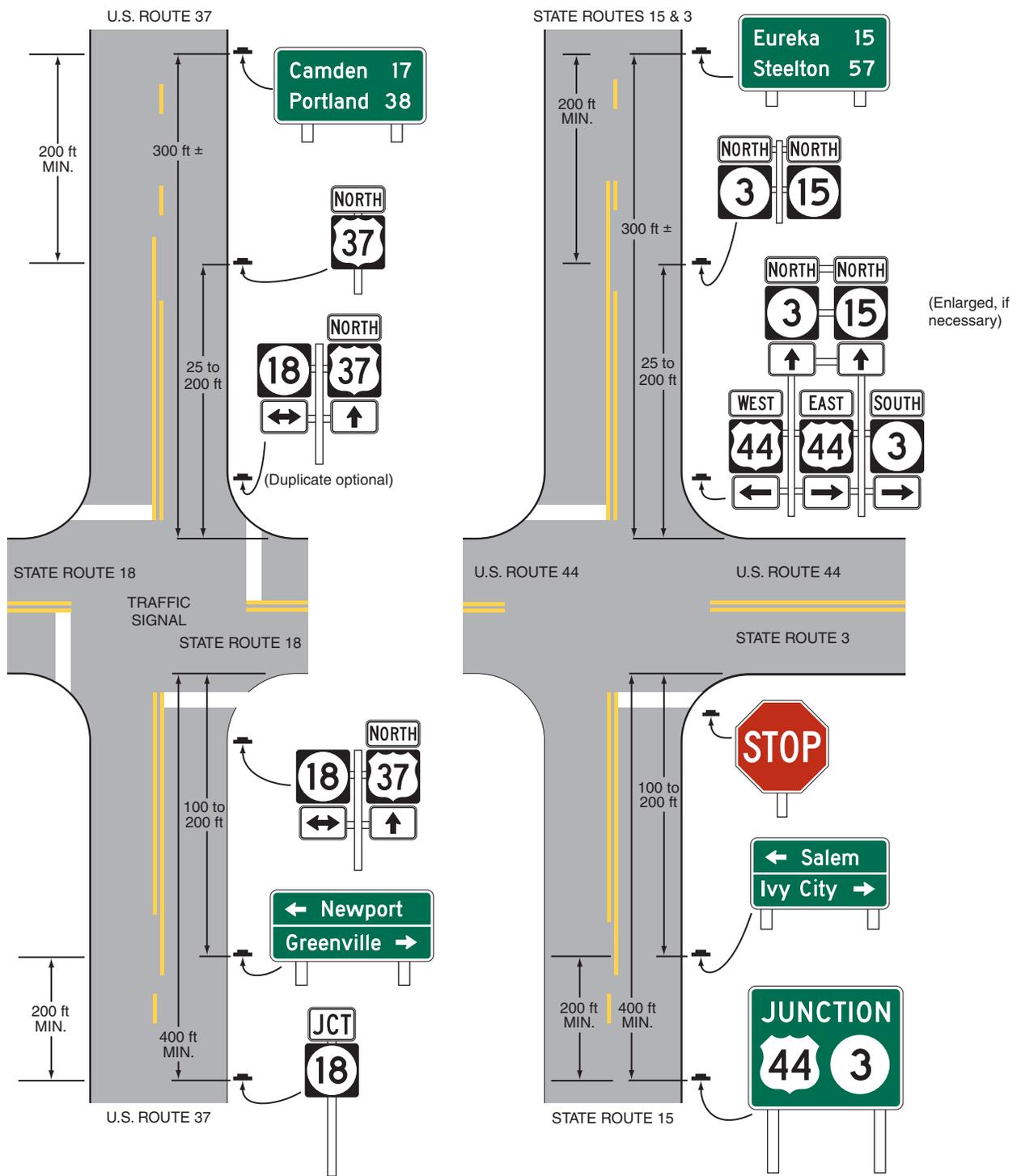
Option:

- 06 Route Sign assemblies may be installed on the approaches to numbered routes on unnumbered roads and streets that carry an appreciable amount of traffic destined for the numbered route.
- 07 The diagrammatic route guide sign format, such as the D1-5 and D1-5a signs shown in Figure 2D-8, may be used on approaches to roundabouts.
- 08 If engineering judgment indicates that groups of assemblies that include overlapping routes or multiple turns might be confusing, route signs or auxiliary signs may be omitted or combined, provided that clear directions are given to road users.

Support:

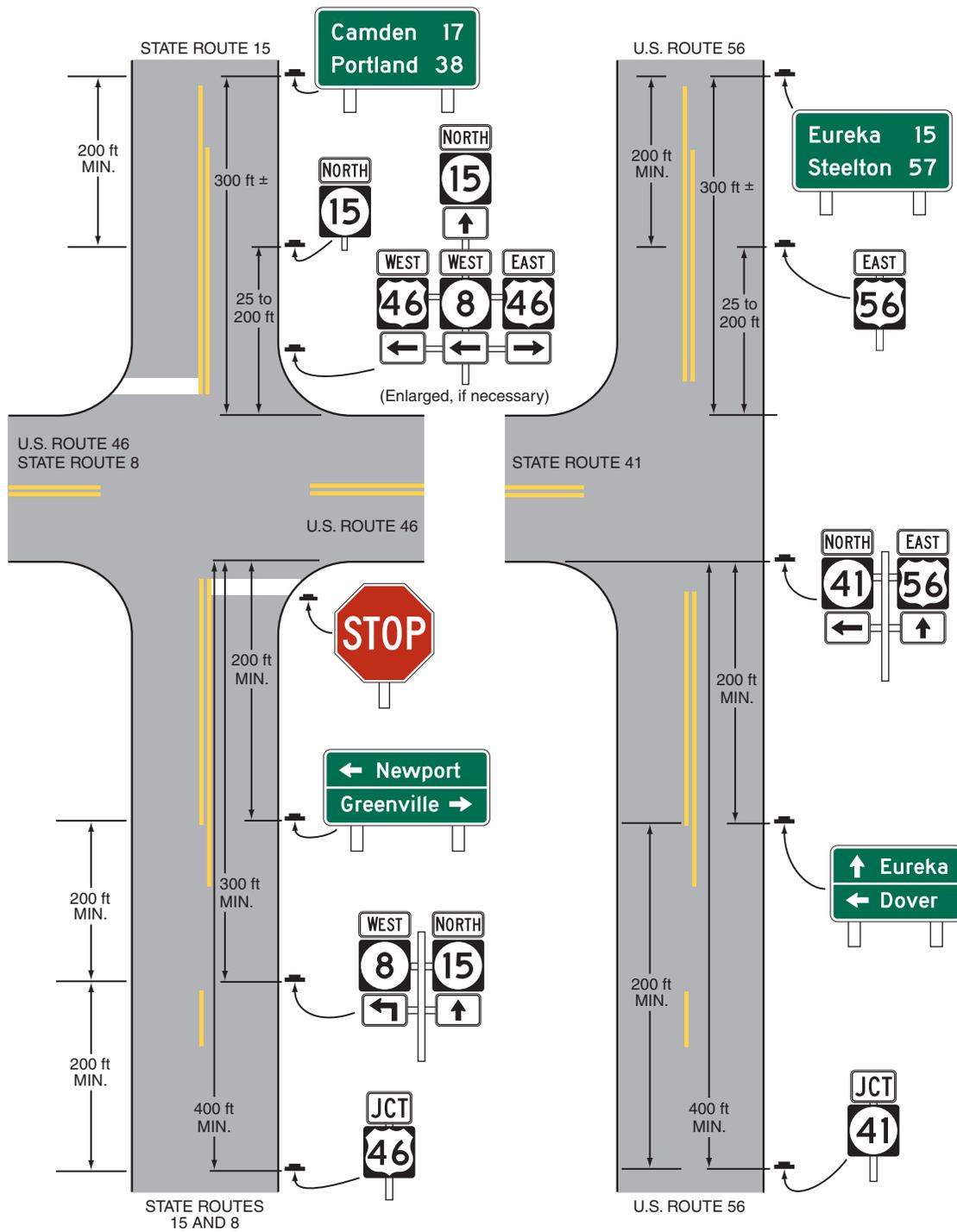
- 09 Figure 2D-6 shows typical placements of route signs.

Figure 2D-6. Illustration of Directional Assemblies and Other Route Signs (for One Direction of Travel Only) (Sheet 1 of 4)



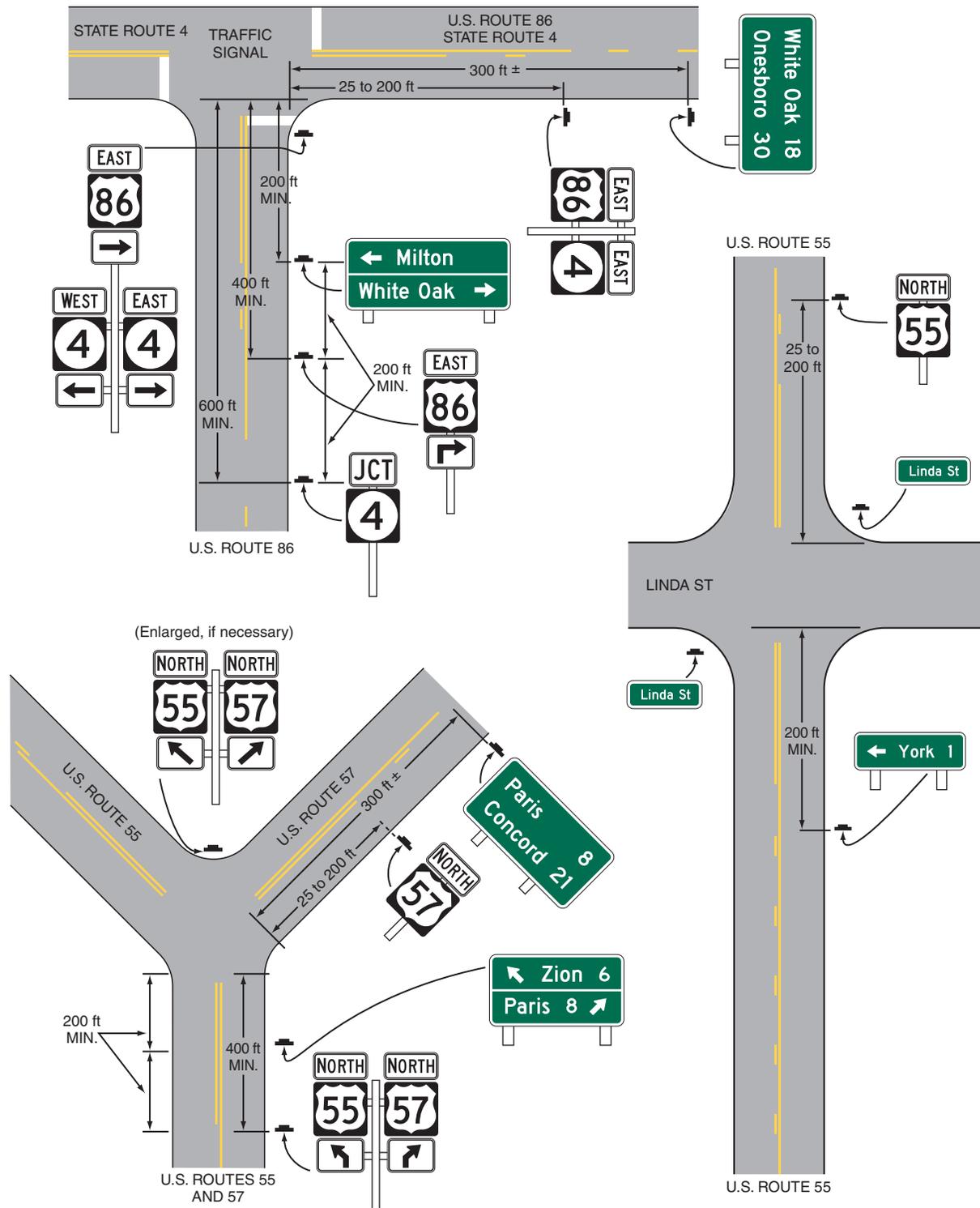
Note: The spacings shown on this figure are for rural intersections.
See Sections 2D.29, 2D.30, 2D.32, 2D.34, 2D.40, and 2D.42 for low-speed and/or urban conditions.

Figure 2D-6. Illustration of Directional Assemblies and Other Route Signs (for One Direction of Travel Only) (Sheet 2 of 4)



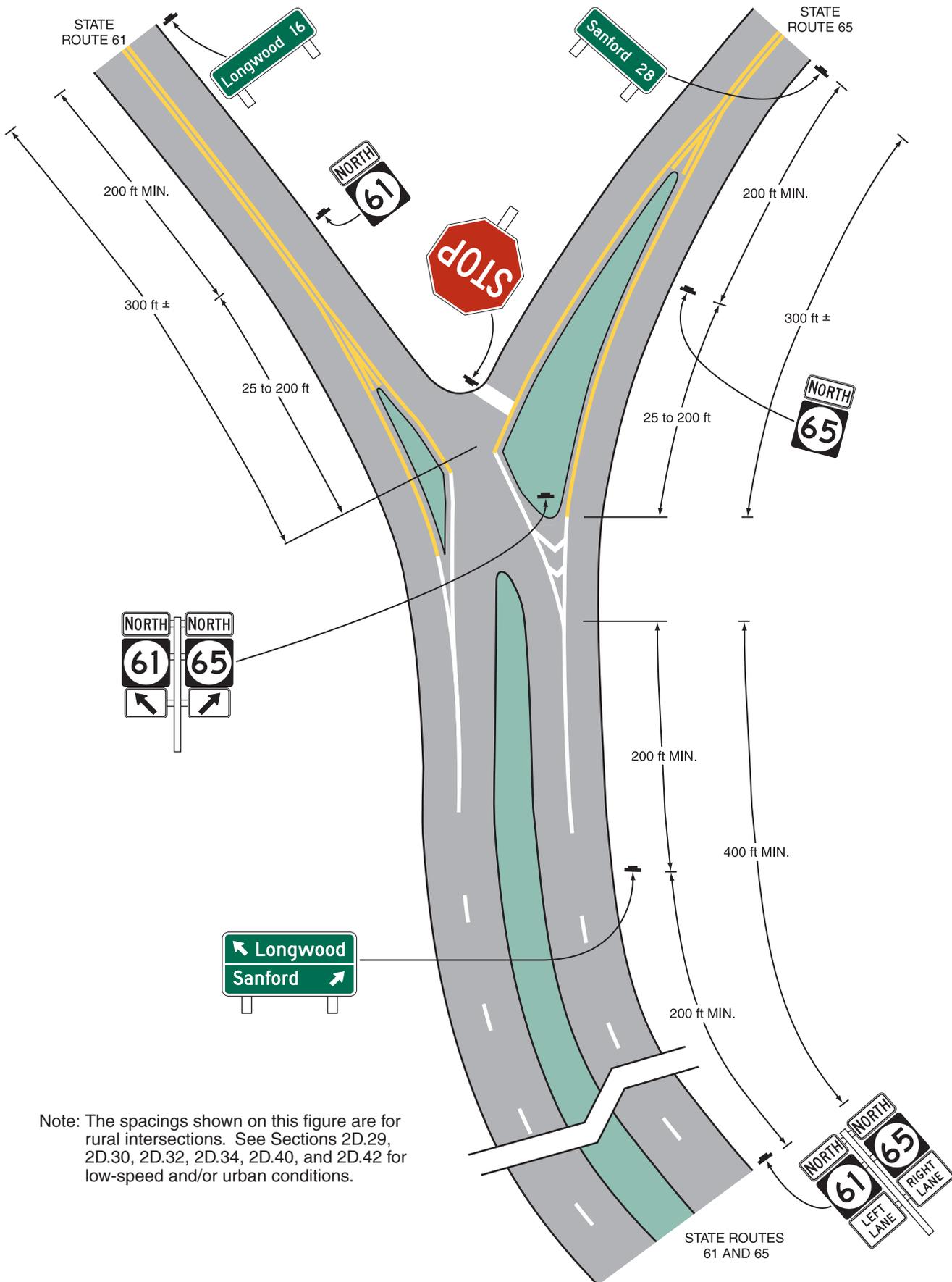
Note: The spacings shown on this figure are for rural intersections.
See Sections 2D.29, 2D.30, 2D.32, 2D.34, 2D.40, and 2D.42 for low-speed and/or urban conditions.

Figure 2D-6. Illustration of Directional Assemblies and Other Route Signs (for One Direction of Travel Only) (Sheet 3 of 4)



Note: The spacings shown on this figure are for rural intersections.
 See Sections 2D.29, 2D.30, 2D.32, 2D.34, 2D.40, and 2D.42 for low-speed and/or urban conditions.

Figure 2D-6. Illustration of Directional Assemblies and Other Route Signs (for One Direction of Travel Only) (Sheet 4 of 4)



Note: The spacings shown on this figure are for rural intersections. See Sections 2D.29, 2D.30, 2D.32, 2D.34, 2D.40, and 2D.42 for low-speed and/or urban conditions.

Section 2D.30 Junction Assembly

Standard:

01 **A Junction assembly shall consist of a Junction auxiliary sign and a route sign. The route sign shall carry the number of the intersected or joined route.**

02 **The Junction assembly shall be installed in advance of every intersection where a numbered route is intersected or joined by another numbered route.**

Guidance:

03 *In urban areas, the Junction assembly should be installed in the block preceding the intersection. In urban areas where speeds are low, the Junction assembly should not be installed more than 300 feet in advance of the intersection.*

04 *In rural areas, the Junction assembly should be installed at least 400 feet in advance of the intersection. In rural areas, the minimum distance between a Junction assembly and either a Destination sign or an Advance Route Turn assembly should be 200 feet.*

05 *Where speeds are high, greater spacings should be used.*

Option:

06 **Where two or more routes are to be indicated, a single Junction auxiliary sign may be used for the assembly and all route signs grouped in a single mounting, or a Combination Junction (M2-2) sign (see Section 2D.14) may be used.**

Section 2D.31 Advance Route Turn Assembly

Standard:

01 **An Advance Route Turn assembly shall consist of a route sign, an Advance Turn Arrow or word message auxiliary sign, and a Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign, if needed. It shall be installed in advance of an intersection where a turn must be made to remain on the indicated route.**

Option:

02 **The Advance Route Turn assembly may be used to supplement the required Junction assembly in advance of intersecting routes.**

Guidance:

03 *Where a multiple-lane highway approaches an interchange or intersection with a numbered route, the Advance Route Turn assembly should be used to pre-position turning vehicles in the correct lanes from which to make their turn.*

Option:

04 **Lane Designation auxiliary signs (see Section 2D.27) may be used in Advance Route Turn Assemblies in place of the Advance Turn Arrow auxiliary signs where engineering judgment indicates that specific lane information associated with each route is needed and overhead signing is not practical and the designated lane is a mandatory movement lane. An assembly with the Lane Designation auxiliary signs may supplement or substitute for an assembly with Advance Turn Arrow auxiliary signs.**

Guidance:

05 *In low-speed areas, the Advance Route Turn assembly should be installed not less than 200 feet in advance of the turn. In high-speed areas, the Advance Route Turn assembly should be installed not less than 300 feet in advance of the turn. In rural areas, the minimum distance between an Advance Route Turn assembly and either a Destination sign or a Junction assembly should be 200 feet.*

Standard:

06 **An assembly that includes an Advance Turn Arrow auxiliary sign shall not be placed where there is an intersection between it and the designated turn.**

Guidance:

07 *Sufficient distance should be allowed between the assembly and any preceding intersection that could be mistaken for the indicated turn.*

Section 2D.32 Directional Assembly

Standard:

01 **A Directional assembly shall consist of a Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign, if needed; a route sign; and a Directional Arrow auxiliary sign. The various uses of Directional assemblies shall be as provided in Items A through D:**

- A. Turn movements (indicated in advance by an Advance Route Turn assembly) shall be marked by a Directional assembly with a route sign displaying the number of the turning route and a single-headed arrow pointing in the direction of the turn.
- B. The beginning of a route (indicated in advance by a Junction assembly) shall be marked by a Directional assembly with a route sign displaying the number of that route and a single-headed arrow pointing in the direction of the route.
- C. An intersected route (indicated in advance by a Junction assembly) on a crossroad where the route is designated on both legs shall be designated by:
 - 1. Two Directional assemblies, each with a route sign displaying the number of the intersected route, a Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign, and a single-headed arrow pointing in the direction of movement on that route; or
 - 2. A Directional assembly with a route sign displaying the number of the intersected route and a double-headed arrow, pointing at appropriate angles to the left, right, or ahead.
- D. An intersected route (indicated in advance by a Junction assembly) on a side road or on a crossroad where the route is designated only on one of the legs shall be designated by a Directional assembly with a route sign displaying the number of the intersected route, a Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign, and a single-headed arrow pointing in the direction of movement on that route.

Guidance:

- 02 *Straight-through movements should be indicated by a Directional assembly with a route sign displaying the number of the continuing route and a vertical arrow. A Directional assembly should not be used for a straight-through movement in the absence of other assemblies indicating right or left turns, as the Confirming assembly sign beyond the intersection normally provides adequate guidance.*
- 03 *Directional assemblies should be located on the near right corner of the intersection. At major intersections and at Y or offset intersections, additional Directional assemblies should be installed on the far right or left corner to confirm the near-side assemblies. When the near-corner position is not practical for Directional assemblies, the far right corner should be the preferred alternative, with oversized signs, if necessary, for legibility. Where unusual conditions exist, the location of a Directional assembly should be determined by engineering judgment with the goal being to provide the best possible combination of view and safety.*

Support:

- 04 It is more important that guide signs be readable, and that the information and direction displayed thereon be readily understood, at the appropriate time and place than to be located with absolute uniformity.
- 05 Figure 2D-6 shows typical placements of Directional assemblies.

Section 2D.33 Combination Lane-Use/Destination Overhead Guide Sign (D15-1)

Option:

- 01 At complex intersection approaches involving multiple turn lanes and destinations, a Combination Lane-Use/Destination (D15-1) overhead guide sign that combines a lane-use regulatory sign with destination information such as a cardinal direction, a route number, a street name, and/or a place name may be used.

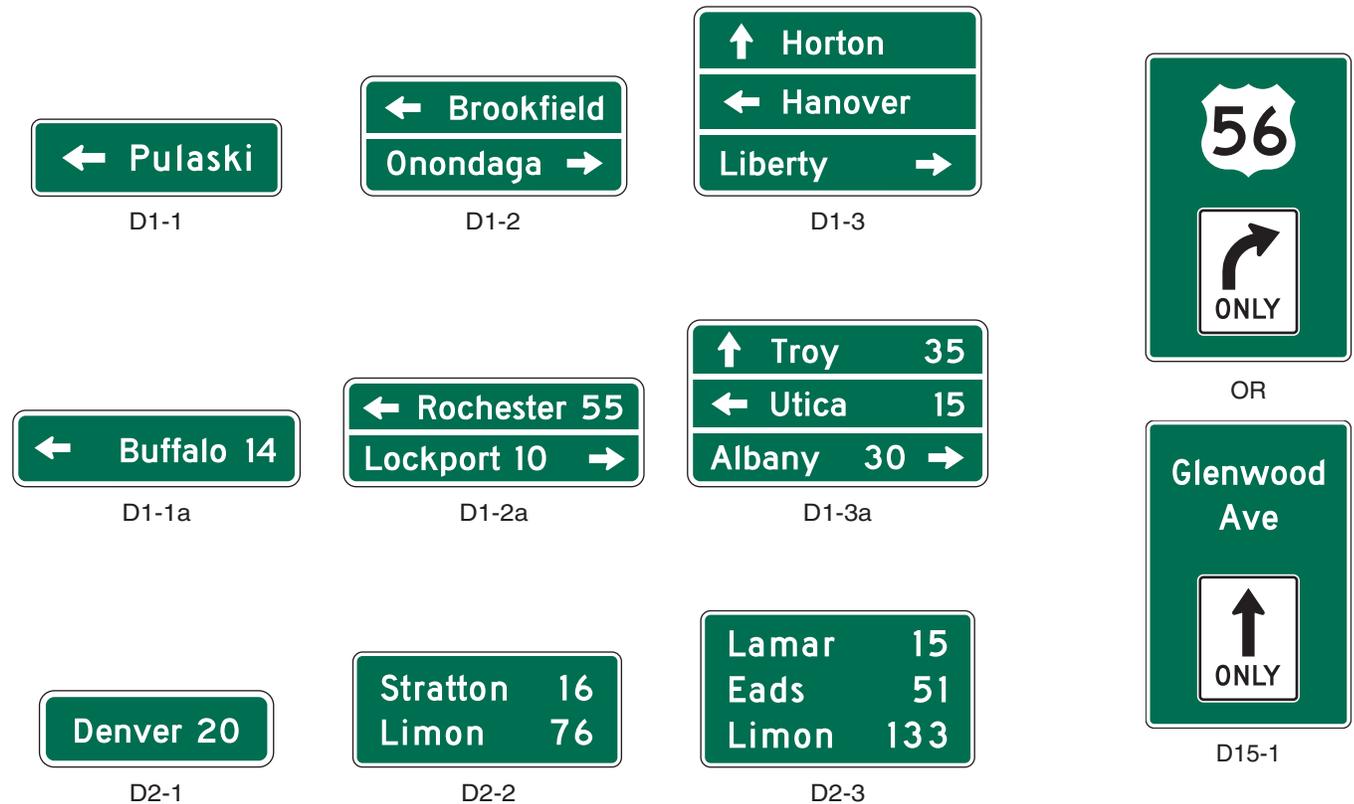
Support:

- 02 At such locations, the combined information on the D15-1 signs can be even more effective than separate lane-use and guide signs for conveying to unfamiliar drivers which lane or lanes to use for a particular destination.
- 03 Figure 2D-7 shows an example of a D15-1 sign that combines lane-use and route number information and an example of a D15-1 sign that combines lane-use and street name information.

Standard:

- 04 **The Combination Lane-Use/Destination (D15-1) overhead guide sign shall be used only where the designated lane is a mandatory movement lane. The D15-1 sign shall not be used for lanes with optional movements.**
- 05 **The D15-1 sign shall have a green background with a white border. As shown in Figure 2D-7, the lane-use sign (see Chapter 2B) shall be placed near the bottom of the sign and the destination information shall be placed near the top of the sign. The D15-1 sign shall be located approximately over the center of the lane to which it applies.**

Figure 2D-7. Destination and Distance Signs



Section 2D.34 Confirming or Reassurance Assemblies

Standard:

- 01 If used, Confirming or Reassurance assemblies shall consist of a Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign and a route sign. Where the Confirming or Reassurance assembly is for an alternative route, the appropriate auxiliary sign for an alternative route (see Section 2D.16) shall also be included in the assembly.

Guidance:

- 02 A Confirming assembly should be installed just beyond intersections of numbered routes. It should be placed 25 to 200 feet beyond the far shoulder or curb line of the intersected highway.
- 03 If used, Reassurance assemblies should be installed between intersections in urban areas as needed, and beyond the built-up area of any incorporated city or town.
- 04 Route signs for either confirming or reassurance purposes should be spaced at such intervals as necessary to keep road users informed of their routes.

Section 2D.35 Trailblazer Assembly

Support:

- 01 Trailblazer assemblies provide directional guidance to a particular road facility from other highways in the vicinity. This guidance is accomplished by installing Trailblazer assemblies at strategic locations to indicate the direction to the nearest or most convenient point of access. The use of the word TO indicates that the road or street where the sign is posted is not a part of the indicated route, and that a road user is merely being directed progressively to the route.

Standard:

- 02 A Trailblazer assembly shall consist of a TO auxiliary sign, a route sign for a numbered or named highway (see Section 2D.53) or an Auto Tour Route sign (see Section 2H.07), and a single-headed Directional Arrow auxiliary sign pointing in the direction leading to the route. Where the Trailblazer assembly is for an alternative route, the appropriate auxiliary sign for an alternative route (see Section 2D.16) shall also be included in the assembly.

Option:

03 A Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign may be used with a Trailblazer assembly.

Guidance:

04 *The TO auxiliary sign, Cardinal Direction auxiliary sign, and Directional Arrow auxiliary sign should be of the standard size provided for auxiliary signs of their respective type. The route sign should be the size provided in Section 2D.11.*

Option:

05 Trailblazer assemblies may be installed with other Route Sign assemblies, or alone, in the immediate vicinity of the designated facilities.

Section 2D.36 Destination and Distance Signs

Support:

01 In addition to guidance by route numbers, it is desirable to supply the road user information concerning the destinations that can be reached by way of numbered or unnumbered routes. This is done by means of Destination signs and Distance signs.

Option:

02 Route shields and cardinal directions may be included on the Destination sign with the destinations and arrows.

Guidance:

03 *If Route shields and cardinal directions are included on a Destination sign, the height of the route shields should be at least two times the height of the upper-case letters of the principal legend and not less than 18 inches, and the cardinal directions should be in all upper-case letters that are at least the minimum height specified for these signs.*

Section 2D.37 Destination Signs (D1 Series)**Standard:**

01 **Except on approaches to interchanges (see Section 2D.45), the Destination (D1-1 through D1-3) sign (see Figure 2D-7), if used, shall be a horizontal rectangle displaying the name of a city, town, village, or other traffic generator, and a directional arrow.**

Option:

02 The distance (see Section 2D.41) to the place named may also be displayed on the Destination (D1-1a through D1-3a) sign (see Figure 2D-7). If several destinations are to be displayed at a single point, the several names may be placed on a single sign with an arrow (and the distance, if desired) for each name. If more than one destination lies in the same direction, a single arrow may be used for such a group of destinations.

Guidance:

03 *Adequate separation should be made between any destinations or group of destinations in one direction and those in other directions by suitable design of the arrow, spacing of lines of legend, heavy lines entirely across the sign, or separate signs.*

Support:

04 Separation of destinations by direction by the use of a horizontal separator line can enhance the readability of a Destination sign by relating an arrow and its corresponding destination(s) and by eliminating the need for multiple arrows that point in the same direction and excessive space between lines of legend.

Standard:

05 **Except as otherwise provided in this Manual, an arrow pointing to the right shall be at the extreme right of the sign, and an arrow pointing left or up shall be at the extreme left. The distance numerals, if used, shall be placed to the right of the destination names.**

Option:

06 An arrow pointing up may be placed at the extreme right of the sign when the sign is mounted to the left of the traffic to which it applies.

Guidance:

07 *Unless a sloping arrow will convey a clearer indication of the direction to be followed, the directional arrows should be horizontal or vertical.*

08 *If several individual name signs are assembled into a group, all signs in the assembly should be of the same horizontal width.*

- 09 *Destination signs should be used:*
- A. *At the intersections of U.S. or State numbered routes with Interstate, U.S., or State numbered routes; and*
 - B. *At points where they serve to direct traffic from U.S. or State numbered routes to the business section of towns, or to other destinations reached by unnumbered routes.*

Standard:

- 10 **Where a total of three or less destinations are provided on the Advance Guide (see Section 2E.33) and Supplemental Guide (see Section 2E.35) signs, no more than three destination names shall be used on a Destination sign. Where four destinations are provided by the Advance Guide and Supplemental Guide signs, no more than four destination names shall be used on a Destination sign.**

Guidance:

- 11 *If space permits, four destinations should be displayed as two separate signs at two separate locations.*

Option:

- 12 *Where space does not permit, or where all four destinations are in one direction, a single sign may be used. Where a single sign is used and all destinations are in the same direction, the arrow may be placed below the destinations for the purpose of enhancing the conspicuity of the arrow.*

Standard:

- 13 **Where a single four-name sign assembly is used, a heavy line entirely across the sign or separate signs shall be used to separate destinations by direction.**

Guidance:

- 14 *The closest destination lying straight ahead should be at the top of the sign or assembly, and below it the closest destinations to the left and to the right, in that order. The destination displayed for each direction should ordinarily be the next county seat or the next principal city, rather than a more distant destination. In the case of overlapping routes, only one destination should be displayed in each direction for each route.*

Standard:

- 15 **If more than one destination is displayed in the same direction, the name of a nearer destination shall be displayed above the name of a destination that is further away.**

Section 2D.38 Destination Signs at Circular Intersections**Standard:**

- 01 **Destination signs that are used at circular intersections shall comply with the provisions of Section 2D.37, except as provided in this Section.**

Option:

- 02 *Exit destination (D1-1d, D1-1e) signs (see Figure 2D-8) with diagonal upward-pointing arrows or Directional assemblies (see Section 2D.32) may be used to designate a particular exit from a circular intersection.*
- 03 *Exit destination (D1-2d, D1-3d) signs (see Figure 2D-8) with curved-stem arrows may be used on approaches to circular intersections to represent the left-turn movements.*
- 04 *Curved-stem arrows on circular intersection destination signs may point in diagonal directions to depict the location of an exit relative to the approach roadway and entry into the intersection.*
- 05 *Exit destination (D1-5 or D1-5a) signs (see Figure 2D-8) with a diagram of the circular intersection may be used on approaches to circular intersections.*

Guidance:

- 06 *If curved-stem arrows are used on destination signs, then this arrow type should also be used consistently on any regulatory lane-use signs (see Chapter 2B), Directional assemblies (see Section 2D.32), and pavement markings (see Part 3) for a particular destination or movement.*

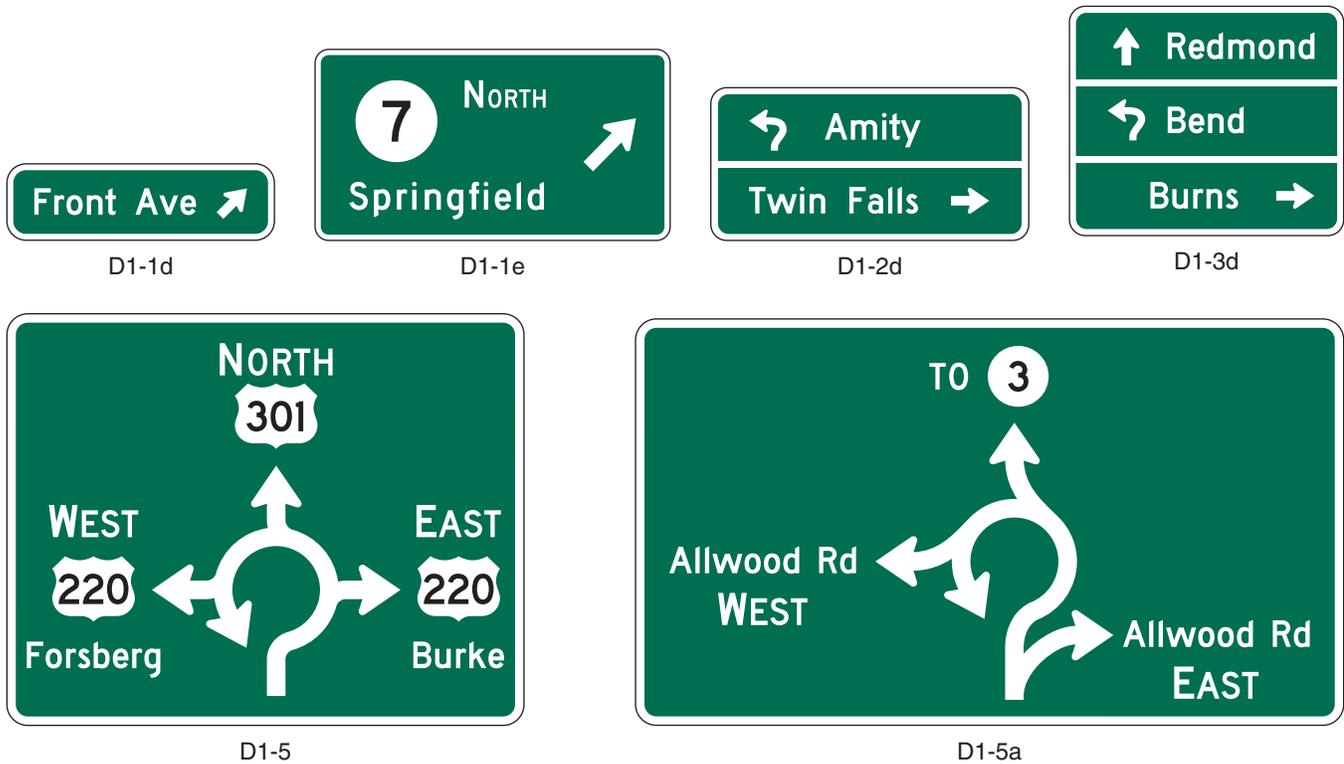
Support:

- 07 *Figure 2D-9 illustrates two examples of guide signing for circular intersections.*

- 08 *Diagrammatic guide signs might be preferable where space is available and where the geometry of the circular intersection is non-typical, such as where more than four legs are present or where the legs are not at approximately 90-degree angles to each other.*

Standard:

- 09 **If used, diagrammatic guide signs for circular intersections shall not depict the number of lanes within the intersection circulatory roadway, or on its approaches or exits, through the use of lane lines, multiple arrow shafts for the same movement, or other methods.**

Figure 2D-8. Destination Signs for Roundabouts**Support:**

- 10 Chapter 2B contains information regarding regulatory signs at circular intersections, Chapter 2C contains information regarding warning signs at circular intersections, and Chapter 3C contains information regarding pavement markings at circular intersections.

Section 2D.39 Destination Signs at Jughandles**Standard:**

- 01 Destination signs that are used at jughandles shall comply with the provisions of Section 2D.37, except as provided in this Section.

Option:

- 02 If engineering judgment indicates that standard destination signs alone are insufficient to direct road users to their destinations at a jughandle, a diagrammatic guide sign depicting the appropriate geometry may be used to supplement the normal destination signs.

Support:

- 03 Section 2B.27 contains information regarding regulatory signs for jughandle turns. Figure 2B-9 shows examples of regulatory and destination guide signing for various types of jughandle turns.

Section 2D.40 Location of Destination Signs**Guidance:**

- 01 When used in high-speed areas, Destination signs should be located 200 feet or more in advance of the intersection, and following any Junction or Advance Route Turn assemblies that might be required. In rural areas, the minimum distance between a Destination sign and either an Advance Route Turn assembly or a Junction assembly should be 200 feet.

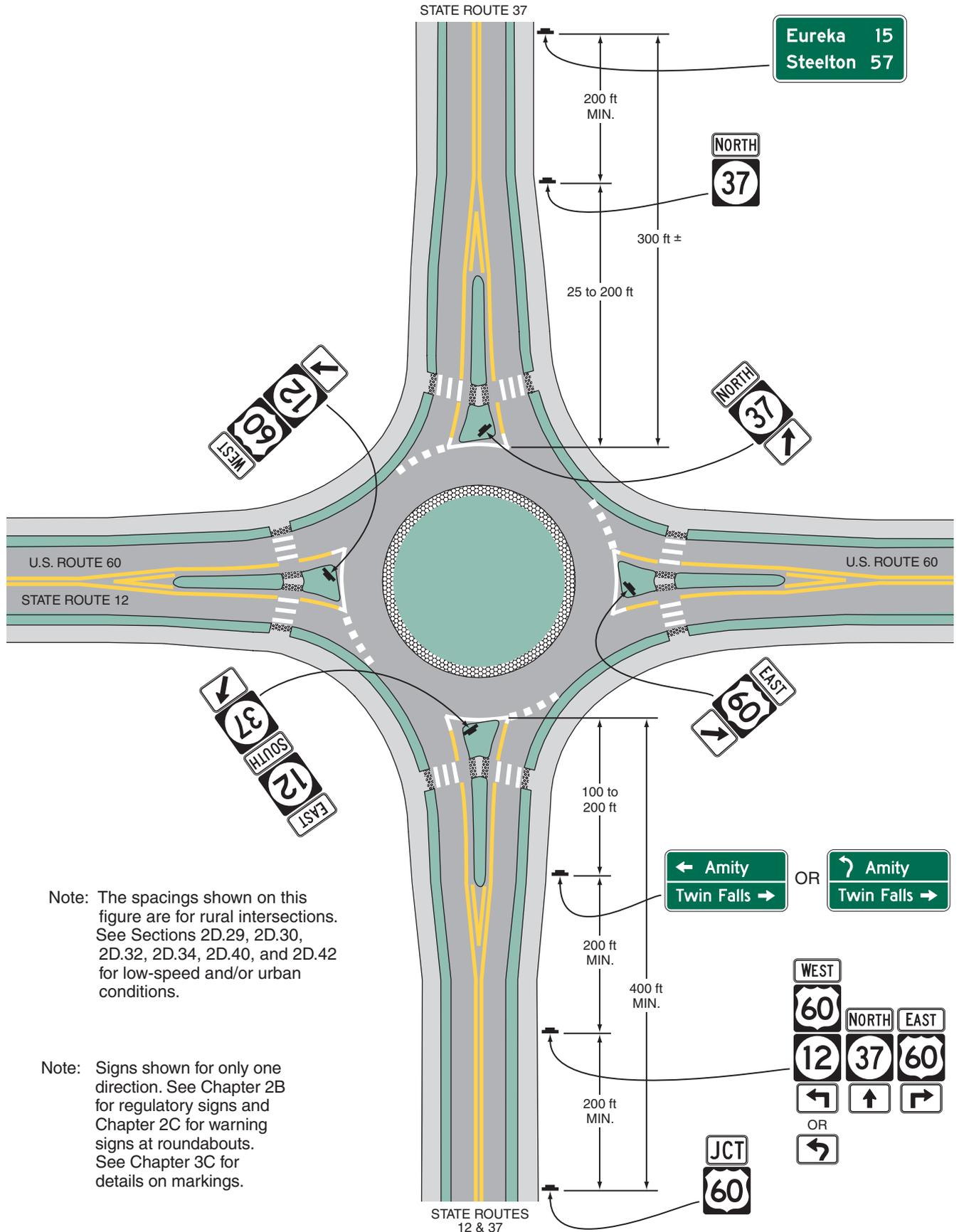
Option:

- 02 In urban areas, shorter advance distances may be used.
- 03 Because the Destination sign is of lesser importance than the Junction, Advance Route Turn, or Directional assemblies, the Destination sign may be eliminated when sign spacing is critical.

Support:

- 04 Figure 2D-6 shows typical placements of Destination signs.

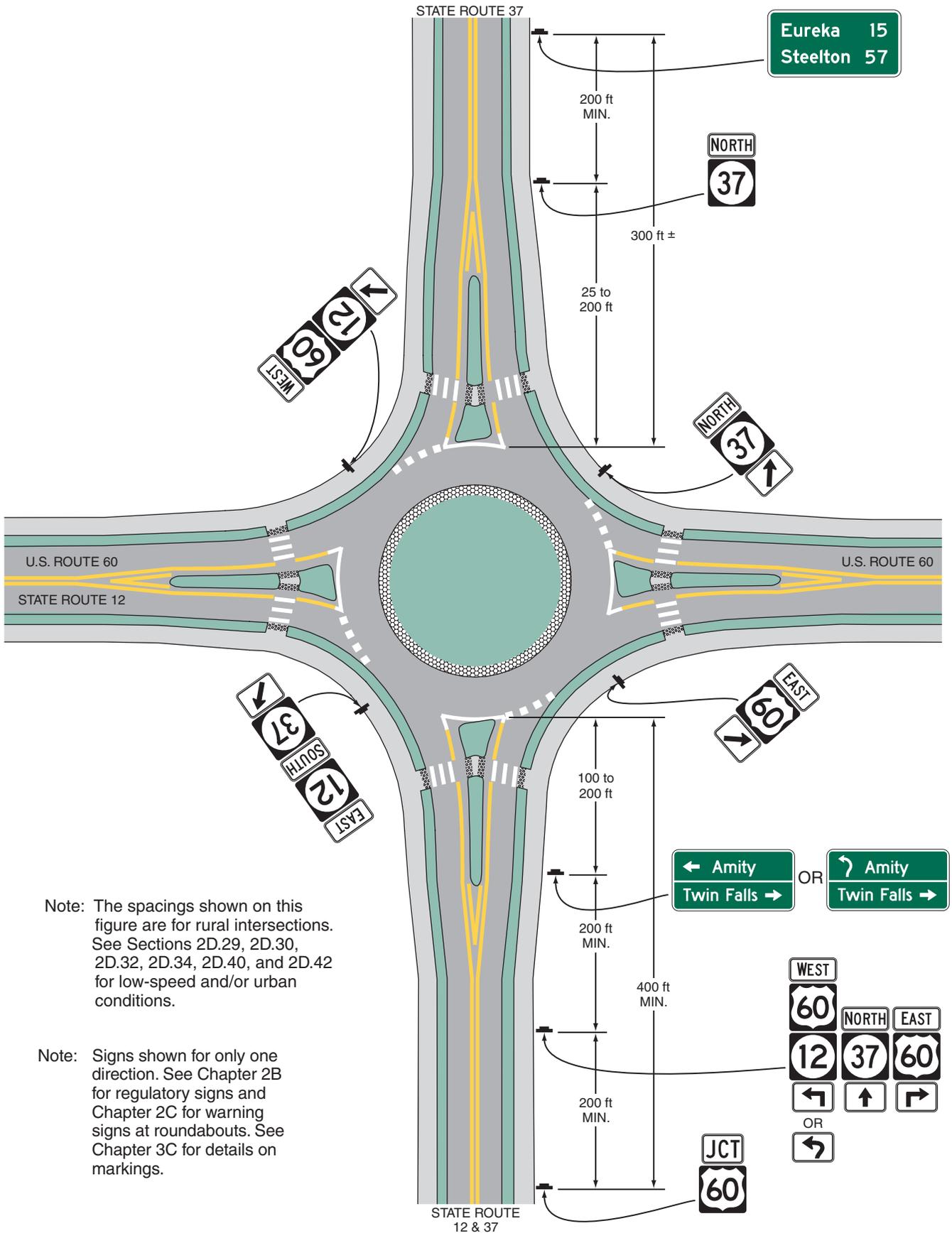
Figure 2D-9. Examples of Guide Signs for Roundabouts (Sheet 1 of 2)



Note: The spacings shown on this figure are for rural intersections. See Sections 2D.29, 2D.30, 2D.32, 2D.34, 2D.40, and 2D.42 for low-speed and/or urban conditions.

Note: Signs shown for only one direction. See Chapter 2B for regulatory signs and Chapter 2C for warning signs at roundabouts. See Chapter 3C for details on markings.

Figure 2D-9. Examples of Guide Signs for Roundabouts (Sheet 2 of 2)



Note: The spacings shown on this figure are for rural intersections. See Sections 2D.29, 2D.30, 2D.32, 2D.34, 2D.40, and 2D.42 for low-speed and/or urban conditions.

Note: Signs shown for only one direction. See Chapter 2B for regulatory signs and Chapter 2C for warning signs at roundabouts. See Chapter 3C for details on markings.

Section 2D.41 Distance Signs (D2 Series)

Standard:

01 **If used, the Distance (D2-1 through D2-3) sign (see Figure 2D-7) shall be a horizontal rectangle of a size appropriate for the required legend, carrying the names of no more than three cities, towns, junctions, or other traffic generators, and the distance (to the nearest mile) to those places.**

02 **The distance numerals shall be placed to the right of the destination names as shown in Figure 2D-7.**

Guidance:

03 *The distance displayed should be selected on a case-by-case basis by the jurisdiction that owns the road or by statewide policy. A well-defined central area or central business district should be used where one exists. In other cases, the layout of the community should be considered in relation to the highway being signed and the decision based on where it appears that most drivers would feel that they are in the center of the community in question.*

04 *The top name on the Distance sign should be that of the next place on the route having a post office or a railroad station, a route number or name of an intersected highway, or any other significant geographical identity. The bottom name on the sign should be that of the next major destination or control city. If three destinations are displayed, the middle line should be used to indicate communities of general interest along the route or important route junctions.*

Option:

05 The choice of names for the middle line may be varied on successive Distance signs to give road users additional information concerning communities served by the route.

Guidance:

06 *The control city should remain the same on all successive Distance signs throughout the length of the route until that city is reached.*

Option:

07 If more than one distant point may properly be designated, such as where the route divides at some distance ahead to serve two destinations of similar importance, and if these two destinations cannot appear on the same sign, the two names may be alternated on successive signs.

08 On a route continuing into another State, destinations in the adjacent State may be displayed.

Section 2D.42 Location of Distance Signs

Guidance:

01 *If used, Distance signs should be installed on important routes leaving municipalities and just beyond intersections of numbered routes in rural areas. If used, they should be placed just outside the municipal limits or at the edge of the built-up area if it extends beyond the limits.*

02 *Where overlapping routes separate a short distance from the municipal limits, the Distance sign at the municipal limits should be omitted. The Distance sign should be installed approximately 300 feet beyond the separation of the two routes.*

03 *Where, just outside of an incorporated municipality, two routes are concurrent and continue concurrently to the next incorporated municipality, the top name on the Distance sign should be that of the place where the routes separate; the bottom name should be that of the city to which the greater part of the through traffic is destined.*

Support:

04 Figure 2D-6 shows typical placements of Distance signs.

Section 2D.43 Street Name Signs (D3-1 or D3-1a)

Guidance:

01 *Street Name (D3-1 or D3-1a) signs (see Figure 2D-10) should be installed in urban areas at all street intersections regardless of other route signs that might be present and should be installed in rural areas to identify important roads that are not otherwise signed.*

Option:

02 For streets that are part of a U.S., State, or county numbered route, a D3-1a Street Name sign (see Figure 2D-10) that incorporates a route shield may be used to assist road users who might not otherwise be able to associate the name of the street with the route number.

Standard:

03 **The lettering for names of streets and highways on Street Name signs shall be composed of a combination of lower-case letters with initial upper-case letters (see Section 2A.13).**

Figure 2D-10. Street Name and Parking Signs*Guidance:*

- 04 Lettering on post-mounted Street Name signs should be composed of initial upper-case letters at least 6 inches in height and lower-case letters at least 4.5 inches in height.
- 05 On multi-lane streets with speed limits greater than 40 mph, the lettering on post-mounted Street Name signs should be composed of initial upper-case letters at least 8 inches in height and lower-case letters at least 6 inches in height.

Option:

- 06 For local roads with speed limits of 25 mph or less, the lettering on post-mounted Street Name signs may be composed of initial upper-case letters at least 4 inches in height and lower-case letters at least 3 inches in height.

Guidance:

- 07 If overhead Street Name signs are used, the lettering should be composed of initial upper-case letters at least 12 inches in height and lower-case letters at least 9 inches in height.

Support:

- 08 The recommended minimum letter heights for Street Name signs are summarized in Table 2D-2.

Option:

- 09 Supplementary lettering to indicate the type of street (such as Street, Avenue, or Road) or the section of the city (such as NW) on the D3-1 and D3-1a signs may be in smaller lettering, composed of initial upper-case letters at least 3 inches in height and lower-case letters at least 2.25 inches in height. Conventional abbreviations (see Section 1A.15) may be used except for the street name itself.

- 10 A pictograph (see definition in Section 1A.13) may be used on a D3-1 sign.

Standard:

- 11 **Pictographs shall not be displayed on D3-1a or Advance Street Name (D3-2) signs (see Section 2D.44).**
- 12 **If a pictograph is used on a D3-1 sign, the height and width of the pictograph shall not exceed the upper-case letter height of the principal legend of the sign.**

Guidance:

- 13 *The pictograph should be positioned to the left of the street name.*

Standard:

- 14 **The Street Name sign shall be retroreflective or illuminated to show the same shape and similar color both day and night. The color of the legend (and border, if used) shall contrast with the background color of the sign.**

Option:

- 15 The border may be omitted from a Street Name sign.

Table 2D-2. Recommended Minimum Letter Heights on Street Name Signs

Type of Mounting	Type of Street or Highway	Speed Limit	Recommended Minimum Letter Height	
			Initial Upper-Case	Lower-Case
Overhead	All types	All speed limits	12 inches	9 inches
Post-mounted	Multi-lane	More than 40 mph	8 inches	6 inches
Post-mounted	Multi-lane	40 mph or less	6 inches	4.5 inches
Post-mounted	2-lane	All speed limits	6 inches*	4.5 inches*

* On local two-lane streets with speed limits of 25 mph or less, 4-inch initial upper-case letters with 3-inch lower-case letters may be used.

16 An alternative background color other than the normal guide sign color of green may be used for Street Name (D3-1 or D3-1a) signs where the highway agency determines this is necessary to assist road users in determining jurisdictional authority for roads.

Standard:

17 **Alternative background colors shall not be used for Advance Street Name (D3-2) signs (see Section 2D.44).**

18 **The only acceptable alternative background colors for Street Name (D3-1 or D3-1a) signs shall be blue, brown, or white. Regardless of whether green, blue, or brown is used as the background color for Street Name (D3-1 or D3-1a) signs, the legend (and border, if used) shall be white. For Street Name signs that use a white background, the legend (and border, if used) shall be black.**

Guidance:

19 *An alternative background color for Street Name signs, if used, should be applied to the Street Name (D3-1 or D3-1a) signs on all roadways under the jurisdiction of a particular highway agency.*

20 *In business or commercial areas and on principal arterials, Street Name signs should be placed at least on diagonally opposite corners. In residential areas, at least one Street Name sign should be mounted at each intersection. Signs naming both streets should be installed at each intersection. They should be mounted with their faces parallel to the streets they name.*

Option:

21 To optimize visibility, Street Name signs may be mounted overhead. Street Name signs may also be placed above a regulatory or STOP or YIELD sign with no required vertical separation.

Guidance:

22 *In urban or suburban areas, especially where Advance Street Name signs for signalized and other major intersections are not used, the use of overhead Street Name signs should be strongly considered.*

Option:

23 At intersection crossroads where the same road has two different street names for each direction of travel, both street names may be displayed on the same sign along with directional arrows.

Support:

24 Information regarding the use of street names on supplemental plaques for use with intersection-related warning signs is contained in Section 2C.58.

Section 2D.44 Advance Street Name Signs (D3-2)

Support:

01 Advance Street Name (D3-2) signs (see Figure 2D-10) identify an upcoming intersection. Although this is often the next intersection, it could also be several intersections away in cases where the next signalized intersection is referenced.

Standard:

02 **Advance Street Name (D3-2) signs, if used, shall supplement rather than be used instead of the Street Name (D3-1) signs at the intersection.**

Option:

03 Advance Street Name (D3-2) signs may be installed in advance of signalized or unsignalized intersections to provide road users with advance information to identify the name(s) of the next intersecting street to prepare for crossing traffic and to facilitate timely deceleration and/or lane changing in preparation for a turn.

Guidance:

- 04 *On arterial highways in rural areas, Advance Street Name signs should be used in advance of all signalized intersections and in advance of all intersections with exclusive turn lanes.*
- 05 *In urban areas, Advance Street Name signs should be used in advance of all signalized intersections on major arterial streets, except where signalized intersections are so closely spaced that advance placement of the signs is impractical.*
- 06 *The heights of the letters on Advance Street Name signs should be the same as those used for Street Name signs (see Section 2D.43).*

Standard:

- 07 **If used, Advance Street Name signs shall have a white legend and border on a green background.**
- 08 **If used, Advance Street Name signs shall provide the name(s) of the intersecting street(s) on the top line(s) of the legend and the distance to the intersecting streets or messages such as NEXT SIGNAL, NEXT INTERSECTION, NEXT ROUNDABOUT, or directional arrow(s) on the bottom line of the legend.**
- 09 **Pictographs shall not be displayed on Advance Street Name signs.**

Option:

- 10 Directional arrow(s) may be placed to the right or left of the street name or message such as NEXT SIGNAL, as appropriate, rather than on the bottom line of the legend. Curved-stem arrows may be used on Advance Street Name signs on approaches to circular intersections.
- 11 For intersecting crossroads where the same road has a different street name for each direction of travel, the different street names may be displayed on the same Advance Street Name sign along with directional arrows.
- 12 In advance of two closely-spaced intersections where it is not practical to install separate Advance Street Name signs, the Advance Street Name sign may include the street names for both intersections along with appropriate supplemental legends for both street names, such as NEXT INTERSECTION, 2ND INTERSECTION, or NEXT LEFT and NEXT RIGHT, or directional arrows.

Guidance:

- 13 *If two street names are used on the Advance Street Name sign, the street names should be displayed in the following order:*
- A. *For a single intersection where the same road has a different street name for each direction of travel, the name of the street to the left should be displayed above the name of the street to the right; or*
 - B. *For two closely-spaced intersections, the name of the first street encountered should be displayed above the name of the second street encountered, and the arrow associated with the second street encountered should be an advance arrow, such as the arrow shown on the W16-6P arrow plaque (see Figure 2C-12).*

Option:

- 14 An Advance Street Name (W16-8P or W16-8aP) plaque (see Section 2C.58) with black legend on a yellow background, installed supplemental to an Intersection (W2 series) or Advance Traffic Control (W3 series) warning sign may be used instead of an Advance Street Name guide sign.

Section 2D.45 Signing on Conventional Roads on Approaches to Interchanges*Support:*

- 01 Because there are a number of different ramp configurations that are commonly used at interchanges with conventional roads, drivers on the conventional road cannot reliably predict whether they will be required to turn left or right in order to enter the correct ramp to access the freeway or expressway in the desired direction of travel. Consistently applied signing for conventional road approaches to freeway or expressway interchanges is highly desirable.

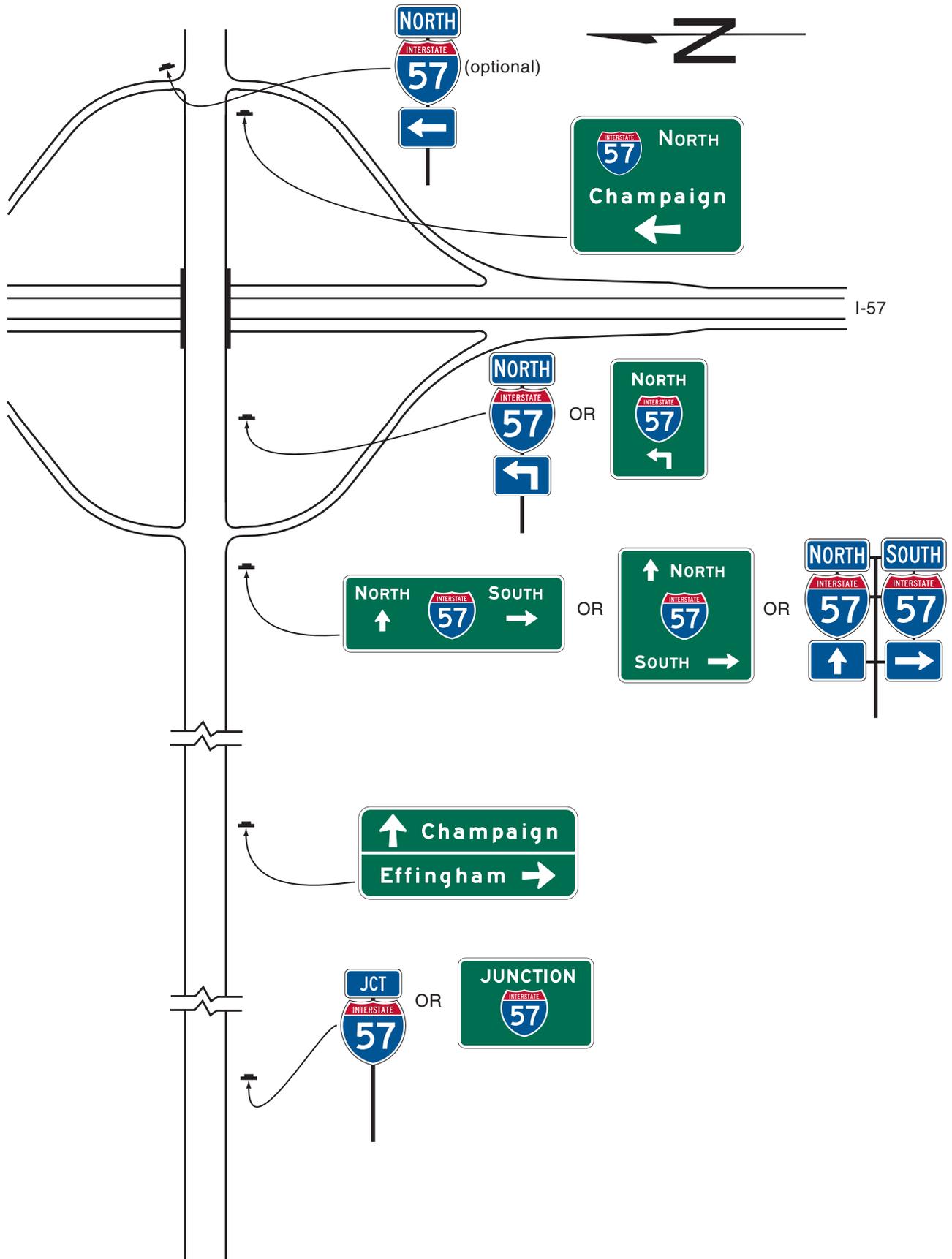
Standard:

- 02 **On multi-lane conventional roads approaching an interchange, guide signs shall be provided to identify which direction of turn is to be made and/or which specific lane to use for ramp access to each direction of the freeway or expressway.**

Guidance:

- 03 *The signing of conventional roads with one lane of traffic approaching an interchange should consist of a sequence containing the following signs (see Figure 2D-11):*
- A. *Junction Assembly*
 - B. *Destination sign*
 - C. *Directional Assembly or Entrance Direction sign for the first ramp*
 - D. *Advance Route Turn Assembly or Advance Entrance Direction sign with an advance turn arrow*
 - E. *Directional Assembly or Entrance Direction sign for the second ramp*

Figure 2D-11. Example of Interchange Crossroad Signing for a One-Lane Approach



Standard:

- 04 **If used, the Entrance Direction sign shall consist of a white legend and border on a green background. It shall contain the freeway or expressway route shield(s), cardinal direction, and directional arrow(s).**

Option:

- 05 The Entrance Direction sign may contain a destination(s) and/or an action message such as NEXT RIGHT.
 06 At minor interchanges, the following sequence of signs may be used (see Figure 2D-12):
 A. Junction Assembly
 B. Directional Assembly for the first ramp
 C. Directional Assembly for the second ramp

Guidance:

- 07 *On multi-lane conventional roads approaching an interchange, the sign sequence should contain the following signs (see Figures 2D-13 through 2D-15):*
 A. Junction Assembly
 B. Advance Entrance Direction sign(s) for both directions (if applicable) of travel on the freeway or expressway
 C. Entrance Direction sign for first ramp
 D. Advance Turn Assembly
 E. Entrance Direction sign for the second ramp

Support:

- 08 Advance Entrance Direction signs are used to direct road users to the appropriate lane(s).

Standard:

- 09 **The Advance Entrance Direction sign shall consist of a white legend and border on a green background. It shall contain the freeway or expressway route shield(s) and cardinal direction(s).**

Option:

- 10 The Advance Entrance Direction sign may have destinations, directional arrows, and/or an action message such as KEEP LEFT, NEXT LEFT, or SECOND RIGHT. Signs in this sequence may be mounted overhead to improve visibility as shown in Figures 2D-13 through 2D-15.

Support:

- 11 A post-mounted Advance Entrance Direction diagrammatic guide sign (see Figure 2D-16), within the sequence of approach guide signing described in Paragraphs 3, 6, and 7, might be helpful in depicting the location of a freeway or expressway entrance ramp that is in close proximity to an intervening intersection on the same side of the approach roadway and where signing for only the ramp might cause confusion to road users.

Figure 2D-12. Example of Minor Interchange Crossroad Signing

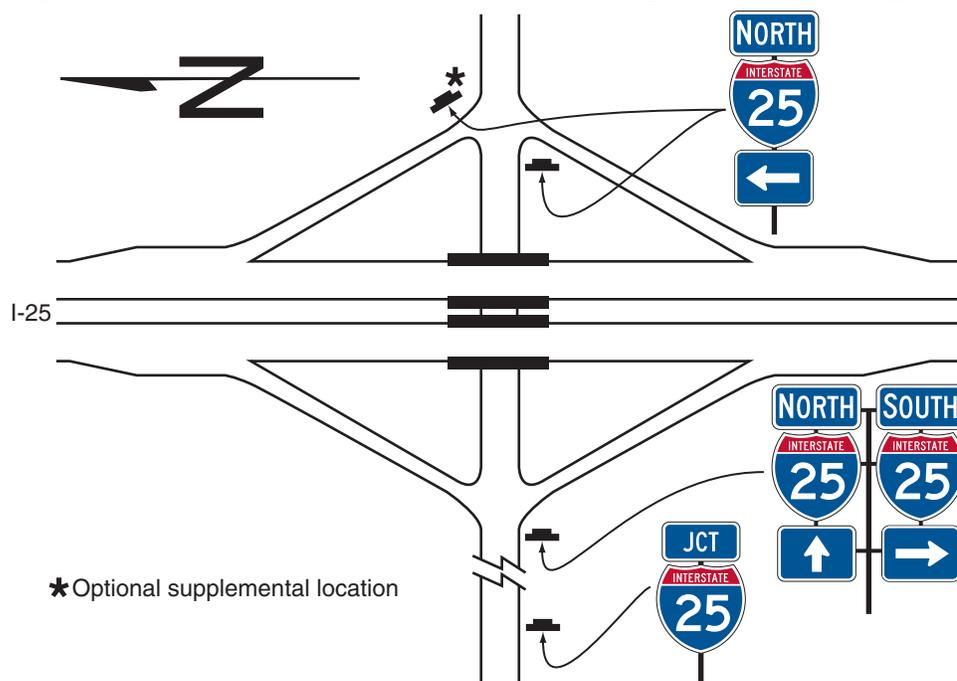


Figure 2D-13. Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Diamond Interchange

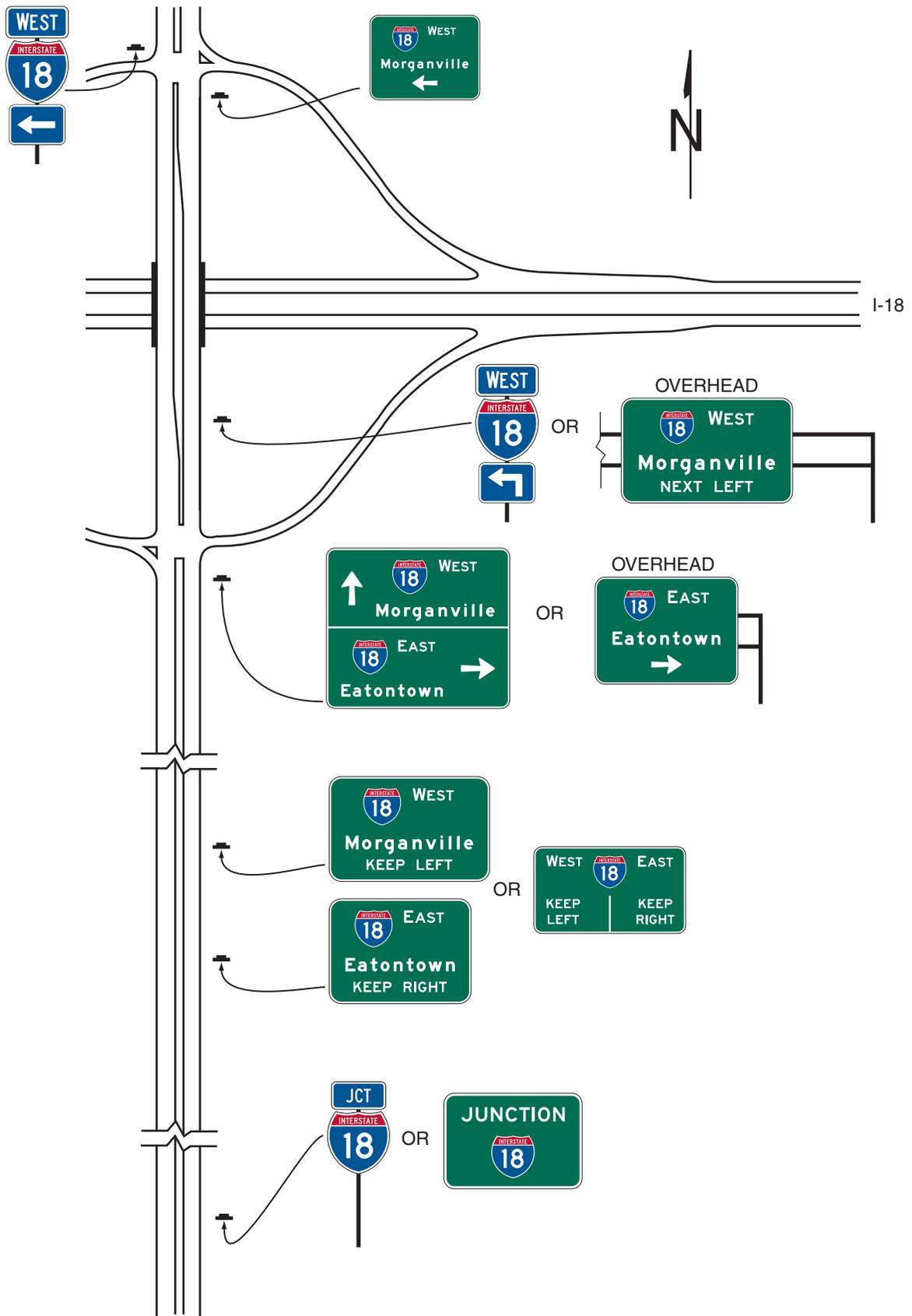


Figure 2D-14. Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Partial Cloverleaf Interchange

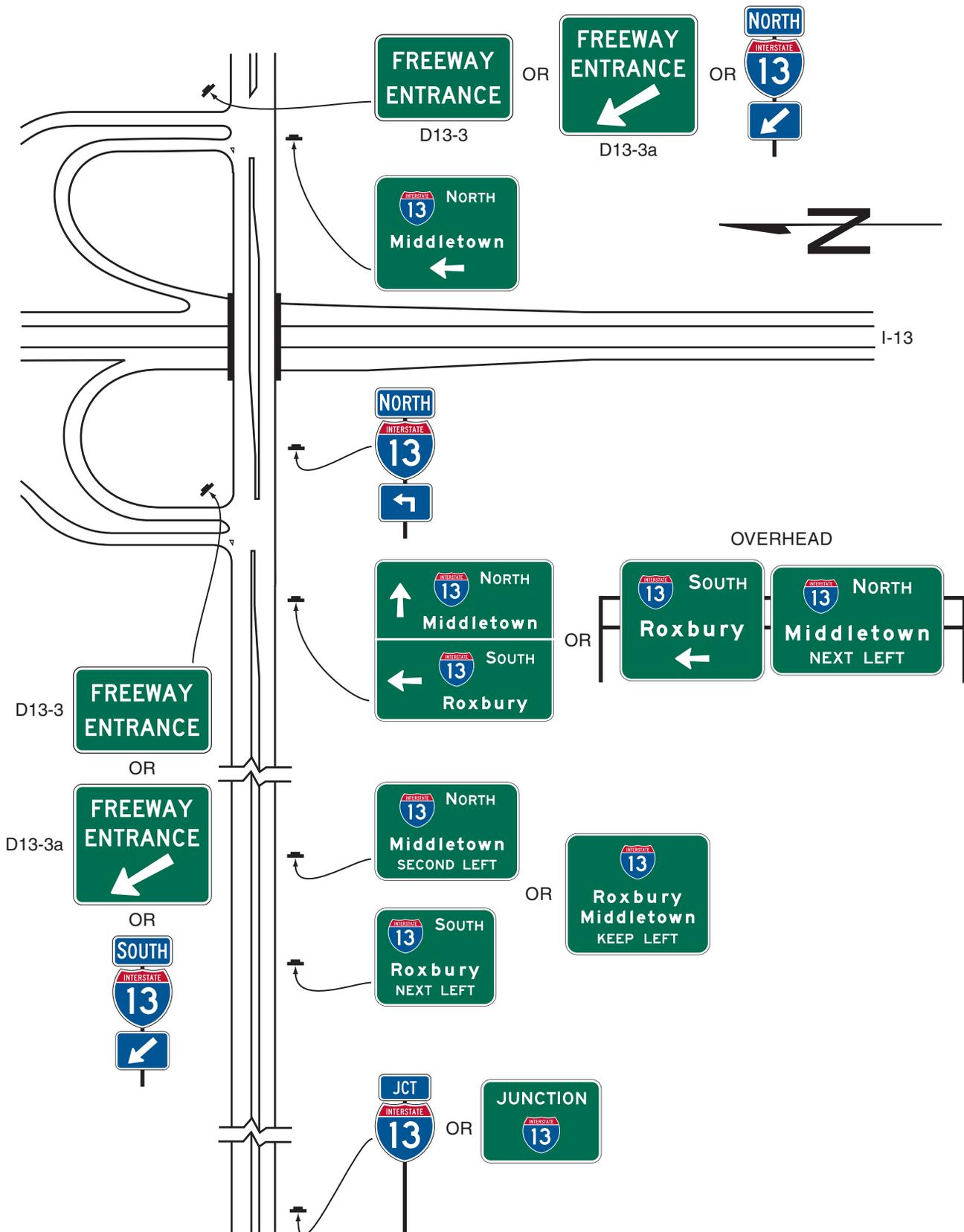


Figure 2D-15. Examples of Multi-Lane Crossroad Signing for a Cloverleaf Interchange

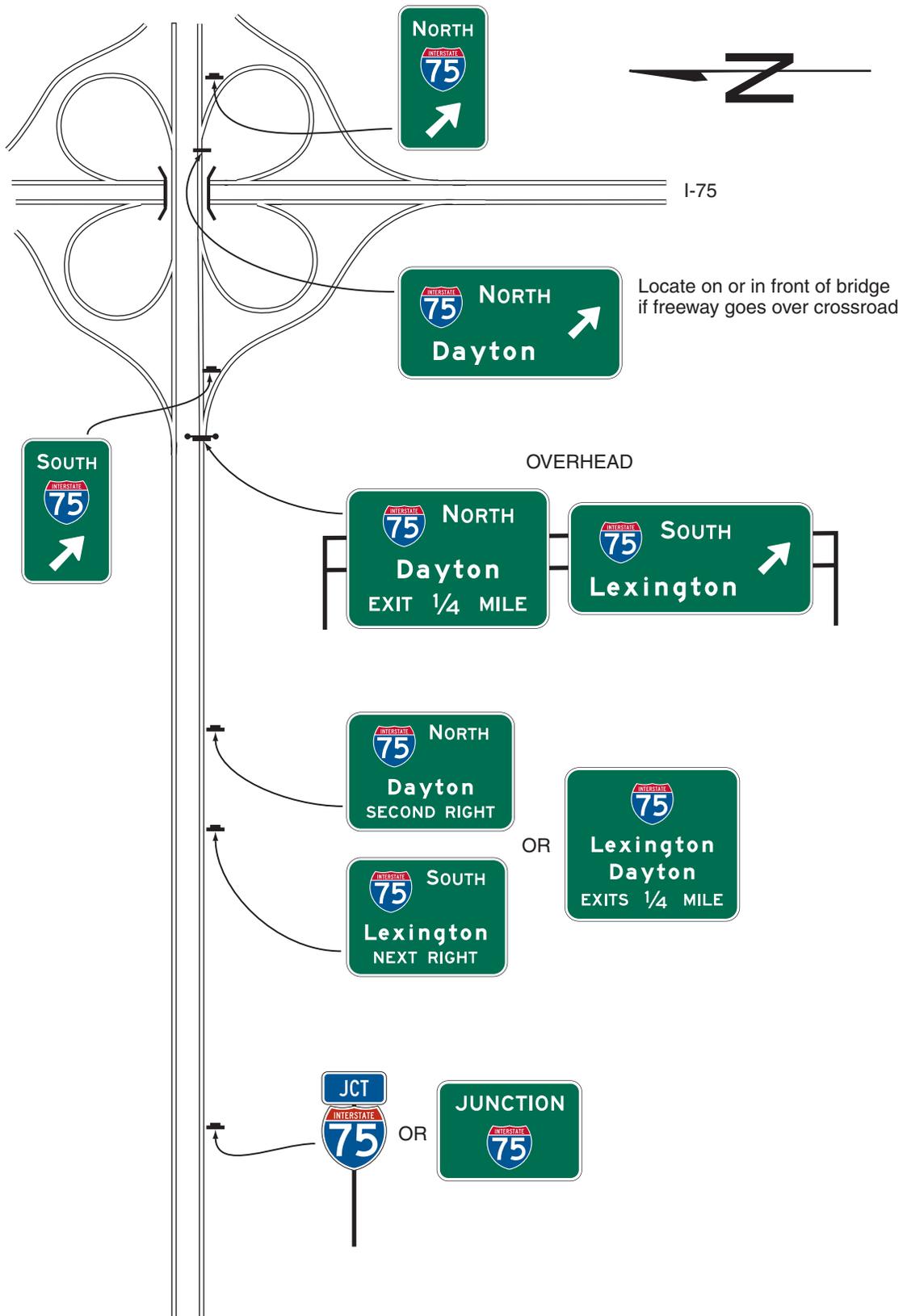
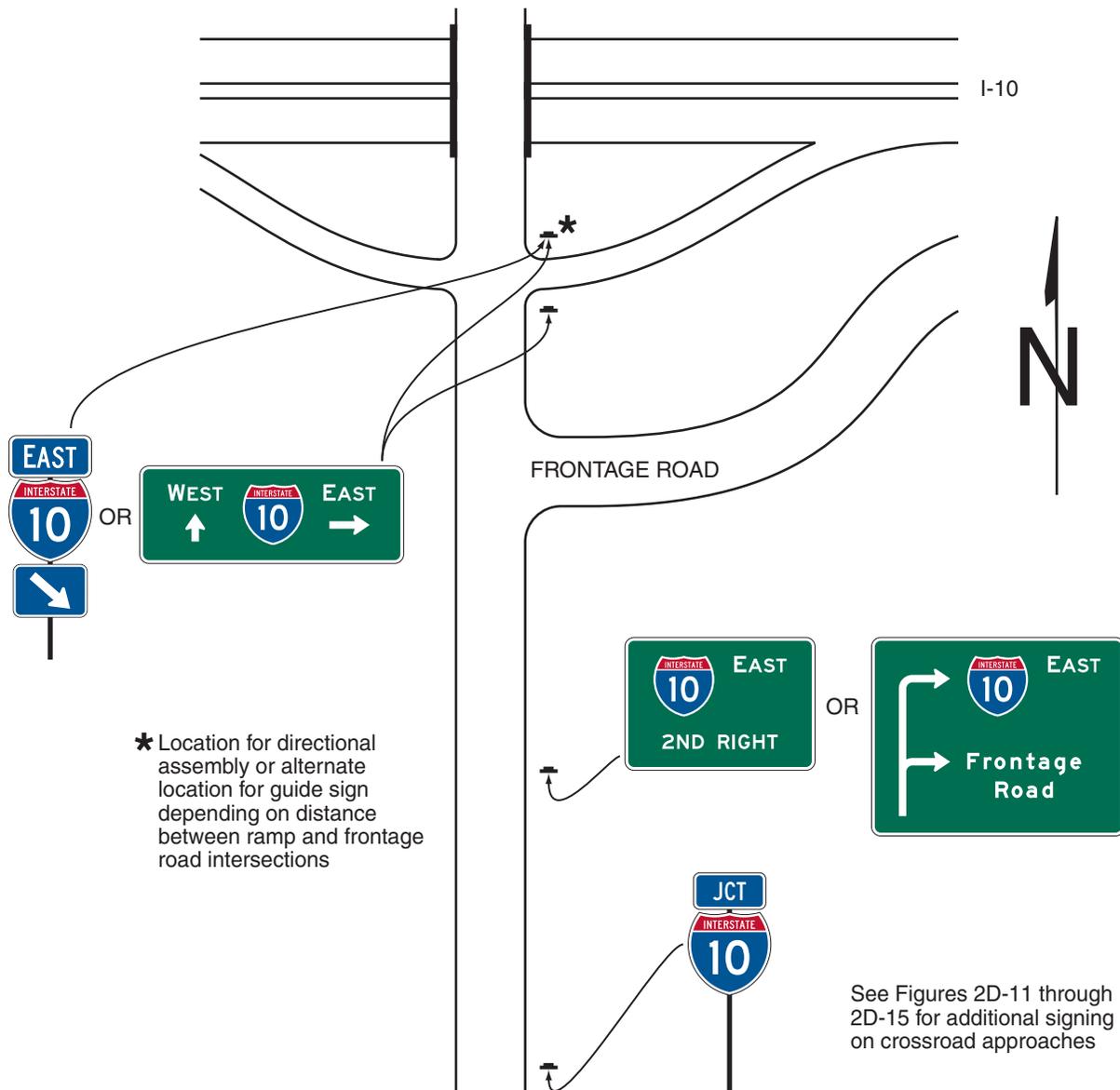


Figure 2D-16. Example of Crossroad Signing for an Entrance Ramp with a Nearby Frontage Road



Standard:

- 12 If used, the post-mounted Advance Entrance Direction diagrammatic guide sign shall display only the two successive turns from the same side of the roadway, one of which shall be the entrance ramp. The post-mounted Advance Entrance Direction sign shall depict only the successive turns and shall not depict lane use with lane lines, multiple arrow shafts for the approach roadway, action messages, or other representations.

Support:

- 13 Section 2D.46 contains information regarding the use of a Directional assembly or a FREEWAY ENTRANCE sign to mark the entrance to a freeway or expressway at the far corner of an intersection.

Section 2D.46 Freeway Entrance Signs (D13-3 and D13-3a)

Option:

- 01 FREEWAY ENTRANCE (D13-3) signs or FREEWAY ENTRANCE with downward pointing diagonal arrow (D13-3a) signs (see Figure 2D-14) may be used on entrance ramps near the crossroad to inform road users of the freeway or expressway entrance, as appropriate.

- 02 The D13-3 and D13-3a signs may display an alternate legend in place of FREEWAY, such as EXPRESSWAY or PARKWAY, as appropriate, or may display the name of an unnumbered highway.
- 03 A Directional assembly (see Section 2D.32) with a downward pointing diagonal arrow auxiliary (M6-2a) sign (see Section 2D.28) may be used at the far left-hand corner of an intersection with a freeway or expressway entrance ramp as an alternative to the D13-3a sign, facing left-turning traffic on the conventional road approach to indicate the immediate point of entry to the freeway or expressway and distinguish the entrance ramp from an adjoining exit ramp terminal at the same intersection with the conventional road (see Figure 2D-14). A similar Directional assembly may be used at the far right-hand corner of an intersection with a freeway or expressway entrance ramp where the entrance ramp and a crossroad or side road follow one another in close succession on the conventional road approach and the point of entry to the freeway or expressway might be difficult for the road user to distinguish from the crossroad or side road on the conventional road approach (see Figure 2D-14).
- Support:
- 04 Section 2B.41 contains information regarding the use of regulatory signs to deter wrong-way movements at intersections of freeway or expressway ramps with conventional roads, and in the area where entrance ramps intersect with the mainline lanes.

Section 2D.47 Parking Area Guide Sign (D4-1)

Option:

- 01 The Parking Area (D4-1) guide sign (see Figure 2D-10) may be used to show the direction to a nearby public parking area or parking facility.

Standard:

- 02 **If used, the Parking Area (D4-1) guide sign shall be a horizontal rectangle with a standard size of 30 x 24 inches, or with a smaller size of 18 x 15 inches for minor, low-speed streets. It shall carry the word PARKING, with the letter P five times the height of the remaining letters, and a directional arrow. The legend and border shall be green on a retroreflectorized white background.**

Guidance:

- 03 *If used, the Parking Area guide sign should be installed on major thoroughfares at the nearest point of access to the parking facility and where it can advise drivers of a place to park. The sign should not be used more than four blocks from the parking area.*

Section 2D.48 PARK - RIDE Sign (D4-2)

Option:

- 01 PARK - RIDE (D4-2) signs (see Figure 2D-10) may be used to direct road users to park - ride facilities.

Standard:

- 02 **The signs shall contain the word message PARK - RIDE and direction information (arrow or word message).**

Option:

- 03 PARK - RIDE signs may contain the local transit pictograph and/or carpool symbol on the sign.

Standard:

- 04 **If used, the local transit pictograph and/or carpool symbol shall be located in the top part of the sign above the message PARK - RIDE. In no case shall the vertical dimension of the local transit pictograph and/or carpool symbol exceed 18 inches.**

Guidance:

- 05 *If the function of the parking facility is to provide parking for persons using public transportation, the local transit pictograph should be used on the guide sign. If the function of the parking facility is to serve carpool riders, the carpool symbol should be used on the guide sign. If the parking facility serves both functions, both the pictograph and carpool symbol should be used.*

Standard:

- 06 **These signs shall have a retroreflective white legend and border on a rectangular green background. The carpool symbol shall be as shown for the D4-2 sign. The color of the local transit pictograph shall be selected by the local transit authority.**

Option:

- 07 To increase the target value and contrast of the local transit pictograph, and to allow the local transit pictograph to retain its distinctive color and shape, the pictograph may be included within a white border or placed on a white background.

Section 2D.49 Weigh Station Signing (D8 Series)

Support:

01 The general concept for Weigh Station signing is similar to Rest Area signing (see Section 2I.05) because in both cases traffic using either area remains within the right-of-way.

Standard:

02 **The standard installation for Weigh Station signing shall include three basic signs:**

- A. Advance sign (D8-1),
- B. Exit Direction sign (D8-2), and
- C. Exit Gore sign (D8-3).

Support:

03 Example locations of these signs are shown in Figure 2D-17.

Option:

04 Where State law requires a regulatory sign (R13-1) in advance of the Weigh Station, a fourth sign (see Section 2B.60) may be located following the Advance sign.

Guidance:

05 *The Exit Direction sign (D8-2) or the Advance sign (D8-1) should display, either within the sign border or on a supplemental plaque or sign panel, the changeable message OPEN or CLOSED.*

Section 2D.50 Community Wayfinding Signs

Support:

01 Community wayfinding guide signs are part of a coordinated and continuous system of signs that direct tourists and other road users to key civic, cultural, visitor, and recreational attractions and other destinations within a city or a local urbanized or downtown area.

02 Community wayfinding guide signs are a type of destination guide sign for conventional roads with a common color and/or identification enhancement marker for destinations within an overall wayfinding guide sign plan for an area.

03 Figures 2D-18 through 2D-20 illustrate various examples of the design and application of community wayfinding guide signs.

Standard:

04 **The use of community wayfinding guide signs shall be limited to conventional roads. Community wayfinding guide signs shall not be installed on freeway or expressway mainlines or ramps. Direction to community wayfinding destinations from a freeway or expressway shall be limited to the use of a Supplemental Guide sign (see Section 2E.35) on the mainline and a Destination sign (see Section 2D.37) on the ramp to direct road users to the area or areas within which community wayfinding guide signs are used. The individual wayfinding destinations shall not be displayed on the Supplemental Guide and Destination signs except where the destinations are in accordance with the State or agency policy on Supplemental Guide signs.**

05 **Community wayfinding guide signs shall not be used to provide direction to primary destinations or highway routes or streets. Destination or other guide signs shall be used for this purpose as described elsewhere in this Chapter and shall have priority over any community wayfinding sign in placement, prominence, and conspicuity.**

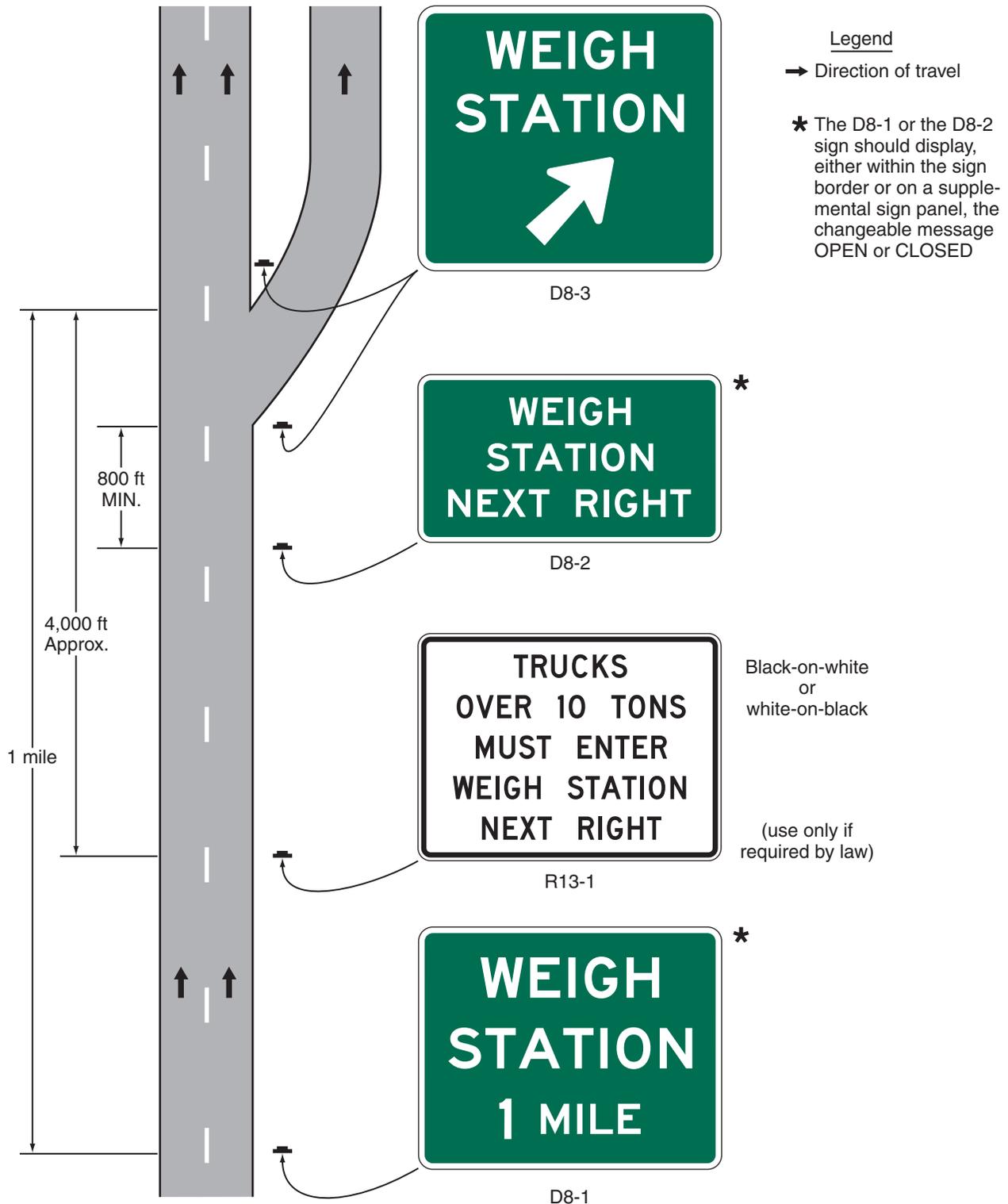
06 **Because regulatory, warning, and other guide signs have a higher priority, community wayfinding guide signs shall not be installed where adequate spacing cannot be provided between the community wayfinding guide sign and other higher priority signs. Community wayfinding guide signs shall not be installed in a position where they would obscure the road users' view of other traffic control devices.**

07 **Community wayfinding guide signs shall not be mounted overhead.**

Guidance:

08 *If used, a community wayfinding guide sign system should be established on a local municipal or equivalent jurisdictional level or for an urbanized area of adjoining municipalities or equivalent that form an identifiable geographic entity that is conducive to a cohesive and continuous system of signs. Community wayfinding guide signs should not be used on a regional or statewide basis where infrequent or sparse placement does not contribute to a continuous or coordinated system of signing that is readily identifiable as such to the road user. In such cases, Destination or other guide signs detailed in this Chapter should be used to direct road users to an identifiable area in which the type of eligible destination described in Paragraph 1 is located.*

Figure 2D-17. Example of Weigh Station Signing



Support:

09 The specific provisions of this Section regarding the design of community wayfinding sign legends apply to vehicular community wayfinding signs and do not apply to those signs that are intended only to provide information or direction to pedestrians or other users of a sidewalk or roadside area.

Figure 2D-18. Examples of Community Wayfinding Guide Signs

A - Community Wayfinding Guide Signs with Enhancement Markers



B - Destination Guide Signs for Color-Coded Community Wayfinding System



Guidance:

10 Because pedestrian wayfinding signs typically use smaller legends that are inadequately sized for viewing by vehicular traffic and because they can provide direction to pedestrians that might conflict with that appropriate for vehicular traffic, wayfinding signs designed for and intended to provide direction to pedestrians or other users of a sidewalk or other roadside area should be located to minimize their conspicuity to vehicular traffic. Such signs should be located as far as practical from the street, such as at the far edge of the sidewalk. Where locating such signs farther from the roadway is not practical, the pedestrian wayfinding signs should have their conspicuity to vehicular traffic minimized by employing one or a combination of the following methods:

- A. Locating signs away from intersections where high-priority traffic control devices are present.
- B. Facing the pedestrian message toward the sidewalk and away from the street.
- C. Cantilevering the sign over the sidewalk if the pedestrian wayfinding sign is mounted at a height consistent with vehicular traffic signs, removing the pedestrian wayfinding signs from the line of sight in a sequence of vehicular signs.

11 To further minimize their conspicuity to vehicular traffic during nighttime conditions, pedestrian wayfinding signs should not be retroreflective.

Support:

12 Color coding is sometimes used on community wayfinding guide signs to help road users distinguish between multiple potentially confusing traffic generator destinations located in different neighborhoods or subareas within a community or area.

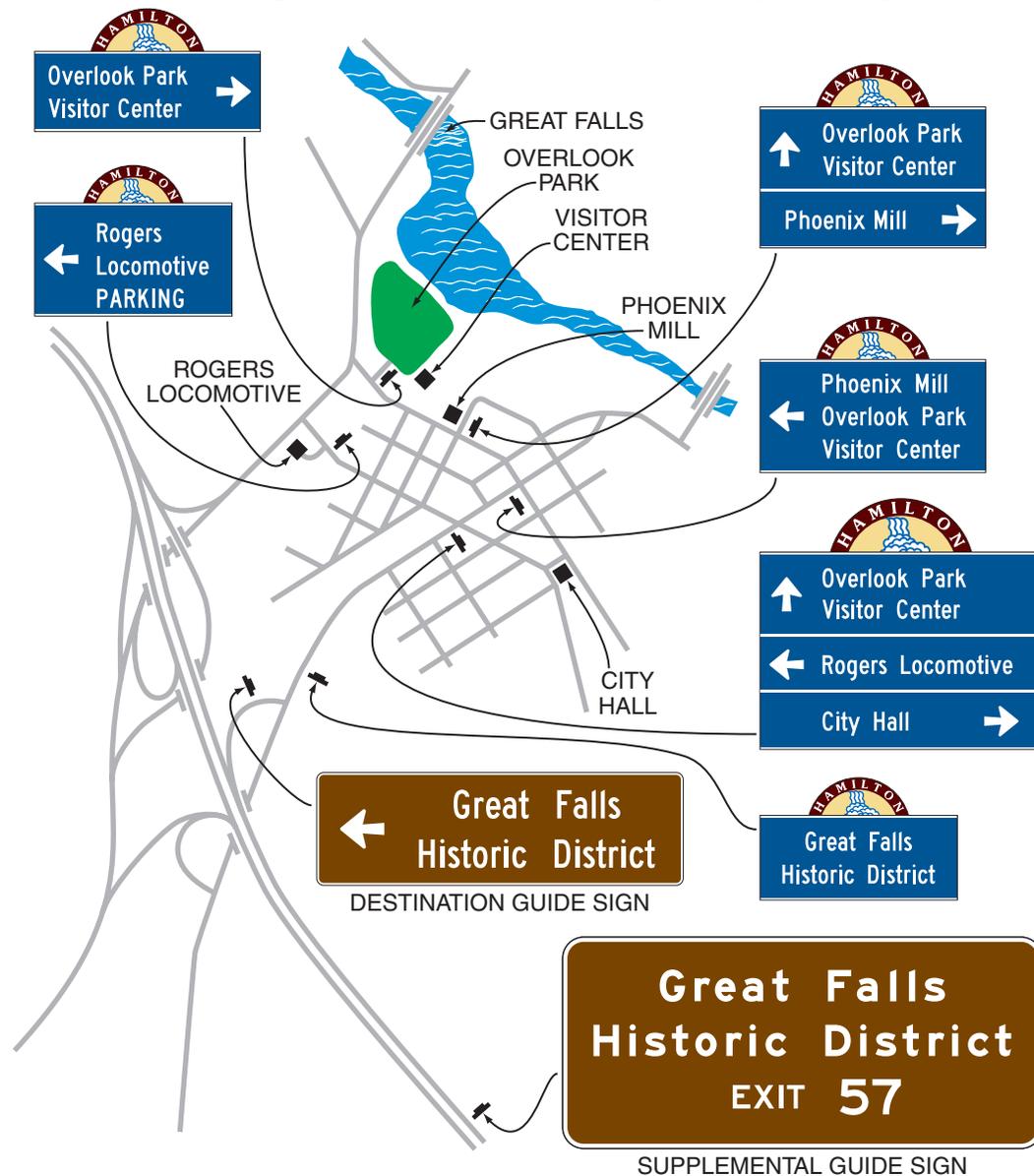
Option:

13 At the boundaries of the geographical area within which community wayfinding guide signing is used, an informational guide sign (see Figures 2D-18 and 2D-20) may be posted to inform road users about the presence of wayfinding signing and to identify the meanings of the various color codes or pictographs that are being used.

Standard:

14 These informational guide signs shall have a white legend and border on a green background and shall have a design similar to that illustrated in Figures 2D-1 and 2D-18 and shall be consistent with the basic design principles for guide signs. These informational guide signs shall not be installed on freeway or expressway mainlines or ramps.

Figure 2D-19. Example of a Community Wayfinding Guide Sign System Showing Direction from a Freeway or Expressway

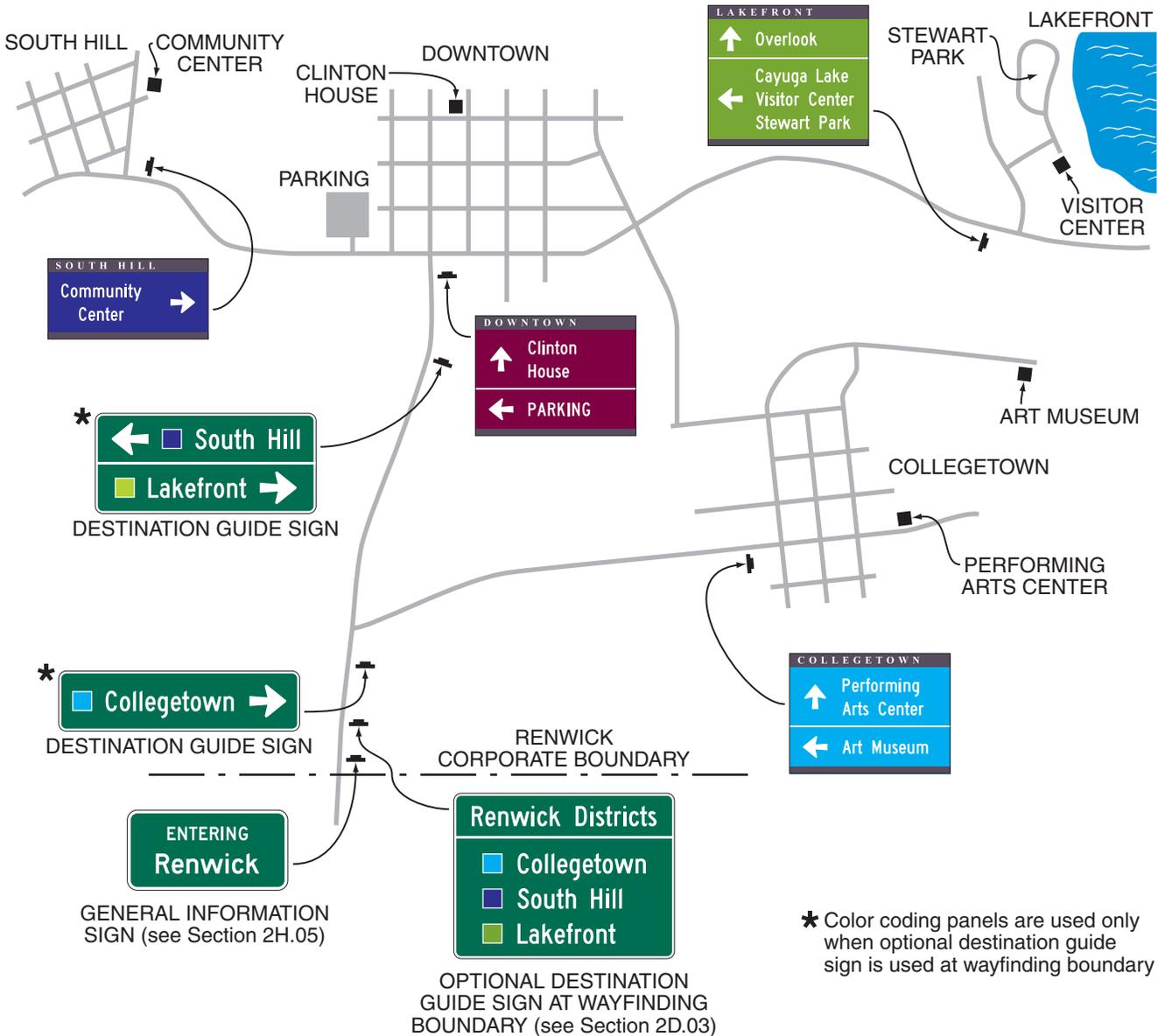


¹⁵ The color coding or a pictograph of the identification enhancement markers of the community wayfinding guide signing system shall be included on the informational guide sign posted at the boundary of the community wayfinding guide signing area. The color coding or pictographs shall apply to a specific, identifiable neighborhood or geographical subarea within the overall area covered by the community wayfinding guide signing. Color coding or pictographs shall not be used to distinguish between different types of destinations that are within the same designated neighborhood or subarea. The color coding shall be accomplished by the use of different colored square or rectangular panels on the face of the informational guide sign, each positioned to the left of the neighborhood or named geographic area to which the color-coding panel applies. The height of the colored square or rectangular panels shall not exceed two times the height of the upper-case letters of the principal legend on the sign.

Option:

¹⁶ The different colored square or rectangular panels may include either a black or a white (whichever provides the better contrast with the color of the panel) letter, numeral, or other appropriate designation to identify the destination.

Figure 2D-20. Example of a Color-Coded Community Wayfinding Guide Sign System



17 Except for the informational guide sign posted at the boundary of the wayfinding guide sign area, community wayfinding guide signs may use background colors other than green in order to provide a color identification for the wayfinding destinations by geographical area within the overall wayfinding guide signing system. Color-coded community wayfinding guide signs may be used with or without the boundary informational guide sign displaying corresponding color-coding panels described in Paragraphs 13 through 16. Except as provided in Paragraphs 18 and 19, in addition to the colors that are approved in this Manual for use on official traffic control signs (see Section 2A.10), other background colors may also be used for the color coding of community wayfinding guide signs.

Standard:

18 **The standard colors of red, orange, yellow, purple, or the fluorescent versions thereof, fluorescent yellow-green, and fluorescent pink shall not be used as background colors for community wayfinding guide signs, in order to minimize possible confusion with critical, higher-priority regulatory and warning sign color meanings readily understood by road users.**

19 **The minimum luminance ratio of legend to background for community wayfinding guide signs shall be 3:1.**

20 **All messages, borders, legends, and backgrounds of community wayfinding guide signs and any identification enhancement markers shall be retroreflective (see Sections 2A.07 and 2A.08).**

Guidance:

- 21 *Community wayfinding guide signs, exclusive of any identification enhancement marker used, should be rectangular in shape. Simplicity and uniformity in design, position, and application as described in Section 2A.06 are important and should be incorporated into the community wayfinding guide sign design and location plans for the area.*
- 22 *Community wayfinding guide signs should be limited to three destinations per sign (see Section 2D.07).*
- 23 *Abbreviations (see Section 1A.15) should be kept to a minimum, and should include only those that are commonly recognized and understood.*
- 24 *Horizontal lines of a color that contrasts with the sign background color should be used to separate groups of destinations by direction from each other.*

Support:

- 25 The basic requirement for all highway signs, including community wayfinding signs, is that they be legible to those for whom they are intended and that they be understandable in time to permit a proper response. Section 2A.06 contains additional information on the design of signs, including desirable attributes of effective designs.

Guidance:

- 26 *Word messages should be as brief as practical and the lettering should be large enough to provide the necessary legibility distance.*

Standard:

- 27 **The minimum specific ratio of letter height to legibility distance shall comply with the provisions of Section 2A.13. The size of lettering used for destination and directional legends on community wayfinding signs shall comply with the provisions of minimum letter heights as provided in Section 2D.06.**
- 28 **Interline and edge spacing shall comply with the provisions of Section 2D.06.**
- 29 **Except as provided in Paragraph 31, the lettering style used for destination and directional legends on community wayfinding guide signs shall comply with the provisions of Section 2D.05.**
- 30 **The lettering for destinations on community wayfinding guide signs shall be a combination of lower-case letters with initial upper-case letters (see Section 2D.05). All other word messages on community wayfinding guide signs shall be in all upper-case letters.**

Option:

- 31 A lettering style other than the Standard Alphabets provided in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book may be used on community wayfinding guide signs if an engineering study determines that the legibility and recognition values for the chosen lettering style meet or exceed the values for the Standard Alphabets for the same legend height and stroke width.

Standard:

- 32 **Except for signs that are intended to be viewed only by pedestrians, bicyclists stopped out of the flow of traffic, or occupants of parked vehicles, Internet and e-mail addresses, including domain names and uniform resource locators (URL), shall not be displayed on any community wayfinding guide sign or sign assembly.**
- 33 **The arrow location and priority order of destinations shall follow the provisions described in Sections 2D.08 and 2D.37. Arrows shall be of the designs provided in Section 2D.08.**

Option:

- 34 Pictographs (see definition in Section 1A.13) may be used on community wayfinding guide signs.

Standard:

- 35 **If a pictograph is used, its height shall not exceed two times the height of the upper-case letters of the principal legend on the sign.**
- 36 **Except for pictographs, symbols that are not approved in this Manual for use on guide signs shall not be used on community wayfinding guide signs.**
- 37 **Business logos, commercial graphics, or other forms of advertising (see Section 1A.01) shall not be used on community wayfinding guide signs or sign assemblies.**

Option:

- 38 Other graphics that specifically identify the wayfinding system, including identification enhancement markers, may be used on the overall sign assembly and sign supports.

Support:

39 An enhancement marker consists of a shape, color, and/or pictograph that is used as a visual identifier for the community wayfinding guide signing system for an area. Figure 2D-18 shows examples of identification enhancement marker designs that can be used with community wayfinding guide signs.

Option:

40 An identification enhancement marker may be used in a community wayfinding guide sign assembly, or may be incorporated into the overall design of a community wayfinding guide sign, as a means of visually identifying the sign as part of an overall system of community wayfinding signs and destinations.

Standard:

41 **The sizes and shapes of identification enhancement markers shall be smaller than the community wayfinding guide signs themselves. Identification enhancement markers shall not be designed to have an appearance that could be mistaken by road users as being a traffic control device.**

Guidance:

42 *The area of the identification enhancement marker should not exceed 1/5 of the area of the community wayfinding guide sign with which it is mounted in the same sign assembly.*

Section 2D.51 Truck, Passing, or Climbing Lane Signs (D17-1 and D17-2)

Guidance:

01 *If an extra lane has been provided for trucks and other slow-moving traffic, a NEXT TRUCK LANE XX MILES (D17-1) sign and/or a TRUCK LANE XX MILES (D17-2) sign (see Figure 2D-21) should be installed in advance of the lane.*

Option:

02 Alternative legends such as PASSING LANE or CLIMBING LANE may be used instead of TRUCK LANE.

03 Section 2B.31 contains information regarding regulatory signs for these types of lanes.

Section 2D.52 Slow Vehicle Turn-Out Sign (D17-7)

Guidance:

01 *If a slow vehicle turn-out area has been provided for slow-moving traffic, a SLOW VEHICLE TURN-OUT XX MILES (D17-7) sign (see Figure 2D-21) should be installed in advance of the turn-out area.*

Option:

02 Section 2B.35 contains information regarding regulatory signs for slow vehicle turn-out areas.

Figure 2D-21. Crossover, Truck Lane, and Slow Vehicle Signs



D13-1



D13-2



D17-1



D17-2



D17-7

* The words PASSING or CLIMBING may be substituted for the word TRUCK on the D17-1 and D17-2 signs.

Section 2D.53 Signing of Named Highways

Option:

- 01 Guide signs may contain street or highway names if the purpose is to enhance driver communication and guidance; however, they are to be considered as supplemental information to route numbers.

Standard:

- 02 **Highway names shall not replace official numeral designations.**
- 03 **Memorial names (see Section 2M.10) shall not appear on supplemental signs or on any other information sign on or along the highway or its intersecting routes.**
- 04 **The use of route signs shall be restricted to signs officially used for guidance of traffic in accordance with this Manual and the “Purpose and Policy” statement of the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials that applies to Interstate and U.S. numbered routes (see Page i for AASHTO’s address).**

Option:

- 05 Unnumbered routes having major importance to proper guidance of traffic may be signed if carried out in accordance with the aforementioned policies. For unnumbered highways, a name to enhance route guidance may be used where the name is applied consistently throughout its length.

Guidance:

- 06 *Only one name should be used to identify any highway, whether numbered or unnumbered.*

Section 2D.54 Crossover Signs (D13-1 and D13-2)

Option:

- 01 Crossover signs may be installed on divided highways to identify median openings not otherwise identified by warning or other guide signs.

Standard:

- 02 **A CROSSOVER (D13-1) sign (see Figure 2D-21) shall not be used to identify a median opening that is permitted to be used only by official or authorized vehicles. If used, the sign shall be a horizontal rectangle of appropriate size to carry the word CROSSOVER and a horizontal directional arrow. The CROSSOVER sign shall have a white legend and border on a green background.**

Guidance:

- 03 *If used, the CROSSOVER sign should be installed immediately beyond the median opening, either on the right-hand side of the roadway or in the median.*

Option:

- 04 The Advance Crossover (D13-2) sign (see Figure 2D-21) may be installed in advance of the CROSSOVER sign to provide advance notice of the crossover.

Standard:

- 05 **If used, the Advance Crossover sign shall be a horizontal rectangle of appropriate size to carry the word CROSSOVER and the distance to the median opening. The sign shall have white legend and border on a green background.**

Guidance:

- 06 *The distance displayed on the Advance Crossover sign should be 1 MILE, 1/2 MILE, or 1/4 MILE, unless unusual conditions require some other distance. If used, the sign should be installed either on the right-hand side of the roadway or in the median at approximately the distance displayed on the sign.*

Section 2D.55 National Scenic Byways Signs (D6-4, D6-4a)

Support:

- 01 Certain roads have been designated by the U.S. Secretary of Transportation as National Scenic Byways or All-American Roads based on their archeological, cultural, historic, natural, recreational, or scenic qualities.

Option:

- 02 State and local highway agencies may install the National Scenic Byways (D6-4 or D6-4a) signs at entrance points to a route that has been recognized by the U.S. Secretary of Transportation as a National Scenic Byway or an All-American Road. The D6-4 or D6-4a sign may be installed on route sign assemblies (see Figure 2D-22) or as part of larger roadside structures. National Scenic Byways signs may also be installed at periodic intervals along the designated route and at intersections where the designated route turns or follows a different numbered highway. At locations where roadside features have been developed to enhance the traveler’s experience such as rest areas, historic sites, interpretive facilities, or scenic overlooks, the National Scenic Byways sign may be placed on the associated sign assembly to inform travelers that the site contributes to the byway travel experience.

Figure 2D-22. Examples of Use of the National Scenic Byways Sign



D6-4



D6-4a



Standard:

- 03 When a National Scenic Byways sign is installed on a National Scenic Byway or an All-American Road, the design shown for the D6-4 or D6-4a sign in Figure 2D-22 shall be used. Use of this design shall be limited to routes that have been designated as a National Scenic Byway or All-American Road by the U.S. Secretary of Transportation.
- 04 If used, the D6-4 or D6-4a sign shall be placed such that the roadway route signs have primary visibility for the road user.

CHAPTER 2E. GUIDE SIGNS—FREEWAYS AND EXPRESSWAYS

Section 2E.01 Scope of Freeway and Expressway Guide Sign Standards

Support:

- 01 The provisions of this Chapter provide a uniform and effective system of signing for high-volume, high-speed motor vehicle traffic on freeways and expressways. The requirements and specifications for expressway signing exceed those for conventional roads (see Chapter 2D), but are less than those for freeway signing. Since there are many geometric design variables to be found in existing roads, a signing concept commensurate with prevailing conditions is the primary consideration. Section 1A.13 includes definitions of freeway and expressway.
- 02 Guide signs for freeways and expressways are primarily identified by the name of the sign rather than by an assigned sign designation. Guidelines for the design of guide signs for freeways and expressways are provided in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

- 03 **The provisions of this Chapter shall apply to any highway that meets the definition of freeway or expressway facilities.**

Section 2E.02 Freeway and Expressway Signing Principles

Support:

- 01 The development of a signing system for freeways and expressways is approached on the premise that the signing is primarily for the benefit and direction of road users who are not familiar with the route or area. The signing furnishes road users with clear instructions for orderly progress to their destinations. Sign installations are an integral part of the facility and, as such, are best planned concurrently with the development of highway location and geometric design. For optimal results, plans for signing are analyzed during the earliest stages of preliminary design, and details are correlated as final design is developed. The excessive signing found on many major highways usually is the result of using a multitude of signs that are too small and that are poorly designed and placed to accomplish the intended purpose.
- 02 Freeway and expressway signing is to be considered and developed as a planned system of installations. An engineering study is sometimes necessary for proper solution of the problems of many individual locations, but, in addition, consideration of an entire route is necessary.

Guidance

- 03 *Road users should be guided with consistent signing on the approaches to interchanges, when they drive from one State to another, and when driving through rural or urban areas. Because geographical, geometric, and operating factors regularly create significant differences between urban and rural conditions, the signing should take these conditions into account.*
- 04 *Guide signs on freeways and expressways should serve distinct functions as follows:*
- A. *Give directions to destinations, or to streets or highway routes, at intersections or interchanges;*
 - B. *Furnish advance notice of the approach to intersections or interchanges;*
 - C. *Direct road users into appropriate lanes in advance of diverging or merging movements;*
 - D. *Identify routes and directions on those routes;*
 - E. *Show distances to destinations;*
 - F. *Indicate access to general motorist services, rest, scenic, and recreational areas; and*
 - G. *Provide other information of value to the road user.*

Section 2E.03 Guide Sign Classification

Support:

- 01 Freeway and expressway guide signs are classified and treated in the following categories:
- A. Route signs and Trailblazer Assemblies (see Section 2E.27),
 - B. At-Grade Intersection signs (see Section 2E.29),
 - C. Interchange signs (see Sections 2E.30 through 2E.39),
 - D. Interchange Sequence signs (see Section 2E.40),
 - E. Community Interchanges Identification signs (see Section 2E.41),
 - F. NEXT XX EXITS signs (see Section 2E.42),
 - G. Weigh Station signing (see Section 2E.54),
 - H. Miscellaneous Information signs (see Section 2H.04)
 - I. Reference Location signs (see Section 2H.05),
 - J. General Service signs (see Chapter 2I),
 - K. Rest and Scenic Area signs (see Section 2I.05),
 - L. Tourist Information and Welcome Center signs (see Section 2I.08),
 - M. Radio Information signing (see Section 2I.09)
 - N. Carpool and Ridesharing signing (see Section 2I.11),
 - O. Specific Service signs (see Chapter 2J), and
 - P. Recreational and Cultural Interest Area signs (see Chapter 2M).

Section 2E.04 General

Support:

- 01 Signs are designed so that they are legible to road users approaching them and readable in time to permit proper responses. Desired design characteristics include: (a) long visibility distances, (b) large lettering, symbols, and arrows, and (c) short legends for quick comprehension.

Standard:

- 02 **Standard shapes and colors shall be used so that traffic signs can be promptly recognized by road users.**

Section 2E.05 Color of Guide Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Guide signs on freeways and expressways, except as otherwise provided in this Manual, shall have white letters, symbols, arrows, and borders on a green background.**

Support:

- 02 Color requirements for route signs and trailblazers, signs with blank-out or changeable messages, signs for services, rest areas, park and recreational areas, and for certain miscellaneous signs are provided in the individual Sections dealing with the particular sign or sign group.

Section 2E.06 Retroreflection or Illumination

Standard:

- 01 **Letters, numerals, symbols, arrows, and borders of all guide signs shall be retroreflectorized. The background of all guide signs that are not independently illuminated shall be retroreflective.**

Support:

- 02 Where there is no serious interference from extraneous light sources, retroreflectorized post-mounted signs usually provide adequate nighttime visibility.
- 03 On freeways and expressways where much driving at night is done with low-beam headlights, the amount of headlight illumination incident to an overhead sign display is relatively small.

Guidance:

- 04 *Overhead sign installations should be illuminated unless an engineering study shows that retroreflectorization alone will perform effectively. The type of illumination chosen should provide effective and reasonably uniform illumination of the sign face and message.*

Section 2E.07 Characteristics of Urban Signing

Support:

- 01 Urban conditions are characterized not so much by city limits or other arbitrary boundaries, as by the following features:
- A. Mainline roadways with more than two lanes in each direction;
 - B. High traffic volumes on the through roadways;
 - C. High volumes of traffic entering and leaving interchanges;
 - D. Interchanges closely spaced;
 - E. Roadway and interchange lighting;
 - F. Three or more interchanges serving the major city;
 - G. A loop, circumferential, or spur serving a sizable portion of the urban population; and
 - H. Visual clutter from roadside development.
- 02 Operating conditions and road geometrics on urban freeways and expressways usually make special sign treatments desirable, including:
- A. Use of Interchange Sequence signs (see Section 2E.40);
 - B. Use of sign spreading to the maximum extent possible (see Section 2E.11);
 - C. Elimination of General or Specific Service signing (see Chapters 2I and 2J);
 - D. Reduction to a minimum of post-interchange signs (see Section 2E.38);
 - E. Display of advance signs at distances closer to the interchange, with appropriate adjustments in the legend (see Section 2E.33);
 - F. Use of overhead signs on roadway structures and independent sign supports (see Section 2E.25);
 - G. Use of Overhead Arrow-per-Lane or Diagrammatic guide signs in advance of intersections and interchanges (see Sections 2E.21 and 2E.22); and
 - H. Frequent use of street names as the principal message in guide signs.

- 03 Lower speeds which are often characteristic of urban operations do not justify lower signing standards. Typical traffic patterns are more complex for the road user to negotiate, and large, easy-to-read legends are, therefore, just as necessary as on rural highways.

Section 2E.08 Characteristics of Rural Signing

Support:

- 01 Rural areas ordinarily have greater distances between interchanges, which permits adequate spacing for the sequences of signs on the approach to and departure from each interchange. However, the absence of traffic in adjoining lanes and on entering or exiting ramps often adds monotony or inattention to rural driving. This increases the importance of signs that call for decisions or actions.

Guidance:

- 02 *Where there are long distances between interchanges and the alignment is relatively unchanging, signs should be positioned for their best effect on road users. The tendency to group all signing in the immediate vicinity of rural interchanges should be avoided by considering the entire route in the development of signing plans. Extra effort should be given to the placement of signs at natural target locations to command the attention of the road user, particularly when the message requires an action by the road user.*

Section 2E.09 Signing of Named Highways

Support:

- 01 Section 2D.53 contains information, which is also applicable to freeways and expressways, regarding the use of highway names on the signing for unnumbered highways to enhance route guidance and facilitate travel.
- 02 Section 2M.10 contains information regarding memorial signing of routes, bridges, or highway components.

Section 2E.10 Amount of Legend on Guide Signs

Guidance:

- 01 *No more than two destination names or street names should be displayed on any Advance Guide sign or Exit Direction sign. A city name and street name on the same sign should be avoided. Where two or three signs are placed on the same supports, destinations or names should be limited to one per sign, or to a total of three in the display. Sign legends should not exceed three lines of copy, exclusive of the exit number and action or distance information.*

Section 2E.11 Number of Signs at an Overhead Installation and Sign Spreading

Guidance:

- 01 *If overhead signs are warranted, as set forth in Section 2A.17, the number of signs at these locations should be limited to only those essential in communicating pertinent destination information to the road user. Exit Direction signs for a single exit and the Advance Guide signs should have only one sign with one or two destinations. Regulatory signs, such as speed limits, should not be used in conjunction with overhead guide sign installations. Because road users have limited time to read and comprehend sign messages, there should not be more than three guide signs displayed at any one location either on the overhead structure or its support.*

Option:

- 02 At overhead locations, more than one sign may be installed to advise of a multiple exit condition at an interchange. If the roadway ramp or crossing roadway has complex or unusual geometrics, additional signs with confirming messages may be provided to properly guide the road user.

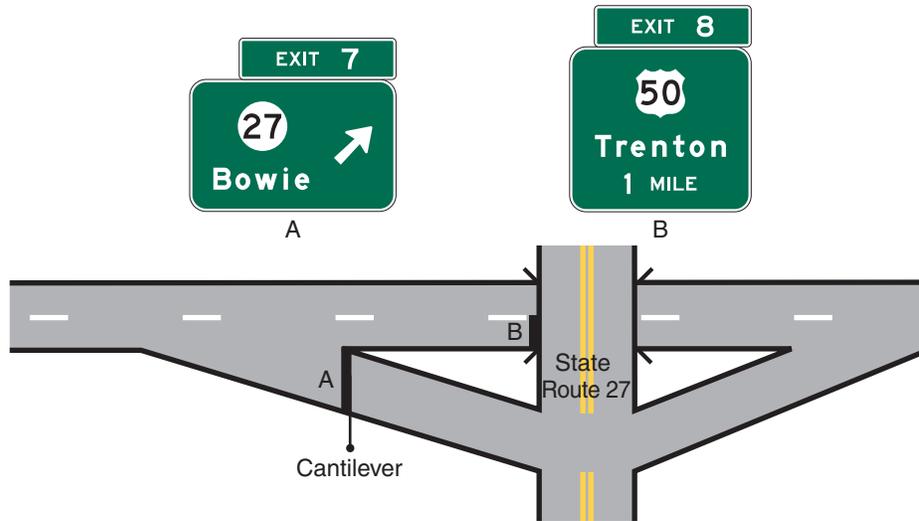
Support:

- 03 Sign spreading is a concept where major overhead signs are spaced so that road users are not overloaded with a group of signs at a single location. Figure 2E-1 illustrates an example of sign spreading.

Guidance:

- 04 *Where overhead signing is used, sign spreading should be used at all single exit interchanges and to the extent possible at multi-exit interchanges. Sign spreading should be accomplished by use of the following:*
- A. *The Exit Direction sign should be the only sign used in the vicinity of the gore (other than the Exit Gore sign). It should be located overhead near the theoretical gore and generally on an overhead sign support structure.*
 - B. *The Advance Guide sign to indicate the next interchange exit should be placed near the crossroad location. If the crossroad goes over the mainline, the Advance Guide sign should be placed on the overcrossing structure or on a separate structure immediately in front of the overcrossing structure.*

Figure 2E-1. Example of Guide Sign Spreading



Section 2E.12 Pull-Through Signs (E6-2, E6-2a)

Support:

- 01 Pull-Through (E6-2, E6-2a) signs (see Figure 2E-2) are overhead guide signs intended for through traffic.

Guidance:

- 02 *Pull-Through signs should be used where the geometrics of a given interchange are such that it is not clear to the road user as to which is the through roadway, or where additional route guidance is desired. Pull-Through signs with down arrows should be used where the alignment of the through lanes is curved and the exit direction is straight ahead, where the number of through lanes is not readily evident, and at multi-lane exits where there is a reduction in the number of through lanes.*

Support:

- 03 Sections 2E.20 through 2E.24 contain information regarding the use of Overhead Arrow-per-Lane or Diagrammatic guide signs at multi-lane exits where there is a reduction in the number of through lanes and a through lane becomes an interior option lane for through or exiting traffic.

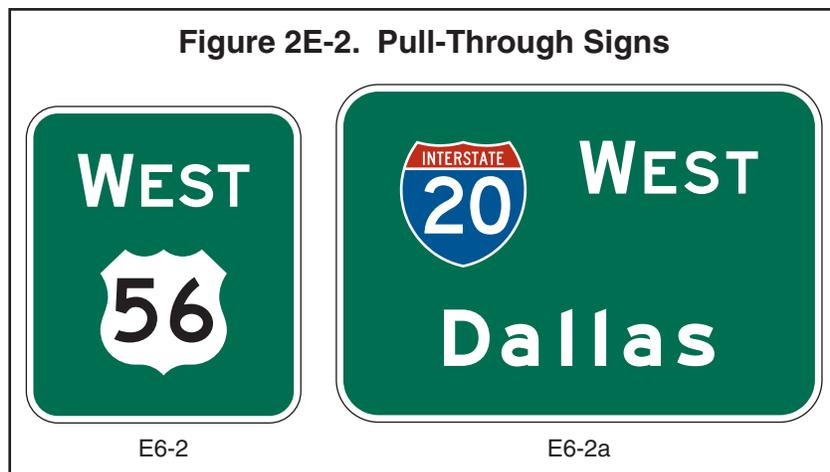
Section 2E.13 Designation of Destinations

Standard:

- 01 **The direction of a freeway and the major destinations or control cities along it shall be clearly identified through the use of appropriate destination legends (see Section 2D.37). Successive freeway guide signs shall provide continuity in destination names and consistency with available map information. At any decision point, a given destination shall be indicated by way of only one route.**

Guidance:

- 02 *Control city legends should be used in the following situations along a freeway:*
 - A. *At interchanges between freeways;*
 - B. *At separation points of overlapping freeway routes;*
 - C. *On directional signs on intersecting routes, to guide traffic entering the freeway;*
 - D. *On Pull-Through signs; and*
 - E. *On the bottom line of post-interchange distance signs.*



Support:

- 03 Continuity of destination names is also useful on expressways serving long-distance or intrastate travel.
- 04 The determination of major destinations or control cities is important to the quality of service provided by the freeway. Control cities on freeway guide signs are selected by the States and are contained in the “Guidelines for the Selection of Supplemental Guide Signs for Traffic Generators Adjacent to Freeways, 4th Edition/Guide Signs, Part II: Guidelines for Airport Guide Signing/Guide Signs, Part III: List of Control Cities for Use in Guide Signs on Interstate Highways,” published by and available from the American Association of State and Highway Transportation Officials (see Section 1A.11).

Section 2E.14 Size and Style of Letters and Signs

Standard:

- 01 **Except as provided in Section 2A.11, the sizes of freeway and expressway guide signs that have standardized designs shall be as shown in Table 2E-1.**

Support:

- 02 Section 2A.11 contains information regarding the applicability of the various columns in Table 2E-1.

Option:

- 03 Signs larger than those shown in Table 2E-1 may be used (see Section 2A.11).

Standard:

- 04 **For all freeway and expressway signs that do not have a standardized design, the message dimensions shall be determined first, and the outside sign dimensions secondarily. Word messages in the legend of expressway guide signs shall be in letters at least 8 inches high. Larger lettering shall be used for major guide signs at or in advance of interchanges and for all overhead signs. Minimum numeral and letter sizes for expressway guide signs according to interchange classification, type of sign, and component of sign legend shall be as shown in Tables 2E-2 and 2E-3. Minimum numeral and letter sizes for freeway guide signs according to interchange classification, type of sign, and component of sign legend shall be as shown in Tables 2E-4 and 2E-5. All names of places, streets, and highways on freeway and expressway guide signs shall be composed of lower-case letters with initial upper-case letters. The letters and the numerals used shall be Series E(M) of the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11). The nominal loop height of the lower-case letters shall be 3/4 of the height of the initial upper-case letter (see Paragraph 2 of Section 2D.05 for additional information on the specification of letter heights). Other word legends shall be composed of upper-case letters. Interline and edge spacing shall be as provided in Section 2E.15.**

- 05 **Lettering size on freeway and expressway signs shall be the same for both rural and urban conditions.**

Support:

- 06 Sign size is determined primarily in terms of the length of the message and the size of the lettering necessary for proper legibility. Letter style and height, and arrow design have been standardized for freeway and expressway signs to assure uniform and effective application.

- 07 Designs for upper-case and lower-case alphabets together with Tables of recommended letter spacing, are shown in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).

Guidance:

- 08 *Freeway lettering sizes (see Tables 2E-4 and 2E-5) should be used when expressway geometric design is comparable to freeway standards.*

- 09 *Other sign letter size requirements not specifically identified elsewhere in this Manual should be guided by these specifications. Abbreviations (see Section 2E.17) should be kept to a minimum.*

Support:

- 10 A sign mounted over a particular roadway lane to which it applies might have to be limited in horizontal dimension to the width of the lane, so that another sign can be placed over an adjacent lane. The necessity to maintain proper vertical clearance might also place a further limitation on the size of the overhead sign and the legend that can be accommodated.

Section 2E.15 Interline and Edge Spacing

Guidance:

- 01 *Interline spacing of upper-case letters should be approximately three-fourths the average of upper-case letter heights in adjacent lines of letters.*

- 02 *The spacings to the top and bottom borders should be equal to the average of the letter height of the adjacent line of letters. The lateral spacing to the vertical borders should be essentially the same as the height of the largest letter.*

Table 2E-1. Freeway or Expressway Guide Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 1 of 2)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Minimum Size
Exit Number (plaque)			
1-, 2-Digit Exit Number	E1-5P	2E.31	114 x 30
3-Digit Exit Number	E1-5P	2E.31	132 x 30
1-, 2-Digit Exit Number (with single letter suffix)	E1-5P	2E.31	138 x 30
3-Digit Exit Number (with single letter suffix)	E1-5P	2E.31	156 x 30
1-, 2-Digit Exit Number (with dual letter suffix)	E1-5P	2E.31	168 x 30
3-Digit Exit Number (with dual letter suffix)	E1-5P	2E.31	186 x 30
Left (plaque)	E1-5aP	2E.33	72 x 30
Left Exit Number (plaque)			
1-, 2-Digit Exit Number	E1-5bP	2E.31	114 x 54
3-Digit Exit Number	E1-5bP	2E.31	132 x 54
1-, 2-Digit Exit Number (with single letter suffix)	E1-5bP	2E.31	138 x 54
3-Digit Exit Number (with single letter suffix)	E1-5bP	2E.31	156 x 54
1-, 2-Digit Exit Number (with dual letter suffix)	E1-5bP	2E.31	168 x 54
3-Digit Exit Number (with dual letter suffix)	E1-5bP	2E.31	186 x 54
Next Exit XX Miles (1 line)	—	2E.34	Varies x 24
Next Exit XX Miles (2 lines)	—	2E.34	Varies x 36
Exit Gore (no exit number)	E5-1	2E.37	72 x 60
Exit Gore (with exit number)			
1-, 2-Digit Exit Number	E5-1a	2E.37	78 x 60
3-Digit Exit Number	E5-1a	2E.37	96 x 60
1-Digit Exit Number (with single letter suffix)	E5-1a	2E.37	90 x 60
2-Digit Exit Number (with single letter suffix)	E5-1a	2E.37	108 x 60
3-Digit Exit Number (with single letter suffix)	E5-1a	2E.37	126 x 60
1-Digit Exit Number (with dual letter suffix)	E5-1a	2E.37	120 x 60
2-Digit Exit Number (with dual letter suffix)	E5-1a	2E.37	138 x 60
3-Digit Exit Number (with dual letter suffix)	E5-1a	2E.37	156 x 60
Exit Number (plaque)			
1-, 2-Digit Exit Number	E5-1bP	2E.37	42 x 30
3-Digit Exit Number	E5-1bP	2E.37	60 x 30
1-Digit Exit Number (with single letter suffix)	E5-1bP	2E.37	48 x 30
1-Digit Exit Number (with dual letter suffix)	E5-1bP	2E.37	72 x 30
2-Digit Exit Number (with single or dual letter suffix)	E5-1bP	2E.37	72 x 30
3-Digit Exit Number (with single or dual letter suffix)	E5-1bP	2E.37	72 x 30
Narrow Exit Gore	E5-1c	2E.37	60 x 90*
Pull-Through	E6-2	2E.12	Varies x 120*
Pull-Through	E6-2a	2E.12	Varies x 90*
Exit Only (with arrow)	E11-1,1d	2E.24	174** x 36
Exit	E11-1a	2E.24	66 x 18
Only	E11-1b	2E.24	66 x 18
Exit Only	E11-1c	2E.24	120 x 18
Exit Only (with two arrows)	E11-1e,1f	2E.24	222** x 36
Left	E11-2	2E.40	60 x 18
Exit Gore Advisory Speed (plaque)	E13-1P	2E.37	72 x 24
Exit Direction Advisory Speed	E13-2	2E.36	162 x 24
Interstate Route Sign (1 or 2 digits)	M1-1	2E.27	36 x 36
Interstate Route Sign (3 digits)	M1-1	2E.27	45 x 36
Off-Interstate Route Sign (1 or 2 digits)	M1-2,3	2E.27	36 x 36
Off-Interstate Route Sign (3 digits)	M1-2,3	2E.27	45 x 36
U.S. Route Sign (1 or 2 digits)	M1-4	2E.27	36 x 36
U.S. Route Sign (3 digits)	M1-4	2E.27	45 x 36
State Route Sign (1 or 2 digits)	M1-5	2D.11	36 x 36

Table 2E-1. Freeway or Expressway Guide Sign and Plaque Sizes (Sheet 2 of 2)

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Minimum Size
State Route Sign (3 digits)	M1-5	2D.11	45 x 36
County Route Sign (1, 2, or 3 digits)	M1-6	2D.11	36 x 36
Forest Route (1, 2, or 3 digits)	M1-7	2D.11	36 x 36
Eisenhower Interstate System	M1-10,10a	2E.28	36 x 36
Junction	M2-1	2D.13	30 x 21
Combination Junction (2 route signs)	M2-2	2D.14	60 x 48*
Cardinal Direction	M3-1,2,3,4	2D.15	36 x 18
Alternate	M4-1,1a	2D.17	36 x 18
By-Pass	M4-2	2D.18	36 x 18
Business	M4-3	2D.19	36 x 18
Truck	M4-4	2D.20	36 x 18
To	M4-5	2D.21	36 x 18
End	M4-6	2D.22	36 x 18
Temporary	M4-7,7a	2D.24	36 x 18
Begin	M4-14	2D.23	36 x 18
Advance Turn Arrow	M5-1,2,3	2D.26	30 x 21
Lane Designation	M5-4,5,6	2D.27	36 x 24
Directional Arrow	M6-1,2,2a,3,4,5,6,7	2D.28	30 x 21
Destination (1 line)	D1-1	2D.37	Varies x 30
Destination and Distance (1 line)	D1-1a	2D.37	Varies x 30
Destination (2 lines)	D1-2	2D.37	Varies x 54
Destination and Distance (2 lines)	D1-2a	2D.37	Varies x 54
Destination (3 lines)	D1-3	2D.37	Varies x 72
Destination and Distance (3 lines)	D1-3a	2D.37	Varies x 72
Distance (1 line)	D2-1	2D.41	Varies x 30
Distance (2 lines)	D2-2	2D.41	Varies x 54
Distance (3 lines)	D2-3	2D.41	Varies x 72
Street Name	D3-1,1a	2D.43	Varies x 18
Advance Street Name (2 lines)	D3-2	2D.44	Varies x 42*
Advance Street Name (3 lines)	D3-2	2D.44	Varies x 66*
Advance Street Name (4 lines)	D3-2	2D.44	Varies x 84*
Park - Ride	D4-2	2D.48	36 x 48
National Scenic Byways	D6-4	2D.55	24 x 24
National Scenic Byways	D6-4a	2D.55	24 x 12
Weigh Station XX Miles	D8-1	2E.54	96 x 72 (F) 78 x 60 (E)
Weigh Station Next Right	D8-2	2E.54	108 x 90 (F) 84 x 72 (E)
Weigh Station (with arrow)	D8-3	2E.54	84 x 78 (F) 66 x 60 (E)
Crossover	D13-1,2	2D.54	78 x 42
Freeway Entrance	D13-3	2D.46	48 x 30
Freeway Entrance (with arrow)	D13-3a	2D.46	48 x 42
Combination Lane Use / Destination	D15-1	2D.33	Varies x 96
Next Truck Lane XX Miles	D17-1	2D.51	60 x 66
Truck Lane XX Miles	D17-2	2D.51	60 x 54
Slow Vehicle Turn-Out XX Miles	D17-7	2D.52	96 x 54

* The size shown is for a typical sign as illustrated in the figures in Chapters 2D and 2E. The size should be determined based on the amount of legend required for the sign.

** The width shown represents the minimum dimension. The width shall be increased as appropriate to match the width of the guide sign.

- Notes: 1. Larger signs may be used when appropriate
 2. Dimensions in inches are shown as width x height
 3. Where two sizes are shown, the larger size is for freeways (F) and the smaller size is for expressways (E)

Table 2E-2. Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Expressway Guide Signs According to Interchange Classification

Type of Sign	Type of Interchange (see Section 2E.32)				Overhead
	Major		Intermediate	Minor	
	Category a	Category b			
A. Advance Guide, Exit Direction, and Overhead Guide Signs					
Exit Number Plaques					
Words	10	10	10	8	10
Numerals & Letters	15	15	15	12	15
Interstate Route Signs					
Numerals	18	—	—	—	18
1- or 2-Digit Shields	36 x 36	—	—	—	36 x 36
3-Digit Shields	45 x 36	—	—	—	45 x 36
U.S. or State Route Signs					
Numerals	18	18	18	12	18
1- or 2-Digit Shields	36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	24 x 24	36 x 36
3-Digit Shields	45 x 36	45 x 36	45 x 36	30 x 24	45 x 36
U.S. or State Route Text Identification (Example: US 56)					
Numerals & Letters	18	15	15	12	15
Cardinal Directions					
First Letters	18	15	12	10	15
Rest of Words	15	12	10	8	12
Auxiliary and Alternative Route Legends (Examples: JCT, TO, ALT, BUSINESS)					
Words	15	12	10	8	12
Names of Destinations					
Upper-Case Letters	20	16	13.33	10.67	16
Lower-Case Letters	15	12	10	8	12
Distance Numbers	18	15	12	10	15
Distance Fraction Numerals	12	10	10	8	10
Distance Words	12	10	10	8	10
Action Message Words	10	10	10	8	10
B. Gore Signs					
Words	10	10	10	8	—
Numerals & Letters	12	12	12	10	—

Note: Sizes are shown in inches and where applicable are shown as width x height

Table 2E-3. Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Expressway Guide Signs According to Sign Type

Type of Sign	Minimum Size
A. Pull-Through Signs	
Destinations — Upper-Case Letters	13.33
Destinations — Lower-Case Letters	10
Route Signs	
1- or 2-Digit Shields	36 x 36
3-Digit Shields	45 x 36
Cardinal Directions — First Letters	12
Cardinal Directions — Rest of Word	10
B. Supplemental Guide Signs	
Exit Number — Words	8
Exit Number — Numerals and Letters	12
Place Names — Upper-Case Letters	10.67
Place Names — Lower-Case Letters	8
Action Messages	8
Route Signs	
Numerals	12
1- or 2-Digit Shield	24 x 24
3-Digit Shield	30 x 24
C. Interchange Sequence or Community Interchanges Identification Signs	
Words — Upper-Case Letters	10.67
Words — Lower-Case Letters	8
Numerals	10.67
Fraction Numerals	8
Route Signs	
Numerals	12
1- or 2-Digit Shield	24 x 24
3-Digit Shield	30 x 24
D. Next XX Exits Sign	
Place Names — Upper-Case Letters	10.67
Place Names — Lower-Case Letters	8
NEXT XX EXITS — Words	8
NEXT XX EXITS — Number	12

Type of Sign	Minimum Size
E. Distance Signs	
Words — Upper-Case Letters	8
Words — Lower-Case Letters	6
Numerals	8
Route Signs	
Numerals	9
1- or 2-Digit Shield	18 x 18
3-Digit Shield	22.5 x 18
F. General Services Signs (see Chapter 2I)	
Exit Number — Words	8
Exit Number — Numerals and Letters	12
Services	8
G. Rest Area, Scenic Area, and Roadside Area Signs (see Chapter 2I)	
Words	10
Distance Numerals	12
Distance Fraction Numerals	8
Distance Words	8
Action Message Words	10
H. Reference Location Signs (see Chapter 2H)	
Words	4
Numerals	10
I. Boundary and Orientation Signs (see Chapter 2H)	
Words — Upper-Case Letters	8
Words — Lower-Case Letters	6
J. Next Exit and Next Services Signs	
Words and Numerals	8
K. Exit Only Signs	
Words	12
L. Overhead Arrow-Per-Lane and Diagrammatic Signs	
See Table 2E-5	

Note: Sizes are shown in inches and where applicable are shown as width x height

Table 2E-4. Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Freeway Guide Signs According to Interchange Classification

Type of Sign	Type of Interchange (see Section 2E.32)				Overhead
	Major		Intermediate	Minor	
	Category a	Category b			
A. Advance Guide, Exit Direction, and Overhead Guide Signs					
Exit Number Plaques					
Words	10	10	10	10	10
Numerals & Letters	15	15	15	15	15
Interstate Route Signs					
Numerals	24/18	—	—	—	18
1- or 2-Digit Shields	48 x 48/ 36 x 36	—	—	—	36 x 36
3-Digit Shields	60 x 48/ 45 x 36	—	—	—	45 x 36
U.S. or State Route Signs					
Numerals	24/18	18	18	12	18
1- or 2-Digit Shields	48 x 48/ 36 x 36	36 x 36	36 x 36	24 x 24	36 x 36
3-Digit Shields	60 x 48/ 45 x 36	45 x 36	45 x 36	30 x 24	45 x 36
U.S. or State Route Text Identification (Example: US 56)					
Numerals & Letters	18	18/15	15	12	15
Cardinal Directions					
First Letters	18	15	15	10	15
Rest of Words	15	12	12	8	12
Auxiliary and Alternative Route Legends (Examples: JCT, TO, ALT, BUSINESS)					
Words	15	12	12	8	12
Names of Destinations					
Upper-Case Letters	20	20	16	13.33	16
Lower-Case Letters	15	15	12	10	12
Distance Numbers	18	18/15	15	12	15
Distance Fraction Numerals	12	12/10	10	8	10
Distance Words	12	12/10	10	8	10
Action Message Words	12	12/10	10	8	10
B. Gore Signs					
Words	12	12	12	8	—
Numeral & Letters	18	18	18	12	—

Notes: 1. Sizes are shown in inches and where applicable are shown as width x height
 2. Slanted line (/) signifies separation of desirable and minimum sizes

Table 2E-5. Minimum Letter and Numeral Sizes for Freeway Guide Signs According to Sign Type

Type of Sign	Minimum Size
A. Pull-Through Signs	
Destinations — Upper-Case Letters	16
Destinations — Lower-Case Letters	12
Route Signs	
1- or 2-Digit Shields	36 x 36
3-Digit Shields	45 x 36
Cardinal Directions — First Letter	15
Cardinal Directions — Rest of Word	12
B. Supplemental Guide Signs	
Exit Number Words	10
Exit Number Numerals and Letters	15
Place Names — Upper-Case Letters	13.33
Place Names — Lower-Case Letters	10
Action Messages	8
Route Signs	
Numerals	12
1- or 2-Digit Shield	24 x 24
3-Digit Shield	30 x 24
C. Interchange Sequence or Community Interchanges Identification Signs	
Words — Upper-Case Letters	13.33
Words — Lower-Case Letters	10
Numerals	13.33
Fraction Numerals	10
Route Signs	
Numerals	12
1- or 2-Digit Shield	24 x 24
3-Digit Shield	30 x 24
D. Next XX Exits Sign	
Place Names — Upper-Case Letters	13.33
Place Names — Lower-Case Letters	10
NEXT XX EXITS — Words	10
NEXT XX EXITS — Number	15
E. Distance Signs	
Words — Upper-Case Letters	8
Words — Lower-Case Letters	6
Numerals	8
Route Signs	
Numerals	9
1- or 2-Digit Shield	18 x 18
3-Digit Shield	22.5 x 18
F. General Services Signs (see Chapter 2I)	
Exit Number Words	10
Exit Number Numerals and Letters	15
Services	10

Type of Sign	Minimum Size
G. Rest Area, Scenic Area, and Roadside Area Signs (see Chapter 2I)	
Words	12
Distance Numerals	15
Distance Fraction Numerals	10
Distance Words	10
Action Message Words	12
H. Reference Location Signs (see Chapter 2H)	
Words	4
Numerals	10
I. Boundary and Orientation Signs (see Chapter 2H)	
Words — Upper-Case Letters	8
Words — Lower-Case Letters	6
J. Next Exit and Next Services Signs	
Words and Numerals	8
K. Exit Only Signs	
Words	12
L. Overhead Arrow-Per-Lane Signs	
Arrowhead (Type D Directional Arrow)	21.625
Arrow Shaft Width	8
Arrow Height	
Through	72
Left Only	48
Right Only	48
Optional-Diverge (Through with Left or Right)	72
Optional-Split (Left and Right)	66
Vertical Separator Width	2
Vertical Space between Vertical Separator and Top of Nearest Arrow	8
Horizontal Space between Vertical Separator and Top of Nearest Through Arrow	15
Horizontal Space between Arrow Shaft and EXIT and ONLY plaques	10
EXIT and ONLY Panels	60 x 18
M. Diagrammatic Signs	
Arrowhead (Type D Directional Arrow)	13.5*
Lane Widths	5
Lane Line Segments	1 x 6
Spacing between Lane Line Segments	6
Stem Height to Upper Point of Departure	30
Horizontal Space between Arrowhead and Route Shield or Destination	12

* The size shown is the arrowhead width per lane depicted on the corresponding arrow shaft

Note: Sizes are shown in inches and where applicable are shown as width x height

Section 2E.16 Sign Borders**Standard:**

- 01 **Signs shall have a border of the same color as the legend in order to outline their distinctive shape and thereby give them easy recognition and a finished appearance.**

Guidance:

- 02 *For guide signs larger than 120 x 72 inches, the border should have a width of 2 inches. For smaller guide signs, a border width of 1.25 inches should be used, but the width should not exceed the stroke width of the lettering of the principal legend on the sign.*
- 03 *Corner radii of sign borders should be 1/8 of the minimum sign dimension on guide signs, except that the radii should not exceed 12 inches on any sign.*

Option:

- 04 The sign material in the area outside of the corner radius may be trimmed.

Section 2E.17 Abbreviations*Guidance:*

- 01 *Abbreviations should be kept to a minimum; however, they are useful when complete destination messages produce excessively long signs. If used, abbreviations should be unmistakably recognized by road users (see Section 1A.15). Longer commonly used words that are not part of a proper name and are readily recognizable, such as Street, Boulevard, and Avenue, should be abbreviated to expedite recognition of the sign legend by reducing the amount and complexity of the legend.*
- 02 *Periods, apostrophes, question marks, ampersands, or other punctuation or characters that are not letters, numerals, or hyphens should not be used in abbreviations, unless necessary to avoid confusion.*
- 03 *The solidus (slanted line or forward slash) is intended to be used for fractions only and should not be used to separate words on the same line of legend. Instead, a hyphen should be used for this purpose, such as "CARS – TRUCKS."*

Standard:

- 04 **The words NORTH, SOUTH, EAST, and WEST shall not be abbreviated when used with route signs to indicate cardinal directions on guide signs.**

Section 2E.18 Symbols**Standard:**

- 01 **Symbol designs shall be unmistakably like those shown in this Manual and in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11).**

Guidance:

- 02 A special effort should be made to balance legend components for maximum legibility of the symbol with the rest of the sign.

Option:

- 03 Educational plaques may be used below symbol signs where needed.

Section 2E.19 Arrows for Interchange Guide Signs**Standard:**

- 01 **Arrows used on interchange guide signs shall be of the types shown in Figure 2D-2 and shall comply with the provisions of this Section and Section 2D.08.**
- 02 **Except on Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs (see Section 2E.21) and on Exit Direction signs for lane drops (see Section 2E.24), and except as provided in Paragraphs 3 and 4, directional arrows on all overhead and post-mounted Exit Direction signs shall point diagonally upward and shall be located on the side of the sign consistent with the direction of the exiting movement.**

Option:

- 03 On post-mounted Exit Direction signs that are located where a directional arrow to the side of the legend farthest from the roadway might create an unusually wide sign that limits the road user's view of the arrow, the directional arrow may be placed at the bottom portion of the sign, centered under the legend.

Standard:

- 04 **Directional arrows on guide signs for multi-lane exits shall be positioned below the legend approximately over the center of each lane to which the arrow applies (see Figures 2E-4 and 2E-8).**
- 05 **On overhead signs where down arrows are used to indicate a lane to be followed, a down arrow shall be positioned approximately over the center of each lane and shall point vertically downward toward the**

approximate center of that lane. Down arrows shall be used only on overhead guide signs that restrict the use of specific lanes to traffic bound for the destination(s) and/or route(s) indicated by these arrows. Down arrows shall not be used unless an arrow can be located over and pointed to the approximate center of each lane that can be used to reach the destination displayed on the sign.

- 06 **If down arrows are used, having more than one down arrow pointing to the same lane on a single overhead sign (or on multiple signs on the same overhead sign structure) shall not be permitted.**

Support:

- 07 Directional and down arrows for use on guide signs are shown in Figure 2D-2. Detailed drawings and standardized sizes based on ranges of letter heights for these arrows are provided in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11). Information on the dimensions for arrows used in Overhead Arrow-per-Lane and Diagrammatic guide signing is also provided in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book.

Section 2E.20 Signing for Option Lanes at Splits and Multi-Lane Exits

Support:

- 01 Some freeway and expressway splits or multi-lane exit interchanges contain an interior option lane serving both movements in which traffic can either leave the route or remain on the route, or choose either destination at a split, from the same lane.

Standard:

- 02 **On freeways and expressways, either the Overhead Arrow-per-Lane or Diagrammatic guide sign designs as provided in Sections 2E.21 and 2E.22 shall be used for all multi-lane exits at major interchanges (see Section 2E.32) that have an optional exit lane that also carries the through route (see Figures 2E-4, 2E-5, 2E-8, and 2E-9) and for all splits that include an option lane (see Figures 2E-6 and 2E-10). Overhead Arrow-per-Lane or Diagrammatic guide signs shall not be used on freeways and expressways for any other types of exits or splits, including single-lane exits and splits that do not have an option lane.**

Guidance:

- 03 *The Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide sign design (see Section 2E.21) should also be considered for multi-lane exits with an option lane at intermediate interchanges (see Section 2E.32) based on such factors as the extent of the need to optimize the mainline operation by maximizing the usage of the option lane, the extent of the period(s) of the day during which the exiting volumes warrant the multi-lane exit arrangement, and the nature of the traffic that primarily uses the option lane during the high-volume periods.*
- 04 *Signing for multi-lane exits at minor interchanges (see Section 2E.32) that have an optional exit lane or at intermediate interchanges that have an optional exit lane at which it has been determined that the Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide sign design is not warranted should use a combination of conventional guide signing and regulatory lane-use signing, in accordance with the provisions of Section 2E.23.*

Section 2E.21 Design of Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for Option Lanes

Support:

- 01 Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs (see Figure 2E-3) are used where an option lane is present at freeway and expressway multi-lane exit interchanges and splits. They display an upward-pointing arrow above each lane that conveys the direction(s) of travel that the lane serves at the point of departure. At locations where an option lane is present at a multi-lane exit or split, Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs have been shown to be superior to either conventional guide signs or Diagrammatic guide signs because they convey positive direction about which destination and direction each approach lane serves, particularly for the option lane, which is otherwise difficult to clearly sign.

Standard:

- 02 **Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs shall be used on all new or reconstructed freeways and expressways as described in Section 2E.20.**
- 03 **Where used, the Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide sign at the exit or split shall be located at or in the immediate vicinity of the point where the exiting lanes begin to diverge from the through lanes or, for a split, at the point where the approach lanes begin to diverge from one another, preserving the relation of the arrows displayed on the sign to their respective lanes. The Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide sign at the exit shall not be located at or near the theoretical gore.**

Option:

- 04 At existing or non-reconstructed locations where Exit Direction and Pull-Through signs exist at the theoretical gore, the existing sign support structure may remain in place, continuing to use Exit Direction and Pull-Through signs, in conjunction with a replacement of the advance signs using the Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide sign design.

Figure 2E-3. Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Sign for a Multi-Lane Exit with an Option Lane



Standard:

- 05 If existing Exit Direction and Pull-Through signs are being retained at an interchange as provided in Paragraph 4, an Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide sign shall not be used at the location of the Exit Direction and Pull-Through signs at or in the vicinity of the theoretical gore. New installations of Exit Direction and Pull-Through signs shall not be permitted in conjunction with Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs on new or reconstructed facilities.

Guidance:

- 06 Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs should be located at approximately 1/2 mile and 1 mile in advance of the exit or split, and at approximately 2 miles in advance of the exit or split where space is available and conditions allow.

Standard:

- 07 Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs used on freeways and expressways shall include one arrow above each lane and shall be designed in accordance with the following criteria:
- A. The sign shall include an upward-pointing arrow for each lane of the approach to the split or exit, and the shaft of each arrow shall be located approximately over the center of the lane to which it applies.
 - B. Arrows for continuing through lanes shall be vertically upward pointing (see Figure 2E-4) unless those lanes are on a significantly curved alignment beyond the theoretical gore, in which case the arrows for the continuing through lanes shall indicate the approximate degree of curvature (see Figure 2E-5).
 - C. The arrow for a lane that must exit shall be curved in the direction of the exit and shall be accompanied by black-on-yellow EXIT (E11-1a) and ONLY (E11-1b) sign panels adjacent to the lower end of the arrow shaft. The E11-1a and E11-1b sign panels shall not be used for a split of two overlapping routes where neither of the diverging routes is designated as an exit. Where the through lanes curve and the exit continues on a straight alignment, upward-pointing vertical arrows shall be used for the exiting movement and curved arrows for the through movement.
 - D. The arrow for an optional exit lane that also carries the through route shall have a single shaft that bifurcates into a vertically upward-pointing arrow and a curving arrow corresponding to the configuration of the through and exit lanes.
 - E. For splits with an option lane, the arrow for the lane from which either direction of the split can be accessed shall have a single shaft that bifurcates into two upward-pointing curving arrows showing the approximate degrees of curvature of the two roadways beyond the theoretical gore (see Figure 2E-6).
 - F. A vertical white line shall be used to separate the route shields and destinations for the two diverging movements from each other.

Figure 2E-4. Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane

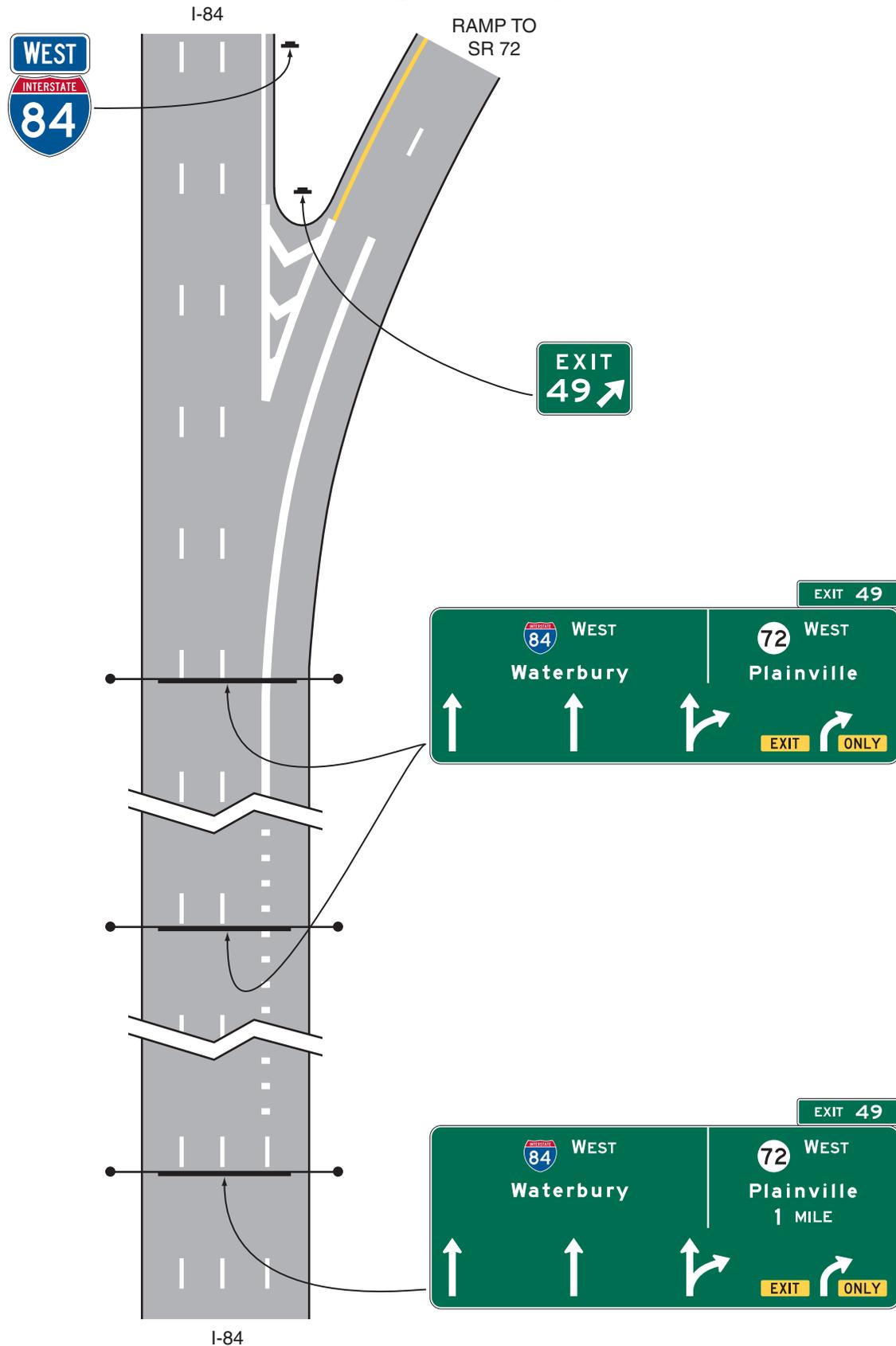


Figure 2E-5. Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane (Through Lanes Curve to the Left)

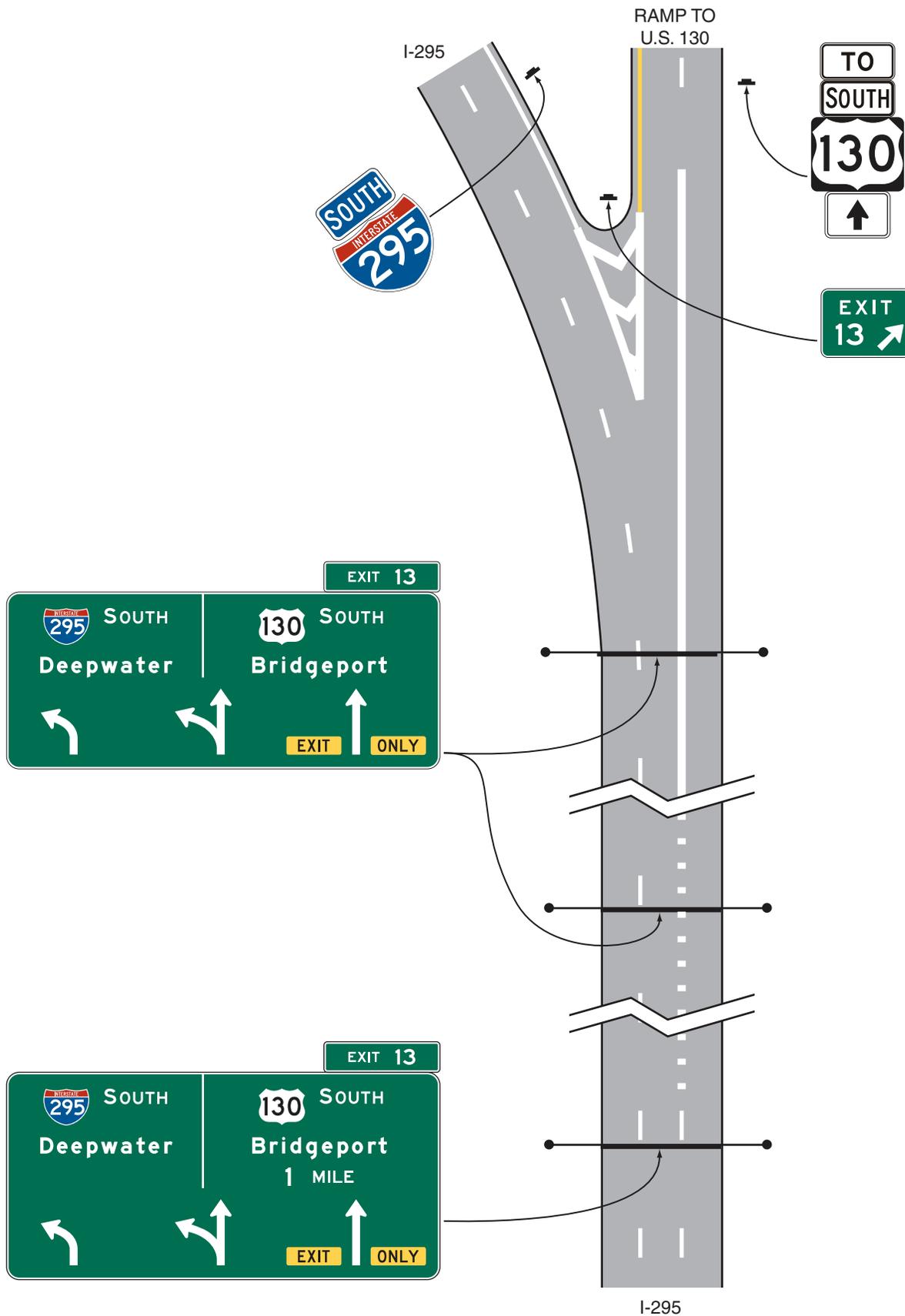
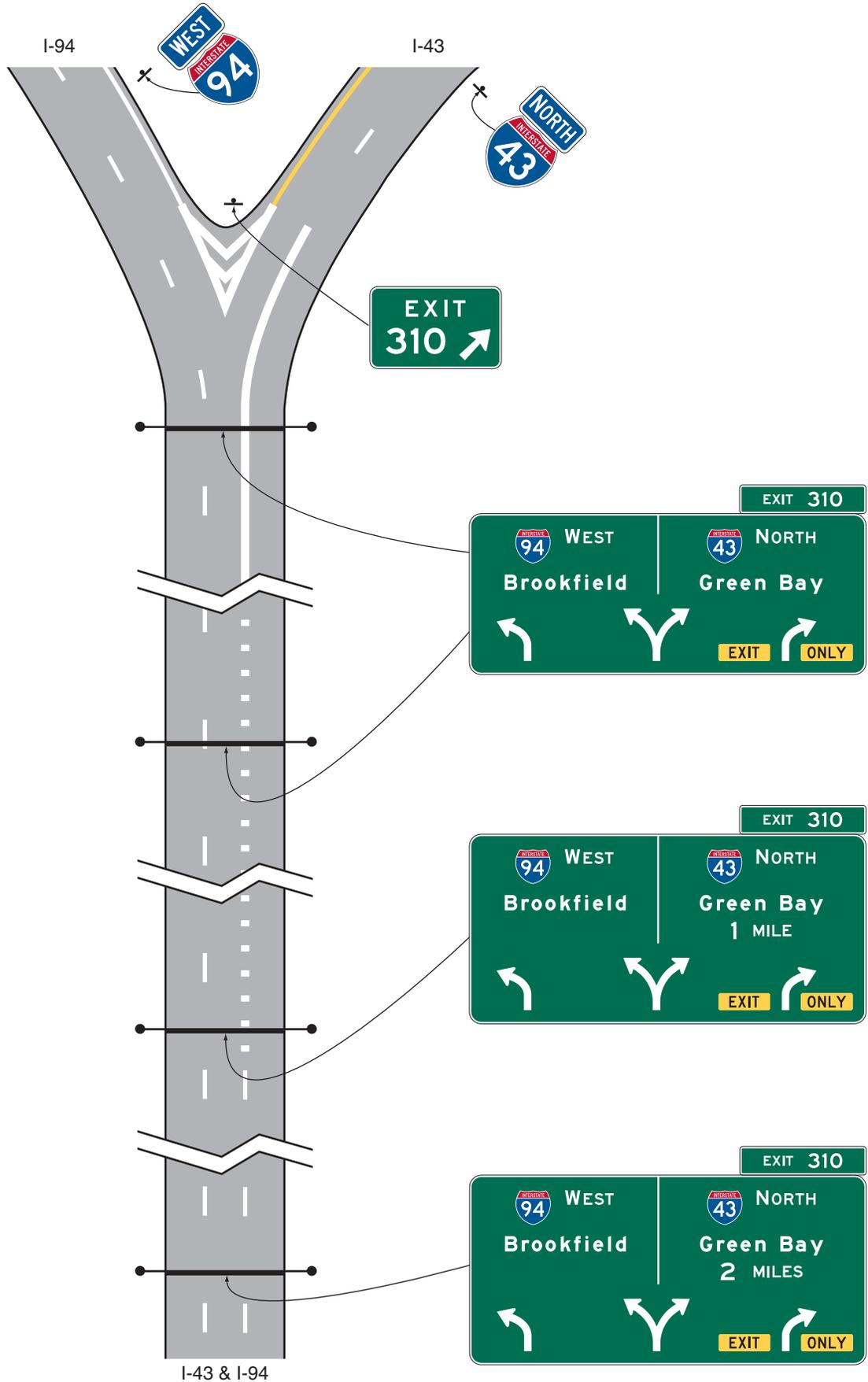


Figure 2E-6. Overhead Arrow-per-Lane Guide Signs for a Split with an Option Lane



- G. The distance to the exit or split shall be displayed below the off-movement destination on the advance signs at the 1-mile and 2-mile locations.**
- H. The number of lanes displayed on a sign shall correspond to the number of lanes at the location of that sign. An advance sign shall not depict lanes that are added downstream of a sign location.**
- I. For numbered exits, the Exit Number (E1-5P) or Left Exit Number (E1-5bP) plaque shall be used at the top of the sign in accordance with Section 2E.31. For unnumbered left exits, the LEFT (E1-5aP) plaque shall be used at the top left edge of the sign.**

Guidance:

- 08 *Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs used on freeways and expressways should be designed in accordance with the following additional criteria:*
- A. No more than one destination should be displayed for each movement, and no more than two destinations should be displayed per sign.*
 - B. The arrowhead(s) for the diverging movement should be positioned lower on the sign than the arrowhead(s) for the movement that continues straight ahead, independent of which movement carries the through route. Where the movements are freeway or expressway splits rather than exits, the arrowheads should be positioned at approximately the same height on the sign.*
 - C. Route shields, cardinal directions, and destinations should be positioned on the sign such that they are clearly related to the arrowhead(s) for the movement to which they apply.*
 - D. The cardinal direction should be placed adjacent to the route shield for exits or splits leading in a single cardinal direction.*
 - E. The vertical white line that is used to separate the route shields and destinations for the two diverging movements from each other should not descend below the top of the arrowheads for the through lanes, and should be positioned approximately halfway between the diverging arrowheads for the optional movement lane (see Figure 2E-3).*

Standard:

- 09 **Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs shall not be used to depict a downstream split of an exit ramp on a sign located on the mainline.**

Support:

- 10 Specific guidelines for more detailed design of Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs are contained in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).

Option:

- 11 Where extra emphasis of an especially low advisory ramp speed is needed, an EXIT XX MPH (E13-2) sign panel (see Figure 2E-27) may be placed below the applicable destination legend to supplement, but not to replace, the exit or ramp advisory speed warning signs.

Section 2E.22 Design of Freeway and Expressway Diagrammatic Guide Signs for Option Lanes

Support:

- 01 Diagrammatic guide signs (see Figure 2E-7) are guide signs that show a simplified graphic view of the exit arrangement in relationship to the main highway. While the use of such guide signs might be helpful for the purpose of conveying relative direction of each movement, Diagrammatic guide signs have been shown to be less effective than conventional or Overhead Arrow-per-Lane guide signs at conveying the destination or direction(s) that each approach lane serves, regardless of whether dedicated or option lanes are present.

Standard:

- 02 **Diagrammatic guide signs used where an option lane is present at a freeway or expressway split or multi-lane exit shall be designed in accordance with the following criteria:**
- A. The graphic legend shall be of a plan view showing the off-ramp arrangement.**
 - B. No other symbols or route shields shall be used as a substitute for arrowheads.**
 - C. They shall not be installed at the Exit Direction sign location (see Section 2E.36).**
 - D. The EXIT ONLY sign panel shall not be used on diagrammatic guide signs in advance of the interchange.**
 - E. For numbered exits, the Exit Number (E1-5P) or Left Exit Number (E1-5bP) plaque shall be used at the top of the sign in accordance with Section 2E.31. For unnumbered left exits, the LEFT (E1-5aP) plaque shall be used at the top left edge of the sign.**
 - F. The EXIT ONLY (E11-1e or E11-1f) sign panels shall be used on the Exit Direction sign at the theoretical gore, except at splits of two overlapping routes where neither of the routes is designated as an exit.**

Figure 2E-7. Diagrammatic Guide Sign for a Multi-Lane Exit with an Option Lane*Guidance:*

- 03 *Diagrammatic guide signs used on freeways and expressways should be designed in accordance with the following additional criteria:*
- A. *The graphic should not depict deceleration lanes.*
 - B. *No more than one destination should be displayed for each movement, and no more than two destinations should be displayed per sign.*
 - C. *The arrowhead for the diverging movement should be positioned lower on the sign than the arrowhead for the movement that continues straight ahead, independent of which movement carries the through route (see Figures 2E-8 and 2E-9). Where the movements are freeway or expressway splits rather than exits, the arrowheads should be positioned at approximately the same height on the sign (see Figure 2E-10).*
 - D. *Arrow shafts should contain lane lines.*
 - E. *Route shields, cardinal directions, and destinations should be positioned on the sign such that they are clearly related to the arrowhead(s), and the arrowhead for the off movement should point toward the route shield for the off movement.*
 - F. *For exits or splits leading in a single direction, the cardinal direction should be placed adjacent to the route shield, and the destination should be placed below the route shield and cardinal direction.*

Standard:

- 04 **Diagrammatic guide signs shall not be used at cloverleaf interchanges for the purpose of depicting successive departures from the mainline or separate downstream departures from a collector-distributor roadway. The use of Diagrammatic guide signs at cloverleaf interchanges shall be limited to the following cases:**
- A. **Where the outer (non-loop) exit ramp of the cloverleaf is a multi-lane exit having an optional exit lane that also carries the through route; and**
 - B. **At cloverleaf interchanges that include collector-distributor roadways, such as those illustrated in Figure 2E-36, that are accessed from the mainline by a multi-lane exit having an optional exit lane that also carries the through route. In this case, the Diagrammatic guide sign shall only show the configuration of the lanes at the exit point to the collector-distributor roadway and not the entire interchange configuration.**

Support:

- 05 Specific guidelines for more detailed design of Diagrammatic guide signs are contained in the “Standard Highway Signs and Markings” book (see Section 1A.11).

Option:

- 06 Where extra emphasis of an especially low advisory ramp speed is needed, an EXIT XX MPH (E13-2) sign panel (see Figure 2E-27) may be placed below the applicable destination legend to supplement, but not to replace, the exit or ramp advisory speed warning signs.

Figure 2E-8. Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane



Figure 2E-9. Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Two-Lane Exit to the Right with an Option Lane (Through Lanes Curve to the Left)

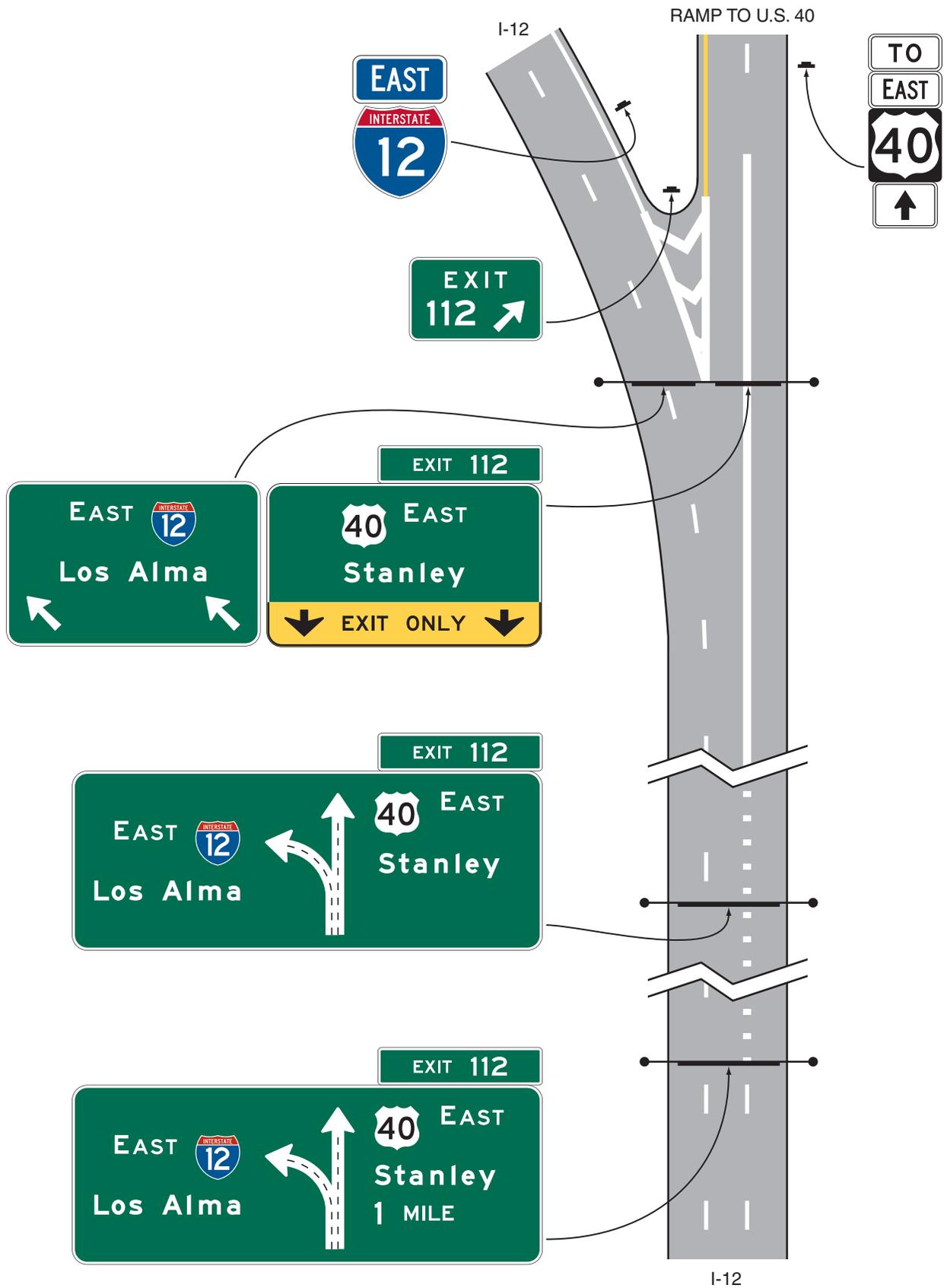
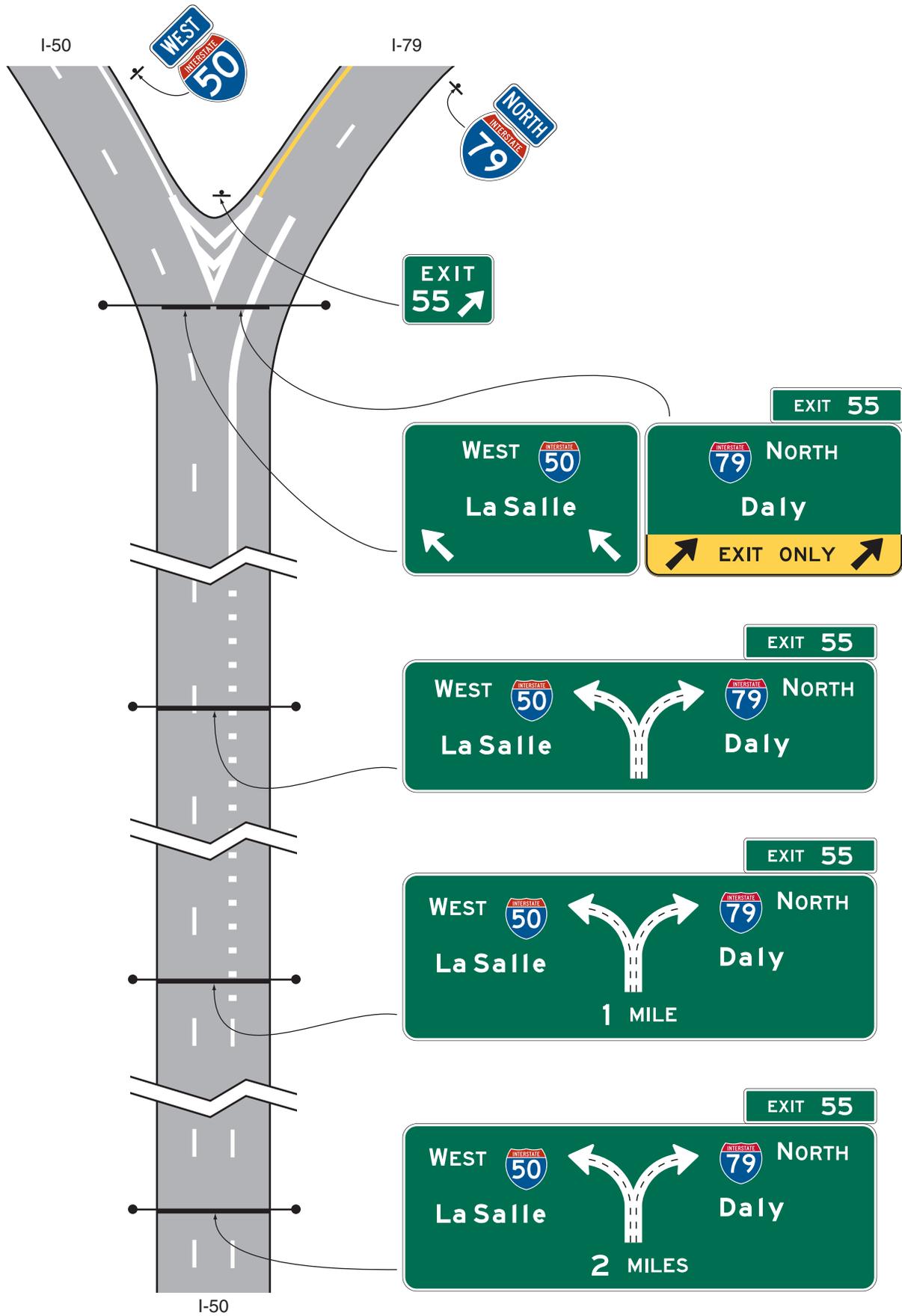


Figure 2E-10. Diagrammatic Guide Signs for a Split with an Option Lane



Section 2E.23 Signing for Intermediate and Minor Interchange Multi-Lane Exits with an Option Lane

Support:

- 01 Intermediate and minor multi-lane exits might have an operational need for the presence of an option lane for only the peak period during which excessive queues might otherwise develop if the option lane were not available. In such cases, the Overhead Arrow-per-Lane or Diagrammatic guide signing described for option lanes in Sections 2E.21 and 2E.22 might not be practical, depending on the level of use of the option lane and the spacing of nearby interchanges, particularly in non-rural areas.

Guidance:

- 02 *Signing for an intermediate or minor interchange that has a multi-lane exit with an option lane that also carries the through route should use the same basic principles as those for a conventional exit. In such cases, the option lane is not signed on the Advance Guide signs. For such exits that involve the addition of an auxiliary lane that is not present at the Advance Guide sign locations, but do not involve a lane drop (see Figure 2E-12), a sequence of post-mounted or overhead-mounted Advance Guide signs should be used, located in accordance with the interchange classification (see Section 2E.32). The Exit Direction sign should be located at the theoretical gore and display a diagonally upward-pointing directional arrow above each lane that departs from the mainline alignment. The Exit Direction sign should not contain the EXIT ONLY legend.*
- 03 *For such interchanges that also have a lane drop (see Figure 2E-11), the Advance Guide and Exit Direction signs should follow the provisions of Section 2E.24. The Exit Direction sign should be located at the theoretical gore and should contain the EXIT ONLY (E11-1e) sign panel.*
- 04 *The presence of the option lane should be conveyed by the use of post-mounted lane-use (R3-8 Series) signs (see Section 2B.22). When used, the R3-8 signs should be of an appropriate size for their application to optimize their conspicuity. The signs should be located in succession with the Advance Guide signs, where the option and exit lanes have developed (see Figure 2E-11). In cases where the exiting lane or lanes have not developed and the option lane is created by the addition of an auxiliary lane that exits, the R3-8 signs should be located only adjacent to where the lanes have been fully developed and not in advance of the lane or along its transition (see Figure 2E-12).*

Support:

- 05 The use of a down arrow on overhead freeway or expressway guide signs has been shown to be misinterpreted by road users as an indication of a dedicated lane.

Standard:

- 06 **Advance Guide signs that are mounted overhead shall not display a down arrow over an option lane.**

Section 2E.24 Signing for Interchange Lane Drops

Standard:

- 01 **The provisions of this Section shall only apply to lane drops at exits that do not have an optional exit lane. At exits that have an optional exit lane in addition to the dropped lane, the provisions of Sections 2E.20 through 2E.23 shall apply.**
- 02 **Major guide signs for all lane drops at interchanges shall be mounted overhead. An EXIT ONLY sign panel shall be used for all interchange lane drops at which the through route is carried on the mainline.**
- 03 **Except on Overhead Arrow-per-Lane and Diagrammatic guide signs (See Sections 2E.20 through 2E.22), the EXIT ONLY (down arrow) (E11-1 or E11-1f) sign panel (see Figure 2E-13) shall be used on all signing of lane drops on all overhead Advance Guide signs (see Figures 2E-14 through 2E-16). The number of arrows on each sign shall correspond to the number of dropped lanes at the location of each sign. Placement of the down arrow shall comply with the provisions of Section 2E.19.**
- 04 **For lane drops, the Exit Direction sign (see Section 2E.36 and Figure 2E-26) shall be of the format shown in Figures 2E-15 and 2E-16. The bottom portion of the Exit Direction sign shall be yellow with a black border and shall include a diagonally upward-pointing black directional arrow (left or right) for each lane dropped at the exit, with the sign designed and placed so that each arrow is located over the approximate center of each lane being dropped. The words EXIT and ONLY shall be positioned to the left and right, respectively, of the arrow on the E11-1d sign panel for a single-lane drop. For a two-lane drop, the words EXIT ONLY shall be located between the two arrows on the E11-1e sign panel. The number of arrows on the sign shall correspond to the number of dropped lanes at the location of the sign.**

Option:

- 05 EXIT ONLY messages of either the combination of E11-1a and E11-1b, or E11-1c formats may be used to retrofit existing signing to warn of a lane drop situation ahead.

Figure 2E-11. Example of Signing for a Two-Lane Intermediate or Minor Interchange Exit with an Option Lane and a Dropped Lane

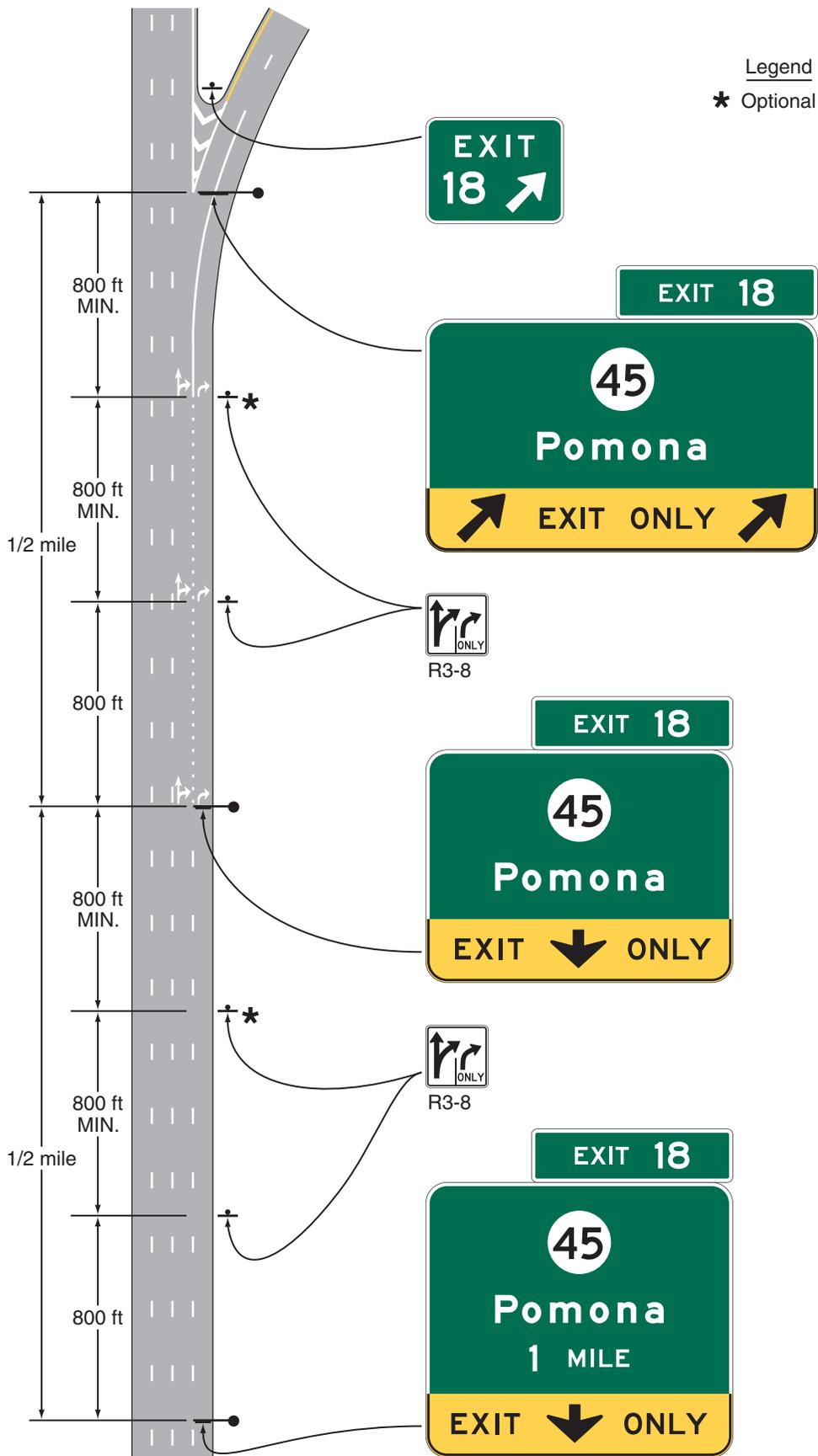


Figure 2E-12. Example of Signing for a Two-Lane Intermediate or Minor Interchange Exit with Option and Auxiliary Lanes

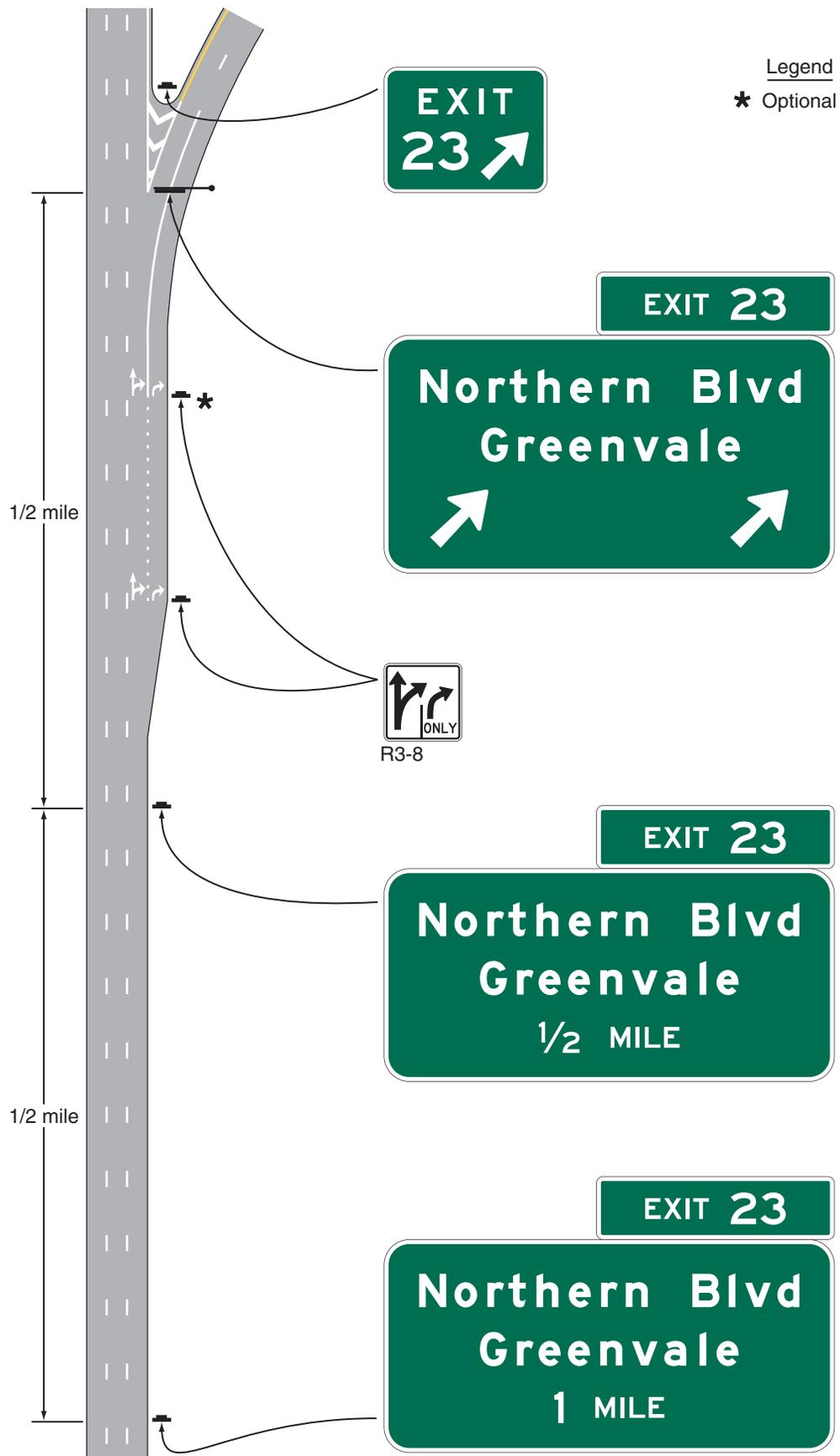
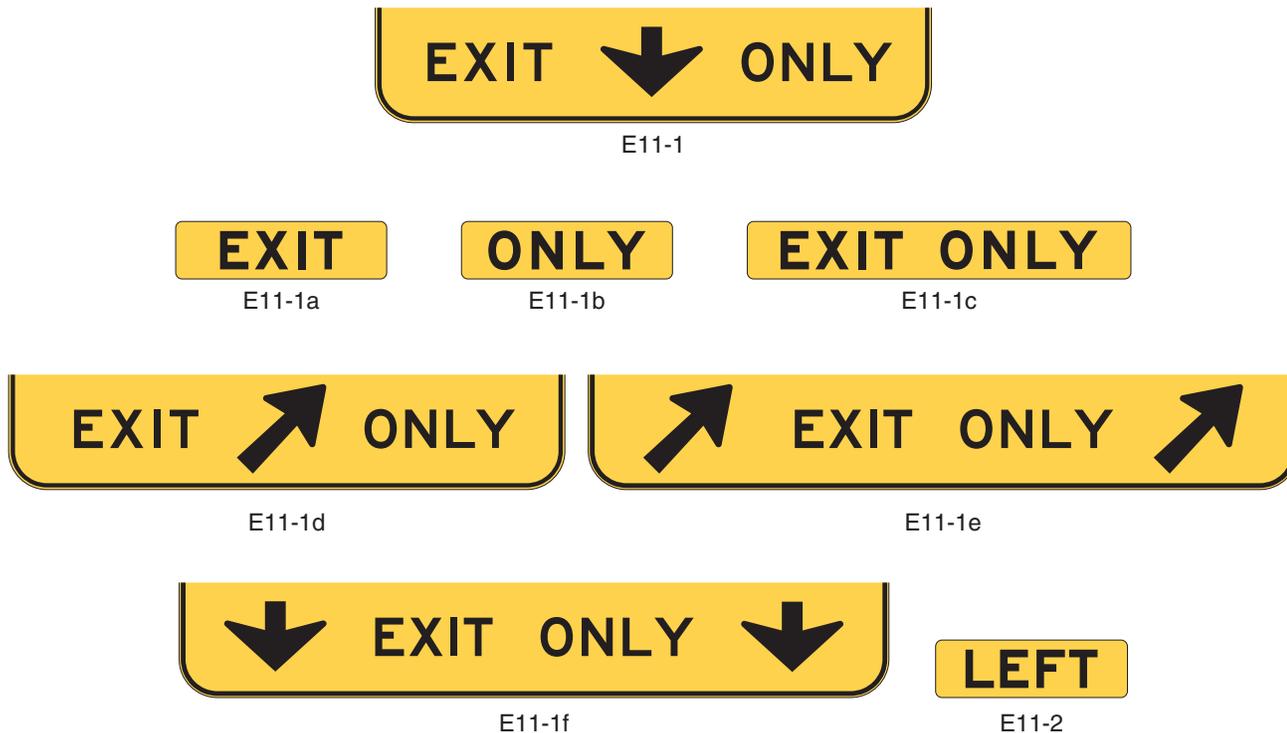


Figure 2E-13. EXIT ONLY and LEFT Sign Panels

**Standard:**

- 06 If used to retrofit an existing Advance Guide sign, the E11-1a and E11-1b sign panels (see Figure 2E-13) shall be placed on either side of a white down arrow. The E11-1c sign panel, if used to retrofit an existing sign, shall be placed between the lower destination message and the white down arrow.

Guidance:

- 07 Except as provided in Paragraph 8 for an auxiliary lane, Advance Guide signs for lane drops within 1 mile of the interchange should not contain the distance message.
- 08 Where the dropped lane is an auxiliary lane that is provided between successive entrance and exit ramps of two separate interchanges and the distance between the two ramps is less than 1 mile, the first Advance Guide sign in the sequence downstream from the entrance ramp should contain the distance message.
- 09 Wherever the dropped lane carries the through route, signs should be used without the EXIT ONLY sign panel.

Support:

- 10 Sections 2E.20 through 2E.23 contain information on the signing of lane drops at exits that also have an option lane.
- 11 Section 2B.23 contains information regarding regulatory signs that can also be used for freeway lane drop situations and Section 2C.42 contains information regarding warning signs that can also be used for freeway lane drop situations.

Section 2E.25 Overhead Sign Installations**Support:**

- 01 Specifications for the design and construction of structural supports for signs have been standardized by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO). Overcrossing structures can often serve for the support of overhead signs, and might in some cases be the only practical location that will provide adequate viewing distance. Use of these structures as sign supports will eliminate the need for additional sign supports along the roadside. Factors justifying the installation of overhead signs are given in Section 2A.17. Vertical clearance of overhead signs is discussed in Section 2A.18.

Figure 2E-15. Guide Signs for a Single-Lane Exit to the Left with a Dropped Lane

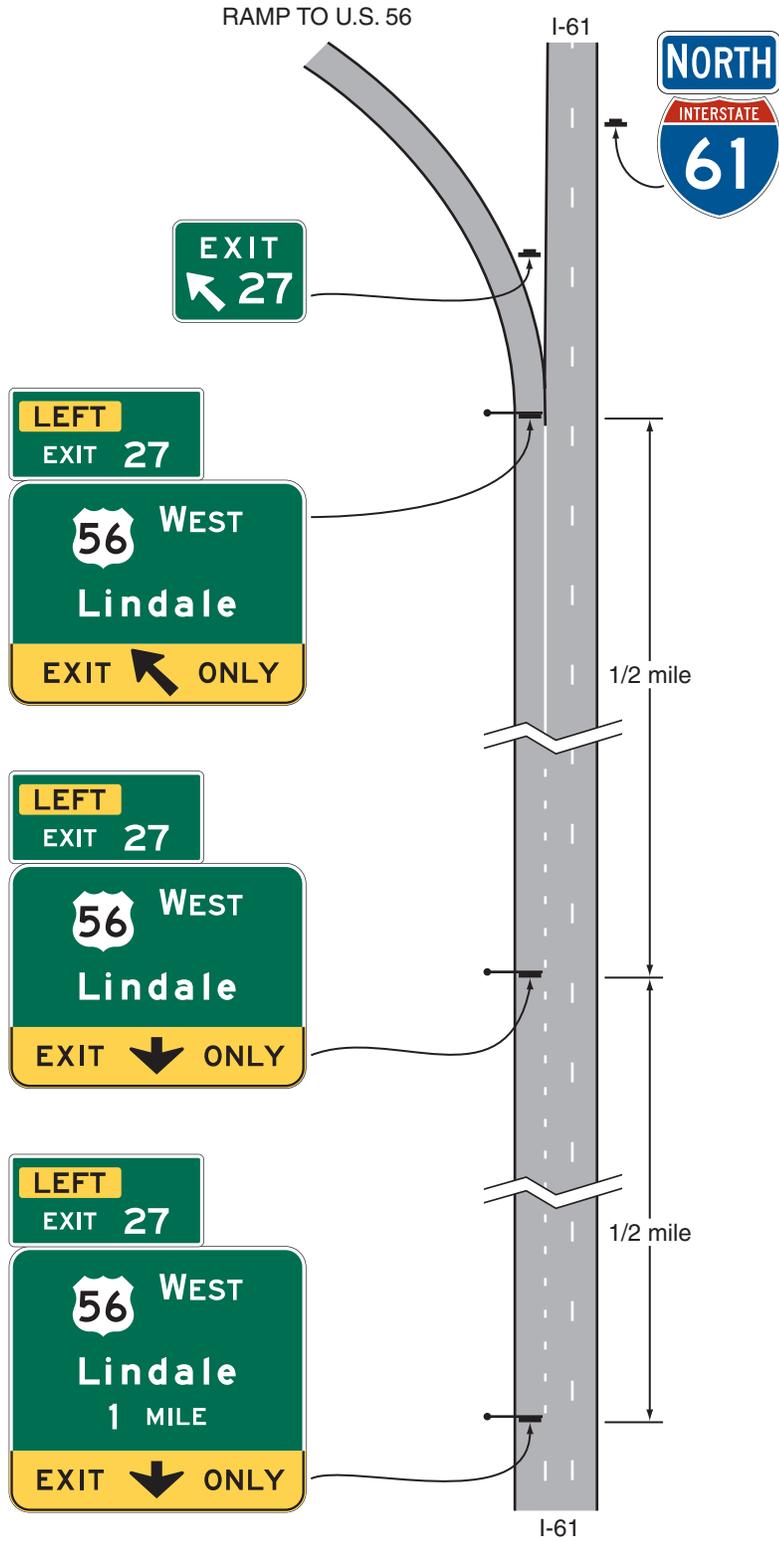
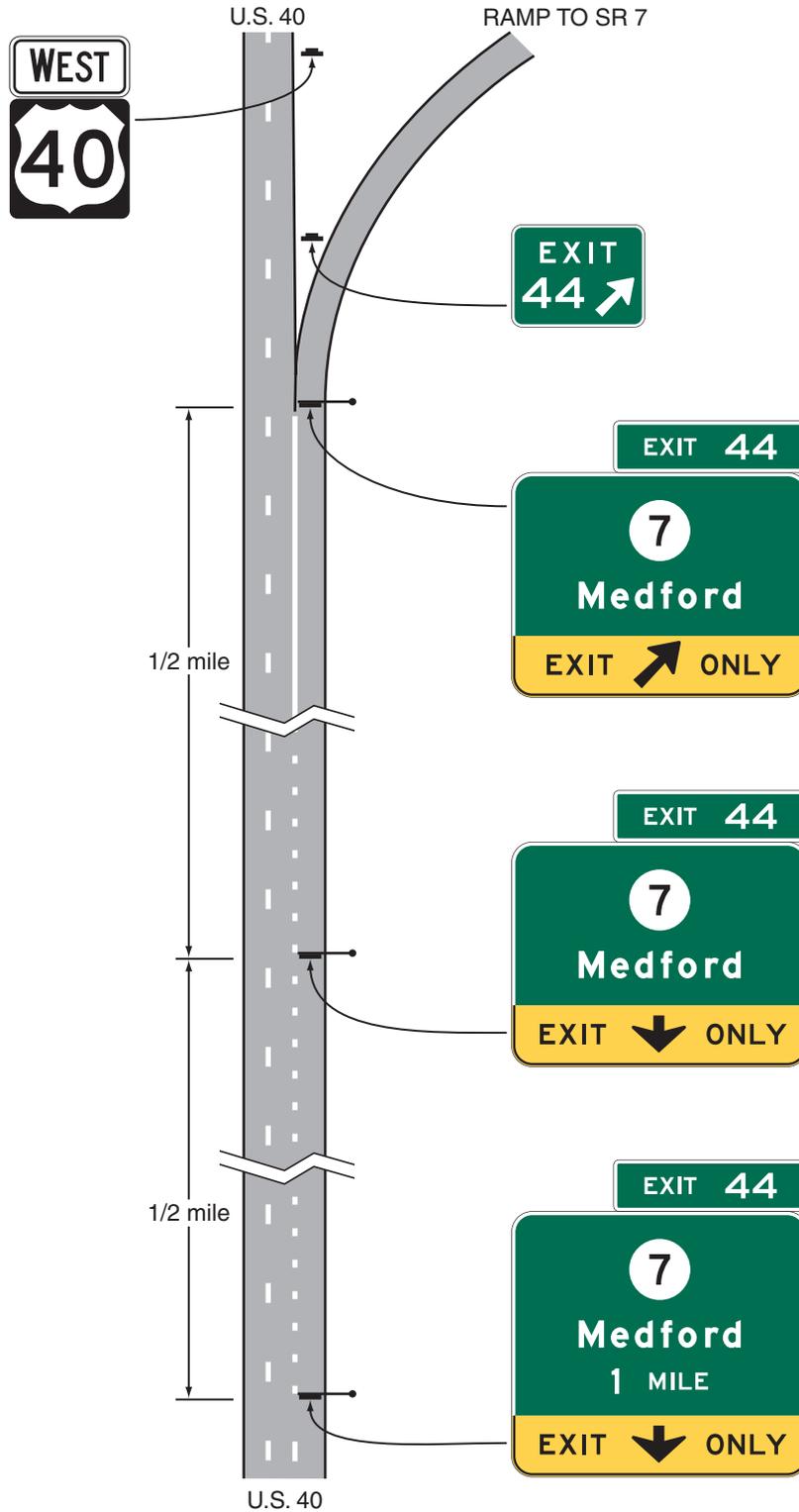


Figure 2E-16. Guide Signs for a Single-Lane Exit to the Right with a Dropped Lane



Section 2E.26 Lateral Offset**Standard:**

- 01 **The minimum lateral offset outside the usable roadway shoulder for post-mounted freeway and expressway signs or for overhead sign supports, either to the right-hand or left-hand side of the roadway, shall be 6 feet. This minimum clearance shall also apply outside of a curb. If located within the clear zone, the signs shall be mounted on crashworthy supports or shielded by appropriate crashworthy barriers.**

Guidance:

- 02 *Where practical, a sign should not be less than 10 feet from the edge of the nearest traffic lane. Large guide signs especially should be farther removed, preferably 30 feet or more from the nearest traffic lane.*
- 03 *Where an expressway median is 12 feet or less in width, consideration should be given to spanning both roadways without a center support.*
- 04 *Where overhead sign supports cannot be placed sufficiently far away from the line of traffic or in an otherwise protected site, they should either be designed to minimize the impact forces, or be adequately shielded by a traffic barrier of suitable design.*

Standard:

- 05 **Butterfly-type sign supports and other overhead non-crashworthy sign supports shall not be installed in gores or other unshielded locations within the clear zone.**

Option:

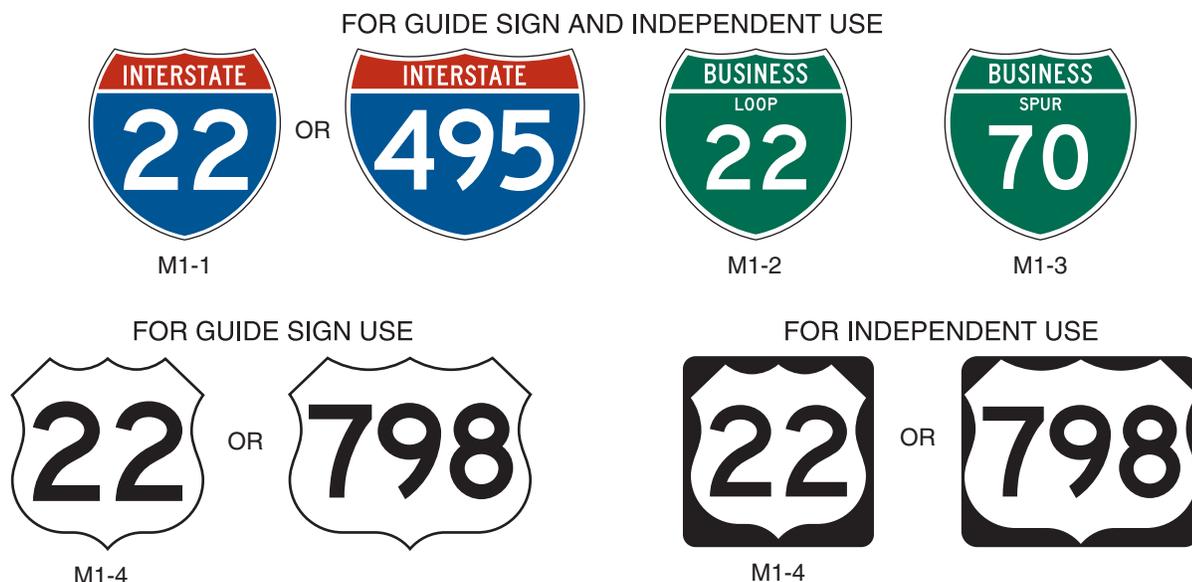
- 06 Lesser clearances, but not generally less than 6 feet, may be used on connecting roadways or ramps at interchanges.

Section 2E.27 Route Signs and Trailblazer Assemblies**Standard:**

- 01 **The official Route sign for the Interstate Highway System shall be the red, white, and blue retroreflective distinctive shield adopted by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (see Section 2D.11).**

Guidance:

- 02 *Route signs (see Figure 2E-17) should be incorporated as cut-out shields or other distinctive shapes on large directional guide signs. Where the Interstate shield is displayed in an assembly or on the face of a guide sign with U.S. or State Route signs, the Interstate numeral should be at least equal in size to the numerals on the other Route signs. The use of independent Route signs should be limited primarily to route confirmation assemblies.*
- 03 *Route signs and auxiliary signs showing junctions and turns should be used for guidance on approach roads, for route confirmation just beyond entrances and exits, and for reassurance along the freeway or expressway. When used along the freeway or expressway, the Route signs should be enlarged to a 36 x 36-inch minimum size for routes with one or two digits and to a 45 x 36-inch minimum size for routes with three digits as shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11). When independently mounted Route signs are used in place of Pull-Through signs, they should be located just beyond the exit.*

Figure 2E-17. Interstate, Off-Interstate, and U.S. Route Signs

Option:

- 04 The standard Trailblazer Assembly (see Section 2D.35) may be used on roads leading to the freeway or expressway. Component messages of the Trailblazer Assembly may be included on a single sign in accordance with the provisions of Section 2D.12. Independently mounted Route signs may be used instead of Pull-Through signs (see Section 2E.12) as confirmation information.

Support:

- 05 Section 2H.07 contains information regarding the design of signs for Auto Tour Routes.

Option:

- 06 The commonly used name or trailblazer route sign for a toll highway (see Chapter 2F) may be displayed on non-toll sections of the Interstate Highway System at:

- A. The last exit before entering a toll Section of the Interstate Highway System;
- B. The interchange or connection with a toll highway, whether or not the toll highway is a part of the Interstate Highway System; and
- C. Other locations within a reasonable approach distance of toll highways when the name or trailblazer symbol for the toll highway would provide better guidance to road users unfamiliar with the area than would place names and route numbers.

- 07 The toll highway name or route sign may be included as a part of the guide sign installations on intersecting highways and approach roads to indicate the interchange with a toll Section of an Interstate route. Where needed for the proper direction of traffic, a trailblazer for a toll highway that is part of the Interstate Highway System may be displayed with the Interstate Trailblazer Assembly.

Support:

- 08 Chapter 2F contains additional information regarding signing for toll highways.

Section 2E.28 Eisenhower Interstate System Signs (M1-10, M1-10a)**Option:**

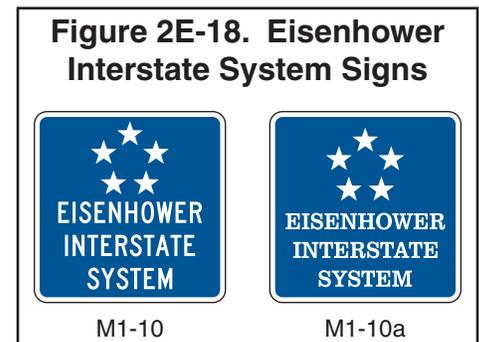
- 01 The Eisenhower Interstate System (M1-10 and M1-10a) signs (see Figure 2E-18) may be used on Interstate highways at periodic intervals and in rest areas, scenic overlooks, or other similar roadside facilities on the Interstate Highway System.

Guidance:

- 02 *If used, the M1-10a sign should be used only in rest areas or other similar facilities where the sign can be viewed by occupants of parked vehicles or by pedestrians. The M1-10a sign should not be installed on Interstate highway mainlines, ramps, or other roadways where it can be viewed by vehicular traffic.*

Standard:

- 03 **The M1-10 and M1-10a signs shall not be used as part of a Junction, Advance Route Turn, Directional, or Trailblazer Assembly or as part of a guide sign or similar assembly providing direction to a route or destination.**

**Section 2E.29 Signs for Intersections at Grade****Guidance:**

- 01 *If there are intersections at grade within the limits of an expressway, guide sign types provided in Chapter 2D should be used. However, such signs should be of a size compatible with the size of other signing on the expressway.*

Option:

- 02 Advance Guide signs for intersections at grade may take the form of diagrammatic layouts depicting the geometrics of the interSection along with essential directional information.

Section 2E.30 Interchange Guide Signs**Standard:**

- 01 **The signs at interchanges and on their approaches shall include Advance Guide signs and Exit Direction signs. Consistent destination messages shall be displayed on these signs.**

Guidance:

- 02 *New destination information should not be introduced into the major sign sequence for one interchange, nor should destination information be dropped.*
- 03 *Reference should be made to Section 2E.11 and Sections 2E.33 through 2E.42 for a detailed description of the signs in the order that they should appear at the approach to and beyond each interchange. Guide signs placed in advance of an interchange deceleration lane should be spaced at least 800 feet apart.*
- 04 *Supplemental guide signing should be used sparingly as provided in Section 2E.35.*

Section 2E.31 Interchange Exit Numbering**Support:**

- 01 Interchange exit numbering provides valuable orientation for the road user on a freeway or expressway. The feasibility of numbering interchanges or exits on an expressway will depend largely on the extent to which grade separations are provided. Where there is appreciable continuity of interchange facilities, interrupted only by an occasional interSection at grade, the numbering will be helpful to the expressway user.

Standard:

- 02 **Interchange numbering shall be used in signing each freeway interchange exit. Interchange exit numbers shall be displayed with each Advance Guide sign, Exit Direction sign, and Exit Gore sign. The exit number shall be displayed on a separate plaque at the top of the Advance Guide or Exit Direction sign. The exit number (E1-5P) plaque (see Figure 2E-22) shall be 30 inches in height and shall include the word EXIT and the appropriate exit number in a single-line format. Suffix letters shall be used for exit numbering at a multi-exit interchange. The suffix letter shall also be included on the exit number plaque and shall be separated from the exit number by a space having a width of between 1/2 and 3/4 of the height of the suffix letter. Exit numbers shall not include the cardinal initials corresponding to the directions of the cross route. Minimum numeral and letter sizes are given in Tables 2E-2 through 2E-5. If used, the interchange numbering system for expressways shall comply with the provisions prescribed for freeways.**
- 03 **At a multi-exit interchange where suffix letters are used for exit numbering, an exit of the same number without a suffix letter shall not be used on the same route in the same direction. For example, if an exit is designated as EXIT 256 A, then there shall not be an exit designated as EXIT 256 on the same route in the same direction.**
- 04 **Interchange exit numbering shall use the reference location sign exit numbering method. The consecutive exit numbering method shall not be used.**

Support:

- 05 Reference location sign exit numbering assists road users in determining their destination distances and travel mileage, and assists highway agencies because the exit numbering sequence does not have to be changed if new interchanges are added to a route.

Option:

- 06 Exit numbers may also be used with Supplemental Guide signs and Motorist Service signs.

Guidance:

- 07 *Exit number (E1-5P) plaques should be added to the top right-hand edge of the sign for an exit to the right.*

Standard:

- 08 **Because road users might not expect an exit to the left and might have difficulty in maneuvering to the left, a left exit number (E1-5bP) plaque (see Figure 2E-22) shall be added to the top left-hand edge of the sign for all left-hand exits (see Figures 2E-14 and 2E-15). The word LEFT on the E1-5bP plaque shall be a black legend on a yellow rectangular sign panel and shall be centered above the word EXIT.**

Support:

- 09 Example exit number plaque designs are shown in Figure 2E-22. Figures 2E-3, 2E-7, 2E-22, 2E-26, and 2E-27 illustrate the incorporation of exit number plaques on guide signs.
- 10 The general plan for numbering interchange exits is shown in Figures 2E-19 through 2E-21. Figure 2E-19 shows a circumferential route, which is a route that makes a complete circle around a city or town and usually has two interchanges (one on each side of the city or town) with each of the mainline routes that travel through the city or town. Figure 2E-20 shows a loop route, which is a route that departs from a mainline route and then rejoins the same mainline route at a subsequent point downstream, and a spur route, which is a route that departs from a mainline route and never rejoins the same mainline route. Figure 2E-21 shows two mainline routes that overlap each other.

Figure 2E-19. Example of Interchange Numbering for Mainline and Circumferential Routes

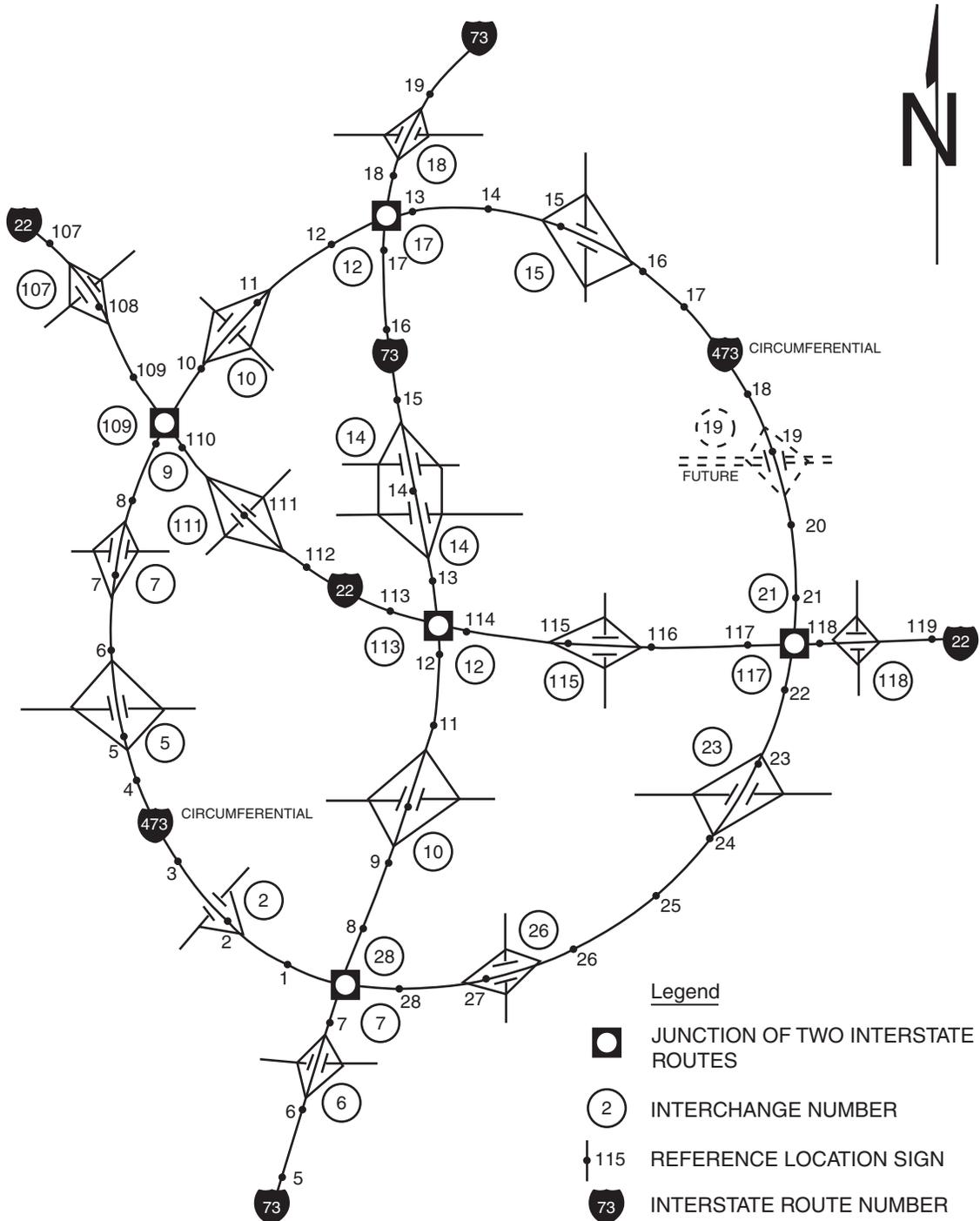
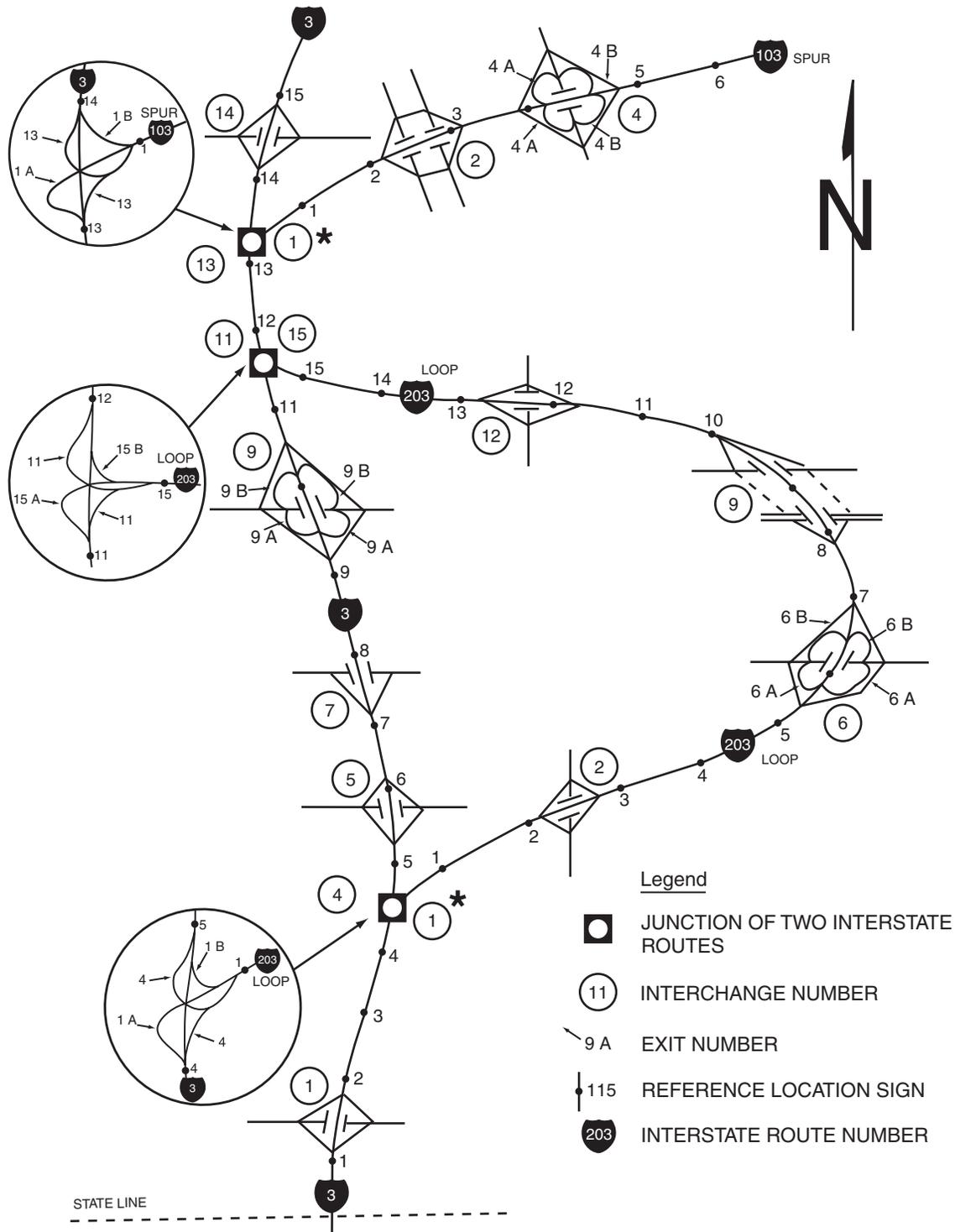
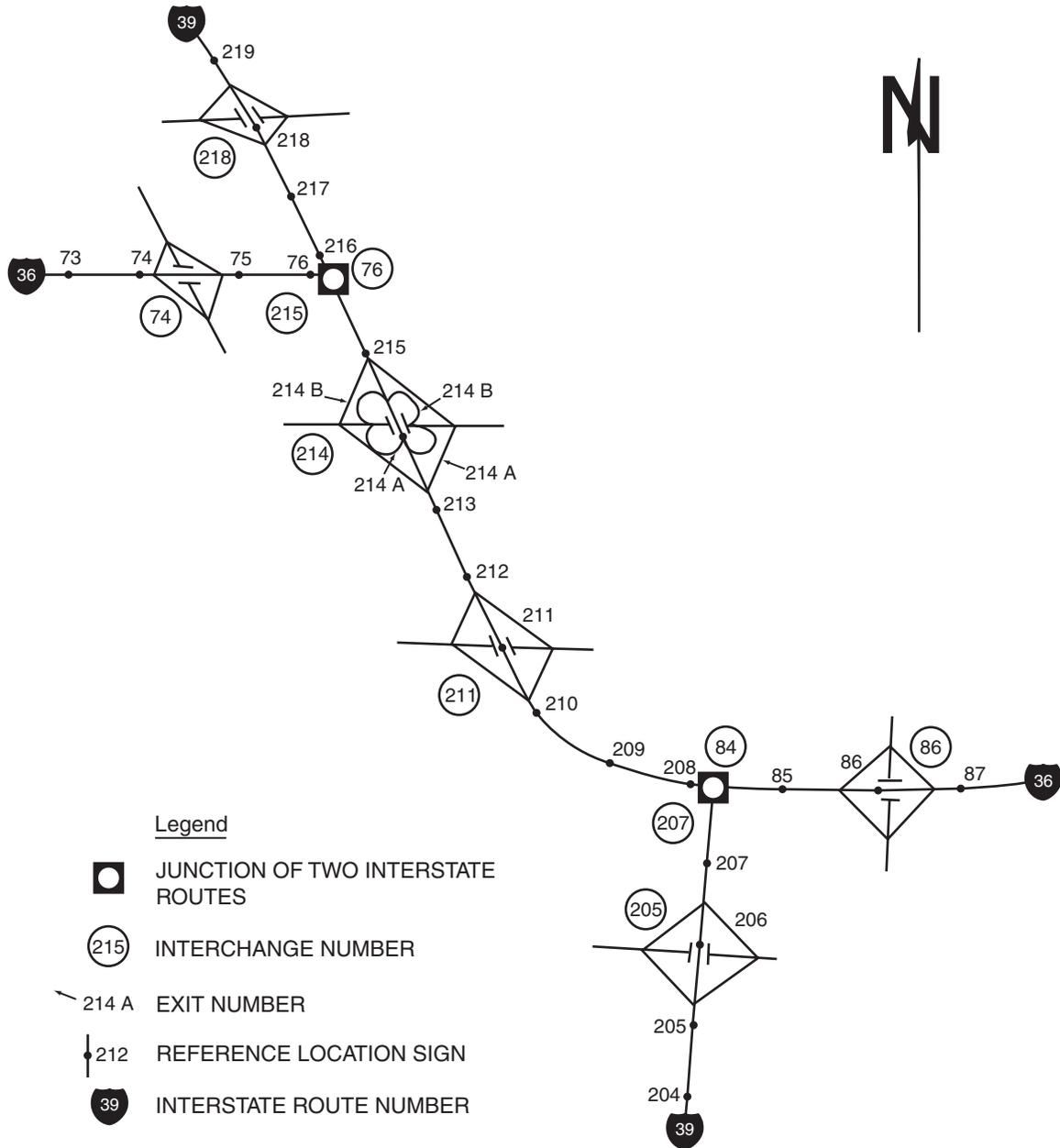


Figure 2E-20. Example of Interchange Numbering for Mainline, Loop, and Spur Routes



* The freeway/freeway interchange where the beginning of the loop or spur route intersects with the mainline route may be called either Exit 1 or Exit 0 on the loop or spur route.

Figure 2E-21. Example of Interchange Numbering for Overlapping Routes



Standard:

- 11 **Regardless of whether a mainline route originates within a State or crosses into a State from another State, the southernmost or westernmost terminus within that State shall be the beginning point for interchange numbering.**
- 12 **For circumferential routes, interchange numbering shall be in a clockwise direction. The numbering shall begin with the first interchange west of the south end of an imaginary north-south line bisecting the circumferential route, at a radial freeway or other Interstate route, or some other conspicuous landmark in the circumferential route near a south polar location (see Figure 2E-19).**
- 13 **The interchange numbers on loop routes shall begin at the loop interchange nearest the south or west mainline junction and increase in magnitude toward the north or east mainline junction (see Figure 2E-20).**
- 14 **Spur route interchanges shall be numbered in ascending order starting at the interchange where the spur leaves the mainline route (see Figure 2E-20).**
- 15 **If a circumferential, loop, or spur route crosses State boundaries, the numbering sequence shall be coordinated by the States to provide continuous interchange numbering.**
- 16 **Where numbered routes overlap, continuity of interchange numbering shall be established for only one of the routes (see Figure 2E-21). If one of the routes is an Interstate and the other route is not an Interstate, the Interstate route shall maintain continuity of interchange numbering.**

Guidance:

- 17 *The route chosen for continuity of interchange numbering should also have reference location sign continuity (see Figure 2E-21).*

Section 2E.32 Interchange Classification**Support:**

- 01 For signing purposes, interchanges are classified as major, intermediate, and minor. The minimum alphabet sizes contained in Tables 2E-2 and 2E-4 are based on this classification. Descriptions of these classifications are as follows:
- A. Major interchanges are subdivided into two categories: (a) interchanges with other expressways or freeways, or (b) interchanges with high-volume multi-lane highways, principal urban arterials, or major rural routes where the volume of interchanging traffic is heavy or includes many road users unfamiliar with the area.
 - B. Intermediate interchanges are those with urban and rural routes not in the category of major or minor interchanges.
 - C. Minor interchanges include those where traffic is local and very light, such as interchanges with land service access roads. Where the sum of exit volumes is estimated to be lower than 100 vehicles per day in the design year, the interchange is classified as minor.

Section 2E.33 Advance Guide Signs**Support:**

- 01 An Advance Guide sign (see Figure 2E-22) gives notice well in advance of the exit point of the principal destinations served by the next interchange and the distance to that interchange.

Guidance:

- 02 *For major and intermediate interchanges (see Section 2E.32), Advance Guide signs should be placed at 1/2 mile and at 1 mile in advance of the exit with a third Advance Guide sign placed at 2 miles in advance of the exit if spacing permits. At minor interchanges, only one Advance Guide sign should be used. It should be located 1/2 to 1 mile from the exit gore. If the sign is located less than 1/2 mile from the exit, the distance displayed should be to the nearest 1/4 mile. Fractions of a mile, rather than decimals, should be displayed in all cases.*

Standard:

- 03 **For numbered exits to the left, a left exit number (E1-5bP) plaque (see Figure 2E-22) shall be added to the top left-hand edge of the sign.**
- 04 **For non-numbered exits to the left, a LEFT (E1-5aP) plaque (see Figure 2E-22) shall be added to the top left-hand edge of the sign.**

Support:

- 05 Section 2E.31 contains additional information regarding exit numbering.